EDITORIAL BOARD

STEPHEN B. EDGE, M.D., F.A.C.S., Editor
Roswell Park Cancer Institute
Buffalo, New York

DAVID R. BYRD, M.D., F.A.C.S.,
University of Washington School of Medicine
Seattle, Washington

CAROLYN C. COMPTON, M.D., Ph.D.
National Cancer Institute
Bethesda, Maryland

APRIL G. FRITZ, R.H.I.T., C.T.R.
A. Fritz and Associates
Reno, Nevada

FREDERICK L. GREENE, M.D., F.A.C.S.
Carolinas Medical Center
Charlotte, North Carolina

ANDY TROTTI, III, M.D.
H. Lee Moffitt Cancer Center
Tampa, Florida

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
SEVENTH EDITION
Dedicated to Irvin D. Fleming, M.D.

SIXTH EDITION
Dedicated to Robert V. P. Hutter, M.D.

FIFTH EDITION
Dedicated to Oliver Howard Beahrs, M.D.

FOURTH EDITION
Dedicated to the memory of Harvey Baker, M.D.

THIRD EDITION
Dedicated to the memory of W. A. D. Anderson, M.D.
  Marvin Pollard, M.D.
  Paul Sherlock, M.D.

SECOND EDITION
Dedicated to the memory of Murray M. Copeland, M.D.

Seventh Edition Dedication

This seventh edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual is dedicated to Irvin D. Fleming. Dr. Fleming is a past Chair of the AJCC and a giant in American oncology. The major changes in cancer staging being introduced with this edition are largely the outgrowth of Dr. Fleming’s vision in establishing a landmark collaboration between the AJCC and the National Cancer Institute SEER Program, the National Program for Cancer Registries of the CDC, the Commission on Cancer, the National Cancer Registrars Association, and the North American Association of Central Cancer Registries. Dr. Fleming’s influence on cancer care and commitment to patients extends well beyond the AJCC as evidenced by his leadership in many organizations, including service as President of the American Cancer Society. For his vision, leadership, friendship, and support, we dedicate this Manual in his honor.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Preface

Cancer staging plays a pivotal role in the battle on cancer. It forms the basis for understanding the changes in population cancer incidence, extent of disease at initial presentation, and the overall impact of improvements in cancer treatment. Staging forms the base for defining groups for inclusion in clinical trials. Most importantly, staging provides those with cancer and their physicians the critical benchmark for defining prognosis and the likelihood of overcoming the cancer and for determining the best treatment approach for their cases.

Refining these standards to provide the best possible staging system is a never-ending process. Toward this end, the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) has led these efforts in the USA since 1959. A collaborative effort between the AJCC and the International Union for Cancer Control (UICC) maintains the system that is used worldwide. This system classifies the extent of disease based mostly on anatomic information on the extent of the primary tumor, regional lymph nodes, and distant metastases. This classification was developed in the 1940s by Pierre Denoix of France and formalized by the UICC in the 1950s with the formation of the Committee on Clinical Stage Classification and Applied Statistics. The AJCC was founded in 1959 to complement this work. The AJCC published its first cancer staging manual in 1977. Since the 1980s, the work of the UICC and AJCC has been coordinated, resulting in the simultaneous publication of the TNM Classification of Malignant Tumours by the UICC and the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual. The revision cycle is 6–8 years, a time frame that provides for accommodation of advances in cancer care while allowing cancer registry systems to maintain stable operations.

The work of the AJCC is made possible by the dedicated volunteer effort of hundreds, and perhaps thousands, of committed health professionals including physicians, nurses, population scientists, statisticians, cancer registrars, supporting staff, and others. These volunteers, representing all relevant disciplines, are organized into disease teams chaired by leading clinicians. These teams make recommendations for change in the staging system based on available evidence supplemented with expert consensus. Supporting these teams is a panel of expert statisticians who provide critical support in evaluation of existing data and in analysis of new data when this is available.

The level of data supporting the staging systems varies among disease sites. For some diseases, particularly less common cancers, there are few outcome data available. These staging systems are based on what limited data are available, supplemented by expert consensus. Though potentially imperfect, these disease schemas are critical to allow the collection of standardized data to support clinical care and for future evaluation and refinement of the staging system.

Increasingly, the disease teams of the AJCC and UICC use existing data sets or establish the necessary collaborations to develop new large data sets to provide high-level evidence to support changes in the staging system. Examples of this include the work in melanoma that led to changes in the sixth edition and their refinement in this seventh edition, use of the National Cancer Data Base and Surveillance Epidemiology and End Results (SEER) data base for evaluation of the colorectal staging system, and the use of existing data sets from the USA, Europe, and Asia in gastric cancer. In addition, groups have been established to collect very large international data sets to refine staging. In addition to the melanoma collaborative, the best examples in refining staging for the seventh edition are the collaborative group of the International Association for the Study of Lung Cancer (IASLC) and the Worldwide Esophageal Cancer Collaborative (WECC).

A major challenge to TNM staging is the rapid evolution of understanding in cancer biology and the availability of biologic factors that predict cancer outcome and response to treatment with better accuracy than purely anatomically based staging. This has led some cancer experts to conclude that TNM is obsolete. Although such statements are misguided, the reality is that the anatomic extent of disease only tells part of the story for many cancer patients.

The question of including nonanatomic prognostic factors in staging has led to intense debate about the purpose and structure of staging. Beginning with the sixth edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, there was judicious addition of nonanatomic factors to the classifications that modified stage groups. This shift away from purely anatomic information has been extended in the current edition. Relevant markers that are of such importance that they are required for clinicians to make clear treatment decisions have been included.
in groupings. Examples include the mitotic rate in staging gastrointestinal stromal tumors and prostate-specific antigen and Gleason score in staging prostate cancer. In the future, the discovery of new markers will make it necessary to include these markers in staging and will likely require the development of new strategies beyond the current grouping systems.

That said, it must also be clearly stated that it is critical to maintain the anatomic base to cancer staging. Anatomic extent of disease remains the key prognostic factor in most diseases. In addition, it is necessary to have clear links to past data to assess trends in cancer incidence and the impact of advances in screening and treatment and to be able to apply stage and compare stage worldwide in situations where new nonanatomic factors are not or cannot be collected. Therefore, the staging algorithms in this edition of the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* using nonanatomic factors only use them as modifiers of anatomic groupings. These factors are not used to define the T, N, and M components, which remain purely anatomic. Where they are used to define groupings, there is always a convention for assigning a group without the nonanatomic factor. These conventions have been established and defined in collaboration with the UICC.

The work for the seventh edition of the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* began immediately on publication of the sixth edition. Under the leadership of the Prognostic Factors Task Force of the UICC, an ongoing review of literature relevant to staging was performed and updated annually. A new data collection system that allows capture of nonanatomic information in conjunction with anatomic staging data was developed and implemented in the USA. A number of working groups continued data collection and analysis with the plan to advise AJCC Task Forces. The AJCC provided a competitive grant program to support work to lead to staging revision. An enhanced statistical task force was empanelled. Finally, in 2006, the disease task forces were convened to review available evidence and recommend changes to TNM. After review by the UICC, the changes reflected in this manual were adopted for application to cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2010.

This work involved many professionals in all fields in the clinical oncology, cancer registry, population surveillance, and statistical communities. It is hard to single out individuals, but certain people were central to this effort. Irvin Fleming, to whom we dedicate this *Manual*, showed the leadership and the vision over a decade ago that led to the development of the Collaborative Stage Data Collection System. Frederick Greene, as senior editor of the sixth edition, paved the way for this work, developed the extremely popular and useful AJCC Cancer Staging Atlas, and did the legwork to enhance the collaboration between the UICC and AJCC. The work of our publisher Springer provided the resources to support this work and the patience needed as the Task Forces and editors finished their work. The many cancer registrars and the Collaborative Stage Version 2 Work Group who worked on the disease teams kept us all properly focused. And the AJCC staff, most notably Donna Gress, Karen Pollitt, and Connie Bura provided the glue and the sweat to keep us all together.

We believe that this, the seventh edition of the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual*, and the electronic and print products built on this manual, will provide strong support to patients and physicians alike as they face the battle with cancer, and we hope that it provides the concepts and the foundation for the future of cancer staging as we move to the era of personalized molecular oncology.

Stephen B. Edge, Buffalo, NY
David R. Byrd, Seattle, WA
Carolyn C. Compton, Bethesda, MD
April G. Fritz, Reno, NV
Frederick L. Greene, Charlotte, NC
Andy Trotti, Tampa, FL
Brief Contents by Part

Part I. General Information on Cancer Staging and End-Results Reporting / 1

Part II. Head and Neck / 21

Part III. Digestive System / 101

Part IV. Thorax / 251

Part V. Musculoskeletal Sites / 279

Part VI. Skin / 299

Part VII. Breast / 345

Part VIII. Gynecologic Sites / 377

Part IX. Genitourinary Sites / 445

Part X. Ophthalmic Sites / 521

Part XI. Central Nervous System / 591

Part XII. Lymphoid Neoplasms / 599

Part XIII. Personnel and Contributors / 629
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
## Contents

Dedication .................................................................v
Preface ........................................................................ vii
Brief Contents by Part .................................................ix
Introduction and Historical Overview ................... xiii

### Part I: General Information on Cancer Staging and End-Results Reporting

1. Purposes and Principles of Cancer Staging ............3
2. Cancer Survival Analysis ........................................15

### Part II: Head and Neck

Introduction and General Rules .................................21
3. Lip and Oral Cavity................................................29
4. Pharynx *(including base of tongue, soft palate, and uvula)* .........................................................41
5. Larynx ...................................................................57
6. Nasal Cavity and Paranasal Sinuses .......................69
7. Major Salivary Glands *(Parotid, submandibular, and sublingual)* ....................................................79
8. Thyroid ...................................................................87
9. Mucosal Melanoma of the Head and Neck ..........97

### Part III: Digestive System

10. Esophagus and Esophagogastric Junction ............103
11. Stomach ................................................................117
12. Small Intestine......................................................127
13. Appendix ..............................................................133
14. Colon and Rectum ...............................................143
15. Anus .....................................................................165
16. Gastrointestinal Stromal Tumor .........................175
17. Neuroendocrine Tumors ........................................181
18. Liver *(Excluding intrahepatic bile ducts)* ..........191
19. Intrahepatic Bile Ducts ........................................201
20. Gallbladder .........................................................211
21. Perihilar Bile Ducts ..............................................219
22. Distal Bile Duct ....................................................227
23. Ampulla of Vater ..................................................235
24. Exocrine and Endocrine Pancreas .......................241

### Part IV: Thorax

25. Lung .....................................................................253
26. Pleural Mesothelioma ..........................................271

### Part V: Musculoskeletal Sites

27. Bone .....................................................................281
28. Soft Tissue Sarcoma .............................................291

### Part VI: Skin

29. Cutaneous Squamous Cell Carcinoma and Other Cutaneous Carcinomas ........................................301
30. Merkel Cell Carcinoma .........................................315
31. Melanoma of the Skin ..........................................325

### Part VII: Breast

32. Breast .................................................................347
**Part VIII** ..........................377  
Gynecologic Sites  
   *Introduction* ..............................377  
33. Vulva ...........................................379  
34. Vagina ...........................................387  
35. Cervix Uteri .................................395  
36. Corpus Uteri ..................................403  
37. Ovary and Primary Peritoneal Carcinoma ........................................419  
38. Fallopian Tube ................................429  
39. Gestational Trophoblastic Tumors .............................................437

**Part IX** ..............................445  
Genitourinary Sites  
40. Penis ...........................................447  
41. Prostate ........................................457  
42. Testis ............................................469  
43. Kidney ...........................................479  
44. Renal Pelvis and Ureter .................491  
45. Urinary Bladder .............................497  
46. Urethra .........................................507  
47. Adrenal ...........................................515

**Part X** ..........................521  
Ophthalmic Sites  
48. Carcinoma of the Eyelid ..................523  
49. Carcinoma of the Conjunctiva ...........531  
50. Malignant Melanoma of the Conjunctiva ........................................539  
51. Malignant Melanoma of the Uvea ..........547  
52. Retinoblastoma ................................561  
53. Carcinoma of the Lacrimal Gland ........569  
54. Sarcoma of the Orbit ........................577  
55. Ocular Adnexal Lymphoma ................583

**Part XI** ..........................591  
Central Nervous System  
56. Brain and Spinal Cord ....................593

**Part XII** ..........................599  
Lymphoid Neoplasms  
57. Lymphoid Neoplasms (A. Hodgkin and Non-Hodgkin Lymphomas, B. Primary Cutaneous Lymphomas, C. Multiple Myeloma and Plasma Cell Disorders, and D. Pediatric Lymphoid Malignancy) ..............605

**Part XIII** ..........................629  
Personnel and Contributors

Index ..............................................643
The seventh edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual is a compendium of all currently available information on the staging of cancer for most clinically important anatomic sites. It has been developed by the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) in cooperation with the TNM Committee of the International Union Against Cancer (UICC). The two organizations have worked together at every level to create a staging schema that remains uniform throughout. The current climate that allows for consistency of staging worldwide has been made possible by the mutual respect and diligence of those working in the staging area for both the AJCC and the UICC.

Classification and staging of cancer enable the physician and cancer registrar to stratify patients, which leads to better treatment decisions and the development of a common language that aids in the creation of clinical trials for the future testing of cancer treatment strategies. A common language of cancer staging is mandatory in order to realize the important contributions from many institutions throughout the world. This need for appropriate nomenclature was the driving force that led to clinical classification of cancer by the League of Nations Health Organization in 1929 and later by the UICC.

The AJCC was first organized on January 9, 1959, as the American Joint Committee for Cancer Staging and End Results Reporting (AJC). The driving force behind the organization of this body was a desire to develop a common language for clinical staging for cancer that was acceptable to the American medical profession. The founding organizations of the AJCC are the American College of Surgeons, the American College of Radiology, the College of American Pathologists, the American College of Physicians, the American Cancer Society, and the National Cancer Institute. The governance of the AJCC is overseen by designees from the founding organizations and representatives of the sponsoring organizations including the American Society of Clinical Oncology and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. The Medical Director of the Commission on Cancer functions as the Executive Director of the AJCC. Fostering the work of the AJCC has been undertaken by committees called task forces, which have been established for specific anatomic sites of cancer. In preparation for each new edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, the task forces are convened and serve as consensus panels to review scholarly material related to cancer staging and make recommendations to the AJCC regarding potential changes in the staging taxonomy.

Since its inception, the AJCC has embraced the TNM system in order to describe the anatomic extent of cancer at the time of initial diagnosis and before the application of definitive treatment. In addition, a classification of the stages of cancer was utilized as a guide for treatment and prognosis and for comparison of the end results of cancer management. In 1976 the AJCC sponsored a National Cancer Conference on Classification and Staging. The deliberation at this conference led directly to the development of the first edition of the
Cancer Staging Manual, which was published in 1977. With the publication of the first edition, the AJCC broadened its scope by recognizing its leadership role in the staging of cancer for American physicians and registrars. The second edition of this manual (1983) updated the earlier edition and included additional sites. This edition also served to enhance conformity with the staging espoused by the TNM Committee of the UICC.

The expanding role of the American Joint Committee in a variety of cancer classifications suggested that the original name was no longer applicable. In June 1980 the new name, the American Joint Committee on Cancer, was selected. Since the early 1980s, the close collaboration of the AJCC and the UICC has resulted in uniform and identical definitions and stage groupings of cancers for all anatomic sites so that a universal system is now available. This worldwide system was espoused by Robert V. P. Hutter, M.D., in his Presidential Address at the combined meeting of the Society of Surgical Oncology and the British Association of Surgical Oncology in London in 1987.

During the 1990s, the importance of TNM staging of cancer in the USA was heightened by the mandatory requirement that Commission on Cancer–approved hospitals use the AJCC-TNM system as the major language for cancer reporting. This requirement has stimulated education of all physicians and registrars in the use of the TNM system, and credit goes to the Approvals Program of the Commission on Cancer for this insightful recognition. The AJCC recognizes that, with this seventh edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, the education of medical students, resident physicians, physicians in practice, and cancer registrars is paramount. As the twenty-first century unfolds, new methods of education will complement the seventh edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual and will ensure that all those who care for cancer patients will be trained in the language of cancer staging.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
PART I
General Information on Cancer Staging and End-Results Reporting
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW

The extent or stage of cancer at the time of diagnosis is a key factor that defines prognosis and is a critical element in determining appropriate treatment based on the experience and outcomes of groups of prior patients with similar stage. In addition, accurate staging is necessary to evaluate the results of treatments and clinical trials, to facilitate the exchange and comparison of information among treatment centers, and to serve as a basis for clinical and translational cancer research.

At a national and international level, the agreement on classifications of cancer cases provides a method of clearly conveying clinical experience to others without ambiguity.

Several cancer staging systems are used worldwide. Differences among these systems stem from the needs and objectives of users in clinical medicine and in population surveillance. The most clinically useful staging system is the tumor node metastasis (TNM) system maintained collaboratively by the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) and the International Union for Cancer Control (UICC). The TNM system classifies cancers by the size and extent of the primary tumor (T), involvement of regional lymph node (N), and the presence or absence of distant metastases (M), supplemented in recent years by carefully selected nonanatomic prognostic factors. There is a TNM staging algorithm for cancers of virtually every anatomic site and histology, with the primary exception in this manual being staging of pediatric cancers.

Philosophy of TNM Revision. The AJCC and UICC periodically modify the TNM system in response to newly acquired clinical data and improved understanding of cancer biology and factors affecting prognosis. Revision is one factor that makes the TNM system the most clinically useful staging system and accounts for its use worldwide. However, changes in staging systems may make it difficult to compare outcomes of current and past groups of patients. Because of this, the organizations only make these changes carefully and based on the best possible evidence.

The revision cycle for TNM staging is 6–8 years. This provides sufficient time for implementation of changes in clinical and cancer registry operations and for relevant examination and discussion of data supporting changes in staging.

published in this manual is effective for cancer cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2010.

Anatomic Staging and Use of Nonanatomic Information. Cancer staging is historically based solely on the anatomic extent of cancer and remains primarily anatomic. However, an increasing number of nonanatomic factors about a cancer and its host provide critical prognostic information and may predict the value of specific therapies. Among those factors known to affect patient outcomes and/or response to therapy are the clinical and pathologic anatomic extent of disease, the reported duration of signs or symptoms, gender, age and health status of the patient, the type and grade of the cancer, and the specific biological properties of the cancer.

Clinicians use the pure anatomic extent of disease in defining treatment, but in many cases must supplement TNM with other factors in order to counsel patients and make specific treatment recommendations. As more of these factors are fully validated, it will be necessary to develop strategies to incorporate them into prognostic systems for patient management while maintaining the core anatomic structure of staging. The restriction of TNM to anatomic information has led clinicians to develop other prognostic systems and even led some to conclude that TNM is “obsolete” or “anachronistic.”

As outlined in this chapter and throughout the Manual in many of the revised AJCC staging algorithms, nonanatomic factors are incorporated into stage grouping where needed. This practice started in a limited fashion in prior editions. However, anatomic extent of disease remains central to defining cancer prognosis. Most proposed nonanatomic prognostic factors in use have been validated only for patients with specific types of disease grouped largely on the anatomic stage (e.g., Gleason’s score in early stage prostate cancer and genomic profiles that are validated only in women with node-negative breast cancer). Further, it is critical to maintain the ability to report purely anatomic information to allow comparability of patients treated using new prognostic schemas with patients treated in the past using prior anatomic schemas or with current patients for whom new prognostic factors are not obtained because of cost, available expertise, reporting systems, or other logistical issues.

Defining T, N, M and Timing of Staging Data. Stage is determined from information on the tumor T, regional nodes N, and metastases M and by grouping cases with similar prognosis. The criteria for defining anatomic extent of disease are specific for tumors at different anatomic sites and of different
TABLE 1.1. AJCC Cancer Staging Manual editions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Edition</th>
<th>Publication</th>
<th>Dates effective for cancer diagnosed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1977</td>
<td>1978–1983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>2003–2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>2009</td>
<td>2010–2010</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

histologic types. For example, the size of the tumor is a key factor in breast cancer but has no impact on prognosis in colorectal cancer, where the depth of invasion or extent of the cancer is the primary prognostic feature. Therefore, the criteria for T, N, and M are defined separately for each tumor and histologic type. With certain types of tumors, such as Hodgkin and other lymphomas, a different system for designating the extent of disease and prognosis, and for classifying its groupings, is necessary. In these circumstances, other symbols or descriptive criteria are used in place of T, N, and M, and in the case of lymphoma only the stage group is defined. The general rules for defining elements of staging are presented later, and the specifics for each type of disease are in the respective chapters.

Beginning with the sixth edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, TNM adopted a change in the rules for timing of staging data collection to coordinate data collection among the major cancer registry organizations in the USA including the North American Central Registry programs [e.g., the NCI Surveillance Epidemiology and End Results Program (SEER) and the National Program of Cancer Registries (NPCR) of the Center for Disease Control and Prevention], and the National Cancer Data Base, and to accommodate changing practice patterns with increased use of sensitive imaging studies that often were applied during the initial diagnostic phase of care, but occurred after surgery. The timing rules state that:

- **Clinical staging** includes any information obtained about the extent of cancer before initiation of definitive treatment (surgery, systemic or radiation therapy, active surveillance, or palliative care) or within 4 months after the date of diagnosis, whichever is shorter, as long as the cancer has not clearly progressed during that time frame.

- **Pathologic staging** includes any information obtained about the extent of cancer through completion of definitive surgery as part of first course treatment or identified within 4 months after the date of diagnosis, whichever is longer, as long as there is no systemic or radiation therapy initiated or the cancer has not clearly progressed during that time frame.

**TNM Staging Classification: Clinical, Pathologic, Recurrent, Posttreatment, and Autopsy.** Stage may be defined at a number of points in the care of the cancer patient. These include “pretreatment stage” or “clinical stage,” and postsurgical or “pathologic stage.” In addition, stage may be determined (a) after therapy for those receiving systemic or radiation therapy before surgery (termed neoadjuvant therapy) or as primary treatment without surgery, (b) at the time of recurrence, and (c) for cancers identified at autopsy.

**Clinical stage (pretreatment stage)** is the extent of disease defined by diagnostic study before information is available from surgical resection or initiation of neoadjuvant therapy, within the required time frame (see previous discussion). The nomenclature for clinical staging is cT, cN, and cM, and the anatomic stage/prognostic groups based on cTNM are termed the clinical stage groups. Clinical staging incorporates information obtained from symptoms; physical examination; endoscopic examinations; imaging studies of the tumor, regional lymph nodes, and metastases; biopsies of the primary tumor, and surgical exploration without resection. When T is classified only clinically (cT), information from biopsy of single or sentinel lymph nodes may be included in clinical node staging (cN). On occasion, information obtained at the time of surgery may be classified as clinical such as when liver metastases that are identified clinically but not biopsied during a surgical resection of an abdominal tumor.

**Pathologic stage** is defined by the same diagnostic studies used for clinical staging supplemented by findings from surgical resection and histologic examination of the surgically removed tissues. This adds significant additional prognostic information that is more precise than what can be discerned clinically before therapy. This pathologic extent of disease or pathologic stage is expressed as pT, pN, and pM.

**Posttherapy stage** (ypTNM) documents the extent of the disease for patients whose first course of therapy includes systemic or radiation treatment prior to surgical resection or when systemic therapy or radiation is the primary treatment with no surgical resection. The use of so-called neoadjuvant therapy is increasingly common in solid tumors including breast, lung, gastrointestinal, head and neck, and other cancers. Posttherapy stage may be recorded as clinical or pathologic depending on the source of posttreatment information. The extent of disease is classified using the same T, N, and M definitions and identified as posttreatment with a “yc” or “yp” prefix (ycT, ycN, ycTNM; ypT, ypN, ypTNM). Note that American registry systems do not have a data element to record “yc” elements, but these may be recorded in the medical record. The measured response to therapy and/or the extent of cancer after therapy may be prognostic. It is also used to guide subsequent surgery or other therapy.

When a patient receives presurgical treatment and has a posttherapy yc- or yp-TNM stage, the stage used for surveillance analysis and for comparison purposes is the clinical stage before the start of therapy. Care should be taken not to record the postneoadjuvant therapy stage as the primary stage for comparison of populations or for clinical trials. This could lead to erroneous reports. For example, a patient with a clinical Stage III breast cancer after chemotherapy could have only residual carcinoma in situ. If the final y stage was used as the original stage, the cancer would be erroneously staged as Stage 0. This would be grossly misleading for a case that in fact presented as a locally advanced Stage III cancer.
Two other staging classifications are defined, though there are no data fields reserved for these stages in most cancer registry systems. The first of these is “Retreatment” classification (rTNM). This is used because information gleaned from therapeutic procedures and from extent of disease defined clinically may be prognostic for patients with recurrent cancer after a disease-free interval. Clearly the extent of recurrent disease guides therapy, and this should be recorded in the medical record using the TNM classification. It is important to understand that the rTNM classification does not change the original clinical or pathologic staging of the case. The second of these is the “Autopsy” classification (aTNM) used to stage cases of cancer not identified during life and only identified postmortem.

TNM Groupings. For the purposes of tabulation and analysis of the care of patients with a similar prognosis, T, N, and M are grouped into so-called anatomic stage/prognostic groups, commonly referred to as stage groups. Groups are classified by Roman numerals from I to IV with increasing severity of disease. Stage I generally denotes cancers that are smaller or less deeply invasive with negative nodes; Stage II and III define cases with increasing tumor or nodal extent, and Stage IV identifies those who present with distant metastases (M1) at diagnosis. In addition, the term Stage 0 is used to denote carcinoma in situ with no metastatic potential. Stage 0 is almost always determined by pathologic examination.

The primary TNM groupings are purely clinical or pathologic. However, in clinical medicine, it is often expedient to combine clinical and pathologic T, N, and M information to define a mixed stage group for treatment planning. An example of a clinical situation where such “mixed staging” is used clinically is a woman with breast cancer who has had the primary tumor resected providing pathologic T, but for whom there was no lymph node surgery, requiring use of the clinical N. The mixed stage combining clinical and pathologic information is sometimes referred to as working stage. However, pure clinical and pathologic stage is still defined for comparative purposes. In addition, clinical M status (M0 or M1) may be mixed with pathologic T and N information to define pathologic stage, and the classification pTis cN0 cM0 may be used to define both clinical and pathologic stage for in situ carcinoma. If there is pathologic evidence of metastases (pM1), it may be used with clinical T and N information to define clinical Stage IV and pathologic Stage IV.

The grouping recommendations in this manual are based primarily on anatomic information. Anatomic extent of disease is supplemented by selected nonanatomic prognostic factors in some disease sites. To denote the significance of this selective use of nonanatomic factors and to underscore the importance of anatomic information, the title of the groupings in the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual has been changed to “Anatomic Stage/Prognostic Groups.”

Recording Cancer Stage in the Medical Record. All staging classifications, and most importantly clinical and pathologic T, N, and M and stage grouping, should be recorded in the medical record. Clinical stage is used in defining primary therapy (including surgery if surgery is performed), and when surgery is the initial treatment, subsequent systemic or radiation treatment is based on the pathologic stage. Recording clinical stage is also important because it may be the only common denominator among all cancers of a certain anatomic site and histology. Examples include lung cancer, advanced GI tumors, and head and neck cancers where surgery may not be performed, as well as cancers such as prostate cancer and others where surgical resection for limited disease may be omitted. In such scenarios, it may be impossible to compare cases where information is only obtained by clinical means with those where surgical resection is performed. For this reason, clinical stage remains an important component of application of the TNM staging system. This was reinforced in 2008 by the American College of Surgeons Commission on Cancer in its cancer program standards with the requirement that clinical stage be recorded in all cases.

There are many options for recording staging data in the medical record. These include documenting in the initial clinical evaluations, operative reports, discharge summaries, and follow-up reports. Physicians are encouraged to enter the stage of cancer in every record of clinical encounters with the cancer patient. In addition, a paper or electronic staging form may be useful to record stage in the medical record as well as to facilitate communication of staging data to a cancer registry. A simple form for collecting staging data is included for each disease site in this manual.

The Cancer Registry and the Collaborative Stage Data Collection System. Recording stage information in a cancer registry allows analysis of treatment effects and longitudinal population studies. Traditionally registries recorded the staging data provided in the medical record or on a staging form by the physician. With the increasing complexity of staging, the potential to incorporate various nonanatomic factors into staging algorithms, and the need to coordinate staging data collection for hospital- and population-based central registries, there was a need for a more standardized data collection tool for staging data. Such a system, termed the Collaborative Stage Data Collection System (CS), was developed by the AJCC and its cancer surveillance and staging partner organizations and implemented in cancer registries in the USA in 2004. It has also been implemented in parts of Canada with the expectation to implement throughout Canada by 2012.

In the CS system, T, N, and M data plus selected nonanatomic factors are recorded and a computer-based algorithm derives TNM stage as defined in the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual. The stage derivation uses the nonanatomic factors if they are available and derives a pure anatomic stage if they are not. In addition, the CS algorithm derives Summary Stage 1977 and 2000. In the CS system, the primary data defining T, N, and M are collected and stored in local registries and transmitted to central registries. T is derived from the size and local extension of disease, N from data elements that describe node status and the number of examined and positive nodes,
and M from an element that records the presence or absence of metastases. In addition, the CS system includes “site-specific factors” used to record information beyond the anatomic extent of disease. There are two types of site-specific factors: those that are required for deriving the “Anatomic Stage/Prognostic Group” (e.g., Gleason’s Score in prostate cancer) and those that are key prognostic or predictive factors for a given disease (e.g., estrogen receptor and HER2/neu status in breast cancer). Anatomic stage/prognostic groups are calculated from the T, N, and M and relevant site-specific factors. Collaborative stage does not assign a “c” or “p” to the stage grouping but only to the TNM elements. The CS system-derived groups are not necessarily purely clinical or pathologic TNM groups, but represent the best stage that combines clinical and pathologic data.

Importantly, the CS system stores the primary data in an interoperable tagged format that may be exported for other purposes including application in prognostic models and nomograms and for research into new prognostic models. The data elements that are collected in the Collaborative Stage Data Collection System are shown in Table 1.2.

The Collaborative Stage Data Collection System has been revised to accommodate this seventh edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual. Key revisions are expansion of the site-specific factors to accommodate added prognostic factors and additional data elements necessary to record the clinical stage used for all cases, and the yp stage after neoadjuvant therapy. This will collect information on pretreatment clinical stage prior to the initiation of therapy and the posttreatment pathologic stage (yp) after completion of neoadjuvant therapy in patients who have resection. Detailed information on the CS system and current CS data element standards is available at http://www.cancerstaging.org.

**TABLE 1.2. Collaborative stage data collection system data elements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumor</th>
<th>CS tumor size (primary tumor size in mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CS extension (direct extension of the primary tumor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CS tumor size/extension eval (method of evaluating T)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nodes</td>
<td>CS lymph nodes (regionalymph node involvement)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CS lymph nodes eval (method of evaluating N)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Regional nodes positive (number nodes positive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Regional nodes examined (number nodes examined)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastases</td>
<td>CS Mets at Dx (distant metastases present at time of diagnosis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CS Mets Eval (method of evaluating M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site-specific factors</td>
<td>CS site-specific factors (specific number defined by disease)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1Method of evaluation fields: Define source of data – clinical (c) or pathologic (p); response to neoadjuvant therapy utilizing pathologic information (yp).

2Site-specific factors: Additional items necessary for (a) defining cancer stage group or (b) key prognostic factors including anatomic disease modifiers and nonanatomic factors (e.g., grade and tumor markers). Most disease sites use only a few of the available site-specific factor fields.

These tumor, node, and metastases fields for best stage are duplicated as needed for pretreatment and posttreatment stages.

For full description of Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, see http://www.cancerstaging.org/ctstage/index.html.

---

**NOMENCLATURE OF THE MORPHOLOGY OF CANCER**

Cancer treatment requires assessment of the extent and behavior of the tumor and the status of the patient. The most widely used is TNM based on documentation of the anatomic extent of the cancer and selected related nonanatomic factors. The description of the anatomic factors is specific for each disease site. These descriptors and the nomenclature for TNM have been developed and refined over many editions of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual by experts in each disease and cancer registrars who collect the information, taking into consideration the behavior and natural history of each type of cancer.

An accurate microscopic diagnosis is essential to the evaluation and treatment of cancer. The histologic and morphologic characteristics of tumors are generally reported by expert pathologists. This is best accomplished using standardized nomenclature in a structured report such as the synoptic reports or cancer protocols defined by the College of American Pathologists (CAP). In addition, for some cancers measurements of other factors including biochemical, molecular, genetic, immunologic, or functional characteristics of the tumor or normal tissues have become important or essential elements in classifying tumors precisely. Techniques that supplement standard histological evaluation including immunohistochemistry, cyogenetics, and genetic characterization are used to characterize tumors and their potential behavior and response to treatment.

**Related Classifications.** In the interest of promoting international collaboration in cancer research and to facilitate comparison of data among different clinical studies, use of the WHO International Classification of Tumours for classification and definition of tumor types, the International Classifications of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-0) codes for storage and retrieval of data, CAP protocols for pathology reporting of cancer pathology specimens, and the Collaborative Stage Data Collection System for collecting staging data is recommended. Given here is a summary of relevant related classification and coding systems with source citations.

- **World Health Organization Classification of Tumours, Pathology and Genetics.** Since 1958, the World Health Organization (WHO) has had a program aimed at providing internationally accepted criteria for the histological classification of tumors. The most recent edition is a ten-volume series that contains definitions, descriptions, and illustrations of tumor types and related nomenclature (WHO: World Health Organization Classification of Tumours. Various editions. Lyon, France: IARC Press, 2000–2008).
• **Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine (SNOMED).** Published by the CAP, SNOMED provides tumor classification systems compatible with the ICD-O system (http://snomed.org).

• **Collaborative Stage Data Collection System.** This system for collecting cancer staging data was developed through a collaboration of the AJCC and other standard setting organizations. Primary data are recorded on the size and extension of the primary tumor, the status of lymph nodes, and presence of distant metastases and certain “site-specific factors.” These data are used to derive TNM stage and Summary Stage (http://www.cancerstaging.org/cstage/index.html).

• **CAP Cancer Protocols.** The CAP publishes standards for pathology reporting of cancer specimens for all cancer types and cancer resection types. These specify the elements necessary for the pathologist to report the extent and characteristics of cancer specimens. These elements are being coordinated with the Collaborative Stage Data Collection System to allow direct reporting of pathology elements to cancer registries (http://www.cap.org).

• **caBIG.** The National Cancer Institute of the USA has developed the Cancer Bioinformatics Grid (caBIG) to standardize data elements and integration of these elements for the reporting of information for clinical trials and to annotate biological specimens (http://cabig.cancer.gov).

• **Atlas of Tumor Pathology.** A comprehensive and well-known English language compendium of the macroscopic and microscopic characteristics of tumors and their behavior is the Atlas of Tumor Pathology series, published in many volumes by the Armed Forces Institute of Pathology in Washington, DC. These are revised periodically and are used as a basic reference by pathologists throughout the world (Atlas of Tumor Pathology, 3rd edition series, Washington, DC: Armed Forces Institute of Pathology, 1991–2002).

• **American College of Radiology Appropriateness Criteria.** The American College of Radiology maintains guidelines and criteria for use of imaging and interventional radiology procedures for many aspects of cancer care. This includes the extent of imaging testing that is recommended for the diagnostic evaluation of the extent of disease of the primary tumor, nodes, and distant metastases in a number of cancer types. The ACR appropriateness criteria are updated regularly (http://www.acr.org/ac).

• **Practice Guidelines of the National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN).** The NCCN provides practice guidelines for most types of cancers. These guidelines are updated at least annually. They include recommendations for diagnostic evaluation and imaging for the primary tumor and screening for metastases for each cancer type that may be useful to guide staging (http://www.nccn.org).

### GENERAL RULES FOR TNM STAGING

The TNM system classifies and groups cancers primarily by the anatomic extent of the primary tumor, the status of regional draining lymph nodes, and the presence or absence of distant metastases. The system is in essence a shorthand notation for describing the clinical and pathologic anatomic extent of a tumor. In addition, the AJCC recommends collection of key prognostic factors that either are used to define groupings or are critical to prognosis or defining patient care.

| T | The T component is defined by the size or contiguous extension of the primary tumor. The roles of the size component and the extent of contiguous spread in defining T are specifically defined for each cancer site. |
| N | The N component is defined by the absence, or presence and extent of cancer in the regional draining lymph nodes. Nodal involvement is categorized by the number of positive nodes and for certain cancer sites by the involvement of specific regional nodal groups. |
| M | The M component is defined by the absence or presence of distant spread or metastases, generally in locations to which the cancer spread by vascular channels, or by lymphatics beyond the nodes defined as “regional.” |

For each of T, N, and M the use of increasing values denotes progressively greater extent of the cancer as shown later. For some disease sites, subdivisions of the main designators are used to provide more specific prognostic information (e.g., T1mi, T1a, T1b, T1c or N2a, N2b in breast cancer or M1a, M1b, M1c for prostate cancer). Specific definitions for each cancer type are provided in the respective chapters. General designators for T, N, and M are shown later and general rules for applying these designators are shown in the tables. For each designator, the prefix of c, p, yc, yp, r, or a may be applied to denote the classification of stage (see later):

#### Primary Tumor (T)

| T0 | No evidence of primary tumor |
| Tis | Carcinoma in situ |
| T1, T2, T3, T4 | Increasing size and/or local extension of the primary tumor |
| TX | Primary tumor cannot be assessed (use of TX should be minimized) |

#### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

| N0 | No regional lymph node metastases |
| N1, N2, N3 | Increasing number or extent of regional lymph node involvement |
| NX | Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed (use of NX should be minimized) |
Distant Metastasis (M)

M0 No distant metastases
M1 Distant metastases present

Note: The MX designation has been eliminated from the AJCC/UICC TNM system.

The M1 category may be further specified according to the following notation signifying the location of metastases:

- Pulmonary PUL
- Osseous OSS
- Hepatic HEP
- Brain BRA
- Lymph nodes LYM
- Bone marrow MAR
- Pleura PLE
- Peritoneum PER
- Adrenal ADR
- Skin SKI
- Other OTH

Nonanatomic Prognostic Factors Required for Staging. In some cancer types, nonanatomic factors are required for assigning the anatomic stage/prognostic group. These are clearly defined in each chapter. These factors are collected separately from T, N, and M, which remain purely anatomic, and are used to assign stage groups. Where nonanatomic factors are used in groupings, there is a definition of the groupings provided for cases where the nonanatomic factor is not available (X) or where it is desired to assign a group ignoring the nonanatomic factor.

Use of the Unknown X Designation. The X category is used when information on a specific component is unknown. Cases where T or N is classified as X cannot be assigned a stage (an exception is Any T or Any N M1, which includes TX or NX, classified as Stage IV – e.g., TX NX M1 or TX N3 M1 are Stage IV). Therefore, the X category for T and N should be used only when absolutely necessary.

The category MX has been eliminated from the AJCC/UICC TNM system. Unless there is clinical or pathologic evidence of distant metastases, the case is classified as clinical M0 (cM0). Because of the requirement for pathologists to assign TNM on cancer pathology reports, and because the pathologist often does not have information to assign M, the CAP has dropped the M component from pathology templates to further discourage use of MX. The elimination of the code MX is a change in the seventh edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual and UICC TNM Cancer Staging Manual. See later for rules for M classification.

The following general rules apply to application of T, N, and M for all sites and classifications (Table 1.3):

1. Microscopic confirmation: All cases should be confirmed microscopically for classification by TNM (including clinical classification). Rare cases that do not have any biopsy or cytology of the tumor can be staged, but survival should be analyzed separately. These cases should not be included in overall disease survival analyses.

### TABLE 1.3. General rules for TNM staging

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General rules for staging</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Microscopic confirmation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microscopic confirmation required for TNM classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rare cases without microscopic confirmation should be analyzed separately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancers classified by ICD-O-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommend pathology reporting using CAP cancer protocols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timing of data eligible for clinical staging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data obtained before definitive treatment as part of primary treatment or within 4 months of diagnosis, whichever is shorter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The time frame for collecting clinical stage data also ends when a decision is made for active surveillance (&quot;watchful waiting&quot;) without therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timing data eligible for pathologic staging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data obtained through definitive surgery as part of primary treatment or within 4 months of diagnosis, whichever is longer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timing of data eligible for staging with neoadjuvant therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage in cases with neoadjuvant therapy is (a) clinical as defined earlier before initiation of therapy and (b) clinical or pathologic using data obtained after completion of neoadjuvant therapy (ypTNM or ypTNM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staging in cases with uncertainty among T, N, or M categories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign the lower (less advanced) category of T, N, or M, prognostic factor, or stage group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absence of staging-required nonanatomic prognostic factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign stage grouping by the group defined by the lower (less advanced) designation for that factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple synchronous primary tumors in single organ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage T by most advanced tumor; use “m” suffix or the number of tumors in parentheses, e.g., pT3(m)N0M0 or pT3(4)N0M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synchronous primary tumors in paired organs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage and report independently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metachronous primary tumors in single organ (not recurrence)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage and report independently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0 staging – unknown primary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage based on clinical suspicion of primary tumor (e.g., T0 N1 M0 Group IIA breast cancer)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Eligible time period for determination of staging:
   a. Clinical staging includes any information obtained about the extent of cancer before initiation of definitive treatment (surgery, systemic or radiation therapy, active surveillance, or palliative care) or within 4 months after the date of diagnosis, whichever is shorter, as long as the cancer has not clearly progressed during that time frame.
   b. Pathologic staging includes any information obtained about the extent of cancer up through completion of definitive surgery as part of first course treatment or identified within 4 months after the date of diagnosis, whichever is longer, as long as there is no systemic or radiation therapy initiated or the cancer has not clearly progressed during that time frame.
3. Staging with neoadjuvant or primary systemic or radiation therapy: Cases with neoadjuvant, or primary systemic or radiation, therapy may have a second stage defined from information obtained after therapy that is recorded using a yc or yp prefix (ycTNM or ypTNM; y must always be modified as yc or yp). However, these patients should also have clinical stage recorded as this is the stage used for comparative purposes. Clinical stage includes only information collected prior to the start of treatment.
4. Progression of disease: In cases where there is documented progression of cancer prior to the initiation of therapy or surgery, only information obtained prior to documented progression is used for staging.
5. If uncertain, classify or stage using the lower category: If there is uncertainty in assigning a T, N, or M classification, a stage modifying factor (i.e., in clinical situations where it is unclear if the lymph nodes are N2 or N1), or anatomic stage/prognostic group, default to the lower (lesser) of the two categories in the uncertain range.
6. Nonanatomic factor not available: If a nonanatomic factor required for grouping is not available, the case is assigned to the group assuming that factor was the lowest or least advanced (e.g., lower Gleason’s score in prostate cancer).

### Stage Classifications

Five stage classifications may be described for each site (Table 1.4):
- Clinical stage/pretreatment stage, designated as cTNM or TNM
- Pathologic stage, designated as pTNM
- Post therapy or postneoadjuvant therapy stage, designated as ycTNM or ypTNM
- Retreatment or recurrence classification, designated as rTNM
- Autopsy classification, designated as aTNM

### Clinical Classification

Clinical classification is based on evidence acquired before the initiation of primary treatment (definitive surgery, or neoadjuvant radiation or systemic therapy). The clinical stage (pretreatment stage) is essential to selecting primary therapy. In addition, the clinical stage is critical for comparison of groups of cases because differences in the use of primary therapy may make such comparisons based on pathologic assessment impossible, such as in situations where some patients are treated with primary surgery and others are treated with neoadjuvant chemotherapy or with no therapy.

Clinical assessment uses information available from clinical history, physical examination, imaging, endoscopy, biopsy of the primary site, surgical exploration, or other relevant examinations. Observations made at surgical exploration where a biopsy of the primary site is performed without resection or where pathologic material is not obtained are classified as clinical, unless the biopsy provides pathologic material on the highest possible T category in which case it is classified at pT (see pathologic staging later). Pathologic examination of a single node in the absence of pathologic evaluation of the primary tumor is classified as clinical (cN) (e.g., if sentinel node biopsy is performed prior to neoadjuvant therapy in breast cancer). Extensive imaging is not necessary to assign clinical classifications. Guides to the generally accepted standards for diagnostic evaluations of individual cancer types include the American College of Radiology Appropriateness Standards (http://www.acr.org/ac) and the NCCN Practice Guidelines (http://www.nccn.org).

### TABLE 1.4. Staging Classifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification (pretreatment) (cTNM)</th>
<th>Data source</th>
<th>Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinical staging (cTNM)</td>
<td>Diagnostic data including symptoms, physical examination, imaging, endoscopy; biopsy of primary site; resection of single node/sentinel node(s) with clinical T; surgical exploration without resection; other relevant examinations</td>
<td>Define prognosis and initial therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Population comparisons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pathologic (pTNM)</td>
<td>Diagnostic data and data from surgical resection and pathology</td>
<td>Most precise prognosis estimates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Define subsequent therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post therapy (ycTNM or ypTNM)</td>
<td>Clinical and pathologic data after systemic or radiation before surgery or as primary therapy denoted with a yc (clinical) or yp (pathologic) prefix</td>
<td>Determine subsequent therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Identify response to therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retreatment (rTNM)</td>
<td>Clinical and pathologic data at time of retreatment for recurrence or progression</td>
<td>Define treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autopsy (aTNM)</td>
<td>Clinical and pathologic data as determined at autopsy</td>
<td>Define cancer stage on previously undiagnosed cancer identified at autopsy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The clinical (pretreatment) stage assigned on the basis of information obtained prior to cancer-directed treatment is not changed on the basis of subsequent information obtained from the pathologic examination of resected tissue or from information obtained after initiation of definitive therapy. In the case of treatment with palliative care or active surveillance (watchful waiting), the information for staging is that defined prior to making the decision for no active treatment or that which occurs within 4 months of diagnosis, whichever is shorter. Any information obtained after the decision for active surveillance or palliative care may not be used in clinical staging. Classification of T, N, and M by clinical means is denoted by use of a lower case c prefix (cT, cN, cM).

Clinical staging of metastases warrants special consideration. A case where there are no symptoms or signs of metastases is classified as clinically M0. There is no MX classification. The only evaluation necessary to classify a case as clinically M0 is history and physical examination. It is not necessary to do extensive imaging studies to classify a case as clinically M0. The optimal extent of testing required in many cancer types is provided in guidelines of the American College of Radiology Appropriateness Criteria (http://www.acr.org/ac) and in the National Comprehensive Cancer Network practice guidelines (http://www.nccn.org). The classification pM0 does not exist and may not be assigned on the basis of a negative biopsy of a suspected metastatic site. Cases with clinical evidence of metastases by examination, invasive procedures including exploratory surgery, and imaging, but without a tissue biopsy confirming metastases are classified as cM1. If there is a positive biopsy of a metastatic site (pM1) and T and N are staged only clinically, then the case may be staged as clinical and pathologic Stage IV.

Pathologic Classification. The pathologic classification of a cancer is based on information acquired before treatment supplemented and modified by the additional evidence acquired during and from surgery, particularly from pathologic examination of resected tissues. The pathologic classification provides additional precise and objective data. Classification of T, N, and M by pathologic means is denoted by use of a lower case p prefix (pT, pN, pM).

Pathologic T. The pathologic assessment of the primary tumor (pT) generally is based on resection of the primary tumor generally from a single specimen (Table 1.5). Resection of the tumor with several partial removals at the same or separate operations necessitates an effort at reasonable estimates of the size and extension of the tumor to assign the correct or highest pT category. Tumor size should be recorded in whole millimeters. If the size is reported in smaller units such as a tenth or hundredth of a millimeter, it should be rounded to the nearest whole millimeter for reporting stage. Rounding is performed as follows: one through four are rounded down, and five through nine are rounded up.

Table 1.5. T classification rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T determined by site-specific rules based on size and/or local extension</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical assessment of T (cT) based on physical examination, imaging, endoscopy, and biopsy and surgical exploration without resection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pathologic assessment of T (pT) entails a resection of the tumor or may be assigned with biopsy only if it assigns the highest T category</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT generally based on resection in single specimen. If resected in &gt;1 specimen, make reasonable estimate of size/extension.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disease-specific rules may apply. Tumor size should be recorded in whole millimeters. If the size is reported in smaller units such as a tenth or hundredth of a millimeter, it should be rounded to the nearest whole millimeter for reporting stage. Rounding is performed as follows: one through four are rounded down, and five through nine are rounded up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If not resected, and highest T and N category can be confirmed microscopically; case may be classified by pT or pN without resection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A biopsy of the primary tumor is performed that is adequate to evaluate the highest pT category, the pT classification is assigned. Some disease sites have specific rules to guide assignment of pT category in such cases.

Pathologic N. The pathologic assessment of regional lymph nodes (pN) ideally requires resection of a minimum number of lymph nodes to assure that there is sufficient sampling to identify positive nodes if present (Table 1.6). This number varies among diseases sites, and the expected number of lymph nodes is defined in each chapter. The recommended number generally does not apply in cases where sentinel node has been accepted as accurate for defining regional node involvement and a sentinel node procedure has been performed. However, in cases where lymph node surgery results...
The appropriate N classification for cases with nodes only as defined concept and the category pM0 may not be used. Pathologic assignment of the presence of metastases (pM1) requires a biopsy positive for cancer or circulating or DTCs classified as cM0(i+) to denote the uncertain prognostic significance of these findings and to classify the stage group according to the T and N and M0.

Pathologic M. The pathologic assignment of the presence of metastases (pM1) requires a biopsy positive for cancer at the metastatic site (Table 1.7). Pathologic M0 is an undefined concept and the category pM0 may not be used. Pathologic classification of the absence of distant metastases can only be made at autopsy. However, the assessment of metastases to group a patient by pathologic TNM groupings may be either clinical (cM0 or cM1) or pathologic (pM1) (e.g., pTNM = pT1 pN1 cM0 = clinical stage I) or where no surgery is performed. The M component should be classified by the M classification rules (pTNM). The yc prefix is used for the clinical stage after therapy, and the yp prefix is used for the pathologic stage for those cases that have surgical resection after neoadjuvant therapy. Both the ycTNM and ypTNM may be recorded in the medical record, though cancer registries will in general only record the ypTNM in cases where surgery is performed. The M component should be classified by the M status defined clinically or pathologically prior to therapy. If a biopsy of a metastatic site is positive, the case is classified as clinical and pathologic Stage IV. The estimate of disease prior to therapy is recorded using the clinical designator (e.g., ycT1 cN1 ypM1 = clinical or pathologic stage IV).

Elimination of “MX” is new with AJCC/UICC, 7th edition

Infer status as clinical M0 status unless known clinical M1

“MX” is not a valid category and may not be assigned

Stage a case with a negative biopsy of suspected metastatic site as cM0

Stage a case with a biopsy of a possible metastatic site (pM1) may be grouped as clinical and pathologic Stage IV regardless of “c” or “p” status of T and N (e.g., cT1 cN1 pM1 = clinical or pathologic stage IV)

I/ITC in metastatic sites (e.g., bone marrow)

Or circulating or DTCs classified as cM0(i+)

Disease-specific rules may apply

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M classification rules</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinical M classification only requires history and examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imaging of distant organ sites not required to assign cM0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infer status as clinical M0 status unless known clinical M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“MX” is not a valid category and may not be assigned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elimination of “MX” is new with AJCC/UICC, 7th edition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pathologic M classification requires a positive biopsy of the metastatic site (pM1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pathologic M0 (“pM0”) is not a valid category and may not be assigned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage a case with a negative biopsy of suspected metastatic site as cM0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case with pathologic T and N may be grouped as pathologic TNM using clinical M designator (cM0 or cM1) (e.g., pT1 pN0 cM0 = pathologic stage I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case with pathologic M1 (pM1) may be grouped as clinical and pathologic Stage IV regardless of “c” or “p” status of T and N (e.g., cT1 cN1 pM1 = clinical or pathologic stage IV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/ITC in metastatic sites (e.g., bone marrow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Or circulating or DTCs classified as cM0(i+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disease-specific rules may apply</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Retreatment Classification. The retreatment classification (rTNM) is assigned when further treatment is planned for a cancer that recurs after a disease-free interval. The original stage assigned at the time of initial diagnosis and treatment does not change when the cancer recurs or progresses. The use of this staging for retreatment or recurrence is denoted using the r prefix (rTNM). All information available at the time of retreatment should be used in determining the rTNM stage. Biopsy confirmation of recurrent cancer is important if clinically feasible. However, this may not be appropriate for each component, so clinical evidence for the T, N, or M component by clinical, endoscopic, radiologic, or related methods may be used.

Autopsy Classification. TNM classification of a cancer may be performed by postmortem examination for a patient where cancer was not evident prior to death. This autopsy classification (aTNM) is denoted using the a prefix (aTNM) and should include all clinical and pathologic information obtained at the time of death and autopsy.

Stage Groupings. Cases of cancers with similar prognosis are grouped based on the assigned cT, cN, and cM or pT, pN and c/pM categories, and disease-specific groups of T, N, and M are defined. In select disease sites nonanatomic factors are required to supplement T, N, and M to define these groups. Termed anatomic stage/prognostic groups, and commonly referred to as stage groups, these form a reproducible and easily communicated summary of staging information (Table 1.8).

Groups are assigned increasing values that correlate with worsening prognosis. Stage I is usually assigned to tumors confined to the primary site with a better prognosis, stages II and III for tumors with increasing local and regional nodal involvement, and stage IV to cases with distant metastatic disease. In addition, a group termed stage 0 is assigned to cases of carcinoma in situ (CIS). Groupings may be expanded into subsets (e.g., stage II can become stage IIA, stage IIB) for more refined prognostic information.

TABLE 1.8. Anatomic stage/prognostic grouping rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Define separate clinical and pathologic group for each case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May combine clinical and pathologic information as a &quot;working stage&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in either the pathologic or clinical classification when only partial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>information is available – this may be necessary for clinical care.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimize use of TX and NX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of “X” for any component makes case unstageable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case will not be usable in comparison analyses (exception: any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>combination of T and N including TX or NX with M1 is stage IV).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For groupings that require a nonanatomic factor, if factor is missing,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stage using lowest category for that factor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case with pT1 and pN1 and cM1 or cM0 staged as pathologic stage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case with cT1 and cN1 and pM1 staged as clinical and pathologic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stage group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma in situ, stage pTis cN0 cM0 as both clinical and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pathologic stage 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Generally, a pure clinical group and pure pathologic group are defined for each case, using the classifications discussed earlier. In the clinical setting, it is appropriate to combine clinical and pathologic data when only partial information is available in either the pathologic or clinical classification, and this may be referred to as the working stage.

Carcinoma in situ (CIS) is an exception to the stage grouping guidelines. By definition, CIS has not involved any structures in the primary organ that would allow tumor cells to spread to regional nodes or distant sites. Therefore, pTis cN0 cM0 should be reported as both clinical and pathologic stage 0.

The clinical, pathologic, and if applicable, posttherapy and retreatment, groups are recorded in the medical record. Once assigned according to the appropriate rules and timing, the stage group recorded in the medical record does not change. The rule applied to T, N, or M that in cases with uncertainty about the classification the cases are assigned the lower (less advanced) category also applies to grouping. One specific circumstance requires special comment. When there has been a complete pathologic response and the ypTNM is ypT0 ypN0 cM0, this is not a “stage 0” case as this would denote in situ disease, and as in every case, the stage for comparison of cases is the pretreatment clinical stage.

Multiple Tumors. When there are multiple simultaneous tumors of the same histology in one organ, the tumor with the highest T category is the one selected for classification and staging, and the multiplicity or the number of tumors is indicated in parentheses: for example, T2(m) or T2(5). For simultaneous bilateral cancers in paired organs, the tumors are classified separately as independent tumors in different organs. For tumors of the thyroid, liver, and ovary, multiplicity is a criterion of the T classification. Most registry software systems have a mechanism to record the m descriptor.

Metachronous Primaries. Second or subsequent primary cancers occurring in the same organ or in different organs are staged as a new cancer using the TNM system described in this manual. Second cancers are not staged using the y prefix unless the treatment of the second cancer warrants this use.

Unknown Primary. In cases where there is no evidence of a primary tumor or the site of the primary tumor is unknown, staging may be based on the clinical suspicion of the primary tumor with the T category classified as T0. For example, a case with metastatic adenocarcinoma in axillary lymph nodes that is pathologically consistent with breast cancer, but in which there is no apparent primary breast tumor may be classified as breast cancer – T0 N1 M0 (Table 1.9).

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE, GRADE, AND OTHER DESCRIPTORS

Histopathologic Type. The histopathologic type is a qualitative assessment whereby a tumor is categorized according to the normal tissue type or cell type it most closely resembles.
TABLE 1.9. Special classification/designator rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Rule</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ycTNM or ypTNM</td>
<td>Posttherapy classification: “y” prefix to utilize with “c” or “p” for denoting extent of cancer after neoadjuvant or primary systemic and/or radiation therapy</td>
<td>Assess clinical stage prior to initiation of therapy (cTNM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use cTNM for comparison of cases and population surveillance</td>
<td>Use ycTNM for comparison of cases and population surveillance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Denote posttherapy T and N stage using “y” prefix – ycT; ycN; ypT; ypN</td>
<td>Denote posttherapy T and N stage using “y” prefix – ycT; ycN; ypT; ypN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yc is used for clinical information postprimary therapy systemic or radiation therapy, or postneoadjuvant therapy before surgery</td>
<td>yc is used for clinical information postprimary therapy systemic or radiation therapy, or postneoadjuvant therapy before surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yp is used for pathologic postneoadjuvant systemic or radiation therapy followed by surgical resection</td>
<td>yp is used for pathologic postneoadjuvant systemic or radiation therapy followed by surgical resection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r TNM</td>
<td>Retreatment classification</td>
<td>Use clinical/pretreatment M status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The original stage assigned at initial diagnosis and treatment should not be changed at the time of recurrence or progression</td>
<td>The original stage assigned at initial diagnosis and treatment should not be changed at the time of recurrence or progression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assign cases where treatment is planned for cancer that recurs after a disease-free interval</td>
<td>Assign cases where treatment is planned for cancer that recurs after a disease-free interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use all information available at time of retreatment or recurrence (c or p)</td>
<td>Use all information available at time of retreatment or recurrence (c or p)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Biopsy confirmation desirable if feasible, but not required</td>
<td>Biopsy confirmation desirable if feasible, but not required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a TNM</td>
<td>Autopsy classification</td>
<td>Apply for cases where cancer is not evident prior to death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use all clinical and pathologic information obtained at the time of death and at postmortem examination</td>
<td>Use all clinical and pathologic information obtained at the time of death and at postmortem examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m suffix</td>
<td>Multiple primary tumors</td>
<td>Multiple simultaneous tumors in one organ: Assign T by the tumor with the highest T category. Indicate multiplicity by “(m)” or “(number)” in parentheses – e.g., T2(m) or T2(5)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(e.g., hepatocellular or cholangiocarcinoma, osteosarcoma, squamous cell carcinoma). The World Health Organization Classification of Tumours published in numerous anatomic site-specific editions may be used for histopathologic typing. Each chapter in the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual includes the applicable ICD-O-3 histopathologic codes expressed as individual codes or ranges of codes. If a specific histology is not listed, the case should not be staged using the AJCC classification in that chapter.

Grade. The grade of a cancer is a qualitative assessment of the degree of differentiation of the tumor. Grade may reflect the extent to which a tumor resembles the normal tissue at that site. Historically, histologic stratification of solid tumors has been dominated by the description of differentiation with grade expressed as the overall histologic differentiation of the cancer in numerical grades from the most well differentiated (grade 1) to the least differentiated (grade 3 or 4). This system is still used in some cancer types. For many cancer types, more precise and reproducible grading systems have been developed. These incorporate more specific and objective criteria based on single or multiple characteristics of the cancers. These factors include such characteristics as nuclear grade, the number of mitoses identified microscopically (mitotic count), measures of histologic differentiation (e.g., tubule formation in breast cancer), and others. For some cancer types these systems have been fully validated and largely implemented worldwide. Examples include the Gleason's scoring system for prostate cancer and the Scarff–Bloom–Richardson (Nottingham) grading system for breast cancer.

The recommended grading system for each cancer type is specified in the site-specific chapters. In general, when there is no specific grading system for a cancer type, it should be noted if a two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system was used. For some anatomic sites, grade 3 and grade 4 are combined into a single grade – for example, poorly differentiated to undifferentiated (G3–4). The use of grade 4 is reserved for those tumors that show no specific differentiation that would identify the cancer as arising from its site of origin. In some sites, the WHO histologic classification includes undifferentiated carcinomas. For these, the tumor is graded as undifferentiated – grade 4. Some histologic tumor types are by definition listed as grade 4 for staging purposes but are not to be assigned a grade of undifferentiated in ICD-O-3 coding for cancer registry purposes. These include the following:

- Small cell carcinoma, any site
- Large cell carcinoma of lung
- Ewing's sarcoma of bone and soft tissue
- Rhabdomyosarcoma of soft tissue

The grade should be recorded for each cancer. Two data elements should be recorded: the grade and whether a two, three, or four-grade system was used for grading. If there is evidence of more than one grade of level or differentiation of the tumor, the least differentiated (highest grade) is recorded.

Residual Tumor and Surgical Margins. The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment is described by the symbol R. cTNM and pTNM describe the extent of cancer in general without consideration of treatment. cTNM and pTNM can be supplemented by the R classification, which deals with the tumor status after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit or ability of resection. The presence of residual tumor may indicate the effect of therapy, influence further therapy, and be
a strong predictor of prognosis. In addition, the presence or absence of disease at the margin of resection may be a predictor of the risk of recurrent cancer. The presence of residual disease or positive margins may be more likely with more advanced T or N category tumors. The R category is not incorporated into TMM staging itself. However, the absence or presence of residual tumor and status of the margins may be recorded in the medical record and cancer registry.

The absence or presence of residual tumor at the primary tumor site after treatment is denoted by the symbol R. The R categories for the primary tumor site are as follows:

- **R0** No residual tumor
- **R1** Microscopic residual tumor
- **R2** Macroscopic residual tumor
- **RX** Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed

The margin status may be recorded using the following categories:

- Negative margins (tumor not present at the surgical margin)
- Microscopic positive margin (tumor not identified grossly at the margin, but present microscopically at the margin)
- Macroscopic positive margin (tumor identified grossly at the margin)
- Margin not assessed

**Lymph-Vascular Invasion.** Indicates whether microscopic lymph-vascular invasion (LVI) is identified in the pathology report. This term includes lymphatic invasion, vascular invasion, or lymph-vascular invasion (synonymous with “lymphovascular”).

**ORGANIZATION OF THE AJCC CANCER STAGING MANUAL AND ANATOMIC SITES AND REGIONS**

In general, the anatomic sites for cancer in this manual are listed by primary site code number according to the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O, third edition, WHO, 2000). Each disease site or region is discussed and the staging classification is defined in a separate chapter. There are a number of new chapters and disease sites in this seventh edition of the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual*.

Each chapter includes a discussion of information relevant to staging that cancer type, the data supporting the staging, and the specific rationale for changes in staging. In addition, it includes definition of key prognostic factors including those required for staging and those recommended for collection in cancer registries. Each chapter ends with the specific definitions of T, N, M, site-specific factors, and anatomic stage/prognostic groups (Table 1.10).

Cancer Staging Data Form. Each site chapter includes a staging data form that may be used by providers and registrars to record the TNM classifications and the stage of the cancer. The form provides for entry of data on T, N, M, site-specific prognostic factors, cancer grade, and anatomic stage/prognostic groups. This form may be useful for recording information in the medical record and for communication of information from providers to the cancer registrar.

The staging form may be used to document cancer stage at different points in the course of therapy, including before the initiation of therapy, after surgery and completion of all staging evaluations, or at the time of recurrence. It is best to use a separate form at each point. If all time points are recorded on a single form, the staging basis for each element should be clearly identified.

The cancer staging form is a specific additional document in the patient records. It is not a substitute for documentation of history, physical examination, and staging evaluation, nor for documenting treatment plans or follow-up. The data forms in this manual may be duplicated for individual or institutional use without permission from the AJCC or the publisher. Incorporation of these forms into electronic record systems requires appropriate permission from the AJCC and the publisher.
Analysis of cancer survival data and related outcomes is necessary to assess cancer treatment programs and to monitor the progress of regional and national cancer control programs. The appropriate use of data from cancer registries for outcomes analyses requires an understanding of the correct application of appropriate quantitative tools and the limitations of the analyses imposed by the source of data, the degree to which the available data represent the population, and the quality and completeness of registry data. In this chapter the most common survival analysis methodology is illustrated, basic terminology is defined, and the essential elements of data collection and reporting are described. Although the underlying principles are applicable to both, the focus of this discussion is on the use of survival analysis to describe data typically available in cancer registries rather than to analyze research data obtained from clinical trials or laboratory experimentation. Discussion of statistical principles and methodology will be limited. Persons interested in statistical underpinnings or research applications are referred to textbooks that explore these topics at length.1–7

BASIC CONCEPTS

A survival rate is a statistical index that summarizes the probable frequency of specific outcomes for a group of patients at a particular point in time. A survival curve is a summary display of the pattern of survival rates over time. The basic concept is simple. For example, for a certain category of patient, one might ask what proportion is likely to be alive at the end of a specified interval, such as 5 years. The greater the proportion surviving, the lower the risk for this category of patients. Survival analysis, however, is somewhat more complicated than it first might appear. If one were to measure the length of time between diagnosis and death or record the vital status when last observed for every patient in a selected patient group, one might be tempted to describe the survival of the group as the proportion alive at the end of the period under investigation. This simple measure is informative only if all of the patients were observed for the same length of time.

In most real situations, not all members of the group are observed for the same amount of time. Patients diagnosed near the end of the study period are more likely to be alive at last contact and will have been followed for less time than those diagnosed earlier. Even though it was not possible to follow these persons as long as the others, their survival might eventually prove to be just as long or longer. Although we do not know the complete survival time for these individuals, we do know a minimum survival time (time from diagnosis to last known contact date), and this information is still valuable in estimating survival rates. Similarly, it is usually not possible to know the outcome status of all of the patients who were in the group at the beginning. People may be lost to follow-up for many reasons: they may move, change names, or change physicians. Some of these individuals may have died and others could be still living. Thus, if a survival rate is to describe the outcomes for an entire group accurately, there must be some means to deal with the fact that different people in the group are observed for different lengths of time and that for others, their vital status is not known at the time of analysis. In the language of survival analysis, subjects who are observed until they reach the endpoint of interest (e.g., recurrence or death) are called uncensored cases, and those who survive beyond the end of the follow-up or who are lost to follow-up at some point are termed censored cases.

Two basic survival procedures that enable one to determine overall group survival, taking into account both censored and uncensored observations, are the life table method and the Kaplan–Meier method.8,9 The life table method was the first method generally used to describe cancer survival results, and it came to be known as the actuarial method because of its similarity to the work done by actuaries in the insurance industry. It is most useful when data are only available in grouped categories as described in the next section. The Kaplan–Meier estimate utilizes individual survival times for each patient and is preferable when data are available in this form.

The specific method of computation, that is, life table or Kaplan–Meier, used for a specific study should always be clearly indicated in the report to avoid any confusion associated with the use of less precise terminology. Rates computed by different methods are not directly comparable, and when the survival experiences of different patient groups are compared, the different rates must be computed by the same method.

The concepts of survival analysis are illustrated in this chapter. These illustrations are based on data obtained from the public-use files of the National Cancer Institute’s Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program. The cases selected are a 1% random sample of the total number for the selected sites and years of diagnosis. Follow-up of these patients continued through the end of 1999. Thus, for the earliest patients, there can be as many as 16 years of follow-up, but for those diagnosed at the end of the study period, there can be as little as 1 year of follow-up. These data are used both because they are realistic in terms of the actual survival rates they yield and because they encompass a number of cases that might be seen in a single large tumor registry.
over a comparable number of years. They are intended only to illustrate the methodology and concepts of survival analysis. SEER results from 1973 to 1997 are more fully described elsewhere. These illustrations are not intended and should not be used or cited as an analysis of patterns of survival in breast and lung cancer in the USA.

THE LIFE TABLE METHOD

The life table method involves dividing the total period over which a group is observed into fixed intervals, usually months or years. For each interval, the proportion surviving to the end of the interval is calculated on the basis of the number known to have experienced the endpoint event (e.g., death) during the interval and the number estimated to have been at risk at the start of the interval. For each succeeding interval, a cumulative survival rate may be calculated. The cumulative survival rate is the probability of surviving the most recent interval multiplied by the probabilities of surviving all of the prior intervals. Thus, if the percent of the patients surviving the first interval is 90% and is the same for the second and third intervals, the cumulative survival percentage is 72.9% (0.9 × 0.9 × 0.9 = 0.729).

Results from the life table method for calculating survival for the breast cancer illustration are shown in Figure 2.1. Two-thousand eight-hundred nineteen (2,819) patients diagnosed between 1983 and 1998 were followed through 1999. Following the life table calculation method for each year after diagnosis, the 1-year survival rate is 95.6%. The 5-year cumulative survival rate is 76.8%. At 10 years, the cumulative survival is 61.0%.

The lung cancer data show a much different survival pattern (Figure 2.2). At 1 year following diagnosis, the survival rate is only 41.8%. By 5 years it has fallen to 12.0%, and only 6.8% of lung cancer patients are estimated to have survived for 10 years following diagnosis. For lung cancer patients the median survival time is 10.0 months. Median survival time is the point at which half of the patients have experienced the endpoint event and half of the patients remain event-free. If the cumulative survival does not fall below 50% it is not possible to estimate median survival from the data, as is the case in the breast cancer data.

In the case of breast cancer, the 10-year survival rate is important because such a large proportion of patients live more than 5 years past their diagnosis. The 10-year time frame for lung cancer is less meaningful because such a large proportion of this patient group dies well before that much time passes.

An important assumption of all actuarial survival methods is that censored cases do not differ from the entire collection of uncensored cases in any systematic manner that would affect their survival. For example, if the more recently diagnosed cases in Figure 2.1, that is, those who were most likely not to have died yet, tended to be detected with earlier-stage disease than the uncensored cases or if they were treated differently, the assumption about comparability of censored and uncensored cases would not be met, and the result for the group as a whole would be inaccurate. Thus, it is important, when patients are included in a life table analysis, that one be reasonably confident that differences in the amount of information available about survival are not related to differences that might affect survival.

THE KAPLAN–MEIEER METHOD

If individual patient data are available, these same data can be analyzed using the Kaplan–Meier method. It is similar to the life table method but calculates the proportion surviving to each point that a death occurs, rather than at fixed intervals. The principal difference evident in a survival curve is that the stepwise changes in the cumulative survival rate appear to occur independently of the intervals on the “Years Following Diagnosis” axis. Where available, this method provides a more accurate estimate of the survival curve.
PATIENT-, DISEASE-, AND TREATMENT-SPECIFIC SURVIVAL

Although overall group survival is informative, comparisons of the overall survival between two groups often are confounded by differences in the patients, their tumors, or the treatments they received. For example, it would be misleading to compare the overall survival depicted in Figure 2.1 for the sample of all breast cancer cases with the overall survival for a sample of breast cancer patients who were diagnosed with more advanced disease, whose survival would be presumed to be poorer. The simplest approach to accounting for possible differences between groups is to provide survival results that are specific to the categories of patient, disease, or treatment that may affect results. In most cancer applications, the most important variable by which survival results should be subdivided is the stage of disease. Figure 2.3 shows the stage-specific 5-year survival curves of the same breast cancer patients described earlier. These data show that breast cancer patient survival differs markedly according to the stage of the tumor at the time of diagnosis.

Almost any variable can be used to subclassify survival rates, but some are more meaningful than others. For example, it would be possible to provide season-of-diagnosis-specific (i.e., spring, summer, winter, and fall) survival rates, but the season of diagnosis probably has no biologic association with the length of a breast cancer patient’s survival. On the other hand, the race-specific and age-specific survival rates shown in Figures 2.4 and 2.5 suggest that both of these variables are related to breast cancer survival. Caucasians have the highest survival rates and African-Americans the lowest. In the case of age, these data suggest that only the oldest patients experience poor survival and that it would be helpful to consider the effects of other causes of death that affect older persons using adjustments to be described.

Although the factors that affect survival may be unique to each type of cancer, it has become conventional that a basic description of survival for a specific cancer should include stage-, age-, and race-specific survival results. Treatment is a factor by which survival is commonly subdivided, but it must be kept in mind that selection of treatment is usually related to other factors that exert influence on survival. For example, in cancer care the choice of treatment is often dependent on the stage of disease at diagnosis. Comparison of survival curves by treatment is most appropriately accomplished within the confines of randomized clinical trials.

CAUSE-ADJUSTED SURVIVAL RATE

The survival rates depicted in the illustrations account for all deaths, regardless of cause. This is known as the observed survival rate. Although observed survival is a true reflection of total mortality in the patient group, we frequently are
interested in describing mortality attributable only to the
disease under investigation. In the past, this was most often
calculated using the cause-adjusted survival rate, defined as
the proportion of the initial patient group that escaped death
due to a specific cause (e.g., cancer) if no other cause of death
was operating. This technique requires that reliable information
on cause of death is available and makes an adjustment
for deaths due to causes other than the disease under study.
This was accomplished by treating patients who died without
the disease of interest as censored observations.

COMPETING RISKS/CUMULATIVE INCIDENCE

The treatment of deaths from other causes as censored is con-
troversial, since statistical methods used in survival analysis
settings assume that censoring is independent of outcome.
This means that if the patient was followed longer, one could
eventually observe the outcome of interest. This makes sense
for patients lost to follow-up (if we located them, we might
eventually observe their true survival time). However, if a
patient dies due to another cause, we will never observe their
death due to the cancer of interest. Estimation of the adjusted
rate as described previously does not appropriately distin-
guish between patients who are still alive at last known con-
tact date and those known to have died from another cause.
These latter events are called competing risks.

When competing risks are present, an alternative to the
Kaplan–Meier estimate is the cumulative incidence method.
This technique is similar to the Kaplan–Meier estimate in its
treatment of censored observations and is identical to the
Kaplan–Meier estimate if there are no competing risks. How-
ever, in the presence of competing risks, the other causes of
death are handled in a different manner.11

RELATIVE SURVIVAL

Information on cause of death is sometimes unavailable or
unreliable. Under such circumstances, it is not possible to
compute a cause-adjusted survival rate. However, it is possible
to adjust partially for differences in the risk of dying from
causes other than the disease under study. This can be done
by means of the relative survival rate, which is the ratio of
the observed survival rate to the expected rate for a group of
people in the general population similar to the patient group
with respect to race, sex, and age. The relative survival rate is
calculated using a procedure described by Ederer et al.11

The relative survival rate represents the likelihood that a
patient will not die from causes associated specifically with
the cancer at some specified time after diagnosis. It is always
greater than the observed survival rate for the same group of
patients. If the group is sufficiently large and the patients are
roughly representative of the population of the USA (taking
race, sex, and age into account), the relative survival rate pro-
vides a useful estimate of the probability of escaping death
from the specific cancer under study. However, if reliable
information on cause of death is available, it is preferable to
use the cause-adjusted rate. This is particularly true when the
series is small or when the patients are largely drawn from a
particular socioeconomic segment of the population. Relative
survival rates may be derived from life table or Kaplan–Meier
results.

REGRESSION METHODS

Examining survival within specific patient, disease, or treat-
ment categories is the simplest way of studying multiple
factors possibly associated with survival. This approach,
however, is limited to factors into which patients may be
broadly grouped. This approach does not lend itself to
studying the effects of measures that vary on an interval
scale. There are many examples of interval variables in can-
cer, such as age, number of positive nodes, cell counts, and
laboratory marker values. If the patient population were
to be divided up into each interval value, too few subjects
would be in each analysis to be meaningful. In addition,
when more than one factor is considered, the number of
curves that result provides so many comparisons that the
effects of the factors defy interpretation.

Conventional multiple regression analysis investigates the
joint effects of multiple variables on a single outcome, but it is
incapable of dealing with censored observations. For this rea-
son, other statistical methods are used to assess the relation-
ship of survival time to a number of variables simultaneously.
The most commonly used is the Cox proportional hazards
regression model.13 This model provides a method for esti-
mating the influence of multiple covariates on the survival
distribution from data that include censored observations.
Covariates are the multiple factors to be studied in associa-
tion with survival. In the Cox proportional hazards regression
model, the covariates may be categorical variables such as
race, interval measures such as age, or laboratory test results.

Specifics of these methods are beyond the scope of this
chapter. Fortunately, many readily accessible computer pack-
ages for statistical analysis now permit the methods to be
applied quite easily by the knowledgeable analyst. Although
much useful information can be derived from multivariate
survival models, they generally require additional assump-
tions about the shape of the survival curve and the nature of
the effects of the covariates. One must always examine
the appropriateness of the model that is used relative to the
assumptions required.

STANDARD ERROR OF A SURVIVAL RATE

Survival rates that describe the experience of the specific group
of patients are frequently used to generalize to larger popula-
tions. The existence of true population values is postulated, and
these values are estimated from the group under study, which
is only a sample of the larger population. If a survival rate was
calculated from a second sample taken from the same population,
it is unlikely that the results would be exactly the same. The difference between the two results is called the sampling variation (chance variation or sampling error). The standard error is a measure of the extent to which sampling variation influences the computed survival rate. In repeated observations under the same conditions, the true or population survival rate will lie within the range of two standard errors on either side of the computed rate approximately 95 times in 100. This range is called the 95% confidence interval.

**COMPARISON OF SURVIVAL BETWEEN PATIENT GROUPS**

In comparing survival rates of two patient groups, the statistical significance of the observed difference is of interest. The essential question is, "What is the probability that the observed difference may have occurred by chance?" The standard error of the survival rate provides a simple means for answering this question. If the 95% confidence intervals of two survival rates do not overlap, the observed difference would customarily be considered statistically significant, that is, unlikely to be due to chance. This latter statement is generally true, although it is possible for a formal statistical test to yield a significant difference even with overlapping confidence intervals. Moreover, comparisons at any single time point must be made with care; if a specific time (5 years, for example) is known to be of interest when the study is planned, such a comparison may be valid; however, identification of a time based on inspection of the curves and selection of the widest difference make any formal assessment of difference invalid.

It is possible that the differences between two groups at each comparable time of follow-up do not differ significantly but that when the survival curves are considered in their entirety, the individual insignificant differences combine to yield a significantly different pattern of survival. The most common statistical test that examines the whole pattern of differences between survival curves is the log rank test. This test equally weights the effects of differences occurring throughout the follow-up and is the appropriate choice for most situations. Other tests weight the differences according to the numbers of persons at risk at different points and can yield different results depending on whether deaths tend more to occur early or later in the follow-up.

Care must be exercised in the interpretation of tests of statistical significance. For example, if differences exist in the patient and disease characteristics of two treatment groups, a statistically significant difference in survival results may primarily reflect differences between the two patient series, rather than differences in efficacy of the treatment regimens. The more definitive approach to therapy evaluation requires a randomized clinical trial that helps to ensure comparability of the patient characteristics and the disease characteristics of the two treatment groups.

**Definition of Study Starting Point.** The starting time for determining survival of patients depends on the purpose of the study. For example, the starting time for studying the natural history of a particular cancer might be defined in reference to the appearance of the first symptom. Various reference dates are commonly used as starting times for evaluating the effects of therapy. These include (1) date of diagnosis, (2) date of first visit to physician or clinic, (3) date of hospital admission, (4) date of treatment initiation, date of randomization in a clinical trial evaluating treatment efficacy, and (5) others. The specific reference date used should be clearly specified in every report.

**Vital Status.** At any given time, the vital status of each patient is defined as alive, dead, or unknown (i.e., lost to follow-up). The endpoint of each patient's participation in the study is (1) a specified terminal event such as death, (2) survival to the completion of the study, or (3) loss to follow-up. In each case, the observed follow-up time is the time from the starting point to the terminal event, to the end of the study, or to the date of last observation. This observed follow-up may be further described in terms of patient status at the endpoint, such as the following:

- Alive; tumor-free; no recurrence
- Alive; tumor-free; after recurrence
- Alive with persistent, recurrent, or metastatic disease
- Alive with primary tumor
- Dead; tumor-free
- Dead; with cancer (primary, recurrent, or metastatic disease)
- Dead; postoperative
- Unknown; lost to follow-up

Completeness of the follow-up is crucial in any study of survival, because even a small number of patients lost to follow-up may lead to inaccurate or biased results. The maximum possible effect of bias from patients lost to follow-up may be ascertained by calculating a maximum survival rate, assuming that all lost patients lived to the end of the study. A minimum survival rate may be calculated by assuming that all patients lost to follow-up died at the time they were lost.

**Time Intervals.** The total survival time is often divided into intervals in units of weeks, months, or years. The survival curve for these intervals provides a description of the population under study with respect to the dynamics of survival over a specified time. The time interval used should be selected with regard to the natural history of the disease under consideration. In diseases with a long natural history, the duration of study could be 5–20 years, and survival intervals of 6–12 months will provide a meaningful description of the survival dynamics. If the population being studied has a very poor prognosis (e.g., patients with carcinoma of the esophagus or pancreas), the total duration of study may be 2–3 years, and the survival intervals may be described in terms of 1–3 months. In interpreting survival rates, one must also take into account the number of individuals entering a survival interval.
SUMMARY

This chapter has reviewed the rudiments of survival analysis as it is often applied to cancer registry data and to the analysis of data from clinical trials. Complex analysis of data and exploration of research hypotheses demand greater knowledge and expertise than could be conveyed herein. Survival analysis is now performed automatically in many different registry data management and statistical analysis programs available for use on personal computers. Persons with access to these programs are encouraged to explore the different analysis features available to demonstrate for themselves the insight on cancer registry data that survival analysis can provide and to understand the limitations of these analyses and how their validity is affected by the characteristics of the patient cohorts and the quality and completeness of data.

REFERENCES

PART II
Head and Neck
General Rules

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- The terms “resectable” and “unresectable” are replaced with “moderately advanced” and “very advanced”
- No major changes have been made in the N staging for any sites except that a descriptor has been added. Extracapsular spread (ECS) of disease is added as ECS + or ECS − as a descriptor. These descriptors will not influence nodal staging system

INTRODUCTION

Cancers of the head and neck may arise from any of the lining membranes of the upper aerodigestive tract. The T classifications indicating the extent of the primary tumor are generally similar but differ in specific details for each site because of anatomic considerations. The N classification for cervical lymph node metastasis is uniform for all sites except thyroid, nasopharynx, and skin. The N classification for thyroid and nasopharynx is unique to those sites and is based on tumor behavior and prognosis. The N classification for neck disease from nonmelanoma skin cancers is similar to that for axillary and groin (inguinal) lymph nodes. The staging systems presented in this section are all clinical staging, based on the best possible estimate of the extent of disease before first treatment. Imaging techniques [computed tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), positron emission tomography (PET), and ultrasonography] may be utilized and, in advanced tumor stages, have added to the accuracy of primary tumor (T) and nodal (N) staging, especially in the nasopharyngeal and paranasal sinuses, primary sites, and regional lymph nodes. Endoscopic evaluation of the primary tumor, when appropriate, is desirable for detailed assessment of the primary tumor for accurate T staging. Fine-needle aspiration biopsy (FNAB) may confirm the presence of tumor and its histopathologic nature, but it cannot rule out the presence of tumor.

Any diagnostic information that contributes to the overall accuracy of the pretreatment assessment should be considered in clinical staging and treatment planning. When surgical treatment is carried out, cancer of the head and neck can be staged [pathologic stage (pTNM)] using all information available from clinical
assessment, as well as from the pathologic study of the resected specimen. The pathologic stage does not replace the clinical stage, which should be reported as well.

In reviewing the staging systems, no major changes in the T classifications or stage groupings are made, since they reflect current practices of treatment, clinical relevance, and contemporary data. Uniform T classification for oral cavity, oropharynx, and salivary and thyroid cancers has greatly simplified the system and has improved compliance by clinicians. T4 tumors are subdivided into moderately advanced (T4a) and very advanced (T4b) categories. Regrouping of Stage IV disease for all sites into moderately advanced, local/regional disease (Stage IVa), very advanced local/regional disease (Stage IVb), and distant metastatic disease (Stage IVc) has also simplified stratification of advanced stage disease.

The following chapters present the staging classification for six major head and neck sites: the oral cavity, the pharynx (nasopharynx, oropharynx, and hypopharynx), the larynx, the paranasal sinuses, the salivary glands, and the thyroid gland.

A revised chapter on nonmelanoma skin cancers has also been added to the Manual (see Chap. 29). The T and N staging for head and neck skin cancers is consistent with other cutaneous sites in the body. All these chapters apply to epithelial cancers only. Mucosal melanoma warrants separate consideration, and the approach to these lesions is outlined in a separate chapter that addresses mucosal melanoma in all sites of the head and neck (see Chap. 9).

Regional Lymph Nodes. The status of the regional lymph nodes in head and neck cancer is of such prognostic importance that the cervical nodes must be assessed for each patient and tumor. The lymph nodes may be subdivided into specific anatomic subsites and grouped into seven levels for ease of description (Tables 1 and 2 and Figure 1).

Other groups:
- Suboccipital
- Retropharyngeal
- Parapharyngeal
- Buccinator (facial)
- Preauricular
- Periparotid and intraparotid

The pattern of the lymphatic drainage varies for different anatomic sites. However, the location of the lymph node metastases has prognostic significance in patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck. Survival is significantly worse when metastases involve lymph nodes beyond the first echelon of lymphatic drainage and, particularly, lymph nodes in the lower regions of the neck, that is, level IV and level VB (supraclavicular region). Consequently, it is recommended that each N staging category be recorded to show whether the nodes involved are located in the upper (U) or lower (L) regions of the neck, depending on their location above or below the lower border of the cricoid cartilage.

Extracapsular spread (ECS) has been recognized to worsen the adverse outcome associated with nodal metastasis. ECS can be diagnosed clinically by a matted mass of nodes adherent to overlying skin, adjacent soft tissue, or clinical evidence of cranial nerve invasion. Radiologic signs of ECS include amorphous, spiculated margins of a metastatic node and stranding of the perinodal soft tissue in previously untreated patients. The absence or presence of clinical/radiologic ECS is designated E− or E+, respectively. Surgically resected metastatic nodes should be examined for the presence and extent of ECS. Gross ECS (Eg) is defined as tumor apparent to the naked eye, beyond the confines of the nodal capsule. Microscopic ECS (Em) is defined as the presence of metastatic tumor beyond the capsule of the lymph node. ECS evident on clinical/radiologic examination is designated E+ or E−, while ECS on histopathologic examination...
is designated En (no extranodal extension), Em (microscopic ECS), and Eg (gross ECS). These descriptors will not affect current nodal staging.

The natural history and response to treatment of cervical nodal metastases from nasopharynx primary sites are different, in terms of their impact on prognosis, so they justify a different N classification scheme. Regional node metastases from well-differentiated thyroid cancer do not significantly affect the ultimate prognosis in most patients and therefore also justify a unique staging system for thyroid cancers. Nonmelanoma skin cancers in the head and neck have similar behavior as elsewhere in the body. Therefore, nodal staging for these (NMSC) is different than that for mucosal cancers and is similar to that in the axilla and groin for cutaneous cancers.

Histopathologic examination is necessary to exclude the presence of tumor in lymph nodes. No imaging study (as yet) can identify microscopic tumor foci in regional nodes or distinguish between small reactive nodes and small malignant nodes.

**TABLE 1.** Anatomical structures defining the boundaries of the neck levels and sublevels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Boundary Level</th>
<th>Superior</th>
<th>Inferior</th>
<th>Anterior (medial)</th>
<th>Posterior (lateral)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>Symphysis of mandible</td>
<td>Body of hyoid</td>
<td>Anterior belly of contralateral digastric muscle</td>
<td>Anterior belly of ipsilateral digastric muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>Body of mandible</td>
<td>Posterior belly of digastric muscle</td>
<td>Anterior belly of digastric muscle</td>
<td>Stylohyoid muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>Skull base</td>
<td>Horizontal plane defined by the inferior border of the hyoid bone</td>
<td>The stylohyoid muscle</td>
<td>Vertical plane defined by the spinal accessory nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>Skull base</td>
<td>Horizontal plane defined by the inferior border of the hyoid bone</td>
<td>Vertical plane defined by the spinal accessory nerve</td>
<td>Lateral border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Horizontal plane defined by the inferior body of the hyoid bone</td>
<td>Horizontal plane defined by the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage</td>
<td>Lateral border of the sternohyoid muscle</td>
<td>Lateral border of the sternocleidomastoid or sensory branches of cervical plexus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Horizontal plane defined by the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage</td>
<td>Clavicle</td>
<td>Lateral border of the sternohyoid muscle</td>
<td>Lateral border of the sternocleidomastoid or sensory branches of cervical plexus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VA</td>
<td>Apex of the convergence of the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles</td>
<td>Horizontal plane defined by the lower border of the cricoid cartilage</td>
<td>Posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle or sensory branches of cervical plexus</td>
<td>Anterior border of the trapezius muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VB</td>
<td>Horizontal plane defined by the lower border of the cricoid cartilage</td>
<td>Clavicle</td>
<td>Posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle</td>
<td>Anterior border of the trapezius muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>Hyoid bone</td>
<td>Suprasternal notch</td>
<td>Common carotid artery</td>
<td>Common carotid artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td>Suprasternal notch</td>
<td>Innominate artery</td>
<td>Sternum</td>
<td>Trachea, esophagus, and prevertebral fascia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 2. Lymph node groups found within the seven levels and sublevels of the neck

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lymph node group</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Submental</strong></td>
<td>Lymph nodes within the triangular boundary of the anterior belly of the digastic muscles and the hyoid bone. These nodes are at greatest risk for harboring metastases from cancers arising from the floor of mouth, anterior oral tongue, anterior mandibular alveolar ridge, and lower lip.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sublevel IA)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Submandibular</strong></td>
<td>Lymph nodes within the boundaries of the anterior and posterior bellies of the digastic muscle, the stylohyoid muscle, and the body of the mandible. It includes the pre glandular and the post glandular nodes and the prevascular and postvascular nodes. The submandibular gland is included in the specimen when the lymph nodes within the triangle are removed. These nodes are at greatest risk for harboring metastases from cancers arising from the oral cavity, anterior nasal cavity, skin, and soft tissue structures of the midface, and submandibular gland.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sublevel IB)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Upper jugular</strong></td>
<td>Lymph nodes located around the upper third of the internal jugular vein and adjacent spinal accessory nerve extending from the level of the skull base (above) to the level of the inferior border of the hyoid bone (below). The anterior (medial) boundary is stylohyoid muscle (the radiologic correlate is the vertical plane defined by the posterior surface of the submandibular gland) and the posterior (lateral) boundary is the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. Sublevel IIA nodes are located anterior (medial) to the vertical plane defined by the spinal accessory nerve. Sublevel IIB nodes are located posterior lateral to the vertical plane defined by the spinal accessory nerve. (The radiologic correlate is the lateral border of the internal jugular on a contrast- enhanced CT scan.) The upper jugular nodes are at greatest risk for harboring metastases from cancers arising from the oral cavity, nasal cavity, nasopharynx, oropharynx, hypopharynx, larynx, and parotid gland.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(includes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sublevels IIA and IIB)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Middle jugular</strong></td>
<td>Lymph nodes located around the middle third of the internal jugular vein extending from the inferior border of the hyoid bone (above) to the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage (below). The anterior (medial) boundary is the lateral border of the sternohyoid muscle, and the posterior (lateral) boundary is the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. These nodes are at greatest risk for harboring metastases from cancers arising from the nasopharynx, oropharynx, hypopharynx, larynx, and parotid gland.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(level III)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lower jugular</strong></td>
<td>Lymph nodes located around the lower third of the internal jugular vein extending from the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage (above) to the clavicle below. The anterior (medial) boundary is the lateral border of the sternohyoid muscle and the posterior (lateral) boundary is the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. These nodes are at greatest risk for harboring metastases from cancers arising from the nasopharynx, oropharynx, hypopharynx, larynx, and cutaneous structures of the posterior scalp and neck.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(level IV)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Posterior</strong></td>
<td>This group is composed predominantly of the lymph nodes located along the lower half of the spinal accessory nerve and the transverse cervical artery. The supraventricular nodes are also included in posterior triangle group. The superior boundary is the apex formed by convergence of the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles; the inferior boundary is the clavicle; the anterior (medial) boundary is the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, and the posterior (lateral) boundary is the anterior border of the trapezius muscle. Thus, sublevel VA includes the spinal accessory nodes, whereas sublevel VB includes the nodes following the transverse cervical vessels and the supraventricular nodes, with the exception of the Virchow node, which is located in level IV. The posterior triangle nodes are at greatest risk for harboring metastases from cancers arising from the nasopharynx, oropharynx, and cutaneous structures of the posterior scalp and neck.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>triangle group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(includes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sublevels VA and VB)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anterior</strong></td>
<td>Lymph nodes in this compartment include the pretracheal and paratracheal nodes, precricoid (Delphian) node, and the peri thyroid nodes along the recurrent laryngeal nerves. The superior boundary is the hyoid bone; the inferior boundary is the suprasternal notch, and the lateral boundaries are the common carotid arteries. These nodes are at greatest risk for harboring metastases from cancers arising from the thyroid gland, glottic and subglottic larynx, apex of the piriiform sinus, and cervical esophagus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compartment group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(level VI)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Superior</strong></td>
<td>Lymph nodes in this group include pretracheal, paratracheal, and esophageal groove lymph nodes, extending from the level of the suprasternal notch cephalad and up to the innominate artery caudal. These nodes are at greatest risk of involvement by thyroid cancer and cancer of the esophagus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mediastinal group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(level VII)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When enlarged lymph nodes are detected, the actual size of the nodal mass(es) should be measured. It is recognized that most masses over 3 cm in diameter are not single nodes but are confluent nodes or tumor in soft tissues of the neck. Pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of tumor extent in terms of the location or level of the lymph node(s) involved, the number of nodes that contain metastases, and the presence or absence of ECS of tumor, designated as En (not present), Em (microscopic), or Eg (gross).

**Distant Metastases.** The most common sites of distant spread are in the lungs and bones; hepatic and brain metastases occur less often. Mediastinal lymph node metastases are considered distant metastases, except level VII lymph nodes (anterior superior mediastinal lymph nodes cephalad to the innominate artery).

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1*</td>
<td>Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, 3 cm or less in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2*</td>
<td>Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension; or in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension; or in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2a*</td>
<td>Metastasis in single ipsilateral lymph node more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2b*</td>
<td>Metastasis in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2c*</td>
<td>Metastasis in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3*</td>
<td>Metastasis in a lymph node more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FIGURE 1.** Schematic indicating the location of the lymph node levels in the neck as described in Table 1.
*Note: A designation of "U" or "L" may be used for any N stage to indicate metastasis above the lower border of the cricoid (U) or below the lower border of the cricoid (L). Similarly, clinical/radiological ECS should be recorded as E− or E+, and histopathologic ECS should be designated En, Em, or Eg.

**Distant Metastasis (M)**

- **M0**: No distant metastasis
- **M1**: Distant metastasis

**OUTCOME RESULTS**

The survival curves shown for each anatomic site were constructed using head and neck cancer cases extracted from the National Cancer Data Base (NCDB) for cases diagnosed in 1997 and 1998. Only cases that were staged according to the fifth edition of the AJCC’s *Cancer Staging Manual* were included.

The 5-year survival analyses for the different sites were stratified by AJCC combined stage, which represents pathologic stage when available and only clinical stage when pathologic stage is not available. The survival methods were performed using SPSS software and included observed survival (death from all causes) as well as relative survival (representing an estimation of death from cancer derived from observed survival rates adjusted for expected deaths based on age, race, and gender). The 95% confidence intervals were provided for each year-5 survival rate to permit analysis of significant differences between the year-5 survival rates of the different stages.

Anatomic sites and histologic types were coded according to the third edition of the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-0-3). The subsites included in each analysis were chosen on the basis of those listed in the fifth edition of the AJCC’s *Cancer Staging Manual*. Survival analysis for lip, oral cavity, oropharynx, nasopharynx, hypopharynx, and the larynx’s subsites was limited to squamous cell carcinomas only (M8050, 8051–8082). Survival analyses for the maxillary sinus and the major salivary glands included all histologic types. Survival analyses for the thyroid gland included papillary adenocarcinoma (M8050, 8260, 8340, 8503–8604), follicular adenocarcinoma (M8330–8332), medullary carcinoma (M8510-M8512), and anaplastic carcinoma (M8021).

**BIBLIOGRAPHY**


Lip and Oral Cavity

(Nonepithelial tumors such as those of lymphoid tissue, soft tissue, bone, and cartilage are not included. Staging for mucosal melanoma of the lip and oral cavity is not included in this chapter – see Chap. 9.)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- T4 lesions have been divided into T4a (moderately advanced local disease) and T4b (very advanced local disease), leading to the stratification of Stage IV into Stage IVA (moderately advanced local/regional disease), Stage IVB (very advanced local/regional disease), and Stage IVC (distant metastatic disease)

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage 0</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C00.0 External upper lip
- C00.1 External lower lip
- C00.2 External lip, NOS
- C00.3 Mucosa of upper lip
- C00.4 Mucosa of lower lip
- C00.5 Mucosa of lip, NOS
- C00.6 Commissure of lip
- C00.8 Overlapping lesion of lip
- C00.9 Lip, NOS
- C02.0 Dorsal surface of tongue, NOS
- C02.1 Border of tongue
- C02.2 Ventral surface of tongue, NOS
- C02.3 Anterior two-thirds of tongue, NOS
- C02.8 Overlapping lesion of tongue
- C02.9 Tongue, NOS
- C03.0 Upper gum
- C03.1 Lower gum
- C03.9 Gum, NOS
- C04.0 Anterior floor of mouth
- C04.1 Lateral floor of mouth
- C04.8 Overlapping lesion of floor of mouth
- C04.9 Floor of mouth, NOS
- C05.0 Hard palate
- C05.8 Overlapping lesion of palate
- C05.9 Palate, NOS
- C06.0 Cheek mucosa
- C06.1 Vestibule of mouth
- C06.2 Retromolar area
- C06.8 Overlapping lesion of other and unspecified parts of mouth
- C06.9 Mouth, NOS

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981
ANATOMY

Primary Site. The oral cavity extends from the skin–vermilion junction of the lips to the junction of the hard and soft palate above and to the line of circumvallate papillae below and is divided into the following specific sites:

Mucosal Lip. The lip begins at the junction of the vermilion border with the skin and includes only the vermilion surface or that portion of the lip that comes into contact with the opposing lip. It is well defined into an upper and lower lip joined at the comissures of the mouth.

Buccal Mucosa. This includes all the membranous lining of the inner surface of the cheeks and lips from the line of contact of the opposing lips to the line of attachment of mucosa of the alveolar ridge (upper and lower) and pterygomandibular raphe.

Lower Alveolar Ridge. This refers to the mucosa overlying the alveolar process of the mandible, which extends from the line of attachment of mucosa in the lower gingivobuccal sulcus to the line of free mucosa of the floor of the mouth. Posteriorly it extends to the ascending ramus of the mandible.

Upper Alveolar Ridge. This refers to the mucosa overlying the alveolar process of the maxilla, which extends from the line of attachment of mucosa in the upper gingivobuccal sulcus to the junction of the hard palate. Its posterior margin is the upper end of the pterygopalatine arch.

Retromolar Gingiva (Retromolar Trigone). This is the attached mucosa overlying the ascending ramus of the mandible from the level of the posterior surface of the last molar tooth to the apex superiorly, adjacent to the tuberosity of the maxilla.

Floor of the Mouth. This is a semilunar space overlying the mylohyoid and hyoglossus muscles, extending from the inner surface of the lower alveolar ridge to the undersurface of the tongue. Its posterior boundary is the base of the anterior pillar of the tonsil. It is divided into two sides by the frenulum of the tongue and contains the ostia of the submandibular and sublingual salivary glands.

Hard Palate. This is the semilunar area between the upper alveolar ridge and the mucous membrane covering the palatine process of the maxillary palatine bones. It extends from the inner surface of the superior alveolar ridge to the posterior edge of the palatine bone.

Anterior Two-Thirds of the Tongue (Oral Tongue). This is the freely mobile portion of the tongue that extends anteriorly from the line of circumvallate papillae to the undersurface of the tongue at the junction of the floor of the mouth. It is composed of four areas: the tip, the lateral borders, the dorsum, and the undersurface (nonvillous ventral surface of the tongue). The undersurface of the tongue is considered a separate category by the World Health Organization.

CHARACTERISTICS OF TUMOR

Endophytic. The tumor thickness measurement using an ocular micrometer is taken perpendicular from the surface of the invasive squamous cell carcinoma (A) to the deepest area of involvement (B) and recorded in millimeters. The measurement should not be done on tangential sections or in lesions without a clearly recognizable surface component (Figure 3.1a–c).

Exophytic. The measurement that is better characterized as tumor thickness rather than depth of invasion is taken from the surface (A) to the deepest area (B).

Ulcerated. The thickness measurement is taken from the ulcer base (A) to the deepest area (B), as well as from the surface of the most lateral extent of the invasive carcinoma (C) to

FIGURE 3.1. Characteristics of lip and oral cavity tumors: (a) Exophytic. (b) Ulcerated. (c) Endophytic.
the deepest area (D). Depth of tumor invasion (mm) should be recorded. Depth is not used for T staging.

Although the grade of the tumor does not enter into staging of the tumor, it should be recorded. The pathologic description of any lymphadenectomy specimen should describe the size, number, and level of involved lymph node(s) and the presence or absence of extracapsular extension.

Regional Lymph Nodes. Mucosal cancer of the oral cavity may spread to regional lymph node(s). Tumors of each anatomic site have their own predictable patterns of regional spread. The risk of regional metastasis is generally related to the T category and, probably more important, to the depth of infiltration of the primary tumor. Cancer of the lip carries a low metastatic risk and initially involves adjacent submental and submandibular nodes, then jugular nodes. Cancers of the hard palate and alveolar ridge likewise have a low metastatic potential and involve buccinator, submandibular, jugular, and occasionally retropharyngeal nodes. Other oral cancers spread primarily to submandibular and jugular nodes and uncommonly to posterior triangle/supraclavicular nodes. Cancer of the lower jugular nodes. The closer to the midline is the primary, the anterior oral tongue may occasionally spread directly to the submandibular and jugular nodes and uncommonly to posterior triangle/supraclavicular nodes. Cancer of the anterior oral tongue may occasionally spread directly to lower jugular nodes. The closer to the midline is the primary, the greater is the risk of bilateral cervical nodal spread. The patterns of regional lymph node metastases are predictable, and sequential progression of disease occurs beyond first echelon lymph nodes. Any previous treatment to the neck, surgical and/or radiation, may alter normal lymphatic drainage patterns, resulting in unusual distribution of regional spread of disease to the cervical lymph nodes. In general, cervical lymph node involvement from oral cavity primary sites is predictable and orderly, spreading from the primary to upper, then middle, and subsequently lower cervical nodes. However, disease in the anterior oral cavity may also spread directly to the mid-cervical lymph nodes. The risk of distant metastasis is more dependent on the N than on the T status of the head and neck cancer. In addition to the components to describe the N category, regional lymph nodes should also be described according to the level of the neck that is involved. It is recognized that the level of involved nodes in the neck is prognostically significant (lower is worse), as is the presence of extracapsular extension of metastatic tumor from individual nodes. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral. Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease. No imaging study (as yet) can identify microscopic foci of cancer in regional nodes or distinguish between small reactive nodes and small malignant nodes (unless central radiographic inhomogeneity is present). For pN, a selective neck dissection will ordinarily include six or more lymph nodes, and a radical or modified radical neck dissection will ordinarily include ten or more lymph nodes. Negative pathologic examination of a lesser number of nodes still mandates a pN0 designation.

Extracapsular spread (ECS) has been recognized to worsen the adverse outcome associated with nodal metastasis. The presence of ECS can be diagnosed clinically by the presence of a “matted” mass of nodes, fixity to overlying skin, adjacent soft tissue, or clinical signs of cranial nerve invasion. Radiologic imaging is capable of detecting clinically undetectable ECS, but histopathologic examination is the only reliable technique currently available for detecting microscopic ECS. Radiologic signs of ECS include amorphous spiculated margins of a metastatic node and stranding of the perinodal soft tissue in previously untreated patients. The absence or presence of clinical/radiologic ECS is designated E− or E+, respectively. Surgically resected metastatic nodes should be examined for the presence and extent of ECS. Gross ECS (Eg) is defined as tumor apparent to the naked eye beyond the confines of the nodal capsule. Microscopic ECS (Em) is defined as the presence of metastatic tumor beyond the capsule of the lymph node with desmoplastic reaction in the surrounding stromal tissue. The absence of ECS on histopathologic examination is designated E0.

Distant Metastases. The lungs are the commonest site of distant metastases; skeletal and hepatic metastases occur less often. Mediastinal lymph node metastases are considered distant metastases, except level VII lymph nodes (anterior superior mediastinal lymph nodes cephalad to the innominate artery).

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. The assessment of the primary tumor is based on inspection and palpation of the oral cavity and neck. Physical signs of deep muscle invasion, fixation to bone, and cranial neuropathies should be assessed. Additional studies may include CT, MRI, or ultra-sound. Clinical assessment of the extent of mucosal involvement is usually more accurate than clinical assessment. MRI is generally more revealing of extent of soft tissue, perivascular and perineural spread, skull base involvement, and intracranial tumor extension. On the other hand, high-resolution CT with contrast will often provide better images of bone and larynx detail and is minimally affected by motion. CT or MRI is useful in evaluation of advanced tumors for assessment of bone invasion (mandible or maxilla) and deep tissue invasion (deep extrinsic tongue muscles, midline tongue, soft tissues of neck). Clinical examination supplemented with dental films or panoramic X-rays may be helpful in determining cortical bone involvement. If CT or MRI is undertaken for primary tumor evaluation, radiologic assessment of nodal involvement should be done simultaneously. For lesions of an advanced extent, appropriate screening for distant metastases should be considered. A PET scan may be useful in this regard. Ultrasonography may be helpful in assessment of major vascular invasion as an adjunctive
test. The tumor must be confirmed histologically. All clinical, imaging, and pathologic data available prior to first definitive treatment may be used for clinical staging.

**Pathologic Staging.** Complete resection of the primary site and/or regional nodal dissections, followed by pathologic examination of the resected specimen(s), allows the use of this designation for pT and/or pN, respectively. Specimens that are resected after radiation or chemotherapy need to be identified and considered in context. pT is derived from the actual measurement of the unfixed tumor in the surgical specimen. It should be noted, however, that up to 30% shrinkage of soft tissues may occur in resected specimen after formalin fixation. Pathologic staging represents additional and important information and should be included as such in staging, but it does not supplant clinical staging as the primary staging scheme.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

In addition to the importance of the TNM factors outlined previously, the overall health of these patients clearly influences outcome. An ongoing effort to better assess prognosis using both tumor and nontumor-related factors is underway. Chart abstraction will continue to be performed by cancer registrars to obtain important information regarding specific factors related to prognosis. These data will then be used to further hone the predictive power of the staging system in future revisions.

Comorbidity can be classified by specific measures of additional medical illnesses. Accurate reporting of all illnesses in the patients’ medical record is essential to assessment of these parameters. General performance measures are helpful in predicting survival. The AJCC strongly recommends the clinician report performance status using the ECOG, Zubrod, or Karnofsky performance measures along with standard staging information. An interrelationship between each of the major performance tools exists.

**Zubrod/ECOG Performance Scale**

0. Fully active, able to carry on all predisease activities without restriction (Karnofsky 90–100).
1. Restricted in physically strenuous activity but ambulatory and able to carry work of a light or sedentary nature. For example, light housework, office work (Karnofsky 70–80).
2. Ambulatory and capable of all self-care but unable to carry out any work activities. Up and about more than 50% of waking hours (Karnofsky 50–60).
3. Capable of only limited self-care, confined to bed or chair 50% or more of waking hours (Karnofsky 30–40).
5. Death (Karnofsky 0).

Lifestyle factors such as tobacco and alcohol abuse negatively influence survival. Accurate recording of smoking in pack years and alcohol in number of days drinking per week and number of drinks per day will provide important data for future analysis. Nutrition is important to prognosis and will be indirectly measured by weight loss of >10% of body weight. Depression adversely impacts quality of life and survival. Notation of a previous or current diagnosis of depression should be recorded in the medical record.

Figures 3.2A, B and 3.3A, B show observed and relative survival rates for patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the lip and oral cavity for 1998–1999, classified by the AJCC staging classification.
DEFINITIONS OF TNM

**Primary Tumor (T)**

- **TX**: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- **T0**: No evidence of primary tumor
- **Tis**: Carcinoma in situ
- **T1**: Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension
- **T2**: Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 4 cm in greatest dimension
- **T3**: Tumor more than 4 cm in greatest dimension
- **T4a**: Moderately advanced local disease* (lip) Tumor invades through cortical bone, inferior alveolar nerve, floor of mouth, or skin of face, that is, chin or nose

*Note: Superficial erosion alone of bone/tooth socket by gingival primary is not sufficient to classify a tumor as T4.

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

- **NX**: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0**: No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1**: Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, 3 cm or less in greatest dimension
- **N2**: Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension; or in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension; or in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
- **N2a**: Metastasis in single ipsilateral lymph node more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
- **N2b**: Metastasis in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
- **N2c**: Metastasis in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
- **N3**: Metastasis in a lymph node more than 6 cm in greatest dimension

**Distant Metastasis (M)**

- **M0**: No distant metastasis
- **M1**: Distant metastasis

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Mucosal melanoma of the head and neck is very rare but has unique behavior warranting a separate classification distinct from other forms of melanoma.

Other nonepithelial tumors such as those of lymphoid tissue, soft tissue, bone and cartilage (i.e., lymphoma and sarcoma) are not included. Histologic confirmation of diagnosis is required. Histopathologic grading of squamous carcinoma is recommended; the grade is subjective and uses a descriptive as well as numerical form, that is, well, moderately well, poorly differentiated, depending on the degree of closeness to, or deviation from, squamous epithelium in mucosal sites. Also recommended is a quantitative evaluation of depth of invasion of the primary tumor and the presence or absence of vascular invasion and perineural invasion.

**BIBLIOGRAPHY**


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
**Lip and Oral Cavity Staging Form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRIMARY TUMOR (T)</th>
<th>REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)</th>
<th>DISTANT METASTASIS (M)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0 Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td>M0 No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 Carcinoma in situ</td>
<td>N0 No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td>M1 Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension</td>
<td>N1 Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, 3 cm or less in greatest dimension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3 Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 4 cm in greatest dimension</td>
<td>N2 Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension; or in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension; or in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a Moderately advanced local disease.</td>
<td>N2a Metastasis in single ipsilateral lymph node more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b T4b Very advanced local disease.</td>
<td>N2b Metastasis in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N2c Metastasis in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N3 Metastasis in a lymph node more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CLINICAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extent of disease before any treatment</th>
<th>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC Extent of disease during and from surgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumor Size: _________________________</td>
<td>LATERALITY: □ left □ right □ bilateral</td>
<td>Tumor Size: _________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRIMARY TUMOR (T)</td>
<td>REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)</td>
<td>DISTANT METASTASIS (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TX Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>TX Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>M0 No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0 No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td>T0 No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td>M1 Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 Carcinoma in situ</td>
<td>T1 Carcinoma in situ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension</td>
<td>T2 Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3 Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 4 cm in greatest dimension</td>
<td>T3 Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 4 cm in greatest dimension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a Moderately advanced local disease.</td>
<td>T4a Moderately advanced local disease.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b T4b Very advanced local disease.</td>
<td>T4b T4b Very advanced local disease.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Superficial erosion alone of bone/tooth socket by gingival primary is not sufficient to classify a tumor as T4.
# Lip and Oral Cavity Staging Form

## Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

### Clinical

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

#### Required for Staging:
None

#### Clinically Significant:
- Size of Lymph Nodes: __________
- Extracapsular Extension from Lymph Nodes for Head & Neck: _______
- Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels I-III: ____________
- Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels IV-V: ___________
- Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels VI-VII: ___________
- Other Lymph Node Group: ________________________
- Clinical Location of cervical nodes: ____________
- Extracapsular spread (ECS) Clinical: ___________
- Extracapsular spread (ECS) Pathologic: __________
- Human Papillomavirus (HPV) Status: ___________
- Tumor Thickness: __________

### Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gradingsystem</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General Notes:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the &quot;m&quot; suffix and &quot;y,&quot; &quot;r,&quot; and &quot;a&quot; prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a &quot;y&quot; prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The &quot;y&quot; categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the &quot;r&quot; prefix: rTNM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Hospital Name/Address

## Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
**Lip and Oral Cavity Staging Form**

**ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS**

*Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)* have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**General Notes (continued):**

- Surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.
- Neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): ________________________________

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning
  - NCCN
  - Other (describe): ________________________________

**Physician signature**

**Date/Time**

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

*(continued on next page)*
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
Pharynx

(Nonepithelial tumors such as those of lymphoid tissue, soft tissue, bone, and cartilage are not included. Staging of mucosal melanoma of the pharynx is not included – see Chap. 9.)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

● For nasopharynx, T2a lesions will now be designated T1. Stage IIA will therefore be Stage I. Lesions previously staged T2b will be T2 and therefore Stage IIB will now be designated Stage II. Retropharyngeal lymph node(s), regardless of unilateral or bilateral location, is considered N1.

● For oropharynx and hypopharynx only, T4 lesions have been divided into T4a (moderately advanced local disease) and T4b (very advanced local disease), leading to the stratification of Stage IV into Stage IV A (moderately advanced local/regional disease), Stage IVB (very advanced local/regional disease), and Stage IVC (distant metastatic disease).

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nasopharynx</th>
<th>Stage 0</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

C01.9 Base of tongue, NOS
C02.4 Lingual tonsil
C05.1 Soft palate, NOS
C05.2 Uvula
C09.0 Tonsillar fossa
C09.1 Tonsillar pillar
C09.8 Overlapping lesion of tonsil
C09.9 Tonsil, NOS
C10.0 Vallecule
C10.2 Lateral wall of oropharynx
C10.3 Posterior pharyngeal wall
C10.4 Branchial cleft
C10.8 Overlapping lesion of oropharynx
C10.9 Oropharynx, NOS
C11.0 Superior wall of nasopharynx
ANATOMY

**Primary Sites and Subsites.** The pharynx is divided into three regions: nasopharynx, oropharynx, and hypopharynx (Figure 4.1). Each region is further subdivided into specific sites as summarized in the following:

**Nasopharynx.** The nasopharynx begins anteriorly at the posterior choana and extends along the plane of the airway to the level of the soft palate. It includes the vault, the lateral walls (including the fossae of Rosenmüller and the torus tubarius forming the eustachian tube orifice), and the posterior wall. The floor is the superior surface of the soft palate. The posterior margins of the choanal orifices and of the nasal septum are included in the nasopharynx. Nasopharyngeal tumors extending to the nasal cavity or oropharynx in the absence of parapharyngeal space (PPS) involvement do not have significantly worse outcome compared with tumors restricted to the nasopharynx. This edition of the staging system has therefore been updated to reflect the prognostic implication of PPS involvement, which is important in staging nasopharynx cancer.

**PPS** is a triangular space anterior to the styloid process (prestyloid) that extends from the skull base to the level of the angle of the mandible. The PPS is located lateral to the pharynx and medial to the masticator space and parotid spaces. The PPS contains primarily deep lobe of parotid gland, fat, vascular structures, and small branches of the mandibular division of the fifth cranial nerve. The vascular components include the internal maxillary artery, ascending pharyngeal artery, and the pharyngeal venous plexus. Other less commonly recognized components of the PPS are lymph nodes and ectopic rests of minor salivary gland tissue.

**Poststyloid space** or carotid space (CS) is an enclosed fascial space located posterior to the styloid process and lateral to the retropharyngeal space (RPS) and prevertebral space (PVS). A slip of alar fascia contributes to the medial wall of the CS and helps separate the RPS and PVS from the CS. In the suprathyroid neck, the CS is bordered anteriorly by the styloid process and the PPS, laterally by the posterior belly of the digastric muscle and the parotid space, and medially by the lateral margin of the RPS. The CS contains the internal carotid artery, internal jugular vein, cranial nerves IX–XII,

### FIGURE 4.1. Sagittal view of the face and neck depicting the subdivisions of the pharynx as described in the text.
and lymph nodes. The CS extends superiorly to the jugular foramen and inferiorly to the aortic arch.

Masticator space primarily consists of the muscles of mastication. Anatomically, the superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia splits to enclose the muscles of mastication to enclose this space. These muscles are the medial and lateral pterygoid, masseter, and temporalis. The contents of the masticator space also include the additional structures encompassed within these fascial boundaries, which include the ramus of the mandible and the third division of the CN V as it passes through foramen ovale into the suprathyroid neck.

Oropharynx. The oropharynx is the portion of the continuity of the pharynx extending from the plane of the superior surface of the soft palate to the superior surface of the hyoid bone (or vallecula). It includes the base of the tongue, the inferior (anterior) surface of the soft palate and the uvula, the anterior and posterior tonsillar pillars, the glossotonsillar sulci, the pharyngeal tonsils, and the lateral and posterior pharyngeal walls.

Hypopharynx. The hypopharynx is that portion of the pharynx extending from the plane of the superior border of the hyoid bone (or vallecula) to the plane corresponding to the lower border of the cricoid cartilage. It includes the pyriform sinuses (right and left), the lateral and posterior hypopharyngeal walls, and the postcricoid region. The postcricoid area extends from the level of the arytenoid cartilages and connecting folds to the plane of the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage. It connects the two pyriform sinuses, thus forming the anterior wall of the hypopharynx. The pyriform sinus extends from the pharyngoepiglottic fold to the upper end of the esophagus at the lower border of the cricoid cartilage and is bounded laterally by the lateral pharyngeal wall and medially by the lateral surface of the aryepiglottic fold and the arytenoid and cricoid cartilages. The posterior pharyngeal wall extends from the level of the superior surface of the hyoid bone (or vallecula) to the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage and from the apex of one pyriform sinus to the other.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The risk of regional nodal spread from cancers of the pharynx is high. Primary nasopharyngeal tumors commonly spread to retropharyngeal, upper jugular, and spinal accessory nodes, often bilaterally. Nasopharyngeal cancer with retropharyngeal lymph node involvement independent of laterality and without cervical lymph node involvement is staged as N1. Oropharyngeal cancers involve upper and mid-jugular lymph nodes and (less commonly) submental/submandibular nodes. Hypopharyngeal cancers spread to adjacent parapharyngeal, paratracheal, and mid-and lower jugular nodes. Bilateral lymphatic drainage is common.

In clinical evaluation, the maximum size of the nodal mass should be measured. Most masses over 3 cm in diameter are not single nodes but, rather, are confluent nodes or tumor in soft tissues of the neck. There are three categories of clinically involved nodes for the nasopharynx, oropharynx, and hypopharynx: N1, N2, and N3. The use of subgroups a, b, and c is required. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral nodes. Superior mediastinal lymph nodes are considered regional lymph nodes (level VII). In addition to the components to describe the N category, regional lymph nodes should also be described according to the level of the neck that is involved. The level of involved nodes in the neck is prognostically significant (lower is worse), as is the presence of extracapsular spread (ECS) of metastatic tumor from individual nodes. Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) spread of tumor. However, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of such disease extent. No imaging study (as yet) can identify microscopic foci in regional nodes or distinguish between small reactive nodes and small malignant nodes (unless central radiographic inhomogeneity is present).

For pN, a selective neck dissection will ordinarily include six or more lymph nodes, and a radical or modified radical neck dissection will ordinarily include ten or more lymph nodes. Negative pathologic examination of a lesser number of nodes still mandates a pN0 designation.

Distant Metastases. The lungs are the commonest site of distant metastases; skeletal or hepatic metastases occur less often. Mediastinal lymph node metastases are considered distant metastases, except level VII lymph nodes.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. Clinical staging is generally employed for squamous cell carcinomas of the pharynx. Assessment is based primarily on inspection and on indirect and direct endoscopy. Palpation of sites (when feasible) and of neck nodes is essential. Neurologic evaluation of all cranial nerves is required. Imaging studies are essential in clinical staging of pharynx tumors. Cross-sectional imaging in nasopharyngeal cancer is mandatory to complete the staging process. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) often is the study of choice because of its multiplanar capability, superior soft tissue contrast, and sensitivity for detecting skull base and intracranial tumor spread. Computed tomography (CT) imaging with axial and coronal thin section technique with contrast is an alternative. Radiologic nodal staging should be done to assess adequately the retropharyngeal and cervical nodal status.

Cross-sectional imaging in oropharyngeal carcinoma is recommended when the deep tissue extent of the primary tumor is in question. CT or MRI may be employed. Cross-sectional imaging of hypopharyngeal carcinoma is recommended when the extent of the primary tumor is in doubt, particularly its deep extent in relationship to adjacent structures (i.e., larynx, thyroid, cervical vertebrae, and carotid sheath). CT is preferred currently because it entails less motion artifact than MRI. Radiologic nodal staging should
be done simultaneously. Complete endoscopy, usually under general anesthesia, is performed after completion of other staging studies, to assess the surface extent of the tumor accurately and to assess deep involvement by palpation for muscle invasion and to facilitate biopsy. A careful search for other primary tumors of the upper aerodigestive tract is indicated because of the incidence of multiple independent primary tumors occurring simultaneously.

Pathologic Staging. Pathologic staging requires the use of all information obtained in clinical staging and in histologic study of the surgically resected specimen. The surgeon’s evaluation of gross unresected residual tumor must also be included. The pathologic description of any lymphadenectomy specimen should describe the size, number, and level of any involved nodes and the presence or absence of ECS.

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

In addition to the importance of the TNM factors outlined previously, the overall health of these patients clearly influences outcome. An ongoing effort to better assess prognosis using both tumor and nontumor-related factors is underway. Chart abstraction will continue to be performed by cancer registrars to obtain important information regarding specific factors related to prognosis. This data will then be used to further hone the predictive power of the staging system in future revisions.

Comorbidities can be classified by specific measures of additional medical illnesses. Accurate reporting of all illnesses in the patients’ medical record is essential to assessment of these parameters. General performance measures are helpful in predicting survival. The AJCC strongly recommends the clinician report performance status using the ECOG, Zubrod or Karnofsky performance measures along with standard staging information. An interrelationship between each of the major performance tools exists.

Zubrod/ECOG Performance Scale

0. Fully active, able to carry on all predisease activities without restriction (Karnofsky 90–100).
1. Restricted in physically strenuous activity but ambulatory and able to carry work of a light or sedentary nature. For example, light housework, office work (Karnofsky 70–80).
2. Ambulatory and capable of all self-care but unable to carry out any work activities. Up and about more than 50% of waking hours (Karnofsky 50–60).
3. Capable of only limited self-care, confined to bed or chair 50% or more of waking hours (Karnofsky 30–40).
5. Death (Karnofsky 0).

Lifestyle factors such as tobacco and alcohol abuse negatively influence survival. Accurate recording of smoking in pack years and alcohol in number of days drinking per week and number of drinks per day will provide important data for future analysis. Nutrition is important to prognosis and will be indirectly measured by weight loss of >10% of body weight. Depression adversely impacts quality of life and survival. Notation of a previous or current diagnosis of depression should be recorded in the medical record.

MUCOSAL MELANOMA

Mucosal melanoma of all head and neck sites is staged using a uniform classification discussed in Chap. 9.

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

Primary Tumor (T)
TX Primary tumor cannot be assessed
T0 No evidence of primary tumor
Tis Carcinoma in situ

Nasopharynx
T1 Tumor confined to the nasopharynx, or tumor extends to oropharynx and/or nasal cavity without parapharyngeal extension*
T2 Tumor with parapharyngeal extension*
T3 Tumor involves bony structures of skull base and/or paranasal sinuses
T4 Tumor with intracranial extension and/or involvement of cranial nerves, hypopharynx, orbit, or with extension to the infratemporal fossa/masticator space

*Note: Parapharyngeal extension denotes posterolateral infiltration of tumor.

Oropharynx
T1 Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension
T2 Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 4 cm in greatest dimension
T3 Tumor more than 4 cm in greatest dimension or extension to lingual surface of epiglottis
T4a Moderately advanced local disease
Tumor invades the larynx, extrinsic muscle of tongue, medial pterygoid, hard palate, or mandible*
T4b Very advanced local disease
Tumor invades lateral pterygoid muscle, pterygoid plates, lateral nasopharynx, or skull base or encases carotid artery

*Note: Mucosal extension to lingual surface of epiglottis from primary tumors of the base of the tongue and vallecula does not constitute invasion of larynx.
Pharynx

Hypopharynx

T1 Tumor limited to one subsite of hypopharynx and 2 cm or less in greatest dimension
T2 Tumor invades more than one subsite of hypopharynx or an adjacent site, or measures more than 2 cm but not more than 4 cm in greatest dimension without fixation of hemilarynx
T3 Tumor more than 4 cm in greatest dimension or with fixation of hemilarynx or extension to esophagus
T4a Moderately advanced local disease
Tumor invades thyroid/cricoid cartilage, hyoid bone, thyroid gland, or central compartment soft tissue*
T4b Very advanced local disease
Tumor invades prevertebral fascia, encases carotid artery, or involves mediastinal structures

*Note: Central compartment soft tissue includes prelaryngeal strap muscles and subcutaneous fat.

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

Nasopharynx
The distribution and the prognostic impact of regional lymph node spread from nasopharynx cancer, particularly of the undifferentiated type, are different from those of other head and neck mucosal cancers and justify the use of a different N classification scheme.

NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
N0 No regional lymph node metastasis
N1 Unilateral metastasis in cervical lymph node(s), 6 cm or less in greatest dimension, above the supraclavicular fossa, and/or unilateral or bilateral, retropharyngeal lymph nodes, 6 cm or less, in greatest dimension*
N2 Bilateral metastasis in cervical lymph node(s), 6 cm or less in greatest dimension, above the supraclavicular fossa*
N3 Metastasis in a lymph node(s)* >6 cm and/or to supraclavicular fossa*
N3a Greater than 6 cm in dimension
N3b Extension to the supraclavicular fossa**

*Note: Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral nodes.

**Note: Supraclavicular zone or fossa is relevant to the staging of nasopharyngeal carcinoma and is the triangular region originally described by Ho. It is defined by three points: (1) the superior margin of the sternal end of the clavicle, (2) the superior margin of the lateral end of the clavicle, (3) the point where the neck meets the shoulder (Figure 4.2). Note that this would include caudal portions of levels IV and VB. All cases with lymph nodes (whole or part) in the fossa are considered N3b.

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)*

Oropharynx and Hypopharynx

NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
N0 No regional lymph node metastasis
N1 Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, 3 cm or less in greatest dimension
N2 Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension, or in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension, or in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
N2a Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
N2b Metastasis in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
N2c Metastasis in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
N3 Metastasis in a lymph node more than 6 cm in greatest dimension

*Note: Metastases at level VII are considered regional lymph node metastases.

Distant Metastasis (M)

M0 No distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis
ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

Nasopharynx
Stage 0  Tis  N0  M0
Stage I  T1  N0  M0
Stage II  T1  N1  M0
T2  N0  M0
T2  N1  M0
Stage III  T1  N2  M0
T2  N2  M0
T3  N0  M0
T3  N1  M0
T3  N2  M0
Stage IVA  T4  N0  M0
T4  N1  M0
T4  N2  M0
Stage IVB  Any T  N3  M0
Stage IVC  Any T  Any N  M1

Oropharynx, hypopharynx
Stage 0  Tis  N0  M0
Stage I  T1  N0  M0
Stage II  T2  N0  M0
Stage III  T3  N0  M0
T1  N1  M0
T2  N1  M0
T3  N1  M0
Stage IVA  T4a  N0  M0
T4a  N1  M0
T1  N2  M0
T2  N2  M0
T3  N2  M0
T4a  N2  M0
Stage IVB  T4b  Any N  M0
Stage IVC  Any T  Any N  M1

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)
(Recommended for Collection)

Required for staging  None

Clinically significant

Size of lymph nodes
Extracapsular extension from lymph nodes for head and neck
Head and neck lymph nodes levels I–III
Head and neck lymph nodes levels IV–V
Head and neck lymph nodes levels IV–V
Head and neck lymph nodes levels VI–VII

Other lymph nodes group
Clinical location of cervical nodes
ECS clinical
ECS pathologic
Human papillomavirus (HPV) status

Figures 4.3 through 4.6 show observed and relative survival rates for patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the nasopharynx, oropharynx, hypopharynx, and pharynx (NOS) for 1998–1999, classified by the AJCC staging classification.
**HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)**

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

GX  Grade cannot be assessed
G1  Well differentiated
G2  Moderately differentiated
G3  Poorly differentiated
G4  Undifferentiated

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

The predominant cancer type is squamous cell carcinoma for all pharyngeal sites. Mucosal melanoma of the head and neck is very rare but has unique behavior warranting a separate classification discussed in Chap. 9. Other non-epithelial tumors such as those of lymphoid tissue, soft tissue, bone, and cartilage are not included in this system. For nasopharyngeal carcinomas, it is recommended that the World Health Organization (WHO) classification be used (Table 4.1). Histologic diagnosis is necessary to use this classification.
BIBLIOGRAPHY


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRIMARY TUMOR (T)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor confined to the nasopharynx, or extends to oropharynx and/or nasal cavity without parapharyngeal extension*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor with parapharyngeal extension*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor with intracranial extension and/or involvement of involvement of cranial nerves, hypopharynx, orbit, or with extension to the infratemporal fossa/masticator space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>* Parapharyngeal extension denotes posterolateral infiltration of tumor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Oropharynx**

| T1               | Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension |
| T2               | Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 4 cm in greatest dimension |
| T3               | Tumor more than 4 cm in greatest dimension or extension to lingual surface of epiglottis |
| T4a              | Moderately advanced local disease. |
| T4b              | Tumor invades lateral pterygoid muscle, pterygoid plates, lateral nasopharynx, or skull base or encases carotid artery |

**Hypopharynx**

| T1               | Tumor limited to one subsite of hypopharynx and 2 cm or less in greatest dimension |
| T2               | Tumor invades more than one subsite of hypopharynx or an adjacent site, or measures more than 2 cm but not more than 4 cm in greatest dimension without fixation of hemilarynx |
| T3               | Tumor more than 4 cm in greatest dimension or with fixation of hemilarynx or extension to esophagus |
| T4a              | Moderately advanced local disease. |
| T4b              | Tumor invades thyroid/cricoid cartilage, hyoid bone, thyroid gland, or central compartment soft tissue* |

* Central compartment soft tissue includes prelaryngeal strap muscles and subcutaneous fat.
### Nasopharynx

The distribution and the prognostic impact of regional lymph node spread from nasopharynx cancer, particularly of the undifferentiated type, are different from those of other head and neck mucosal cancers and justify the use of a different N classification scheme.

- **NX**: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0**: No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1**: Unilateral metastasis in lymph node(s), 6 cm or less in greatest dimension, above the supraclavicular fossa, and/or unilateral or bilateral, retropharyngeal lymph nodes, 6 cm or less, in greatest dimension *
- **N2**: Bilateral metastasis in lymph node(s), 6 cm or less in greatest dimension, above the supraclavicular fossa *
- **N3**: Metastasis in a lymph node(s) >6 cm and/or extension to supraclavicular fossa *
- **N3a**: Greater than 6 cm in dimension
- **N3b**: Extension to the supraclavicular fossa **

- **Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral nodes.**
- **Supraclavicular zone or fossa is relevant to the staging of nasopharyngeal carcinoma and is the triangular region originally described by Ho. It is defined by three points: (1) the superior margin of the sternal end of the clavicle, (2) the superior margin of the lateral end of the clavicle, (3) the point where the neck meets the shoulder (see Fig. 4.2). Note that this would include caudal portions of Levels IV and VB. All cases with lymph nodes (whole or part) in the fossa are considered N3b.**

### Oropharynx and Hypopharynx

- **NX**: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0**: No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1**: Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, 3 cm or less in greatest dimension
- **N2**: Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension, or in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension, or in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
- **N2a**: Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
- **N2b**: Metastasis in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
- **N2c**: Metastasis in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
- **N3**: Metastasis in a lymph node more than 6 cm in greatest dimension

- **M0**: No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- **M1**: Distant metastasis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hospital Name/Address</th>
<th>Patient Name/Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(continued from previous page)
### Pharynx Staging Form

#### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups-Nasopharynx

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups-Oropharynx, Hypopharynx

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Hospital Name/Address

#### Patient Name/Information

(continued on next page)
# Pharynx Staging Form

## Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Required for Staging:** None

**Clinically Significant:**
- Size of Lymph Nodes: ____________
- Extracapsular Extension from Lymph Nodes for Head & Neck:  ________
- Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels I-III:  ____________
- Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels IV-V:  ____________
- Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels VI-VII:  ____________
- Other Lymph Node Group: ________________________
- Clinical Location of cervical nodes:  _______________
- Extracapsular spread (ECS) Clinical:  ______________
- Extracapsular spread (ECS) Pathologic:  ____________
- Human Papillomavirus (HPV) Status:  ______________
- Tumor Thickness:  ____________

### Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

**Grading system**
- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

**Grade**
- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

### Additional Descriptors

**Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)** have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

### General Notes:
For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pt(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

**Surgical Margins** is a data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

**Neoadjuvant Treatment** is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.
Pharynx

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

National guidelines were used in treatment planning  NCCN  Other (describe):

Physician signature  Date/Time

Hospital Name/Address  Patient Name/Information

(continued on next page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
Larynx

(Nonepithelial tumors such as those of lymphoid tissue, soft tissue, bone, and cartilage are not included)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- T4 lesions have been divided into T4a (moderately advanced local disease) and T4b (very advanced local disease), leading to the stratification of Stage IV into Stage IVA (moderately advanced local/regional disease), Stage IVB (very advanced local/regional disease), and Stage IVC (distant metastatic disease)

ANATOMY

Primary Site.  The following anatomic definition of the larynx allows classification of carcinomas arising in the encompassed mucous membranes but excludes cancers arising on the lateral or posterior pharyngeal wall, pyriform fossa, posterior cricoid area, or base of tongue.

The anterior limit of the larynx is composed of the anterior or lingual surface of the suprahyoid epiglottis, the thyrohyoid membrane, the anterior commissure, and the anterior wall of the subglottic region, which is composed of the thyroid cartilage, the cricothyroid membrane, and the anterior arch of the cricoid cartilage.

The posterior and lateral limits include the laryngeal aspect of the aryepiglottic folds, the arytenoid region, the interarytenoid space, and the posterior surface of the subglottic space, represented by the mucous membrane covering the surface of the cricoid cartilage.

The superolateral limits are composed of the tip and the lateral borders of the epiglottis. The inferior limits are made up of the plane passing through the inferior edge of the cricoid cartilage.

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

C10.1  Anterior (lingual) surface of epiglottis
C32.0  Glottis
C32.1  Supraglottis (laryngeal surface)
C32.2  Subglottis
C32.8* Overlapping lesion of larynx
C32.9* Larynx, NOS

*Stage by location of tumor bulk or epicenter

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGE

8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981
For purposes of this clinical stage classification, the larynx is divided into three regions: supraglottis, glottis, and subglottis. The supraglottis is composed of the epiglottis (both its lingual and laryngeal aspects), aryepiglottic folds (laryngeal aspect), arytenoids, and ventricular bands (false cords). The epiglottis is divided for staging purposes into suprahypoid and infrahyoid portions by a plane at the level of the hyoid bone. The inferior boundary of the supraglottis is a horizontal plane passing through the lateral margin of the ventricle at its junction with the superior surface of the vocal cord. The glottis is composed of the superior and inferior surfaces of the true vocal cords, including the anterior and posterior commissures. It occupies a horizontal plane 1 cm in thickness, extending inferiorly from the lateral margin of the ventricle. The subglottis is the region extending from the lower boundary of the glottis to the lower margin of the cricoid cartilage.

The division of the larynx is summarized as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>Subsite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Supraglottis</td>
<td>Suprahypoid epiglottis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Infrahypoid epiglottis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aryepiglottic folds (laryngeal aspect); arytenoids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ventricular bands (false cords)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glottis</td>
<td>True vocal cords, including anterior and posterior commissures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subglottis</td>
<td>Subglottis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regional Lymph Nodes. The incidence and distribution of cervical nodal metastases from cancer of the larynx vary with the site of origin and the T classification of the primary tumor. The true vocal cords are nearly devoid of lymphatics, and tumors of that site alone rarely spread to regional nodes. By contrast, the supraglottis has a rich and bilaterally interconnected lymphatic network, and primary supraglottic cancers are commonly accompanied by regional lymph node spread. Glottic tumors may spread directly to adjacent soft tissues and prelaryngeal, pretracheal, paralaryngeal, and paratracheal nodes, as well as to upper, mid, and lower jugular nodes. Supraglottic tumors commonly spread to upper and midjugular nodes, considerably less commonly to submental or submandibular nodes, and occasionally to retropharyngeal nodes. The rare subglottic primary tumors spread first to adjacent soft tissues and prelaryngeal, pretracheal, paralaryngeal, and paratracheal nodes, then to mid- and lower jugular nodes. Contralateral lymphatic spread is common.

In clinical evaluation, the physical size of the nodal mass should be measured. Most masses over 3 cm in diameter are not single nodes but, rather, are confluent nodes or tumor in soft tissues of the neck. There are three categories of clinically positive nodes: N1, N2, and N3. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral nodes. In addition to the components to describe the N category, regional lymph nodes should also be described according to the level of the neck that is involved. Pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of such disease extent. Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread. No imaging study (as yet) can identify microscopic foci in regional nodes or distinguish between small reactive nodes and small malignant nodes without central radiographic inhomogeneity.

Distant Metastases. Distant spread is common only for patients who have bulky regional lymphadenopathy. When distant metastases occur, spread to the lungs is most common; skeletal or hepatic metastases occur less often. Mediastinal lymph node metastases are considered distant metastases, except level VII, lymph nodes (in the anterior superior mediastinum, cephalad to the innominate artery).

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. The assessment of the larynx is accomplished primarily by inspection, using indirect mirror and direct endoscopic examination with a fiberoptic nasolaryngoscope. The tumor must be confirmed histologically, and any other data obtained by biopsies may be included. Cross-sectional imaging in laryngeal carcinoma is recommended when the primary tumor extent is in question on the basis of clinical examination. Radiologic nodal staging should be done simultaneously to supplement clinical examination.

Complete endoscopy under general anesthesia is usually performed after completion of other diagnostic studies to accurately assess, document, and biopsy the tumor. Satisfactory examination of larynx requires the use of microlaryngoscopy and use of telescopes (0°, 30°, 70°, and 120°) to get complete overall assessment.

Imaging Studies. Primary site clinical staging for supraglottic carcinoma is based on involvement of various subsites of the supraglottic larynx adjacent regions and vocal cord mobility. Imaging may be helpful to identify occult submucosal transglottic extension. Imaging criteria that define T3 lesions are extension into the preepiglottic space (paralaryngeal fat) or tumors that erode the inner cortex of the thyroid cartilage. Tumors that erode the outer cortex of the thyroid cartilage are defined as T4a tumors.

For T1 and T2 tumors of the glottic larynx, cross-sectional imaging may be used to ensure that the clinical diagnosis of early stage lesions is correct. Imaging may be used as an important adjunct to identify the presence of submucosal extension, especially at the anterior commissure where lesions may spread anteriorly along Broyle’s ligament to involve the inner cortex of the thyroid cartilage. Imaging may also identify glottic carcinomas that have occult transglottic or subglottic spread. The normal paraglottic space is often difficult to routinely detect at the level of the true vocal cord due to the close apposition of the lateral thyroarytenoid muscle to the inner cortex of the thyroid cartilage. Tumor erosion limited to the inner cortex...
of the thyroid cartilage indicates a T3 lesion whereas carcinomas that erode the outer cortex of the thyroid cartilage define a T4a tumor. Stage T4 (a and b) is difficult to identify based on clinical examination alone as the majority of the criteria cannot be assessed by endoscopy and palpation.

**Pathologic Staging.** Pathologic staging requires the use of all information obtained in clinical staging and in histologic study of the surgically resected specimen. The surgeon’s evaluation of gross unresected residual tumor must also be included. Specimens that are resected after radiation or chemotherapy need to be identified and considered in context. The pathologic description of any lymphadenectomy specimen should describe the size, number, and position of the involved node(s) and the presence or absence of extracapsular spread (ECS).

**MUCOSAL MELANOMA**

Mucosal melanoma of all head and neck sites is staged using a uniform classification discussed in Chap. 9.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Tumor (T)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0 No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Supraglottis**

| T1 | Tumor limited to one subsite of supraglottis with normal vocal cord mobility |
| T2 | Tumor invades mucosa of more than one adjacent subsite of supraglottis or glottis or region outside the supraglottis (e.g., mucosa of base of tongue, vallecula, medial wall of pyriform sinus) without fixation of the larynx |
| T3 | Tumor limited to larynx with vocal cord fixation and/or invades any of the following: postcricoid area, preepiglottic space, paraglottic space, and/or inner cortex of thyroid cartilage |
| T4a | Moderately advanced local disease |
| T4b | Very advanced local disease |

**Glottis**

| T1 | Tumor limited to the vocal cord(s) (may involve anterior or posterior commissure) with normal mobility |
| T1a | Tumor limited to one vocal cord |
| T1b | Tumor involves both vocal cords |
| T2 | Tumor extends to supraglottis and/or subglottis, and/or with impaired vocal cord mobility |
| T3 | Tumor limited to the larynx with vocal cord fixation and/or invasion of paraglottic space, and/or inner cortex of the thyroid cartilage |
| T4a | Moderately advanced local disease |
| T4b | Very advanced local disease |

**Subglottis**

| T1 | Tumor limited to the subglottis |
| T2 | Tumor extends to vocal cord(s) with normal or impaired mobility |
| T3 | Tumor limited to larynx with vocal cord fixation |
| T4a | Moderately advanced local disease |
| T4b | Very advanced local disease |

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

| N1 | Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, 3 cm or less in greatest dimension |
| N2 | Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension, or in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension, or in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension |
| N2a | Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension |
| N2b | Metastasis in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension |
| N2c | Metastasis in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension |
| N3 | Metastasis in a lymph node, more than 6 cm in greatest dimension |

*Note: Metastases at level VII are considered regional lymph node metastases.*
Distant Metastasis (M)

M0  No distant metastasis
M1  Distant metastasis

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

Stage 0  Tis  N0  M0
Stage I  T1  N0  M0
Stage II  T2  N0  M0
Stage III  T3  N0  M0
   T1  N1  M0
   T2  N1  M0
   T3  N1  M0
Stage IVA  T4a  N0  M0
   T4a  N1  M0
   T1  N2  M0
   T2  N2  M0
   T3  N2  M0
   T4a  N2  M0
Stage IVB  T4b  Any N  M0
   Any T  N3  M0
Stage IVC  Any T  Any N  M1

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE SPECIFIC FACTORS)

(Recommended for Collection)

Required  None
for staging

Clinically significant  Size of lymph nodes
   Extracapsular extension from lymph nodes for head and neck
   Head and neck lymph nodes levels I–III
   Head and neck lymph nodes levels IV–V
   Head and neck lymph nodes levels VI–VII
   Other lymph nodes group
   Clinical location of cervical nodes
   Extracapsular spread (ECS) clinical
   Extracapsular spread (ECS) pathologic
   Human papillomavirus (HPV) status

Figures 5.1 through 5.4 show observed and relative survival rates for patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the larynx, 1998–1999, classified by the AJCC staging classification.

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

GX    Grade cannot be assessed
G1    Well differentiated
G2    Moderately differentiated
G3    Poorly differentiated
G4    Undifferentiated

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

The predominant cancer is squamous cell carcinoma. The staging guidelines are applicable to all forms of carcinoma, including those arising from minor salivary glands. Mucosal melanoma of the head and neck is very rare but has unique behavior warranting a separate classification.
FIGURE 5.2. (A) Five-year, observed survival by “combined” AJCC stage for squamous cell carcinoma of the glottis, 1998–1999. (95% confidence intervals correspond to year-5 survival rates.). (B) Five-year, relative survival by “combined” AJCC stage for squamous cell carcinoma of the glottis, 1998–1999. (95% confidence intervals correspond to year-5 survival rates.)

FIGURE 5.3. (A) Five-year, observed survival by “combined” AJCC stage for squamous cell carcinoma of the subglottis, 1998–1999. (95% confidence intervals correspond to year-5 survival rates.). (B) Five-year, relative survival by “combined” AJCC stage for squamous cell carcinoma of the subglottis, 1998–1999. (95% confidence intervals correspond to year-5 survival rates.)

discussed in Chap. 9. Other nonepithelial tumors such as those of lymphoid tissue, soft tissue, bone, and cartilage (i.e., lymphoma and sarcoma) are not included. Histologic confirmation of diagnosis is required. Histopathologic grading of squamous carcinoma is recommended. The grade is subjective and uses a descriptive as well as numerical form (i.e., well differentiated, moderately differentiated, and poorly differentiated), depending on the degree of closeness to or deviation from squamous epithelium in mucosal sites. Also recommended where feasible is a quantitative evaluation of depth of invasion of the primary tumor and the presence or absence of vascular invasion and perineural invasion. Although the grade of tumor does not enter into the staging of the tumor, it should be recorded. The pathologic description of any lymphadenectomy specimen should describe the size, number, and position of the involved node(s) and the presence or absence of extracapsular spread (ECS).
American Joint Committee on Cancer • 2010

BIBLIOGRAPHY


**Larynx Staging Form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Staging</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic Staging</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extent of disease during and from surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td></td>
<td>after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumor Size:</th>
<th>Laterality:</th>
<th>Pathologic Stage:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>TX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>right</td>
<td>T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>bilateral</td>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Primary Tumor (T)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor limited to one subsite of supraglottis with normal vocal cord mobility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor invades mucosa of more than one adjacent subsite of supraglottis or glottis or region outside the supraglottis (e.g., mucosa of base of tongue, vallecula, medial wall of pyriform sinus) without fixation of the larynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor limited to larynx with vocal cord fixation and/or invades any of the following: posterior area, pre-epiglottic space, paraglottic space, and/or inner cortex of thyroid cartilage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>Moderately advanced local disease. Tumor invades through the thyroid cartilage and/or invades tissues beyond the larynx (e.g., trachea, soft tissues of neck including deep extrinsic muscle of the tongue, strap muscles, thyroid, or esophagus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Very advanced local disease. Tumor invades prevertebral space, encases carotid artery, or invades mediastinal structures</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Supraglottis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor limited to the vocal cord(s) (may involve anterior or posterior commissure) with normal mobility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>Tumor limited to one vocal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>Tumor involves both vocal cords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor extends to supraglottis and/or subglottis, and/or with impaired vocal cord mobility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor limited to the larynx with vocal cord fixation and/or invasion of paraglottic space, and/or inner cortex of the thyroid cartilage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>Moderately advanced local disease. Tumor invades through the outer cortex of the thyroid cartilage and/or invades tissues beyond the larynx (e.g., trachea, soft tissues of neck including deep extrinsic muscle of the tongue, strap muscles, thyroid, or esophagus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Very advanced local disease. Tumor invades prevertebral space, encases carotid artery, or invades mediastinal structures</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Glottis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor limited to the vocal cord(s) with normal mobility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>Tumor limited to one vocal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>Tumor involves both vocal cords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor extends to supraglottis and/or subglottis, and/or with impaired vocal cord mobility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor limited to the larynx with vocal cord fixation and/or invasion of paraglottic space, and/or inner cortex of the thyroid cartilage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>Moderately advanced local disease. Tumor invades through the outer cortex of the thyroid cartilage and/or invades tissues beyond the larynx (e.g., trachea, soft tissues of neck including deep extrinsic muscle of the tongue, strap muscles, thyroid, or esophagus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Very advanced local disease. Tumor invades prevertebral space, encases carotid artery, or invades mediastinal structures</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subglottis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor limited to the subglottis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor extends to vocal cord(s) with normal or impaired mobility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor limited to larynx with vocal cord fixation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>Moderately advanced local disease. Tumor invades cricoid or thyroid cartilage and/or invades tissues beyond the larynx (e.g., trachea, soft tissues of neck including deep extrinsic muscles of the tongue, strap muscles, thyroid, or esophagus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Very advanced local disease. Tumor invades prevertebral space, encases carotid artery, or invades mediastinal structures</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued on next page)
### Larynx Staging Form

#### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)*

- **NX**: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0**: No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1**: Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, 3 cm or less in greatest dimension
- **N2**: Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension, or in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension, or in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
- **N2a**: Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
- **N2b**: Metastasis in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
- **N2c**: Metastasis in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
- **N3**: Metastasis in a lymph node, more than 6 cm in greatest dimension

*Note: Metastases at level VII are considered regional lymph node metastases.*

#### Distant Metastasis (M)

- **M0**: No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- **M1**: Distant metastasis

#### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Clinical T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Pathologic T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

_Hospital Name/Address_  
_Patient Name/Information_
LARYNX STAGING FORM

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)

REQUIRED FOR STAGING: None

CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:

Size of Lymph Nodes: ____________

Extracapsular Extension from Lymph Nodes for Head & Neck: ____________

Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels I-III: ____________

Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels IV-V: ____________

Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels VI-VII: ____________

Other Lymph Node Group: ________________

Clinical Location of Cervical Nodes: ________________

Extracapsular Spread (ECS) Clinical: ________________

Extracapsular Spread (ECS) Pathologic: ________________

Human Papillomavirus (HPV) Status: ________________

Tumor Thickness: ________________

Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

Grading system

- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

Grade

- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS

Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

Residual Tumor (R)

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

General Notes:

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the “m” suffix and “y,” “r,” and “a” prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.

y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a “y” prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The “y” categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the “r” prefix: rTNM.

a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

eoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS

PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION

(continued on next page)
LARYNX STAGING FORM

☐ Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): 

☐ National guidelines were used in treatment planning  ☐ NCCN  ☐ Other (describe): 

____________________________________________________________________________________

Physician signature

Date/Time

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS

PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Nasal Cavity and Paranasal Sinuses

(Nonepithelial tumors such as those of lymphoid tissue, soft tissue, bone, and cartilage are not included. Staging for mucosal melanoma of the nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses is not included in this chapter – see Chap. 9.)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- T4 lesions have been divided into T4a (moderately advanced local disease) and T4b (very advanced local disease), leading to the stratification of Stage IV into Stage IVA (moderately advanced local/regional disease), Stage IVB (very advanced local/regional disease), and Stage IVC (distant metastatic disease)

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C30.0 Nasal cavity
- C31.0 Maxillary sinus
- C31.1 Ethmoid sinus

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981

ANATOMY

Primary Sites. Cancer of the maxillary sinus is the most common of the sinonasal malignancies. Ethmoid sinus and nasal cavity cancers are equal in frequency but considerably less common than maxillary sinus cancers. Tumors of the sphenoid and frontal sinuses are rare.

The location as well as the extent of the mucosal lesion within the maxillary sinus has prognostic significance. Historically, a plane, connecting the medial canthus of the eye to the angle of the mandible, represented by Ohngren’s line, is used to divide the maxillary sinus into an anteroinferior portion (infrastructure), which is associated with a good prognosis, and a posterosuperior portion (suprastructure), which has a poor prognosis (Figure 6.1). The poorer outcome associated with suprastructure cancers reflects early invasion by these tumors to critical structures, including the eye, skull base, pterygoids, and infratemporal fossa.

For the purpose of staging, the nasoethmoidal complex is divided into two sites: nasal cavity and ethmoid sinuses.
The ethmoids are further subdivided into two subsites: left and right, separated by the nasal septum (perpendicular plate of ethmoid). The nasal cavity is divided into four subsites: the septum, floor, lateral wall, and vestibule.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>Subsite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maxillary sinus</td>
<td>Left/right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasal cavity</td>
<td>Septum, floor, lateral wall, vestibule (edge of naris to mucocutaneous junction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethmoid sinus</td>
<td>Left/right</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regional Lymph Nodes. Regional lymph node spread from cancer of nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses is relatively uncommon. Involvement of buccinator, submandibular, upper jugular, and (occasionally) retropharyngeal nodes may occur with advanced maxillary sinus cancer, particularly those extending beyond the sinus walls to involve adjacent structures, including soft tissues of the cheek, upper alveolus, palate, and buccal mucosa. Ethmoid sinus cancers are less prone to regional lymphatic spread. When only one side of the neck is involved, it should be considered ipsilateral. Bilateral spread may occur with advanced primary cancer, particularly with spread of the primary beyond the midline.

In clinical evaluation, the physical size of the nodal mass should be measured. Most masses over 3 cm in diameter are not single nodes but, rather, are confluent nodes or tumor in soft tissues of the neck. There are three categories of clinically positive nodes: N1, N2, and N3. The use of subgroups a, b, and c is required. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral nodes. In addition to the components to describe the N category, regional lymph nodes should also be described according to the level of the neck that is involved. Pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of such disease extent. Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread. No imaging study (as yet) can identify microscopic foci in regional nodes or distinguish between small reactive nodes and small malignant nodes without central radiographic inhomogeneity.

For pN, a selective neck dissection will ordinarily include six or more lymph nodes, and a radical or modified radical neck dissection will ordinarily include ten or more lymph nodes. Negative pathologic examination of a lesser number of lymph nodes still mandates a pN0 designation.

Distant Metastases. Distant spread usually occurs to lungs but occasionally there is spread to bone.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. The assessment of primary maxillary sinus, nasal cavity, and ethmoid tumors is based on inspection and palpation, including examination of the orbits, nasal and oral cavities, and nasopharynx, and neurologic evaluation of the cranial nerves. Nasal endoscopy with rigid or fiberoptic flexible instruments is recommended. Radiologic assessment with magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or computed tomography (CT) is mandatory for accurate pretreatment staging of malignant tumor of the sinuses. If available, MRI more accurately depicts skull base and intracranial involvement and the differentiation of fluid from solid tumor, and helps define local extension of disease. Neck nodes are assessed by palpation +/− imaging. Imaging for possible nodal metastases is probably unnecessary in the presence of a clinically negative neck. Examinations for distant metastases include appropriate imaging, blood chemistries, blood count, and other routine studies as indicated.

Pathologic Staging. Pathologic staging requires the use of all information obtained in clinical staging and histologic study of the surgically resected specimen. The surgeon’s evaluation of gross unresected residual tumor must also be included. Specimens that are resected after radiation or chemotherapy need to be identified and considered in context. The pathologic description of the lymphadenectomy specimen should describe the size, number, and level of the...
involved node(s) and the presence or absence of extracapsular spread (ECS).

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

In addition to the importance of the TNM factors outlined previously, the overall health of these patients clearly influences outcome. An ongoing effort to better assess prognosis using both tumor and nontumor related factors is underway. Chart abstraction will continue to be performed by cancer registrars to obtain important information regarding specific factors related to prognosis. This data will then be used to further hone the predictive power of the staging system in future revisions.

Comorbidity can be classified by specific measures of additional medical illnesses. Accurate reporting of all illnesses in the patients' medical record is essential to assessment of these parameters. General performance measures are helpful in predicting survival. The AJCC strongly recommends the clinician report performance status using the ECOG, Zubrod, or Karnofsky performance measures along with standard staging information. An interrelationship between each of the major performance tools exists.

**Zubrod/ECOG Performance Scale**

0. Fully active, able to carry on all predisease activities without restriction (Karnofsky 90–100).
1. Restricted in physically strenuous activity but ambulatory and able to carry work of a light or sedentary nature. For example, light housework, office work (Karnofsky 70–80).
2. Ambulatory and capable of all self-care but unable to carry out any work activities. Up and about more than 50% of waking hours (Karnofsky 50–60).
3. Capable of only limited self-care, confined to bed or chair 50% or more of waking hours (Karnofsky 30–40).
5. Death (Karnofsky 0).

Lifestyle factors such as tobacco and alcohol abuse negatively influence survival. Accurate recording of smoking in pack years and alcohol in number of days drinking per week and number of drinks per day will provide important data for future analysis. Nutrition is important to prognosis and will be indirectly measured by weight loss of >10% of body weight. Depression adversely impacts quality of life and survival. Notation of a previous or current diagnosis of depression should be recorded in the medical record.

Figure 6.2A, B presents observed and relative survival rates for sinonasal carcinomas (all histologies) for 1998–1999, classified by the AJCC staging classification.

**Mucosal Melanoma.** Mucosal melanoma of all head and neck sites is staged using a uniform classification as discussed in Chap. 9.
Primary Tumor (T) (continued)

T4b Very advanced local disease
Tumor invades any of the following: orbital apex, dura, brain, middle cranial fossa, cranial nerves other than maxillary division of trigeminal nerve (V2), nasopharynx, or clivus

Nasal Cavity and Ethmoid Sinus
T1 Tumor restricted to any one subsite, with or without bony invasion
T2 Tumor invading two subsites in a single region or extending to involve an adjacent region within the nasoethmoidal complex, with or without bony invasion
T3 Tumor extends to invade the medial wall or floor of the orbit, maxillary sinus, palate, or cribriform plate
T4a Moderately advanced local disease
Tumor invades any of the following: anterior orbital contents, skin of nose or cheek, minimal extension to anterior cranial fossa, pterygoid plates, sphenoid or frontal sinuses
T4b Very advanced local disease
Tumor invades any of the following: orbital apex, dura, brain, middle cranial fossa, cranial nerves other than (V2), nasopharynx, or clivus

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)
NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
N0 No regional lymph node metastasis
N1 Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, 3 cm or less in greatest dimension
N2 Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension, or in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension, or in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
N2a Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
N2b Metastasis in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
N2c Metastasis in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
N3 Metastasis in a lymph node, more than 6 cm in greatest dimension

Distant Metastasis (M)
M0 No distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)
(Recommended for Collection)

Required for staging
None

Clinically significant
Size of lymph nodes
Extracapsular extension from lymph nodes for head and neck
Head and neck lymph nodes levels I–III
Head and neck lymph nodes levels IV–V
Head and neck lymph nodes levels VI–VII
Other lymph nodes group
Clinical location of cervical nodes
Extracapsular spread (ECS) clinical
Extracapsular spread (ECS) pathologic
Human papillomavirus (HPV) status
Tumor thickness

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

GX Grade cannot be assessed
G1 Well differentiated
G2 Moderately differentiated
G3 Poorly differentiated
G4 Undifferentiated
HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

The predominant cancer is squamous cell carcinoma. The staging guidelines are applicable to all forms of carcinoma. Mucosal melanoma of the head and neck is very rare but has unique behavior warranting a separate classification as discussed in Chap. 9. Other non-epithelial tumors such as those of lymphoid tissue, soft tissue, bone, and cartilage are not included. Histologic confirmation of diagnosis is required. Histopathologic grading of squamous carcinoma is recommended. The grade is subjective and uses a descriptive as well as a numerical form (i.e., well differentiated, moderately differentiated, and poorly differentiated), depending on the degree of closeness to or deviation from squamous epithelium in mucosal sites. Also recommended where feasible is a quantitative evaluation of depth of invasion of the primary tumor and the presence or absence of vascular invasion and perineural invasion. Although the grade of the tumor does not enter into the staging of the tumor, it should be recorded. The pathologic description of any lymphadenectomy specimen should describe the size, number, and level of the involved node(s) and the presence or absence of ECS.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Nasal Cavity and Paranasal Sinuses Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRIMARY TUMOR (T)</th>
<th>LATERALITY:</th>
<th>REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>NX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>right</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>bilateral</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td></td>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td></td>
<td>N2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tumor Size:**
- **T0**: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- **Tis**: No evidence of primary tumor
- **Tis**: Carcinoma in situ
- **T1**: Tumor limited to maxillary sinus mucosa with no erosion or destruction of bone
- **T2**: Tumor causing bone erosion or destruction including extension into the hard palate and/or middle nasal meatus, except extension to posterior wall of maxillary sinus and pterygoid plates
- **T3**: Tumor invades any of the following: bone of the posterior wall of maxillary sinus, subcutaneous tissues, floor or medial wall of orbit, pterygoid fossa, ethmoid sinuses
- **T4a**: Moderately advanced local disease. Tumor invades anterior orbital contents, skin of cheek, pterygoid plates, infratemporal fossa, cribiform plate, sphenoid or frontal sinuses
- **T4b**: Tumor invades any of the following: orbital apex, dura, brain, middle cranial fossa, cranial nerves other than the maxillary division of trigeminal nerve (V2), nasopharynx, or clivus

**Nasal Cavity and Ethmoid Sinus**
- **T1**: Tumor restricted to any one subsite, with or without bony invasion
- **T2**: Tumor invading two subsites in a single region or extending to involve an adjacent region within the nasoethmoidal complex, with or without bony invasion
- **T3**: Tumor extends to invade the medial wall or floor of the orbit, maxillary sinus, palate, or cribiform plate
- **T4a**: Moderately advanced local disease. Tumor invades any of the following: anterior orbital contents, skin of nose or cheek, minimal extension to anterior cranial fossa, pterygoid plates, sphenoid or frontal sinuses
- **T4b**: Tumor invades any of the following: orbital apex, dura, brain, middle cranial fossa, cranial nerves other than (V2), nasopharynx, or clivus

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**
- **NX**: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0**: No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1**: Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, 3 cm or less in greatest dimension
- **N2**: Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension, or in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension, or in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension
- **N2a**: Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension

**Clinical Extent of Disease before any treatment**
- y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery
- y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery

**Pathologic Extent of Disease through completion of definitive surgery**
- y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery

(continued on next page)
### Nasal Cavity and Paranasal Sinuses Staging Form

#### Clinical Stage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pathologic Stage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Required for Staging:** None

**Clinically Significant:**

- Size of Lymph Nodes
- Extracapsular Extension from Lymph Nodes for Head & Neck
- Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels I-III
- Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels IV-V
- Other Lymph Nodes Group
- Clinical Location of cervical nodes
- Extracapsular spread (ECS) Clinical
- Extracapsular spread (ECS) Pathologic
- Human Papillomavirus (HPV) Status
- Tumor Thickness

### General Notes

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

### Hospital Name/Address

| Hospital Name/Address
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Patient Name/Information

| Patient Name/Information
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued from previous page)
### Nasal Cavity and Paranasal Sinuses Staging Form

**Histologic Grade (G)** (also known as overall grade)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grading system</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS**

- **Lymph-Vascular Invasion (L)** and **Venous Invasion (V)** have been combined into **Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI)** for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.
  - Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
  - Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
  - Not Applicable
  - Unknown/Indeterminate

- **Residual Tumor (R)**
  - The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.
  - RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
  - R0 No residual tumor
  - R1 Microscopic residual tumor
  - R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**General Notes (continued):**

- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a y prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The y prefix categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval and is identified by the r prefix: rTNM.

- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

- Surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

- Neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning
  - NCCN
  - Other (describe):

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued on next page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Major Salivary Glands
(Parotid, submandibular, and sublingual)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- T4 lesions have been divided into T4a (moderately advanced local disease) and T4b (very advanced local disease), leading to the stratification of Stage IV into Stage IVA (moderately advanced local/regional disease), Stage IVB (very advanced local/regional disease), and Stage IVC (distant metastatic disease)

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T1</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C07.9 Parotid gland
- C08.0 Submandibular gland
- C08.1 Sublingual gland
- C08.8 Overlapping lesion of major salivary glands
- C08.9 Major salivary gland, NOS

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGE

- 8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8982

INTRODUCTION

This staging system is based on an extensive retrospective review of the world literature regarding malignant tumors of the major salivary glands. Numerous factors affect patient survival, including the histologic diagnosis, cellular differentiation of the tumor (grade), site, size, degree of fixation or local extension, facial nerve involvement, and the status of regional lymph nodes as well as distant metastases. The classification involves the four dominant clinical variables: tumor size, local extension of the tumor, nodal metastasis, and distant metastasis. The T4 category has been divided into T4a and T4b. T4a indicates moderately advanced lesions and T4b reflects very advanced lesions with local extension. Histologic grade, patient age, and tumor site are important additional factors that should be recorded for future analysis and potential inclusion in the staging system.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The major salivary glands include the parotid, submandibular, and sublingual glands. Tumors arising in minor salivary glands (mucus-secreting glands in the lining membrane of the upper aerodigestive tract) are staged according to the anatomic site of origin (e.g., oral cavity, sinuses, etc.). Primary tumors of the parotid constitute the largest proportion of salivary gland tumors. Sublingual primary cancers are rare and may be difficult to distinguish with certainty from minor salivary gland primary tumors of the anterior floor of the mouth.
Regional Lymph Nodes. Regional lymphatic spread from salivary gland cancer is less common than from head and neck mucosal squamous cancers and varies according to the histology and size of the primary tumor. Most nodal metastases will be clinically apparent on initial evaluation. Low-grade tumors rarely metastasize to regional nodes, whereas the risk of regional spread is substantially higher from high-grade cancers. Regional dissemination tends to be orderly, progressing from intraglandular to adjacent (periparotid, submandibular) nodes, then to upper and midjugular nodes, apex of the posterior triangle (level Va) nodes, and occasionally to retropharyngeal nodes. Bilateral lymphatic spread is rare.

For pathologic reporting (pN), histologic examination of a selective neck dissection will ordinarily include six or more lymph nodes and a radical or modified radical neck dissection will ordinarily include ten or more lymph nodes. Negative pathologic evaluation of a lesser number of nodes still mandates a pN0 designation.

Distant Metastases. Distant spread is most frequently to the lungs.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. The assessment of primary salivary gland tumors includes a pertinent history (pain, trismus, etc.), inspection, palpation, and evaluation of the cranial nerves. Radiologic studies may add information valuable for staging. The soft tissues of the neck from the skull base to the hyoid bone must be studied, with the lower neck included whenever lymph node metastases are suspected. Images of the intratemporal facial nerve are critical to the identification of perineural spread of tumor in this area. Cancers of the submandibular and sublingual salivary glands merit cross-sectional imaging. Computed tomography (CT) or MRI may be useful in assessing the extent of deep extraglandular tumor, bone invasion, and deep tissue extent (extrinsic tongue muscle and/or soft tissues of the neck).

Pathologic Staging. The surgical pathology report and all other available data should be used to assign a pathologic classification to those patients who have resection of the cancer.

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

Primary Tumor (T)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tumor Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 4 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor more than 4 cm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Lymph Node Metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, 3 cm or less in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension, or in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension, or in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2a</td>
<td>Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2b</td>
<td>Metastasis in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2c</td>
<td>Metastasis in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
<td>Metastasis in a lymph node, more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Distant Metastasis (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Extraparenchymal extension is clinical or macroscopic evidence of invasion of soft tissues. Microscopic evidence alone does not constitute extraparenchymal extension for classification purposes.
PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)
(Recommended for Collection)

Required for staging
None

Clinically significant
- Size of lymph nodes
- Extracapsular extension from lymph nodes for head and neck
  - Head and neck lymph nodes levels I–III
  - Head and neck lymph nodes levels IV–V
  - Head and neck lymph nodes levels VI–VII
- Other lymph nodes group
- Clinical location of cervical nodes
- Extracapsular spread (ECS) clinical
- Extracapsular spread (ECS) pathologic

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Histologic grading is applicable only to some types of salivary cancer: mucoepidermoid carcinoma, adenocarcinoma not otherwise specified, or when either of these is the carcinomaous element of carcinoma in pleomorphic adenoma.

In most instances, the histologic type defines the grade (i.e., salivary duct carcinoma is high grade; basal cell adenocarcinoma is low grade).

Figure 7.1A, B presents 5-year, observed and relative survival for patients with cancer of the major salivary glands for 1998–1999, classified by the AJCC staging classification.

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

The suggested histopathologic typing is that proposed by the World Health Organization.

- Acinic cell carcinoma
- Mucoepidermoid carcinoma
- Adenoid cystic carcinoma
- Polymorphous low-grade adenocarcinoma
- Epithelial-myoepithelial carcinoma
- Basal cell adenocarcinoma
- Sebaceous carcinoma
- Papillary cystadenocarcinoma
- Mucinous adenocarcinoma
- Oncocytic carcinoma
- Salivary duct carcinoma
- Adenocarcinoma
- Myoepithelial carcinoma
- Carcinoma in pleomorphic adenoma
- Squamous cell carcinoma
- Small cell carcinoma
- Other carcinomas

BIBLIOGRAPHY


## Major Salivary Glands Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumor Size:</th>
<th>Primary Tumor (T)</th>
<th>Pathologic Staging</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>TX, T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension without extraparenchymal extension*</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 4 cm in greatest dimension without extraparenchymal extension*</td>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor more than 4 cm and/or tumor having extraparenchymal extension*</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>Moderately advanced disease</td>
<td>T4a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Very advanced disease</td>
<td>T4b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Extraparenchymal extension is clinical or macroscopic evidence of invasion of soft tissues. Microscopic evidence alone does not constitute extraparenchymal extension for classification purposes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regional Lymph Nodes (N)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distant Metastasis (M)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Major Salivary Glands Staging Form

#### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GROUP</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Required for Staging:** None

**Clinically Significant:**

- Size of Lymph Nodes
- Extracapsular Extension from Lymph Nodes for Head & Neck
- Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels I-III
- Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels IV-V
- Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels VI-VII
- Other Lymph Nodes Group
- Clinical Location of cervical nodes
- Extracapsular spread (ECS) Clinical
- Extracapsular spread (ECS) Pathologic

#### Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

**Grading system**

- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

**Grade**

- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

#### General Notes:

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix.
- The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

---

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued from previous page)
### Major Salivary Glands Staging Form

#### Additional Descriptors

*Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)* have been combined into *Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI)* for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologist (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

#### Residual Tumor (R)

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX: Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0: No residual tumor
- R1: Microscopic residual tumor
- R2: Macroscopic residual tumor

#### General Notes (continued):

- **surgical margins** is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

- **neoadjuvant treatment** is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

#### Lymph-vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified

- Lymph-vascular Invasion Present/Identified

#### Not Applicable

- Unknown/Indeterminate

#### Residual Tumor (R)

- The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment.

#### RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed

#### R0 No residual tumor

#### R1 Microscopic residual tumor

#### R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning  
  - NCCN  
  - Other (describe):

- Physician signature

- Date/Time

---

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

*(continued on next page)*
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
8

Thyroid

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- Tumor staging (T1) has been subdivided into T1a (≤1 cm) and T1b (>1–2 cm) limited to thyroid
- The descriptors to subdivide T categories have been changed to solitary tumor (s) and multifocal tumor (m)
- The terms “resectable” and “unresectable” are replaced with “moderately advanced” and “very advanced”

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

Separate stage groupings are recommended for papillary or follicular (differentiated), medullary, and anaplastic (undifferentiated) carcinoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Papillary or follicular (differentiated)</th>
<th>ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C73.9 Thyroid gland</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Under 45 Years                           | 8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981 |

| Stage I                                  | Any T | Any N | M0     |
| Stage II                                 | Any T | Any N | M1     |
| Stage I (45 years and older)             | T1    | N0    | M0     |
| Stage II (45 years and older)            | T2    | N0    | M0     |
| Stage III (under 45 years)               | T3    | N0    | M0     |
|                                           | T1    | N1a   | M0     |
|                                           | T2    | N1a   | M0     |
|                                           | T3    | N1a   | M0     |
| Stage IVA (45 years and older)           | T4a   | N0    | M0     |
|                                           | T4a   | N1a   | M0     |
|                                           | T1    | N1b   | M0     |
|                                           | T2    | N1b   | M0     |
|                                           | T3    | N1b   | M0     |
|                                           | T4a   | N1b   | M0     |
| Stage IVB (45 years and older)           | T4b   | Any N | M0     |
| Stage IVC (45 years and older)           | Any T | Any N | M1     |

| Medullary carcinoma (all age groups)     | ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES |
|                                         | 8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981 |

| Stage I                                  | T1    | N0    | M0     |
| Stage II                                 | T2    | N0    | M0     |
|                                           | T3    | N0    | M0     |
| Stage III                                | T1    | N1a   | M0     |
|                                           | T2    | N1a   | M0     |
|                                           | T3    | N1a   | M0     |
**INTRODUCTION**

Although staging for cancers in other head and neck sites is based entirely on the anatomic extent of disease, it is not possible to follow this pattern for the unique group of malignant tumors that arise in the thyroid gland. Both the histologic diagnosis and the age of the patient are of such importance in the behavior and prognosis of thyroid cancer that these factors are included in this staging system.

**ANATOMY**

**Primary Site.** The thyroid gland ordinarily is composed of a right and a left lobe lying adjacent and lateral to the upper trachea and esophagus. An isthmus connects the two lobes, and in some cases a pyramidal lobe is present extending cephalad anterior to the thyroid cartilage.

**Regional Lymph Nodes.** Regional lymph node spread from thyroid cancer is common but of less prognostic significance in patients with well-differentiated tumors (papillary, follicular) than in medullary cancers. The adverse prognostic influence of lymph node metastasis in patients with differentiated carcinomas is observed, only in the older age group. The first echelon of nodal metastasis consists of the paralaryngeal, paratracheal, and prelaryngeal (Delphian) nodes adjacent to the thyroid gland in the central compartment of the neck generally described as Level VI. Metastases secondarily involve the mid- and lower jugular, the supraclavicular, and (much less commonly) the upper deep jugular and spinal accessory lymph nodes. Lymph node metastasis to submandibular and submental lymph nodes is very rare. Upper mediastinal (Level VII) nodal spread occurs frequently both anteriorly and posteriorly. Retropharyngeal nodal metastasis may be seen, usually in the presence of extensive lateral cervical metastasis. Bilateral nodal spread is common. The components of the N category are described as follows: first echelon (central compartment/Level VI), or N1a, and lateral cervical and/or superior mediastinal or N1b. The lymph node metastasis should also be described according to the level of the neck that is involved. Nodal metastases from medullary thyroid cancer carry a much more ominous prognosis, although they follow a similar pattern of spread.

For pN, histologic examination of a selective neck dissection will ordinarily include six or more lymph nodes, whereas histologic examination of a radical or a modified radical comprehensive neck dissection will ordinarily include ten or more lymph nodes. Negative pathologic evaluation of a lesser number of nodes still mandates a pN0 designation.

**Metastatic Sites.** Distant spread occurs by hematogenous routes – for example to lungs and bones – but many other sites may be involved.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

**Clinical Staging.** The assessment of a thyroid tumor depends on inspection and palpation of the thyroid gland and regional lymph nodes. Indirect laryngoscopy to evaluate vocal cord motion is essential. A variety of imaging procedures can provide additional useful information. These include radioisotope thyroid scans, ultrasonography, computed tomography scans (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scans, and PET scans. When cross-sectional imaging is utilized, MRI is recommended so as to avoid contamination of the body with the iodinated contrast medium generally used with CT. Iodinated contrast media make it necessary to delay the postoperative administration of radioactive iodine-131. The diagnosis of thyroid cancer must be confirmed by needle biopsy or open biopsy of the tumor. Further information for clinical staging may be obtained by biopsy.
of lymph nodes or other areas of suspected local or distant spread. All information available prior to first treatment should be used.

**Pathologic Staging.** Pathologic staging requires the use of all information obtained in the clinical staging, as well as histologic study of the surgically resected specimen. The surgeon’s description of gross unresected residual tumor must also be included.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

### Primary Tumor (T)

| Note: All categories may be subdivided: (s) solitary tumor and (m) multifocal tumor (the largest determines the classification). |
| TX | Primary tumor cannot be assessed |
| T0 | No evidence of primary tumor |
| T1 | Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension limited to the thyroid |
| T1a | Tumor 1 cm or less, limited to the thyroid |
| T1b | Tumor more than 1 cm but not more than 2 cm in greatest dimension, limited to the thyroid |
| T2 | Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 4 cm in greatest dimension limited to the thyroid |
| T3 | Tumor more than 4 cm in greatest dimension limited to the thyroid or any tumor with minimal extrathyroid extension (e.g., extension to sternothyroid muscle or perithyroid soft tissues) |
| T4a | Moderately advanced disease |
| T4b | Very advanced disease |

*All anaplastic carcinomas are considered T4 tumors*

| T4a | Intrathyroidal anaplastic carcinoma |
| T4b | Anaplastic carcinoma with gross extrathyroid extension |

### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

| NX | Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed |
| N0 | No regional lymph node metastasis |
| N1 | Regional lymph node metastasis |
| N1a | Metastasis to Level VI (pretracheal, paratracheal, and prelaryngeal/DELPHIAN lymph nodes) |
| N1b | Metastasis to unilateral, bilateral, or contralateral cervical (Levels I, II, III, IV, or V) or retropharyngeal or superior mediastinal lymph nodes (Level VII) |

### Distant Metastasis (M)

| M0 | No distant metastasis |
| M1 | Distant metastasis |

### ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

#### Papillary or follicular (differentiated)

| Under 45 years |
| Stage I: Any T | Any N | M0 |
| Stage II: Any T | Any N | M1 |
| Stage III: T1 | N0 | M0 |
| Stage IV: T2 | N0 | M0 |
| Stage V: T3 | N0 | M0 |
| T1 | N1a | M0 |
| T2 | N1a | M0 |
| T3 | N1a | M0 |

#### 45 years and older

| Stage I: T1 | N0 | M0 |
| Stage II: T2 | N0 | M0 |
| Stage III: T3 | N0 | M0 |
| T1 | N1a | M0 |
| T2 | N1a | M0 |
| T3 | N1a | M0 |
| T4a | N1b | M0 |

#### Stage IV A

| T4a | N0 | M0 |
| T4a | N1a | M0 |
| T1 | N1b | M0 |
| T2 | N1b | M0 |
| T3 | N1b | M0 |
| T4a | N1b | M0 |

#### Stage IV B

| T4b | Any N | M0 |
| Stage IV C: Any T | Any N | M1 |

#### Medullary carcinoma (all age groups)

| Stage I: T1 | N0 | M0 |
| Stage II: T2 | N0 | M0 |
| Stage III: T3 | N0 | M0 |
| T1 | N1a | M0 |
| T2 | N1a | M0 |
| T3 | N1a | M0 |
| T4a | N0 | M0 |
| T4a | N1a | M0 |
| T1 | N1b | M0 |
| T2 | N1b | M0 |
| T3 | N1b | M0 |
| T4a | N1b | M0 |

#### Stage IV B

| T4b | Any N | M0 |
| Stage IV C: Any T | Any N | M1 |

#### Anaplastic carcinoma

| All anaplastic carcinomas are considered Stage IV |
| Stage IV A: T4a | Any N | M0 |
| Stage IV B: T4b | Any N | M0 |
| Stage IV C: Any T | Any N | M1 |
PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

Required for staging  None
Clinically significant  Extrathyroid extension
Histology

Figures 8.1–8.4 show observed and relative survival rates for patients with papillary adenocarcinoma of the thyroid gland (Figure 8.1A, B), follicular adenocarcinoma of the thyroid gland (Figure 8.2A, B), medullary carcinoma of the thyroid gland (Figure 8.3A, B), and Stage 4 anaplastic carcinoma of the thyroid gland (Figure 8.4A, B).

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value.
A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

GX  Grade cannot be assessed
G1  Well differentiated
G2  Moderately differentiated
G3  Poorly differentiated
G4  Undifferentiated
HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

There are four major histopathologic types:

- Papillary carcinoma (including follicular variant of papillary carcinoma)
- Follicular carcinoma (including Hurthle cell carcinoma)
- Medullary carcinoma
- Undifferentiated (anaplastic) carcinoma

*At present, more aggressive variants of differentiated carcinomas like tall cell variant of papillary carcinoma and insular carcinoma are grouped under “differentiated carcinoma.”

BIBLIOGRAPHY


Baloch ZW, LiVolsi VA. Prognostic factors in well-differentiated follicular-derived carcinoma and medullary thyroid carcinoma. Thyroid. 2001;11(7):637–45.


### Thyroid Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>☐ y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor Size: [ ] left [ ] right [ ] bilateral</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PRIMARY TUMOR (T)

- All categories may be subdivided: (s) solitary tumor and (m) multifocal tumor (the largest determines the classification).
- Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- No evidence of primary tumor
- Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension limited to the thyroid
- Tumor 1 cm or less, limited to the thyroid
- Tumor more than 1 cm but not more than 2 cm in greatest dimension, limited to the thyroid
- Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 4 cm in greatest dimension, limited to the thyroid
- Tumor more than 4 cm in greatest dimension limited to the thyroid, or any tumor with minimal extrathyroid extension (e.g., extension to sternothyroid muscle or perithyroid soft tissues)
- Tumor of any size extending beyond the thyroid capsule to invade subcutaneous soft tissues, larynx, trachea, esophagus, or recurrent laryngeal nerve
- Very advanced disease. Tumor invades prevertebral fascia or encases carotid artery or mediastinal vessels
- Intrathyroidal anaplastic carcinoma
- Anaplastic carcinoma with gross extrathyroid extension

#### REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)

- Regional lymph nodes are the central compartment, lateral cervical, and upper mediastinal lymph nodes.
- Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed.
- No regional lymph node metastasis
- Regional lymph node metastasis
- Metastasis to Level VI (pretracheal, paratracheal, and prelaryngeal/Delphian lymph nodes)
- Metastasis to unilateral, bilateral, or contralateral cervical (Levels I, II, III, IV or V) or retropharyngeal or superior mediastinal lymph nodes (Level VII)

#### DISTANT METASTASIS (M)

- No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- Distant metastasis

---

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Thyroid Staging Form

#### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

##### Clinical

Separate stage groupings are recommended for papillary or follicular (differentiated), medullary, and anaplastic (undifferentiated) carcinoma.

**Papillary or Follicular (Differentiated)**

**Under 45 Years**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Papillary or Follicular (Differentiated)**

**45 Years and Older**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV A</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV B</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV C</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Medullary Carcinoma (All Age Groups)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV A</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV B</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV C</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Anaplastic Carcinoma**

All anaplastic carcinomas are considered Stage IV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IV A</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV B</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV C</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

##### Pathologic

Separate stage groupings are recommended for papillary or follicular (differentiated), medullary, and anaplastic (undifferentiated) carcinoma.

**Papillary or Follicular (Differentiated)**

**Under 45 Years**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Papillary or Follicular (Differentiated)**

**45 Years and Older**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV A</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV B</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV C</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Medullary Carcinoma (All Age Groups)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV A</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV B</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV C</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Anaplastic Carcinoma**

All anaplastic carcinomas are considered Stage IV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IV A</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV B</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV C</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued from previous page)
**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)**

REQUIRED FOR STAGING: None

CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT: Solitary or Multifocal tumors in the primary site

**Histologic Grade (G)** (also known as overall grade)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grading system</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS**

Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

Residual Tumor (R)

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): ________________

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning  
  - NCCN  
  - Other (describe): ________________

General Notes:

- For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.
- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "Y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.
- surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.
- neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Mucosal Melanoma of the Head and Neck

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- This is a new chapter for classification of this rare tumor

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3–T4a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

For a complete description of codes, refer to the appropriate anatomic site chapter based on the location of the mucosal melanoma (see Chapters 3–6).

Additionally, mucosal melanomas are staged for the following topography codes; however, no staging exists for nonmucosal melanoma in the same anatomic site:

- C14.0 Pharynx, NOS
- C14.2 Waldeyer’s ring
- C14.8 Overlapping lesion of lip, oral cavity and pharynx

The following topography codes are excluded:

- C07.9 Parotid gland
- C08.0 Submandibular gland
- C08.1 Sublingual gland
- C08.8 Overlapping lesion of major salivary glands
- C08.9 Major salivary glands, NOS
- C30.1 Middle ear
- C73.9 Thyroid

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8720–8790

INTRODUCTION

Mucosal melanoma is an aggressive neoplasm that warrants separate consideration. Approximately two-thirds of these lesions arise in the nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses; one quarter are found in the oral cavity and the remainder occur only sporadically in other mucosal sites of the head and neck. Even small cancers behave aggressively with high rates of recurrence and death. To reflect this aggressive behavior, primary cancers limited to the mucosa are considered T3 lesions.
Advanced mucosal melanomas are classified as T4a and T4b. The anatomic extent criteria to define moderately advanced (T4a) and very advanced (T4b) disease are given below. In situ mucosal melanomas are excluded from staging, as they are extremely rare.

ANATOMY

Mucosal melanomas occur throughout the mucosa of the upper aerodigestive tract. For a description of anatomy, refer to the appropriate anatomic site chapter based on the location of the mucosal melanoma.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Mucosal melanomas occur throughout the mucosa of the upper aerodigestive tract. For the rules for classification, refer to the appropriate anatomic site chapter based on the location of the mucosal melanoma.

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Tumor</th>
<th>T3</th>
<th>Mucosal disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>Moderately advanced disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor involving deep soft tissue, cartilage, bone, or overlying skin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Very advanced disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor involving brain, dura, skull base, lower cranial nerves (IX, X, XI, XII), masticator space, carotid artery, prevertebral space, or mediastinal structures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regional Lymph Nodes</th>
<th>NX</th>
<th>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastases present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distant Metastasis</th>
<th>M0</th>
<th>No distant metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

- Required for staging: None
- Clinically significant:
  - Size of lymph nodes
  - Extracapsular extension from lymph node for head and neck
  - Head and neck lymph nodes levels I–III
  - Head and neck lymph nodes levels IV–V
  - Head and neck lymph nodes levels VI–VII
  - Other lymph node group
  - Clinical location of cervical nodes
  - Extracapsular spread (ECS) clinical
  - Extracapsular spread (ECS) pathologic
  - Tumor thickness

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

- GX Grade cannot be assessed
- G1 Well differentiated
- G2 Moderately differentiated
- G3 Poorly differentiated
- G4 Undifferentiated

BIBLIOGRAPHY


# Mucosal Melanoma of the Head and Neck Staging Form

## Clinical Extent of Disease before Any Treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumor Size:</td>
<td>Laterality:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Tumor (T)</td>
<td>□ left □ right □ bilateral</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **T3**: Mucosal disease
- **T4a**: Moderately advanced disease
- **T4b**: Very advanced disease

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

- **NX**: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0**: No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1**: Regional lymph node metastasis present

**Distant Metastasis (M)**

- **M0**: No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- **M1**: Distal metastasis

## Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GROUP</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>T4b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Required for Staging**: None

**Clinically Significant**:
- Size of Lymph Nodes
- Extracapsular Extension from Lymph Node for Head & Neck
- Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels I-III
- Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels IV-V
- Head & Neck Lymph Nodes Levels VI-VII
- Other Lymph Node Group
- Clinical Location of cervical nodes
- Extracapsular Spread (ECS) Clinical
- Extracapsular Spread (ECS) Pathologic
- Tumor Thickness

## General Notes:

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

The "m" suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
# Mucosal Melanoma of the Head and Neck Staging Form

## Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grading system</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Additional Descriptors

**Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)** have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

## General Notes (continued):

- **y** prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- **r** prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- **a** prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

**surgical margins** is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

**neoadjuvant treatment** is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

## Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

... 

## National guidelines were used in treatment planning

- NCCN
- Other (describe):

... 

## Physician signature: ____________________________

Date/Time: ____________________________

## Hospital Name/Address: ____________________________

## Patient Name/Information: ____________________________

(continued from previous page)

---

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.

---

American Joint Committee on Cancer • 2010
PART III

Digestive System
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Esophagus and Esophagogastric Junction
(Nonmucosal cancers are not included)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- Tumor location is simplified, and esophagogastric junction and proximal 5 cm of stomach are included
- Tis is redefined and T4 is subclassified
- Regional lymph nodes are redefined. N is subclassified according to the number of regional lymph nodes containing metastasis
- M is redefined
- Separate stage groupings for squamous cell carcinoma and adenocarcinoma
- Stage groupings are reassigned using T, N, M, and G classifications

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Tumor Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis (HGD)</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>2–3</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2–3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
<td>Lower, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T2–3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
<td>Upper, middle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2–3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>2–3</td>
<td>Lower, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2–3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>2–3</td>
<td>Upper, middle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1–2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T1–2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1–2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Tumor Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

C15.0 Cervical esophagus
C15.1 Thoracic esophagus
C15.2 Abdominal esophagus
C15.3 Upper third of esophagus
C15.4 Middle third of esophagus
C15.5 Lower third of esophagus
C15.8 Overlapping lesion of esophagus
C15.9 Esophagus, NOS
C16.0 Cardia, esophagogastric junction
C16.1 Fundus of stomach, proximal 5 cm only*
C16.2 Body of stomach, proximal 5 cm only*

*Note: If gastric tumor extends to or above esophagogastric junction.

*Or mixed histology including a squamous component or NOS.

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
INTRODUCTION

Previous stage groupings of esophageal cancer were based on a simple, orderly arrangement of increasing pathologic anatomic T, then N, and then M classifications. In contrast, this revision is data driven, based on a risk-adjusted random-sparse-forest analysis of worldwide data. The previous system was neither consistent with these data nor biologically plausible. Some explanations for the discrepancy relate to the interplay among T, N, and M, histopathologic type, biologic activity of the tumor (histologic grade), and location.

The unique lymphatic anatomy of the esophagus links N to T, permitting lymph node metastases from superficial cancers (pT1); this renders prognosis similar to that of more advanced (higher pT) N0 cancers. Similarly, advanced cancers (higher pT) with a few positive nodes may have a similar prognosis to those of less advanced cancers (lower pT) with more positive nodes. Biologic activity of the cancer, reflected by histologic grade (G), modulates stage such that prognosis of well-differentiated (G1) higher-pT cancers is similar to that of less well-differentiated (G2–G4) lower-pT cancers. Previous staging recommendations ignored histopathologic type, but availability of data on a large mixture of adenocarcinoma and squamous cell carcinomas from around the world has permitted assessing the association of histopathologic type with survival.

Although at first glance these multiple trade-offs seem to create a less orderly arrangement of cancer classifications within and among stage groupings compared with previous stage groupings, when viewed from the perspective of the interplay of these important prognostic factors, the new staging system becomes biologically compelling and consistent with a number of other cancers.

A limitation of this data-driven approach is that staging is based only on pTNM from esophageal cancers treated by esophagectomy alone, without induction or postoperative chemotherapy or radiotherapy; patients not offered operation, deemed inoperable, or undergoing exploratory surgery without esophagectomy were not represented in the data. In addition, patients undergoing surgery alone with pT4 and pM1 cancers represent a select population; placing them into stage groups, therefore, required either combining some classifications or using literature as a supplement. Patients with cervical esophageal cancer, sometimes treated as a head-and-neck tumor, were also poorly represented.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The location of the primary tumor is defined by the position of the upper end of the cancer in the esophagus. This is best expressed as the distance from the incisors to the proximal edge of the tumor and conventionally by its location within broad regions of the esophagus. ICD coding recognizes three anatomic compartments traversed by the esophagus: cervical, thoracic, and abdominal. It also arbitrarily divides the esophagus into equal thirds: upper, middle, and lower (Table 10.1). However, clinical importance of primary site of esophageal cancer is less related to its position in the esophagus than to its relation to adjacent structures (Figure 10.1).

Cervical Esophagus. Anatomically, the cervical esophagus lies in the neck, bordered superiority by the hypopharynx and inferiorly by the thoracic inlet, which lies at the level of the sternal notch. It is subtended by the trachea, carotid sheaths,
and vertebrae. Although length of the esophagus differs somewhat with body habitus, gender, and age, typical endoscopic measurements for the cervical esophagus measured from the incisors are from 15 to <20 cm (Figure 10.1). If esophagoscopy is not available, location can be assessed by computed tomography (CT). If thickening of the esophageal wall begins above the sternal notch, the location is cervical.

**Upper Thoracic Esophagus.** The upper thoracic esophagus is bordered superiorly by the thoracic inlet and inferiorly by the lower border of the azygos vein. Anterolaterally, it is surrounded by the trachea, arch vessels, and great veins, and posteriorly by the vertebrae. Typical endoscopic measurements from the incisors are from 20 to <25 cm (Figure 10.1). CT location of an upper thoracic cancer is esophageal wall thickening that begins between the sternal notch and the azygos vein.

**Middle Thoracic Esophagus.** The middle thoracic esophagus is bordered superiorly by the lower border of the azygos vein and inferiorly by the inferior pulmonary veins. It is sandwiched between the pulmonary hilum anteriorly, descending thoracic aorta on the left, and vertebrae posteriorly; on the right, it lies freely on the pleura. Typical endoscopic measurements from the incisors are from 25 to <30 cm (Figure 10.1). CT location is wall thickening that begins between the azygos vein and the inferior pulmonary vein.

**Lower Thoracic Esophagus/Esophagogastric Junction.** The lower thoracic esophagus is bordered superiorly by the inferior pulmonary veins and inferiorly by the stomach. Because it is the end of the esophagus, it includes the esophagogastric junction (EGJ). It is bordered anteriorly by the pericardium, posteriorly by vertebrae, and on the left by the descending thoracic aorta. It normally passes through the diaphragm to reach the stomach, but there is a variable intra-abdominal portion, and because of hiatal hernia, this portion may be absent. Typical endoscopic measurements from the incisors are from 30 to 40 cm (Figure 10.1). CT location is wall thickening that begins below the inferior pulmonary vein. The abdominal esophagus is included in the lower thoracic esophagus.

The arbitrary 10-cm segment encompassing the distal 5 cm of the esophagus and proximal 5 cm of the stomach, with the EGJ in the middle, is an area of contention. Cancers arising in this segment have been variably staged as esophageal or gastric tumors, depending on orientation of the treating physician. In this edition, cancers whose epicenter is in the lower thoracic esophagus, EGJ, or within the proximal 5 cm of the stomach (cardia) that extend into the EGJ or esophagus (Siewert III) are stage grouped similar to adenocarcinoma of the esophagus. Although Siewert and colleagues subtype EGJ cancers (types I, II, III), not only do their data support a single-stage grouping scheme across this area, but also they demonstrate that prognosis depends on cancer classification (T, N, M, G) and not Siewert type. All other cancers with an epicenter in the stomach greater than 5 cm distal to the EGJ, or those within 5 cm of the EGJ but not extending into the

![Figure 10.1](image_url)

**FIGURE 10.1.** Anatomy of esophageal cancer primary site, including typical endoscopic measurements of each region measured from the incisors. Exact measurements are dependent on body size and height.
Esophageal Wall. The esophageal wall has three layers: mucosa, submucosa, and muscularis propria (Figure 10.2). The mucosa is composed of epithelium, lamina propria, and muscularis mucosae. A basement membrane isolates the mucosa from the rest of the esophageal wall. In the columnar-lined esophagus the muscularis mucosae may be a two-layered structure. The mucosal division can be classified as m1 (epithelium), m2 (lamina propria), or m3 (muscularis mucosae). The submucosa has no landmarks, but some divide it into inner (sm1), middle (sm2), and outer thirds (sm3). The muscularis propria has inner circular and outer longitudinal muscle layers. There is no serosa; rather, adventitia (periesophageal connective tissue) lies directly on the muscularis propria.

Adjacent Structures. In close proximity to the esophagus lie pleura-peritoneum, pericardium, and diaphragm. Cancers invading these structures may be resectable (T4a). Aorta, carotid vessels, azygos vein, trachea, left main bronchus, and vertebral body also are in close proximity, but cancers invading these structures are usually unresectable (T4b).

Lymphatics. Esophageal lymphatic drainage is intramural and longitudinal (Figure 10.2). Although a lymphatic network is concentrated in the submucosa, lymphatic channels are present in the lamina propria, an arrangement that permits lymphatic metastases early in the course of the disease from superficial cancers that are otherwise confined to the mucosa. Lymphatic drainage of the muscularis propria is more limited, but lymphatic channels pierce this layer to drain into regional lymphatic channels and lymph nodes in the periesophageal fat. Up to 43% of autopsy dissections demonstrate direct drainage from the submucosal plexus into the thoracic duct, which facilitates systemic metastases. The longitudinal nature of the submucosal lymphatic plexus permits lymphatic metastases orthogonal to the depth of tumor invasion. Implications of the longitudinal nature of lymphatic drainage are that the anatomic site of the cancer and the nodes to which lymphatics drain from that site may not be the same.

Regional lymph nodes extend from periesophageal cervical nodes to celiac nodes (Figures 10.3A–D and 10.4). For radiotherapy, fields of treatment may not be constrained within this definition of regional node.

The data demonstrate that the number of regional lymph nodes containing metastases (positive nodes) is the most important prognostic factor. In classifying N, the data support convenient coarse groupings of the number of positive nodes (0, 1–2, 3–6, 7 or more). These have been designated N1 (1–2), N2 (3–6), and N3 (7 or more). Nevertheless, there are no sharp cut-points; rather, each additional positive node increases risk. Clinical determination of positive lymph node ratio (number positive divided by number sampled) as a useful measure of lymph node burden. The number of sampled nodes, the denominator of the ratio, is highly variable, distorting the magnitude of lymph node burden.

Data demonstrate that in general, the more lymph nodes resected, the better the survival. This may be due to either improved N classification or a therapeutic effect of lymphadenectomy. On the basis of worldwide data, it was found that optimum lymphadenectomy depends on T classification:

- For pT1, approximately ten nodes must be resected to maximize survival; for pT2, 20 nodes and for pT3 or pT4, 30 nodes or more. On the basis of different data and analysis methods
Esophagus and Esophagogastric Junction

Supraclavicular zone
- 1 Low cervical, supraclavicular, and sternal notch nodes

Superior Mediastinal Nodes
- Superior zone
  - 2R Upper Paratracheal (right)
  - 2L Upper Paratracheal (left)
  - 3a Pre-vascular
  - 3p Retrotracheal
  - 4R Lower Paratracheal (right)
  - 4L Lower Paratracheal (left)

Aortic Nodes
- AP zone
  - 5 Subaortica
  - 6 Para-aortic (ascending aorta or phrenic)

Inferior Mediastinal Nodes
- Subcarinal zone
  - 7 Subcarinal

- Lower zone
  - 8 Paraaesophageal (below carina)
  - 9 Pulmonary ligament

N1 Nodes
- Hilar/Interlobar zone
  - 10 Hilar
  - 11 Interlobar

- Peripheral zone
  - 12 Lobar
  - 13 Segmental
  - 14 Subsegmental

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
that focus on maximizing sensitivity, others have suggested that an adequate lymphadenectomy requires resecting 12–22 nodes. Thus, one should resect as many regional lymph nodes as possible, balancing the extent of lymph node resection with morbidity of radical lymphadenectomy.

**Distant Metastatic Sites.** Sites of distant metastases are those that are not in direct continuity with the esophagus and include nonregional lymph nodes (M1). The previous M1a and M1b subclassification has not been found useful.

**NONANATOMIC TUMOR CHARACTERISTICS**

This staging of cancer of the esophagus is based on cancers arising from its epithelium, squamous cell carcinoma, and adenocarcinoma. Nonmucosal cancers arising in the wall should be classified according to their cell of origin.

Highest histologic grade on biopsy or resection specimen is the required data for stage grouping. Because the data indicate that squamous cell carcinoma has a poorer prognosis than adenocarcinoma, if a tumor is of mixed histopathologic type or is not otherwise specified, it shall be recorded as squamous cell carcinoma. If grade is not available, it should be recorded as GX and stage grouped as G1 cancer. G4, undifferentiated cancers, should be recorded as such and stage grouped similar to G3 squamous cell carcinoma.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

**Clinical Staging (c, yc).** Clinical classification (c) is based on evidence before primary treatment. It involves esophagoscopy with biopsy, endoscopic esophageal ultrasound (EUS), EUS-directed fine-needle aspiration (EUS-FNA), fused computed tomography (CT), 2-[18F]fluoro-2-deoxy-D-glucose positron emission tomography (PET/CT) for assessment of T, N, M, and G classifications, and histopathologic type. These may be supplemented by cervical lymph node biopsy, bronchoscopy, endoscopic bronchial ultrasound (EBUS) and EBUS-FNA, mediastinoscopy, thoracoscopy, laparoscopy, and ultrasound- or CT-directed percutaneous biopsy. Clinical reclassification

**FIGURE 10.4.** Celiac lymph node.

**FIGURE 10.5.** T, N, and M classifications. Primary tumor (T) is classified by depth of tumor invasion. Regional lymph node classifications are determined by metastatic burden. Distant metastatic sites are designated M1.
during or following chemotherapy and/or radiotherapy is designated by the prefix yc.

**Pathologic Staging (p, yp).** Pathologic classification uses evidence acquired before treatment, supplemented or modified by additional evidence acquired during and from surgery, particularly from pathologic evaluation of the surgical specimen. Pathologic reclassification during and following surgery that has been preceded by chemotherapy and/or radiotherapy is designated by the prefix yp.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

**Primary Tumor (T)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Tumor Location **</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis (HGD)</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>2–3</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2–3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
<td>Lower, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T2–3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
<td>Upper, middle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2–3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>2–3</td>
<td>Lower, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2–3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>2–3</td>
<td>Upper, middle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1–2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T1–2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIC</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1–2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*See Figure 10.5.

**(1) At least maximal dimension of the tumor must be recorded and (2) multiple tumors require the T(m) suffix.

***High-grade dysplasia includes all noninvasive neoplastic epithelia that was formerly called carcinoma in situ, a diagnosis that is no longer used for columnar mucosae anywhere in the gastrointestinal tract.

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Number must be recorded for total number of regional nodes sampled and total number of reported nodes with metastasis.

**Distant Metastasis (M)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Or mixed histology including a squamous component or NOS.

**Location of the primary cancer site is defined by the position of the upper (proximal) edge of the tumor in the esophagus.

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

**Squamous Cell Carcinoma** (Figure 10.6)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Tumor Location **</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis (HGD)</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>2–3</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2–3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
<td>Lower, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T2–3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
<td>Upper, middle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2–3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>2–3</td>
<td>Lower, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2–3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>2–3</td>
<td>Upper, middle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1–2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T1–2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIC</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1–2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Adenocarcinoma** (Figure 10.7)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis (HGD)</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1–2, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1–2, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1–2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T1–2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIC</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1–2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Or mixed histology including a squamous component or NOS.

**Location of the primary cancer site is defined by the position of the upper (proximal) edge of the tumor in the esophagus.

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
FIGURE 10.7. (A) Survival after esophagectomy only for adenocarcinoma stratified by stage groupings, based on worldwide esophageal cancer collaboration (WECC) data. Condensed stage groupings. (B) Survival after esophagectomy only for adenocarcinoma stratified by stage groupings, based on worldwide esophageal cancer collaboration (WECC) data. Expanded stage groupings.
PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

Squamous Cell Carcinoma
Required for staging
Location – based on the position of the upper (proximal) edge of the tumor in the esophagus (upper or middle – cancers above lower border of inferior pulmonary vein; lower – below inferior pulmonary vein)
Grade
Clinically significant
Distance to proximal edge of tumor from incisors
Distance to distal edge of tumor from incisors
Number of regional nodes with extracapsular tumor

Adenocarcinoma
Required for staging
Grade
Clinically significant
Distance to proximal edge of tumor from incisors
Distance to distal edge of tumor from incisors
Number of regional nodes with extracapsular tumor

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)
GX Grade cannot be assessed – stage grouping as G1
G1 Well differentiated
G2 Moderately differentiated
G3 Poorly differentiated
G4 Undifferentiated – stage grouping as G3 squamous

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE
Squamous cell carcinoma
Adenocarcinoma

BIBLIOGRAPHY
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Esophagus and Esophageal Junction

**Clinical Staging Form**

**Extent of disease before any treatment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TUMOR SIZE:</th>
<th>LATERALITY:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>left □ right □ bilateral</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Primary Tumor (T)**

- TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- T0: No evidence of primary tumor
- Tis: High-grade dysplasia *
- T1: Tumor invades lamina propria, muscularis mucosae, or submucosa
- T1a: Tumor invades lamina propria or muscularis mucosae
- T1b: Tumor invades submucosa
- T2: Tumor invades muscularis propria
- T3: Tumor invades adventitia
- T4: Tumor invades adjacent structures
- T4a: Resectable tumor invading pleura, pericardium, or diaphragm
- T4b: Unresectable tumor invading other adjacent structures, such as aorta, vertebral body, trachea, etc.

*High-grade dysplasia includes all non-invasive neoplastic epithelium that was formerly called carcinoma in situ, a diagnosis that is no longer used for columnar mucosae anywhere in the gastrointestinal tract.

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

- NX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- N0: No regional lymph node metastasis
- N1: Regional lymph node metastases involving 1 to 2 nodes
- N2: Regional lymph node metastases involving 3 to 6 nodes
- N3: Regional lymph node metastases involving 7 or more nodes

**Distant Metastasis (M)**

- M0: No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- M1: Distant metastasis

**Pathologic Staging Form**

**Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery**

**Primary Tumor (T)**

- TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- T0: No evidence of primary tumor
- Tis: High-grade dysplasia *
- T1: Tumor invades lamina propria, muscularis mucosae, or submucosa
- T1a: Tumor invades lamina propria or muscularis mucosae
- T1b: Tumor invades submucosa
- T2: Tumor invades muscularis propria
- T3: Tumor invades adventitia
- T4: Tumor invades adjacent structures
- T4a: Resectable tumor invading pleura, pericardium, or diaphragm
- T4b: Unresectable tumor invading other adjacent structures, such as aorta, vertebral body, trachea, etc.

**Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups**

**Squamous Cell Carcinoma**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Tumor Location**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis (HGD)</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>2-3</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T2-3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
<td>Lower, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2-3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>2-3</td>
<td>Lower, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T1-2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T1-2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1-2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
** Esophagus Staging Form **

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adenocarcinoma</th>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis (HGD)</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1-2, X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>1-2, X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II A</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II B</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III A</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III B</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III C</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

** Squamous Cell Carcinoma **

** REQUIRED FOR STAGING:**

Location – based on the position of the upper (proximal) edge of the tumor in the esophagus

(Upper or middle—cancers above lower border of inferior pulmonary vein; Lower—below inferior pulmonary vein)

** Grade **

** CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:**

Distance to proximal edge of tumor from incisors

Distance to distal edge of tumor from incisors

Number of regional nodes with extracapsular tumor

** Adenocarcinoma **

** REQUIRED FOR STAGING:**

** Grade **

** CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:**

Distance to proximal edge of tumor from incisors

Distance to distal edge of tumor from incisors

Number of regional nodes with extracapsular tumor

** Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade) **

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grading system</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

** General Notes:**

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the “m” suffix and “y,” “r,” and “a” prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- ** m suffix ** indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- ** y prefix ** indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a “y” prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The “y” categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- ** r prefix ** indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the “r” prefix: rTNM.
- ** a prefix ** designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.
**ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS**

*Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)* have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**General Notes (continued):**

- **surgical margins** is a data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.
- **neoadjuvant treatment** is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

**Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):**

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning □ NCCN □ Other (describe):

  ____________________________________________________________

**Physician signature**

**Date/Time**

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
11

Stomach

(Lymphomas, sarcomas, and carcinoid tumors [low-grade neuroendocrine tumors] are not included)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- Tumors arising at the esophagogastric junction, or arising in the stomach ≤5 cm from the esophagogastric junction and crossing the esophagogastric junction are staged using the TNM system for esophageal adenocarcinoma (see Chap. 10)
- T categories have been modified to harmonize with T categories of the esophagus and small and large intestine
  - T1 lesions have been subdivided into T1a and T1b
  - T2 is defined as a tumor that invades the muscularis propria
  - T3 is defined as a tumor that invades the subserosal connective tissue
  - T4 is defined as a tumor that invades the serosa (visceral peritoneum) or adjacent structures
- N categories have been modified, with N1 = 1–2 positive lymph nodes, N2 = 3–6 positive lymph nodes, N3 = 7 or more positive lymph nodes
- Positive peritoneal cytology is classified as M1
- Stage groupings have been changed

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C16.1 Fundus of stomach*
- C16.2 Body of stomach*
- C16.3 Gastric antrum
- C16.4 Pylorus
- C16.5 Lesser curvature of stomach, NOS
- C16.6 Greater curvature of stomach, NOS
- C16.8 Overlapping lesion of stomach
- C16.9 Stomach, NOS

*Note: See first statement in Summary of Changes.
INTRODUCTION

Gastric cancer remains the fourth most common cancer worldwide and the second leading cause of cancer deaths (700,000 deaths annually worldwide). The highest rates of this disease continue to be in areas of Asia and Eastern Europe. Although gastric adenocarcinoma has declined significantly in the USA over the past 70 years, during the early twenty-first century an estimated 22,000 patients develop the disease each year, and of these patients, 13,000 will die, mainly because of nodal and metastatic disease present at the time of initial diagnosis. Trends in survival rates from the 1970s to the 1990s have unfortunately shown very little improvement. During the 1990s, 20% of gastric carcinoma cases were diagnosed while localized to the gastric wall, whereas 30% had evidence of regional nodal disease. Disease resulting from metastasis to other solid organs within the abdomen, as well as to extraabdominal sites, represents 35% of all cases. Although overall 5-year survival is approximately 15–20%, the 5-year survival is approximately 55% when disease is localized to the stomach (Figure 11.1).

The involvement of regional nodes reduces the 5-year survival to approximately 20%.

A notable shift in the site of gastric cancer reflects a proportionate increase in disease of the proximal stomach over the past several decades. Previously, there was a predominance of distal gastric cancers presenting as mass lesions or ulceration. Although other malignancies occur in the stomach, approximately 90% of all gastric neoplasms are adenocarcinomas. Tumors of the esophagogastric junction (EGJ) may be difficult to stage as either a gastric or an esophageal primary, especially in view of the increased incidence of adenocarcinoma in the esophagus that presumably results from acid reflux disease.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The stomach is the first division of the abdominal portion of the alimentary tract, beginning at the esophagogastric junction and extending to the pylorus. The proximal stomach is located immediately below the diaphragm and is termed the cardia. The remaining portions are the fundus and body of the stomach, and the distal portion of the stomach is known as the antrum. The pylorus is a muscular ring that controls the flow of food content from the stomach into the first portion of the duodenum. The medial and lateral curvatures of the stomach are known as the lesser and greater curvatures, respectively. Histologically, the wall of the stomach has five layers: mucosal, submucosal, muscular, subserosal, and serosal.

The arbitrary 10-cm segment encompassing the distal 5 cm of the esophagus and proximal 5 cm of the stomach (cardia), with the EGJ in the middle, is an area of contention. Cancers arising in this segment have been variably staged as esophageal or gastric tumors, depending on orientation of the treating physician. In this edition, cancers whose midpoint is in the lower thoracic esophagus, EGJ, or within the proximal 5 cm of the stomach (cardia) that extend into the EGJ or esophagus (Siewert III) are staged as adenocarcinoma of the esophagus (see Chap. 10). All other cancers with a midpoint in the stomach lying more than 5 cm distal to the EGJ, or those within 5 cm of the EGJ but not extending into...
the EGJ or esophagus, are staged using the gastric (non-EGJ) cancer staging system (Figure 11.2).

Staging of primary gastric adenocarcinoma is dependent on the depth of penetration of the primary tumor. The T1 designation has been subdivided into T1a (invasion of the lamina propria or muscularis mucosae) and T1b (invasion of the submucosa). T2 designation has been changed to invasion of the muscularis propria, and T3 to invasion of the subserosal connective tissue without invasion of adjacent structures or the serosa (visceral peritoneum). T4 tumors penetrate the serosa (T4a) or invade adjacent structures (T4b). These T categories have been changed to harmonize with those of other gastrointestinal sites.

**Regional Lymph Nodes.** Several groups of regional lymph nodes drain the wall of the stomach. These perigastric nodes are found along the lesser and greater curvatures. Other major nodal groups follow the main arterial and venous vessels from the aorta and the portal circulation. Adequate nodal dissection of these regional nodal areas is important to ensure appropriate designation of the pN determination. Although it is suggested that at least 16 regional nodes be assessed pathologically, a pN0 determination may be assigned on the basis of the actual number of nodes evaluated microscopically.

Involvement of other intra-abdominal lymph nodes, such as the hepatoduodenal, retropancreatic, mesenteric, and para-aortic, is classified as distant metastasis. The specific nodal areas are as follows:

**Greater Curvature of Stomach.** Greater curvature, greater omental, gastroepiploic, pyloric, and pancreaticoduodenal

**Pancreatic and Splenic Area.** Pancreaticocolienal, periampullary, splenic

**Lesser Curvature of Stomach.** Lesser curvature, lesser omental, left gastric, cardioesophageal, common hepatic, celiac, and hepatoduodenal

**Distant Nodal Groups.** Retropancreatic, para-aortic, portal, retroperitoneal, mesenteric

**Metastatic Sites.** The most common metastatic distribution is to the liver, peritoneal surfaces, and nonregional or distant lymph nodes. Central nervous system and pulmonary metastases occur but are less frequent. With large, bulky lesions, direct extension may occur to the liver, transverse colon, pancreas, or undersurface of the diaphragm. Positive peritoneal cytology is classified as metastatic disease.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

**Clinical Staging.** Designated as cTNM, clinical staging is based on evidence of extent of disease acquired before definitive treatment is instituted. It includes physical examination, radiologic imaging, endoscopy, biopsy, and laboratory findings. All cancers should be confirmed histologically.

**Pathologic Staging.** Pathologic staging depends on data acquired clinically, together with findings on subsequent surgical exploration and examination of the pathologic specimen if resection is accomplished. Pathologic assessment of the regional lymph nodes entails their removal and histologic examination to evaluate the total number, as well as the number that contain metastatic tumor. Metastatic nodules in the fat adjacent to a gastric carcinoma, without evidence of residual lymph node tissue, are considered regional lymph node metastases, but nodules implanted on peritoneal surfaces are considered distant metastases. If there is uncertainty concerning the appropriate T, N, or M assignment, the lower (less advanced) category should be assigned, in accordance with the general rules of staging.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

Treatment is a major prognostic factor for gastric cancer. Patients who are not resected have a poor prognosis, with survival ranging from 3 to 11 months. Depth of invasion into the gastric wall (T) correlates with reduced survival, but regional lymphatic spread is probably the most powerful prognostic factor. For those patients undergoing complete resection, the factors that affect prognosis include the location of the tumor in the stomach, histologic grade, and lymphovascular invasion. The prognosis for proximal gastric cancer is less favorable than for distal lesions. Asian race, female sex, and younger age are predictive of a better outcome, while high preoperative serum levels for tumor markers CEA and CA 19–9 have been associated with a less favorable outcome.
DEFINITIONS OF TNM

Primary Tumor (T)
TX Primary tumor cannot be assessed
T0 No evidence of primary tumor
Tis Carcinoma in situ: intraepithelial tumor without invasion of the lamina propria
T1 Tumor invades lamina propria, muscularis mucosae, or submucosa
T1a Tumor invades lamina propria or muscularis mucosae
T1b Tumor invades submucosa
T2 Tumor invades muscularis propria*
T3 Tumor penetrates subserosal connective tissue without invasion of visceral peritoneum or adjacent structures****
T4 Tumor invades serosa (visceral peritoneum) or adjacent structures****
T4a Tumor invades serosa (visceral peritoneum)
T4b Tumor invades adjacent structures

*Note: A tumor may penetrate the muscularis propria with extension into the gastrocolic or gastrohepatic ligaments, or into the greater or lesser omentum, without perforation of the visceral peritoneum covering these structures. In this case, the tumor is classified T3. If there is perforation of the visceral peritoneum covering the gastric ligaments or the omentum, the tumor should be classified T4.

**The adjacent structures of the stomach include the spleen, transverse colon, liver, diaphragm, pancreas, abdominal wall, adrenal gland, kidney, small intestine, and retroperitoneum.

***Intramural extension to the duodenum or esophagus is classified by the depth of the greatest invasion in any of these sites, including the stomach.

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)
NX Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed
N0 No regional lymph node metastasis*
N1 Metastasis in 1–2 regional lymph nodes
N2 Metastasis in 3–6 regional lymph nodes
N3 Metastasis in seven or more regional lymph nodes
N3a Metastasis in 7–15 regional lymph nodes
N3b Metastasis in 16 or more regional lymph nodes

*Note: A designation of pN0 should be used if all examined lymph nodes are negative, regardless of the total number removed and examined.

Distant Metastasis (M)
M0 No distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

Stage 0  Tis  N0  M0
Stage IA  T1  N0  M0
Stage IB  T2  N0  M0
Stage IIA  T3  N0  M0
Stage IIB  T4a  N0  M0
Stage IIA  T4b  N0  M0
Stage IIB  T4b  N1  M0
Stage IIIC  T4a  N2  M0
Stage IIIC  T4b  N3  M0
Stage IV  Any T  Any N  M1

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)
(Recommended for Collection)

Required for staging  None
Clinically significant  Tumor location
                  Serum carcinoembryonic antigen
                  Serum CA19.9

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

GX Grade cannot be assessed
G1 Well differentiated
G2 Moderately differentiated
G3 Poorly differentiated
G4 Undifferentiated

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

The staging recommendations apply only to carcinomas. Lymphomas, sarcomas, and carcinoid tumors (well-differentiated neuroendocrine tumors) are not included. Adenocarcinomas may be divided into the general subtypes listed later. In addition, the histologic terms intestinal, diffuse, and mixed may be applied. Mixed glandular/neuroendocrine carcinomas should be staged using the gastric carcinoma staging system as described in this chapter, not the staging system for well-differentiated gastrointestinal neuroendocrine tumors.

The histologic subtypes are as follows:

- Adenocarcinoma
- Papillary adenocarcinoma
- Tubular adenocarcinoma
- Mucinous adenocarcinoma
- Signet ring cell carcinoma
- Adenosquamous carcinoma
- Squamous cell carcinoma
- Small cell carcinoma
- Undifferentiated carcinoma

BIBLIOGRAPHY


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Stomach Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>CLINICAL</strong></th>
<th><strong>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</strong></th>
<th><strong>PATHOLOGIC</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extent of disease during and from surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y clinical—staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td></td>
<td>y pathologic — staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### TUMOR SIZE:

- **TX**: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- **T0**: No evidence of primary tumor
- **Tis**: Carcinoma *in situ*; intraepithelial tumor without invasion of the lamina propria
- **T1**: Tumor invades lamina propria, muscularis mucosae, or submucosa
- **T1a**: Tumor invades lamina propria or muscularis mucosae
- **T1b**: Tumor invades submucosa
- **T2**: Tumor invades muscularis propria
- **T3**: Tumor penetrates subserosal connective tissue without invasion of visceral peritoneum or adjacent structures*;***
- **T4**: Tumor invades serosa (visceral peritoneum) or adjacent structures**;***
- **T4a**: Tumor invades serosa (visceral peritoneum)
- **T4b**: Tumor invades adjacent structures

* A tumor may penetrate the muscularis propria with extension into the gastrocolic or gastrohepatic ligaments, or into the greater or lesser omentum, without perforation of the visceral peritoneum covering these structures. In this case, the tumor is classified T3. If there is perforation of the visceral peritoneum covering the gastric ligaments or the omentum, the tumor should be classified T4.

**The adjacent structures of the stomach include the spleen, transverse colon, liver, diaphragm, pancreas, abdominal wall, adrenal gland, kidney, small intestine, and retroperitoneum.

***Intramural extension to the duodenum or esophagus is classified by the depth of the greatest invasion in any of these sites, including the stomach.

#### REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)

- **NX**: Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed
- **N0**: No regional lymph node metastasis*
- **N1**: Metastasis in 1 to 2 regional lymph nodes
- **N2**: Metastasis in 3 to 6 regional lymph nodes
- **N3**: Metastasis in 7 or more regional lymph nodes
- **N3a**: Metastasis in 7 to 15 regional lymph nodes
- **N3b**: Metastasis in 16 or more regional lymph nodes

* A designation of pN0 should be used if all examined lymph nodes are negative, regardless of the total number removed and examined.

#### DISTANT METASTASIS (M)

- **M0**: No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- **M1**: Distant metastasis

---

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

*(continued on next page)*
### Stomach Staging Form

#### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II A</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>II A</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II B</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>II B</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III A</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>III A</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III B</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>III B</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III C</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>III C</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

- **Required for staging:** None
- **Clinically significant:**
  - Tumor location: ______________________________
  - Serum carcinoembryonic antigen: _______________
  - Serum CA19.9: ______________________________

#### Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

- **Grading system**
  - 2 grade system
  - 3 grade system
  - 4 grade system
  - No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available
- **Grade**
  - Grade I or 1
  - Grade II or 2
  - Grade III or 3
  - Grade IV or 4

### General Notes:

- For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.
- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- Histologic Grade (G)
  - 2 grade system
  - 3 grade system
  - 4 grade system
  - No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available
  - Grade I or 1
  - Grade II or 2
  - Grade III or 3
  - Grade IV or 4

### Hospital Name/Address

### Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
**General Notes (continued):**
r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.
surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

**Additional Descriptors**
Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):**

**National guidelines were used in treatment planning**
- NCCN
- Other (describe): ____________________________

**Physician signature**

**Data/Time**

---

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued on next page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
Small Intestine

(Lymphomas, carcinoid tumors, and visceral sarcomas are not included)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- T1 lesions have been divided into T1a (invasion of lamina propria) and T1b (invasion of submucosa) to facilitate comparison with tumors of other gastrointestinal sites
- Stage II has been subdivided into Stage IIA and Stage IIB
- The N1 category has been changed to N1 (1–3 positive lymph nodes) and N2 (four or more positive lymph nodes), leading to the division of Stage III into Stage IIIA and Stage IIIB

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T classification</th>
<th>N classification</th>
<th>M classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C17.0 Duodenum
- C17.1 Jejunum
- C17.2 Ileum
- C17.8 Overlapping lesion of small intestine
- C17.9 Small intestine, NOS

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES


INTRODUCTION

Although the small intestine accounts for one of the largest surface areas in the human body, it is one of the least common cancer sites in the digestive system, accounting for less than 2% of all malignant tumors of the gastrointestinal tract. A variety of tumors occur in the small intestine, with approximately 25–50% of the primary malignant tumors being adenocarcinomas, depending upon the population surveyed. At the beginning of the twenty-first century, approximately 5,600 new cases of cancer involving the small intestine are seen annually in the USA. The 1,100 deaths predicted to occur from small intestinal cancer are divided almost equally between men and women. Over 60% of tumors occur in the duodenum, followed by jejunum (20%) and ileum (15%).

An increased incidence of second malignancies has been noted in patients with primary small bowel adenocarcinoma, a finding related in part to the significantly increased risk for this malignancy in patients with hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer. Crohn’s disease and celiac disease are also associated with an increased risk for small intestinal carcinomas and lymphomas.

The patterns of local, regional, and metastatic spread for adenocarcinomas of the small intestine are comparable to those of similar histologic malignancies in other areas of the gastrointestinal tract. The classification and stage grouping described in this chapter are used for both clinical and pathologic staging of carcinomas of the small bowel and do not apply to other types of malignant small bowel tumors. Well-differentiated neuroendocrine tumors (carcinoid tumors)
arising in the small intestine are staged according to the system described in Chap. 17.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. This classification applies to carcinomas arising in the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum. It does not apply to carcinomas arising in the ileocecal valve or to carcinomas that may arise in Meckel's diverticulum. Carcinomas arising in the ampulla of Vater are staged according to the system described in Chap. 23.

Duodenum. About 25 cm in length, the duodenum extends from the pyloric sphincter of the stomach to the jejunum. It is usually divided anatomically into four parts, with the common bile duct and pancreatic duct opening into the second part at the ampulla of Vater.

Jejunum and Ileum. The jejunum (8 ft in length) and ileum (12 ft in length) extend from the junction with the duodenum proximally to the ileocecal valve distally. The division point between the jejunum and the ileum is arbitrary. As a general rule, the jejunum includes the proximal 40% and the ileum includes the distal 60% of the small intestine, exclusive of the duodenum.

General. The jejunal and ileal portions of the small intestine are supported by a fold of the peritoneum containing the blood supply and the regional lymph nodes, the mesentery. The shortest segment, the duodenum, has no real mesentery and is covered only by peritoneum anteriorly. The wall of all parts of the small intestine has five layers: mucosal, submucosal, muscular, subserosal, and serosal. A very thin layer of smooth muscle cells, the muscularis mucosa, separates the mucosa from the submucosa. The small intestine is entirely ensheathed by peritoneum, except for a narrow strip of bowel that is attached to the mesentery and that part of the duodenum that is located retroperitoneally.

Regional Lymph Nodes. For pN, histologic examination of a regional lymphadenectomy specimen will ordinarily include a representative number of lymph nodes distributed along the mesenteric vessels extending to the base of the mesentery. Histologic examination of a regional lymphadenectomy specimen will ordinarily include six or more lymph nodes. If the lymph nodes are negative, but the number ordinarily examined is not met, pN0 should be assigned. The number of lymph nodes sampled and the number of involved lymph nodes should be recorded.

Duodenal
- Duodenal
- Hepatic
- Pancreaticoduodenal
- Infrapyloric
- Gastroduodenal
- Pyloric

Superior mesenteric
Pericholedochal
Regional lymph nodes, NOS

Ileum and Jejunum
- Cecal (terminal ileum only)
- Ileocolic (terminal ileum only)
- Superior mesenteric
- Mesenteric, NOS
- Regional lymph nodes, NOS

Metastatic Sites. Cancers of the small intestine can metastasize to most organs, especially the liver, or to the peritoneal surfaces. Involvement of regional lymph nodes and invasion of adjacent structures are most common. Involvement of the celiac nodes is considered M1 disease for carcinomas of the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum. The presence of distant metastases and the presence of residual disease (R) have the most influence on survival.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. Imaging studies such as CT and MRI play a major role in clinical staging. Metastatic disease is assessed by routine chest films and chest CT. Intraoperative assessment plays a role in clinical evaluation, especially when tumor cannot be resected. Metastatic involvement of the liver may be evaluated by intraoperative ultrasonography.

Pathologic Staging. The primary tumor is staged according to its depth of penetration and the involvement of adjacent structures or distant sites. Lateral spread within the duodenum, jejunum, or ileum is not considered in this classification. Only the depth of tumor penetration in the bowel wall and spread to other structures defines the pT stage.

Although the two are similar, differences between this staging system and that of the colon should be noted. In the colon, pTis applies to intraepithelial (in situ) as well as to intramucosal lesions. In the small intestine, intramucosal spread is listed as pT1 instead of pTis. In this regard, the pT1 definition for the small bowel is essentially the same as the pT1 defined for stomach lesions. Invasion through the wall is classified the same as for colon cancer. Discontinuous hematogenous metastases or peritoneal metastases are coded as M1.

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

The anatomic extent of the tumor is the strongest indicator of outcome when the tumor can be resected. Prognosis after incomplete removal or for those patients who do not undergo cancer-directed surgery is poor. The presence of Crohn's disease and patients' age greater than 75 years are also associated with poorer outcome.

The pathologic extent of tumor, in terms of the depth of invasion through the bowel wall, is a significant prognostic factor, as is regional lymphatic spread. Histologic grade
has not emerged as a significant predictor of outcome in multivariate analysis. There are insufficient data to assess the impact of other more sophisticated pathologic factors and serum tumor markers, but it is logical to believe that the effect of those factors would be similar to that observed with colorectal cancer.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Tumor (T)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>Tumor invades lamina propria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>Tumor invades submucosa*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor invades muscularis propria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor invades through the muscularis propria into the subserosa or into the nonperitonealized perimuscular tissue (mesentery or retroperitoneum) with extension 2 cm or less*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor perforates the visceral peritoneum or directly invades other organs or structures (includes other loops of small intestine, mesentery, or retroperitoneum more than 2 cm, and abdominal wall by way of serosa; for duodenum only, invasion of pancreas or bile duct)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: The nonperitonealized perimuscular tissue is, for jejunum and ileum, part of the mesentery and, for duodenum in areas where serosa is lacking, part of the interface with the pancreas. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regional Lymph Nodes (N)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Metastasis in 1–3 regional lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Metastasis in four or more regional lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distant Metastasis (M)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)**

- Required for staging: None
- Clinically significant: Presurgical carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), Microsatellite instability (MSI), Presence of Crohn’s disease

Figure 12.1 shows observed 5-year survival rates for adenocarcinoma of the small intestine.

**HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)**

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

- GX: Grade cannot be assessed
- G1: Well differentiated
- G2: Moderately differentiated
- G3: Poorly differentiated
- G4: Undifferentiated

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

This staging classification applies only to carcinomas, including mixed carcinoma/well-differentiated neuroendocrine tumors, arising in the small intestine. Lymphomas, pure carcinoid tumors, and visceral sarcomas are not included. The three major histopathologic types are carcinomas (such as adenocarcinoma), well-differentiated neuroendocrine tumors (carcinoid tumors), and lymphomas. Primary lymphomas of the small intestine are staged as extranodal lymphomas. Neuroendocrine tumors (carcinoid tumors) of

**FIGURE 12.1.** Observed survival rates for 3,086 cases with adenocarcinoma of the small intestine. Data from the National Cancer Data Base (Commission on Cancer of the American College of Surgeons and the American Cancer Society) diagnosed in years 1998–2002. Stage I includes 328; Stage IIA, 685; Stage IIB, 304; Stage IIIA, 715; Stage IIIB, 328; and Stage IV, 726.
the small intestine are staged as described in Chap. 17; size, depth of invasion, regional lymph node status, and distant metastasis are considered significant prognostic factors. Less common malignant tumors include gastrointestinal stromal tumors and leiomyosarcoma. The malignant GIST lesions are classified using TNM nomenclature as described in Chap. 16.

BIBLIOGRAPHY


**Small Intestine Staging Form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extent of disease before any treatment</th>
<th>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</th>
<th>Extent of disease during and from surgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0 Tis T1a T2 T3 T4</td>
<td>PRIMARY TUMOR (T)</td>
<td>TX T0 Tis T1a T1b T2 T3 T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0 Tis T1a T1b T2 T3 T4</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a T1b T2 T3 T4</td>
<td>Carcinoma \textit{in situ}</td>
<td>TX T0 Tis T1a T1b T2 T3 T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b T2 T3 T4</td>
<td>Tumor invades lamina propria</td>
<td>T1a T1b T2 T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 T3 T4</td>
<td>Tumor invades submucosa</td>
<td>T1b T2 T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3 T4</td>
<td>Tumor invades muscularis propria</td>
<td>T2 T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor invades through the muscularis propria into the subserosa or into the nonperitonealized perimuscular tissue (mesentery or retroperitoneum) with extension 2 cm or less*</td>
<td>T2 T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor perforates the visceral peritoneum or directly invades other organs or structures (includes other loops of small intestine, mesentery, or retroperitoneum more than 2 cm, and abdominal wall by way of serosa; for duodenum only, invasion of pancreas or bile duct)</td>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*The nonperitonealized perimuscular tissue is, for jejunum and ileum, part of the mesentery and, for duodenum in areas where serosa is lacking, part of the interface with the pancreas.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)</td>
<td>NX N0 N1 N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td>NX N0 N1 N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td>N0 N1 N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Metastasis in 1 to 3 regional lymph nodes</td>
<td>N0 N1 N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Metastasis in 4 or more regional lymph nodes</td>
<td>N0 N1 N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DISTANT METASTASIS (M)</td>
<td>M0 M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ANATOMIC STAGE • PROGNOSTIC GROUPS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLINICAL</td>
<td>PATHOLOGIC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GROUP T N M</td>
<td>GROUP T N M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0 Tis N0 M0</td>
<td>0 Tis N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I T1 N0 M0</td>
<td>I T1 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II A</td>
<td>II A T3 N0 M0</td>
<td>II A T3 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>IIB T4 N0 M0</td>
<td>IIB T4 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III A</td>
<td>III A Any T N1 M0</td>
<td>III A Any T N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III B</td>
<td>III B Any T N2 M0</td>
<td>III B Any T N2 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>IV Any T Any N M1</td>
<td>IV Any T Any N M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)
REQUIRED FOR STAGING: None
CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:
- Pre-surgical Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA): __________
- Microsatellite Instability (MSI): _________________
- Presence of Crohn's Disease: ________________

Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

Grading system
- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

Grade
- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS
Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.
- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): ________________________________
National guidelines were used in treatment planning  NCCN  Other (describe):______________________________

Hospital Name/Address  Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
Appendix

(Carcinomas and carcinoid tumors of the appendix are included, but separately categorized)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

Appendiceal Carcinomas

- In the seventh edition, appendiceal carcinomas are separately classified. In the sixth edition, appendiceal carcinomas were classified according to the definitions for colorectal tumors.
- Appendiceal carcinomas are now separated into mucinous and nonmucinous types. Histologic grading is considered of particular importance for mucinous tumors. This is reflected in the staging considerations for metastatic tumors. The change is based on published data and analysis of NCDB data.
- In the seventh edition, the T4 category is divided into T4a and T4b as in the colon and is reflected in the subdivision of Stage II.
- M1 is divided into M1a and M1b where pseudomyxoma peritonei, M1a, is separated from nonperitoneal metastasis, M1b.
- Regional lymph node metastasis is unchanged from the sixth edition, in contrast to the subdivision of N for colorectal tumors, as there are no data justifying such a division for the appendiceal tumors. Therefore, Stage III for the appendix is unchanged from the sixth edition.
- In the seventh edition, Stage IV is subdivided on the basis of N, M, and G status, unlike colorectal carcinomas.
- Clinically significant prognostic factors are identified for collection in cancer registries including pretreatment CEA and CA 19.9, the number of tumor deposits in the mesentry, and where available, the presence of Microsatellite instability and 18q loss of heterozygosity.

Appendiceal Carcinoids

- A new classification is added for carcinoid tumors that were not classified previously by TNM. This is a new classification. There are substantial differences between the classification schemes of appendiceal carcinomas and carcinoids and between appendiceal carcinoids and other well-differentiated gastrointestinal neuroendocrine tumors (carcinoids) (see chapters of the digestive system for staging of other gastrointestinal carcinoids).
- Serum chromogranin A is identified as a significant prognostic factor.
INTRODUCTION

Carcinoma. Mucinous adenocarcinomas are a major form of appendiceal carcinoma. Metastasis limited to the peritoneal cavity is a particular form of spread of these tumors. Mucinous appendiceal carcinomas and cystadenocarcinomas make up about 50% of appendiceal adenocarcinoma (vs. 10% of colonic carcinomas). The 5-year survival of appendiceal mucinous carcinomas with distant metastasis is around 40–50% (vs. 10% for other appendiceal carcinomas), justifying separation of mucinous from nonmucinous adenocarcinomas and division of M1 into M1a and M1b, the former being amenable to debulking surgery.

Mucinous appendiceal carcinoma with peritoneal involvement limited to the right lower quadrant is much less aggressive than tumor that has gone beyond the RLQ, justifying a T4 designation rather than M1. Grading of mucinous adenocarcinomas is important even when assessing pseudomyxoma peritonei as low-grade tumors may be indolent despite extensive involvement of the peritoneum.

Goblet cell carcinoids are classified according to the criteria of adenocarcinomas because their behavior appears closer to them rather than to appendiceal carcinoids.

Carcinoid Tumor. Appendiceal carcinoid tumors, though neuroendocrine in nature, are separately classified because of their greater frequency, variety of subtypes, and behavioral differences compared with other gastrointestinal tract neuroendocrine tumors. Separate staging criteria for appendiceal carcinoids are needed because appendiceal carcinoids have no apparent in situ state, may arise in deep mucosa or submucosa, and the tumor size is considered more important than depth of invasion as a major criterion of aggressiveness for a localized tumor.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The appendix is a tubular structure that arises from the base of the cecum. Its length varies but is about 10 mm. It is connected to the ileal mesentery by the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Carcinoma</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3 N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4 N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T N2 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T N0 M1a G1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T N0 M1a G2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T N1 M1a Any G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T N2 M1a Any G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T Any N M1b Any G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Carcinoid**                    |
| Stage I                          |
| T1 N0 M0                         |
| Stage II                         |
| T2, T3 N0 M0                     |
| Stage III                        |
| T4 N0 M0                         |
| Any T N1 M0                      |
| Stage IV                         |
| Any T Any N M1                   |

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES
C18.1 Appendix

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGE
8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981
mesoappendix, through which its blood supply passes from the ileocolic artery.

**Regional Lymph Nodes.** Lymphatic drainage passes into the ileocolic chain of lymph nodes.

**Metastatic Sites.** Mucinous adenocarcinomas commonly spread along the peritoneal surfaces even in the absence of lymph node metastasis. The pattern of spread of non-mucinous adenocarcinomas, in contrast, resembles cecal (colonic) tumors. Appendiceal carcinoids also tend to spread, like cecal tumors, to regional lymph nodes and the liver. Goblet cell carcinoids appear to have a predilection for metastasis to ovary.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

**Clinical Staging.** Clinical assessment is based on medical history, physical examination, and imaging. Examinations designed to demonstrate the presence of extra-appendiceal metastasis (M) include chest films, computed tomography (CT; abdomen, pelvis, chest), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and PET (positron emission tomography) or fused PET/CT scans. In cases of carcinoids, determination of elevated urinary 5-HIAA may indicate liver metastasis.

**Pathologic Staging.** Appendiceal carcinomas are usually staged after surgical exploration of the abdomen and pathologic examination of the resected specimen.

T4 lesions are subdivided into T4a (tumor penetrates the visceral peritoneum) and T4b (tumor directly invades other organs or structures). Mucinous peritoneal tumor within the right lower quadrant is considered T4a; peritoneal spread beyond the right lower quadrant, including pseudomyxoma peritonei, is classified M1a.

Histological grading, particularly of mucinous tumors (those with over 50% of the tumor mass consisting of extracellular mucus) is needed to separate stages IVA and IVB tumors.

Lymph nodes are classified N1 or N2 according to the number involved with metastatic tumor. Involvement of 1–3 nodes is pN1, and the presence of four or more nodes involved with tumor metastasis is considered pN2.

A satellite peritumoral nodule or tumor deposit (TD) in the periappendiceal adipose tissue of a primary carcinoma without histologic evidence of residual lymph node in the nodule may represent discontinuous spread (T3), venous invasion with extravascular spread (T3, V1/2), or a totally replaced lymph node (N1/2). Replaced nodes should be counted as positive nodes while discontinuous spread or venous invasion should be counted in the site-specific factor TD.

Histological examination of a regional lymphadenectomy specimen ordinarily includes 12 or more lymph nodes. If the resected lymph nodes are negative, but the number of 12 nodes ordinarily examined is not met, the case should still be classified as pN0.

**Appendiceal carcinoids** are usually staged after laparoscopic or open surgical exploration of the abdomen (often for appendicitis) and pathologic examination of the resected specimen.

Classical carcinoid (well-differentiated neuroendocrine tumor), including tubular carcinoid, and atypical carcinoids (well-differentiated neuroendocrine carcinomas), a type seen much more commonly in the lung than in the appendix, also should be separately staged (a mitotic count of 2–10 per 10 hpf and focal necrosis are features of atypical carcinoids).

Goblet cell carcinoids are classified according to the criteria for adenocarcinomas because their behavior appears closer to them than to appendiceal carcinoids.

Lymph nodes with carcinoid are classified N1 regardless of the number of nodes involved.

**Restaging.** For either appendiceal carcinomas or carcinoid tumors, the r prefix is used for recurrent tumor status (rTNM) following a disease-free interval posttreatment.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

**Carcinoma.** Appendiceal mucinous carcinomas that spread to the peritoneum have a much better prognosis than nonmucinous tumors (Figure 13.1). Mucus that has spread beyond the right lower quadrant is a poor prognostic factor as is the presence of epithelial cells in the peritoneal cavity outside the appendix. Poor prognosis in pseudomyxoma peritonei is associated with high histological grade and/or invasion deep to the peritoneal surface. Debulking of peritoneal mucus can prolong survival, particularly in low-grade tumors. Cytological and DNA flow cytometry studies on aspirated mucus in pseudomyxoma peritonei cases are not helpful for prognostic purposes.

**Carcinoid.** There is controversy about the prognostic significance of mesoappendiceal invasion by a carcinoid. Tumor size appears to be the dominant local criterion for

**FIGURE 13.1.** Observed survival rates for 931 cases with carcinoma of the appendix. Data from the SEER 1973–2005 Public Use File diagnosed in years 1991–2000. Stage I includes 150; Stage II, 369; Stage III, 76; and Stage IV, 346.
aggressive behavior. Neural invasion is commonly seen in appendiceal carcinoids and does not appear to have prognostic significance. Tubular carcinoids are typically indolent. Goblet cell carcinoids are considered more aggressive than are other appendiceal carcinoids and are classified according to the criteria for appendiceal carcinomas (see previous discussion). They tend to grow in a concentric manner along the longitudinal axis of the appendix without appearing as an easily measurable tumor mass and may even extend imperceptively into the cecum. Therefore, the line of resection is very important in assessing residual tumor. The carcinoid syndrome is typically associated with carcinoids that are metastatic to the liver. An elevated level of serum chromogranin A is considered a poor prognostic indicator for patients with metastatic carcinoid.

### DEFINITIONS OF TNM

#### Carcinoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Tumor (T)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ: intraepithelial or invasion of lamina propria*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor invades submucosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor invades muscularis propria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor invades through muscularis propria into subserosa or into mesoappendix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor penetrates visceral peritoneum, including mucinous peritoneal tumor within the right lower quadrant and/or directly invades other organs or structures***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>Tumor penetrates visceral peritoneum, including mucinous peritoneal tumor within the right lower quadrant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Tumor directly invades other organs or structures</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Tis includes cancer cells confined within the glandular basement membrane (intraepithelial) or lamina propria (intra-mucosal) with no extension through muscularis mucosae into submucosa.

** Direct invasion in T4 includes invasion of other segments of the colorectum by way of the serosa, e.g., invasion of ileum.

*** Tumor that is adherent to other organs or structures, grossly, is classified cT4. However, if no tumor is present in the adhesion, microscopically, the classification should be pT1-3 depending on the anatomical depth of wall invasion.

#### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

| N0               | No regional lymph node metastasis |
| N1               | Metastasis in 1–3 regional lymph nodes |
| N2               | Metastasis in four or more regional lymph nodes |

#### Distant Metastasis (M)

| M0               | No distant metastasis |
| M1               | Distant metastasis |
| M1a              | Intraperitoneal metastasis beyond the right lower quadrant, including pseudomyxoma peritonei |
| M1b              | Nonperitoneal metastasis |

Note: A satellite peritumoral nodule or tumor deposit (TD) in the periappendiceal adipose tissue of a primary carcinoma without histologic evidence of residual lymph node in the nodule may represent discontinuous spread (T3), venous invasion with extravascular spread (T3, V1/2), or a totally replaced lymph node (N1/2). Replaced nodes should be counted as positive nodes while discontinuous spread or venous invasion should be counted in the site-specific factor TD.

#### Carcinoid

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Tumor (T)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>Tumor 1 cm or less in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>Tumor more than 1 cm but not more than 2 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 4 cm or with extension to the cecum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor more than 4 cm or with extension to the ileum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor directly invades other adjacent organs or structures, e.g., abdominal wall and skeletal muscle*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Penetration of the mesoappendix does not seem to be as important a prognostic factor as the size of the primary tumor and is not separately categorized.

#### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

| N0               | No regional lymph node metastasis |
| N1               | Regional lymph node metastasis |
| N2               | Metastasis in 1–3 regional lymph nodes |
| N3               | Metastasis in four or more regional lymph nodes |

#### Distant Metastasis (M)

| M0               | No distant metastasis |
| M1               | Distant metastasis |

**Note:** To view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have any questions about finding this option.
**pTNM Pathologic Classification.** The pT, pN, and pM categories correspond to the T, N, and M categories except that pM0 does not exist as a category.

**pN0.** Histological examination of a regional lymphadenectomy specimen will ordinarily include 12 or more lymph nodes. If the lymph nodes are negative, but the number ordinarily examined is not met, classify as pN0.

### ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

#### Carcinoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage 0</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIC</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Carcinoid

| Stage I | T1, T3 | N0 | M0 |
| Stage II | T2, T3 | N0 | M0 |
| Stage III | T4  | N0 | M0 |
|        | Any T  | N1 | M0 |
| Stage IV | Any T  | Any N | M1 |

### PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

**Required for staging** None

**Clinically significant** Serum Chromogranin A

### HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

#### Carcinoma

This staging classification applies to carcinomas that arise in the appendix. The histologic types include the following:

- Adenocarcinoma in situ*
- Adenocarcinoma
- Medullary carcinoma
- Mucinous carcinoma (colloid type) (greater than 50% mucinous carcinoma)
- Signet ring cell carcinoma (greater than 50% signet ring cell)
- Squamous cell (epidermoid) carcinoma
- Adenosquamous carcinoma
- Small cell carcinoma
- Undifferentiated carcinoma
- Carcinoma, NOS

*The term “high-grade dysplasia” may be used as a synonym for in situ carcinoma. These cases should be assigned pTis.
Carcinoid. This staging classification applies to carcinoids that arise in the appendix. The histologic types include the following:

- Carcinoid tumor
- Well-differentiated neuroendocrine tumor
- Tubular carcinoid
- Atypical carcinoid

Goblet cell carcinoids and adenocarcinoid are staged using the appendiceal carcinoma scheme. Well-differentiated neuroendocrine carcinoma after resection (relevant to resection margins that are macroscopically involved by tumor)

RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

Carcinoma and Carcinoid

R0  Complete resection, margins histologically negative; no residual tumor left after resection
R1  Incomplete resection, margins histologically involved, microscopic tumor remains after resection of gross disease (relevant to resection margins that are macroscopically involved by tumor)
R2  Incomplete resection, margins involved or gross disease remains

BIBLIOGRAPHY

### Appendix Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor Size:</td>
<td>Laterality:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ left □ right □ bilateral</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PRIMARY TUMOR (T)

- **Carcinoma**
  - Tumor invades submucosa
  - Tumor invades muscularis propria
  - Tumor invades through muscularis propria into subserosa or into mesoappendix (T4)
  - Tumor penetrates visceral peritoneum, including mucinous peritoneal tumor within the right lower quadrant and/or directly invades other organs or structures (T4a)
  - Tumor directly invades other organs or structures (T4b)

- **Carcinoid**
  - Tumor invades submucosa
  - Tumor invades muscularis propria
  - Tumor invades through muscularis propria into subserosa or into mesoappendix (T4)
  - Tumor penetrates visceral peritoneum, including mucinous peritoneal tumor within the right lower quadrant and/or directly invades other organs or structures (T4a)
  - Tumor directly invades other organs or structures (T4b)

#### REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)

- **Carcinoma**
  - Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
  - No regional lymph node metastasis
  - Metastasis in 1 to 3 regional lymph nodes
  - Metastasis in 4 or more regional lymph nodes

---

(continued on next page)
### APPENDIX STAGING FORM

#### CARCINOID

- **N0**
  - No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1**
  - Regional lymph node metastasis

#### DISTANT METASTASIS (M)

- **M0**
  - No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- **M1**
  - Distant metastasis
- **M1a**
  - Intraperitoneal metastasis beyond the right lower quadrant, including pseudomyxoma peritonei
- **M1b**
  - Non-peritoneal metastasis

#### CARCINOMA

- **N0**
  - No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1**
  - Regional lymph node metastasis

#### CLINICAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>G1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>G2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>Any G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>Any G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>Any G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PATHOLOGIC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>G1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>G2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>Any G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>Any G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>Any G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ANATOMIC STAGE • PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

#### CARCINOMA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2, T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### CARCINOID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2, T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued from previous page)
## PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)

### Carcinoma

**REQUIRED FOR STAGING:** Grade

**CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:**
- Preoperative/Pretreatment carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)
- Preoperative/Pretreatment CA 19-9
- Tumor Deposits (TD)
- Microsatellite instability (MSI)
- 18q Loss of Heterozygosity (LOH)

### Carcinoid

**REQUIRED FOR STAGING:** None

**CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:**
- Serum Chromogranin A

### Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grading system</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS

**Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)** have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

### Residual Tumor (R)

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

### General Notes:

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- **m** suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- **y** prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- **r** prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- **a** prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

### Surgical margins

is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

### Neoadjuvant treatment

is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

### Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

### National guidelines were used in treatment planning

- NCCN
- Other (describe):

---

Physician signature

Date/Time

---

### HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS

---

### PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Colon and Rectum

(Sarcomas, lymphomas, and carcinoid tumors of the large intestine are not included)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- In the sixth edition, Stage II was subdivided into IIA and IIB on the basis of whether the primary tumor was T3N0 or T4N0, respectively, and Stage III was subdivided into IIA (T1-2N1M0), IIB (T3-4N1M0), or IIC (any TN2M0). In the seventh edition, further substaging of Stage II and III has been accomplished, based on survival and relapse data that was not available for the prior edition.
- Expanded data sets have shown differential prognosis within T4 lesions based on extent of disease. Accordingly T4 lesions are subdivided as T4a (Tumor penetrates the surface of the visceral peritoneum) and as T4b. (Tumor directly invades or is histologically adherent to other organs or structures).
- The potential importance of satellite tumor deposits is now defined by the new site-specific factor Tumor Deposits (TD) that describe their texture and number. T1-2 lesions that lack regional lymph node metastasis but have tumor deposit(s) will be classified in addition as N1c.
- The number of nodes involved with metastasis influences prognosis within both N1 and N2 groups. Accordingly N1 will be subdivided as N1a (metastasis in 1 regional node) and N1b (metastasis in 2–3 nodes), and N2 will be subdivided as N2a (metastasis in 4–6 nodes) and N2b (metastasis in 7 or more nodes).
- Stage Group II is subdivided into IIA (T3N0), IIB (T4aN0) and IIC (T4bN0).
- Stage Group III:
  - A category of N1 lesions, T4bN1, that was formerly classified as IIIB was found to have outcomes more akin to IIC and has been reclassified from IIIB to IIC.
  - Similarly, several categories of N2 lesions formerly classified as IIC have outcomes more akin to other stage groups; therefore, T1N2a has been reclassified as IIA and T1N2b, T2N2a-b, and T3N2a have all been reclassified as IIIB.
  - M1 has been subdivided into M1a for single metastatic site vs. M1b for multiple metastatic sites.

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
INTRODUCTION

The TNM classification for carcinomas of the colon and rectum provides more detail than other staging systems. Compatible with the Dukes’ system, the TNM adds greater precision in the identification of prognostic subgroups. TNM staging is based on the depth of tumor invasion into or beyond the wall of the colorectum (T), invasion of or adherence to adjacent organs or structures (T), the number of regional lymph nodes involved (N), and the presence or absence of distant metastasis (M). The TNM classification applies to both clinical and pathologic staging. Most cancers of the colon and many cancers of the rectum are staged after pathologic examination of a resected specimen. However, patients with high-risk rectal cancers are commonly receiving preoperative adjuvant treatment prior to surgical resection and pathological stage annotation should employ the y prefix in such cases. This staging system applies to all carcinomas arising in the colon or rectum. Adenocarcinomas of the vermiform appendix are classified according to the TNM staging system for appendix (see Chap. 13), whereas cancers that occur in the anal canal are staged according to the classification used for the anus (see Chap. 15). Well-differentiated neuroendocrine carcinomas (carcinoid tumors) of the colorectum are classified according to the TNM staging system for gastrointestinal, small bowel, and colonic and rectal carcinoid tumors (well-differentiated neuroendocrine tumors and well-differentiated neuroendocrine carcinomas) as described in Chap. 17.

ANATOMY

The divisions of the colon and rectum are as follows:

- Cecum
- Ascending colon
- Hepatic flexure
- Transverse colon
- Splenic flexure
- Descending colon

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C18.0 Cecum
- C18.2 Ascending colon
- C18.3 Hepatic flexure of colon
- C18.4 Transverse colon
- C18.5 Splenic flexure of colon
- C18.6 Descending colon
- C18.7 Sigmoid colon
- C18.8 Overlapping lesion of colon
- C18.9 Colon, NOS
- C19.9 Rectosigmoid junction
- C20.9 Rectum, NOS

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

- 8000–8152, 8154–8231,
- 8243–8245, 8247–8248,
- 8256–8576, 8940–8950,
- 8980–8981

Note: cTNM is the clinical classification, pTNM is the pathologic classification. The y prefix is used for those cancers that are classified after neoadjuvant pretreatment (e.g., ypTNM). Patients who have a complete pathologic response are ypTNM0/M0 that may be similar to Stage Group 0 or I. The r prefix is to be used for those cancers that have recurred after a disease-free interval (rTNM).

T, N, and M Staging Groups

- Stage 0: Tis N0 M0
- Stage I: T1 N0 M0
- Stage II: T2 N0 M0
- Stage III: T3 N0 M0
- Stage IV: Any T Any N M1
Sigmoid colon
Rectosigmoid junction
Rectum

Primary Site. The large intestine (colorectum) extends from the terminal ileum to the anal canal. Excluding the rectum and vermiform appendix, the colon is divided into four parts: the right or ascending colon, the middle or transverse colon, the left or descending colon, and the sigmoid colon. The sigmoid colon is continuous with the rectum which terminates at the anal canal.

The cecum is a large, blind pouch that arises from the proximal segment of the right colon. It measures 6–9 cm in length and is covered with a visceral peritoneum (serosa). The ascending colon measures 15–20 cm in length. The posterior surface of the ascending (and descending) colon lacks peritoneum and thus is in direct contact with the retroperitoneum. In contrast, the anterior and lateral surfaces of the ascending (and descending) colon have serosa and are intraperitoneal. The hepatic flexure connects the ascending colon with the transverse colon, passing just inferior to the liver and anterior to the duodenum.

The transverse colon is entirely intraperitoneal, supported on a mesentery that is attached to the pancreas. Anteriorly, its serosa is continuous with the gastrocolic ligament. The splenic flexure connects the transverse colon to the descending colon, passing inferior to the spleen and anterior to the tail of the pancreas. As noted above, the posterior aspect of the descending colon lacks serosa and is in direct contact with the retroperitoneum, whereas the anterior and lateral surfaces have serosa and are intraperitoneal. The descending colon measures 10–15 cm in length. The colon becomes completely intraperitoneal once again at the sigmoid colon, where the mesentery develops at the medial border of the left posterior major psoas muscle and extends to the rectum. The transition from sigmoid colon to rectum is marked by the fusion of the taenia of the sigmoid colon to the circumferential longitudinal muscle of the rectum. This occurs roughly 12–15 cm from the dentate line.

Approximately 12 cm in length, the rectum extends from the fusion of the taenia to the puborectalis ring. The rectum is covered by peritoneum in front and on both sides in its upper third and only on the anterior wall in its middle third. The peritoneum is reflected laterally from the rectum to form the perirectal fossa and, anteriorly, the uterine or rectovesical fold. There is no peritoneal covering in the lower third, which is often known as the rectal ampulla.

The anal canal, which measures 3–5 cm in length, extends from the superior border of the puborectalis sling to the anal verge. The superior border of the puborectalis sling is the proximal portion of the palpable anorectal ring on digital rectal examination and is approximately 1–2 cm proximal to the dentate line.

Regional Lymph Nodes. Regional nodes are located (1) along the course of the major vessels supplying the colon and rectum, (2) along the vascular arcades of the marginal artery, and (3) adjacent to the colon—that is, located along the mesocolic border of the colon. Specifically, the regional lymph nodes are the pericolic and perirectal nodes and those found along the ileocolic, right colic, middle colic, left colic, inferior mesenteric artery, superior rectal (hemorrhoidal), and internal iliac arteries.

In the assessment of pN, the number of lymph nodes sampled should be recorded. The number of nodes examined from an operative specimen has been reported to be associated with improved survival, possibly because of increased accuracy in staging. It is important to obtain at least 10–14 lymph nodes in radical colon and rectum resections in patients without neoadjuvant therapy, but in cases in which tumor is resected for palliation or in patients who have received preoperative radiation, fewer lymph nodes may be removed or present. In all cases, however, it is essential that the total number of regional lymph nodes recovered from the resection specimen be described since that number is prognostically important (Tables 14.1–14.7; Figures 14.1 and 14.2; see section “Prognostic Features”). A pN0 determination is assigned when these nodes are histologically negative, even though fewer than the recommended

TABLE 14.1. Impact of node and tumor category on survival and relapse: Rectal cancer pooled analysis 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Overall survivalb</th>
<th>Disease-free survivalb</th>
<th>Local recurrenceb</th>
<th>Distant metastasisb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No.</td>
<td>5-Year (%)</td>
<td>p Value</td>
<td>No.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0T3</td>
<td>668</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>0.046</td>
<td>664</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1T1-2</td>
<td>225</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>544</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>536</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2T1-2</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>663</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>659</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


a Unadjusted Kaplan–Meier survival estimates.
b Cumulative incidence rates.
number of nodes has been analyzed. However, when fewer than the number of nodes recommended by the College of American Pathologists (CAP) have been found, it is important that the pathologist report the degree of diligence of their efforts to find lymph nodes in the specimen.

The regional lymph nodes for each segment of the large bowel are designated as follows:

**Segment**
- **Cecum**
  - Pericolic, anterior cecal, posterior cecal, ileocolic, right colic
- **Ascending colon**
  - Pericolic, ileocolic, right colic, middle colic
- **Hepatic flexure**
  - Pericolic, middle colic, right colic
- **Transverse colon**
  - Pericolic, middle colic, left colic
- **Splenic flexure**
  - Pericolic, middle colic, left colic, inferior mesenteric
- **Descending colon**
  - Pericolic, left colic, inferior mesenteric, sigmoid

**Segment**
- **Rectosigmoid**
  - Pericolic, inferior mesenteric, superior rectal (hemorrhoidal), sigmoidal, sigmoid mesenteric
- **Rectum**
  - Perirectal, sigmoid mesenteric, inferior mesenteric, lateral sacral preperitoneal, internal iliac, superior rectal (hemorrhoidal), middle rectal (hemorrhoidal), inferior rectal (hemorrhoidal)

**Metastatic Sites** Although carcinomas of the colon and rectum can metastasize to almost any organ, the liver and lungs are most commonly affected. Seeding of other segments of the colon, small intestine, or peritoneum also can occur.

### TABLE 14.2. Impact of node and tumor category on survival and relapse: US GI Intergroup 0144

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>No.</th>
<th>5-Year (%)</th>
<th>p Value</th>
<th>No.</th>
<th>5-Year (%)</th>
<th>p Value</th>
<th>5-Year (%)</th>
<th>p Value</th>
<th>5-Year (%)</th>
<th>p Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N0T3</td>
<td>503</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>503</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>71</td>
<td></td>
<td>45</td>
<td>64</td>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1T1-2</td>
<td>223</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
<td>223</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.035</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>482</td>
<td>67</td>
<td></td>
<td>482</td>
<td>57</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td>31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>63</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2T1-2</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.009</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>403</td>
<td>48</td>
<td></td>
<td>403</td>
<td>39</td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td>49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
<td>33</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


* Unadjusted Kaplan–Meier survival estimates.

**TABLE 14.3. Survival and relapse rates by risk for relapse category: Rectal cancer pooled analysis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk for relapse</th>
<th>Stagea</th>
<th>Survival, 5-yearb</th>
<th>Relapse</th>
<th>Stage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>TN</td>
<td>MAC</td>
<td>OS (%)</td>
<td>DFS (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1N0</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>–90</td>
<td>–90</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2N0</td>
<td>B1</td>
<td>–90</td>
<td>–90</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>T1-2N1</td>
<td>C1</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3N0</td>
<td>B2</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderately high</td>
<td>T1-2N2</td>
<td>C1</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4N0</td>
<td>B3</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3N1</td>
<td>C2</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>T3N2</td>
<td>C2</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4N1</td>
<td>C3</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4N2</td>
<td>C3</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


a Stage of disease based on surgical and pathological findings at the time of resection.
b Survival – Unadjusted Kaplan–Meier estimates; OS overall survival and DFS disease-free survival.


* Data derived from prior publications, as low-risk patients were not eligible for the three phase III trials in the pooled analysis.
### TABLE 14.4. Rectal cancer: Changes in AJCC Substaging for Stage III

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Pooled Analysis #1</th>
<th>US GI INT 0144</th>
<th>SEER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Survival, 5-year (%)</td>
<td>Survival, 5-year (%)</td>
<td>TNM stage 6th ed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TN</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>DFS</td>
<td>OS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1-2N0</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3N0</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1-2N1</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1-2N2</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3N2</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4N1</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4N2</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bold print and gray screen indicate change from AJCC 6th edition.

a Stage of disease based on surgical and pathological findings at the time of resection.


d Change in substaging of Stage III (bold type and gray-screened items) based on outcomes in Rectal Pooled Analyses, INT 0144, SEER data.

e SEER relative and observed survival data; modified from Gunderson LL, Jessup JM, Sargent D, et al. J Clin Oncol., in press.

### TABLE 14.5. Rectal Cancer: Expanded Changes in AJCC Substaging for Stage II and III Based on Expanded SEER Data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>SEER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TN</td>
<td>Relative Survival, 5-year (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1N0</td>
<td>96.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2N0</td>
<td>92.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3N0</td>
<td>78.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4aN0</td>
<td>69.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4bN0</td>
<td>53.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1-2N1</td>
<td>85.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1N2a</td>
<td>82.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2N2a</td>
<td>67.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3N1a</td>
<td>66.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4aN1a</td>
<td>65.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3N1b</td>
<td>59.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1N2b</td>
<td>59.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4aN2a</td>
<td>53.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4aN1b</td>
<td>52.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3N2a</td>
<td>49.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2N2b</td>
<td>46.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3N2b</td>
<td>37.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4aN2b</td>
<td>28.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4bN1</td>
<td>28.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4bN2a</td>
<td>22.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4bN2b</td>
<td>14.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bold print and gray screen indicate change from AJCC 6th edition.

a Change in substaging of stages II/III (bold type and gray-screened items) based on expanded outcomes in SEER data analyses.

b T2N2a rectal lesions did worse than colon T2N2a lesions, both categories placed in Stage IIIB.

c T4aN2a rectal lesions did better than colon T4aN2a lesions, both categories placed in Stage IIIC.
**TABLE 14.6.** Colon cancer: Changes in AJCC substaging for stage III

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>SEER Survival, 5-year Relative</th>
<th>TNM stage 6th ed</th>
<th>SEER Survival, 5-year Observed</th>
<th>TNM stage 7th ed</th>
<th>NCDB Survival, 5-year Observed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T1-2N0</td>
<td>97.1 I</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>76.3 I</td>
<td>71.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3N0</td>
<td>87.5 IIA</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>66.7 IIA</td>
<td>61.5 I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4N0</td>
<td>71.5 IIB</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>55.0 IIB</td>
<td>47.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1-2N1</td>
<td>87.7 IIA</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>71.1 IIA</td>
<td>67.4 I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1-2N2</td>
<td>75.0 IIIC</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>61.5 IIIB</td>
<td>51.2 I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3N1</td>
<td>68.7 IIIB</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>54.9 IIIB</td>
<td>53.1 I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3N2</td>
<td>47.3 IIIC</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>38.1 IIIC</td>
<td>37.3 I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4N1</td>
<td>50.5 IIIB</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>39.6 IIIC</td>
<td>34.1 I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4N2</td>
<td>27.1 IIIC</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>21.7 IIIC</td>
<td>22.4 I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bold print and gray screen indicate change from AJCC 6th edition.

* Stage of disease based on surgical and pathological findings at the time of resection.
* SEER relative and observed survival data; modified from Gunderson LL, Jessup JM, Sargent D, et al. J Clin Oncol., in press.
* Change in substaging of stage III (bold type and gray-screened items) based on outcomes in SEER and NCDB data analyses.
* NCDB observed survival; Modified from Stewart A, Greene R. Personal communication, May 2007.

**TABLE 14.7.** Colon cancer: Expanded changes in AJCC substaging for stage II and III based on expanded SEER data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>SEER Survival, 5-year Relative</th>
<th>TNM Stage, 6th ed</th>
<th>SEER Survival, 5-year Observed</th>
<th>TNM Stage, 7th ed</th>
<th>SEER Observed Survival, 5-year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T1N0</td>
<td>97.4 0.6 I</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>78.7 0.5</td>
<td>71.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2N0</td>
<td>96.8 0.6 I</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>74.3 0.4</td>
<td>66.7 0.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3N0</td>
<td>87.5 0.4 IIIA</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>73.7 1.2</td>
<td>60.6 0.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4aN0</td>
<td>79.6 1.0 IIIB</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>67.2 1.6</td>
<td>43.7 1.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4bN0</td>
<td>58.4 1.3 IIIC</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>64.7 3.0</td>
<td>37.3 1.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1-2N1a</td>
<td>90.7 1.5 IIIA</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>58.2 0.6</td>
<td>52.2 1.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1-2N1b</td>
<td>83.0 2.0 IIIA</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>51.7 0.6</td>
<td>42.1 1.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1-2N2a</td>
<td>79.0 3.6 IIIC</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>51.8 5.3</td>
<td>42.8 0.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3N1a</td>
<td>74.2 0.8 IIIB</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>50.2 1.5</td>
<td>32.9 1.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4aN1a</td>
<td>67.6 2.0 IIIB</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>30.4 0.9</td>
<td>18.3 1.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4bN1a</td>
<td>65.3 0.8 IIIB</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>30.6 1.8</td>
<td>25.4 1.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4bN1b</td>
<td>62.4 6.5 IIIC</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>15.7 1.9</td>
<td>12.9 1.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bold print and gray screen indicate change from AJCC 6th edition.

* T2N2a colon lesions did better than rectal T2N2a (both categories placed in stage IIIB).
* Change in substaging of stages II/III (bold type and gray-screened items) based on expanded outcomes in SEER data analyses.
* T4aN2a colon lesions did worse than rectal T4aN2a (both categories placed in Stage IIIC).
FIGURE 14.1. (A–E) Interaction among T and N classifications and total nodes examined on 5-year survival in colon cancer. Relative survival for pT1-4 by N1a (1 positive node), N1b (2–3 positive nodes), N2a (4–6 positive nodes), and N2b (7 or more positive nodes) on 171,006 patients, SEER analysis. The effect of the total number of nodes examined is categorized along the abscissa. Relative survival increases for most combinations of T and N classification as the number of nodes examined increases. Data are mean ± standard error of the mean 5-year survival for each data point (From ssp://seerstat.cancer.gov:2038).
FIGURE 14.2. (A–E) Interaction among T and N classifications and total nodes examined on 5-year survival in rectal cancer. Relative survival for pT1-4 by N1a (1 positive node), N1b (2–3 positive nodes), N2a (4–6 positive nodes) and N2b (7 or more positive nodes) on 70,131 patients, SEER analysis. The effect of the total number of nodes examined is categorized along the abscissa. Relative survival increases for most combinations of T and N classification as the number of nodes examined increases. Data are mean ± standard error of the mean 5-year survival for each data point (From ssp://seerstat.cancer.gov:2038).
RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. Clinical assessment is based on medical history, physical examination, sigmoidoscopy, and colonoscopy with biopsy. Examinations designed to demonstrate the presence of extrarectal or extracolonic metastasis (M) may include chest radiographic films, computed tomography (CT; abdomen, pelvis, chest), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and positron emission tomography (PET) or fused PET/CT scans.

For patients with rectal cancer, the pelvic extent of disease (TN categories) combined with the absence of extrapelvic metastasis (M) determines whether or not neoadjuvant treatment is appropriate. The primary imaging modalities to assess the neoadjuvant pelvic extent of disease are endoscopic ultrasound (EUS), pelvic CT, and pelvic MRI alone or with endorectal coil. To improve the accuracy of nodal staging, EUS may be augmented with fine-needle aspiration of lymph nodes suspicious for metastasis. It is especially important that patients who will receive neoadjuvant treatment should be assigned a clinical stage based on disease extent prior to the initiation of treatment (cTNM).

Pathologic Staging. Most cancers of the colon and many cancers of the rectum are pathologically staged after surgical exploration of the abdomen, cancer-directed surgical resection, and pathologic examination of the resected specimen (pTNM). For patients who were given a clinical stage (cTNM) prior to initiating neoadjuvant treatment, a modified pathologic stage is generated after surgical resection annotated by the y prescript (ypTNM).

The definition of in situ carcinoma—pTis—includes cancer cells confined within the glandular basement membrane (intraepithelial) or lamina propria (intramucosal) with no extension through the muscularis mucosae into the submucosa. Neither intraepithelial nor intramucosal carcinomas of the large intestine are associated with risk for metastasis.

Carcinoma in a polyp is classified according to the pT definitions adopted for colorectal carcinomas. For instance, carcinoma that is limited to the lamina propria is classified as pTis, whereas tumor that has invaded through the muscularis mucosae and entered the submucosa of the polyp head or stalk is classified as pT1.

Tumor that has penetrated the visceral peritoneum as a result of direct extension through the wall and subserosa of the colon or proximal rectum is assigned to the pT4 category, as is tumor that directly invades or is histologically adherent to other organs or structures, whether or not it penetrates a serosal surface. For both colon and rectum, expanded data sets have shown different outcomes for tumors within the pT4 category based on extent of disease (see section "Prognostic Factors"; Tables 14.1–14.7, Figures 14.1 and 14.2). Accordingly pT1 has been subdivided into pT1a (metastasis in 1 regional lymph node) and pT1b (metastasis in 2–3 regional lymph nodes), and pT2 has been subdivided into pT2a (metastasis in 4–6 regional lymph nodes) and pT2b (metastasis in 7 or more regional lymph nodes).

Discrete foci of tumor found in the pericolic or perirectal fat or in adjacent mesentery (mesocolic fat) away from the leading edge of the tumor and showing no evidence of residual lymph node tissue but within the lymph drainage area of the primary carcinoma are considered to be peritoneal deposits or satellite nodules, and their number should be recorded in the site-specific Prognostic Markers on the staging form as Tumor Deposits (TD). Such tumor deposits may represent discontinuous spread, venous invasion with extravascular spread (V1/2), or a totally replaced lymph node (N1/2). If tumor deposits are observed in lesions that would otherwise be classified as T1 or T2, then the primary tumor classification is not changed, but the nodule is recorded in the TD category and as a N1c positive node.

Metastasis to only one site (e.g., liver, lung, ovary, non-regional node) should be recorded as M1a. Metastasis to multiple sites or the peritoneal surface is M1b. The absence of metastasis in any specific site or sites examined pathologically is not pM0. The designation of M0 should never be assigned by the pathologist, because M0 is a global designation referring to the absence of detectable metastasis anywhere in the body. Therefore, "pM0" would connotes pathologic documentation of the absence of distance metastasis throughout the body, a determination that could only be made at autopsy (and would be annotated as m0).

If the tumor recurs at the site of surgery, it is anatomically assigned to the proximal segment of the anastomosis (unless that segment is the small intestine, in which case the colonic or rectal segment should be designated as appropriate) and restaged by the TNM classification. The r prefix is used for the recurrent tumor stage (rTNM).

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

Seven new prognostic factors that are clinically significant are included for collection, in addition to the prior notation of serum CEA levels. The new site-specific factors include: tumor deposits (TD), the number of satellite tumor deposits discontinuous from the leading edge of the carcinoma and that lack evidence of residual lymph node; a tumor regression grade
that enables the pathologic response to neoadjuvant therapy to be graded, the circumferential resection margin (CRM, measured in mm from the edge of tumor to the nearest dissected margin of the surgical resection); microsatellite instability (MSI), an important but controversial prognostic factor especially for colon cancer; and perineural invasion (PN, histologic evidence of invasion of regional nerves) that may have a similar prognosis as lymphovascular invasion. KRAS mutation status will also be collected since recent analyses indicate that mutation in KRAS is associated with lack of response to treatment with monoclonal antibodies directed against the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) in patients with metastatic colorectal carcinoma. The 18q LOH assay has been validated, and there is work to qualify this as a prognostic marker that would suggest the need for adjuvant therapy in stage II colon cancer.

**Tumor Regression Grade.** The pathologic response to preoperative adjuvant treatment should be recorded according to the CAP guidelines for recording the tumor regression grade (see CAP Protocol for the examination of Specimens from Patients with Carcinomas of the Colon and Rectum) because neoadjuvant chemoradiation in rectal cancer is often associated with significant tumor response and downstaging. Although the data are not definitive, complete eradication of the tumor, as detected by pathologic examination of the resected specimen, may be associated with a better prognosis and, conversely, failure of the tumor to respond to neoadjuvant treatment appears to be an adverse prognostic factor. Therefore, specimens from patients receiving neoadjuvant chemoradiation should be thoroughly examined at the primary tumor site, in regional nodes and for peritumoral satellite nodules or deposits in the remainder of the specimen. The degree of tumor response may correlate with prognosis. Those patients with minimal or no residual disease after therapy may have a better prognosis than gross residual disease. Whereas a number of different grading systems for tumor regression have been advocated, a four-point tumor regression grade will be used to assess response that is similar to that of Ryan et al. except that the complete absence of viable tumor will be recorded as a response that is similar to that of Ryan et al. (Table 14.8).

**Circumferential Resection Margins.** It is essential that accurate pathologic evaluation of the CRM adjacent to the deepest point of tumor invasion be performed. The CRM is the surgically dissected nonperitonealized surface of the specimen. It corresponds to any aspect of the colorectum that is not covered by a serosal layer of mesothelial cells and must be dissected from the retroperitoneum or subperitoneum in order to remove the viscus. In contradistinction, serosalized surfaces of the colorectum are not dissected; they are naturally occurring anatomic structures and are not pathologic surgical margins. The circumferential surface of surgical resection specimens of ascending colon, descending colon, or upper rectum is only partially peritonealized, and the demarcation between the peritonealized surface and the nonperitonealized surface (corresponding to the CRM) of such specimens is not always easily appreciated on pathologic examination. Therefore, the surgeon is encouraged to mark the peritoneal reflection and/or the area of deepest tumor penetration adjacent to a nonperitonealized surface with a clip or suture so that the pathologist may accurately identify and evaluate the CRM.

For mid and distal rectal cancers (subperitoneal location), the entire surface of the resection specimen corresponds to a CRM (anterior, posterior, medial, lateral). For proximal rectal or retroperitoneal colon cancers (ascending, descending, possibly cecum), surgically dissected margins will include those that lie in a retroperitoneal or subperitoneal location as described above (Figure 14.3). For segments of the colon that are entirely covered by a visceral peritoneum (transverse, sigmoid, possibly cecum), the only specimen margin that is surgically dissected is the mesenteric margin, unless the cancer is adherent to or invading an adjacent organ or structure. Therefore, for cancers of the cecum, transverse or sigmoid colon that extends to the cut edge of the mesentery, assignment of a positive CRM is appropriate.

For rectal cancer, the quality of the surgical technique is likely a key factor in the success of surgical outcomes relative to local recurrence and possibly long-term survival. Numerous nonrandomized studies have demonstrated that total mesorectal excision (TME) with adequate surgical clearance around the penetrating edge of the tumor decreases the rate of local relapse. The TME technique entails precise sharp dissection within the areolar plane of loose connective tissue outside (lateral to) the visceral mesorectal fascia in order to remove the rectum. With this approach, all mesorectal soft tissues encasing the rectum, which includes the mesentery and all regional nodes, are removed intact. Thus, the circumferential surface (CRM) of TME resection specimens is the mesorectum or Waldeyer’s fascia. Rectal resection performed by less precise techniques may be associated with incomplete excision of the mesorectum. It is critical that the analysis of the surgical specimen follows the CAP guidelines that refer to examination of the TME specimen. In addition, it is essential that the distance between the closest leading edge of the tumor and the CRM (known as the surgical clearance) be measured pathologically and recorded in mm in the CRM field on the staging form. A margin of greater than 1 mm is required with TME to be considered a negative margin because surgical clearance of 1 mm or less is associated

---

**TABLE 14.8. Tumor regression grade**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Tumor regression grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No viable cancer cells</td>
<td>0 (Complete response)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single cells or small groups of cancer cells</td>
<td>1 (Moderate response)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residual cancer outgrown by fibrosis</td>
<td>2 (Minimal response)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimal or no tumor kill, extensive</td>
<td>3 (Poor response)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*American Joint Committee on Cancer* • 2010
with a significantly increased risk of local recurrence and should be classified as positive (Figure 14.3).

Residual Tumor (R) The completeness of resection is largely dependent on the status of the CRM, although the designation is global and would include the transverse margins and other disease observed but not removed at surgery. The resection (R) codes should be given for each procedure:

- R0—Complete tumor resection with all margins histologically negative
- R1—Incomplete tumor resection with microscopic surgical resection margin involvement (margins grossly uninvolved)
- R2—Incomplete tumor resection with gross residual tumor that was not resected (primary tumor, regional nodes, macroscopic margin involvement)

Isolated Tumor Cells and Molecular Node Involvement. As technology progresses and sentinel node biopsy or other procedures may become feasible in colon and rectal surgery, the issue of interpretation of very small amounts of detected tumor in regional lymph nodes will continue to be classified as pN0, and the universal terminology for these isolated tumor cells (ITC) will follow the terminology referenced in Chap. 1. The prognostic significance of ITCs, defined as single malignant cells or a few tumor cells in microclusters, identified in regional lymph nodes that otherwise would be considered to be negative is still unclear. Therefore, ITC identified the collection of data on ITC that may be generated by pathologists who use special immunohistochemical stains or molecular analysis procedures to identify ITC in nodes that might otherwise be considered negative for metastasis by standard hematoxylin and eosin (H&E). It should be noted that isolated tumor cells identified on H&E stains alone are also classified as ITC and are annotated in the same fashion as ITC seen on immunohistochemical stains (i.e., pN0(i+); “i” = “isolated tumor cells”).

KRAS. Analysis of multiple recent clinical trials has shown that the presence of a mutation in either codon 12 or 13 of KRAS (abnormal or “mutated” KRAS) is strongly associated with a lack of response to treatment with anti-EGFR antibodies in patients with metastatic colorectal carcinoma. It is recommended that patients with advanced colorectal carcinoma be tested for the presence of mutations in KRAS if treatment will include an anti-EGFR antibody. Where the status of KRAS is known, it should be recorded as a site-specific factor as either Normal (“Wild Type”) or Abnormal (“Mutated”).

Anatomic Boundary. The boundary between the rectum and anal canal most often has been equated with the dentate line, which is identified pathologically. However, with advances in sphincter-preservation surgery, defining the boundary between the rectum and the anus as the anorectal ring, which corresponds to the proximal border of the puborectalis muscle palpable on digital rectal examination, is more appropriate.

TNM Stage of Disease. Since publication of the sixth edition, new prognostic data with regard to survival and disease relapse justifies further substaging of both Stages II and III (Tables 14.1–14.7) by anatomic criteria. Differential prognosis has been shown for patients with T4 lesions based on the extent of disease in SEER analyses for both rectal cancer (Tables 14.4 and 14.5) and colon cancer (Tables 14.6 and 14.7). Accordingly, for the seventh edition of AJCC, T4 lesions have been subdivided as T4a (tumor penetrates to the surface of the visceral peritoneum) and T4b (tumor directly invades or is adherent to other organs or structures). In addition, the number of nodes involved by metastasis has been shown to influence prognosis within both N1 and N2 groups, in separate analyses of SEER (rectal cancer, Tables 14.4–14.5; colon cancer, Tables 14.4–14.7; Figure 14.1). For the SEER analyses, both relative and observed survival are listed by TN category of disease (relative survival is survival corrected by age-related comorbidity; see Chap. 2 for more information). Also the total number of nodes examined has an important impact on survival in colon and rectal cancer (Figures 14.1 and 14.2). The impact of increased nodes examined in the resected specimen is clearly associated with better outcome in colon cancer for all combinations of T and N (Figure 14.1) whereas the association holds in T1–T3 lesions in rectal cancer but appears to be less important in T4a and T4b lesions, perhaps because of the greater use of preoperative radiation or concurrent chemoradiation of the smaller number of patients in the rectal carcinoma subgroups (Figure 14.2).
Stage Group II has been further subdivided into IIA (T3N0), IIB (T4aN0), and IIC (T4bN0), based on differential survival prognosis. These differences are shown in the SEER analyses for both rectal cancer (Tables 14.4 and 14.5) and colon cancer (Tables 14.6 and 14.7).

Within Stage III, a number of changes have been made based on differential prognosis found in the rectal cancer pooled analyses (Tables 14.1–14.3), the SEER rectal and colon cancer analyses (Tables 14.4–14.7), and the NCDB colon cancer analysis (Table 14.6). A category of N1 tumors has prognosis more akin to IIIC (T4bN1) and has been shifted from Stage IIIB to IIIC. In addition, several categories of N2 tumors have prognosis more akin to IIA (the T1N2a group) or IIIB (the T1N2b, T2N2a-b, and T3N2a groups) and have been shifted out of Stage IIIC accordingly.

Figures 14.4 and 14.5 present observed survival rates for 28,491 cases with adenocarcinoma of the colon from 1998 to 2000 and observed survival rates for 9,860 cases with adenocarcinoma of the rectum from 1998 to 2000.

**Independent Prognostic Factors and Molecular Markers.** In addition to the TNM, independent prognostic factors that are generally used in patient management and are well supported in the literature include residual disease, histologic type, histologic grade, serum carcinoembryonic antigen and cytokine levels, extramural venous invasion, and submucosal vascular invasion by carcinomas arising in adenomas. Small cell carcinomas, signet ring cell carcinomas, and undifferentiated carcinomas have a less favorable outcome than other histologic types. In contrast, medullary carcinoma is more favorable prognostically. Submucosal vascular invasion by carcinomas arising in adenomas is associated with a greater risk of regional lymph node involvement. Lymphatic, venous, and perineural invasion also have been shown to have a less favorable outcome. A number of these independent prognostic factors are currently being evaluated in nomograms that also include TNM stage of disease (see below).

In the future, the intratumoral expression of specific molecules, e.g., Deleted in Colorectal Cancer (DCC) or 18q loss of heterozygosity (LOH), p27kip1, DNA microsatellite instability, KRAS mutation, or thymidylate synthase, may be proven to be associated either with prognosis or response to therapy that is independent of TNM stage group or histologic grade. Currently, these molecular markers are not part of the staging system, but it is recommended that they be recorded if available and especially if studied within the context of a clinical trial. Furthermore, it is now clear that there is interaction between the T and N designations that is likely to rely on the expression of specific molecules within the cancer. Thus, by the time of the next edition of TNM staging it may be possible to add molecular profiling information to the TNM information to enhance the precision of predicting prognosis or even response to therapy. Finally, it is important to consider that other factors such as age, gender, race/ethnicity are important factors that affect response to therapy and disease outcome. Although these factors are not included in the TNM Summary or Working Stages at this time, several groups are studying the interaction of these clinicopathological factors with TNM and other prognostic factors in various nomograms such as those at http://www.nomograms.org. In order to determine the optimal way to integrate these various clinical, pathologic, and molecular factors with TNM, collection of the appropriate information prior to the next edition must be carried out.
DEFINITIONS OF TNM

The same classification is used for both clinical and pathologic staging.

**Primary Tumor (T)**
- **TX**: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- **T0**: No evidence of primary tumor
- **Tis**: Carcinoma in situ: intraepithelial or invasion of lamina propria*
- **T1**: Tumor invades submucosa
- **T2**: Tumor invades muscularis propria
- **T3**: Tumor invades through the muscularis propria into pericolorectal tissues
- **T4a**: Tumor penetrates to the surface of the visceral peritoneum**
- **T4b**: Tumor directly invades or is adherent to other organs or structures***

*Note: Tis includes cancer cells confined within the glandular basement membrane (intraepithelial) or mucosal lamina propria (intramucosal) with no extension through the muscularis mucosae into the submucosa.

**Note: Direct invasion in T4 includes invasion of other organs or other segments of the colorectum as a result of direct extension through the serosa, as confirmed on microscopic examination (for example, invasion of the sigmoid colon by a carcinoma of the cecum) or, for cancers in a retroperitoneal or subperitoneal location, direct invasion of other organs or structures by virtue of extension beyond the muscularis propria (i.e., respectively, a tumor on the posterior wall of the descending colon invading the left kidney or lateral abdominal wall; or a mid or distal rectal cancer with invasion of prostate, seminal vesicles, cervix, or vagina).

***Note: Tumor that is adherent to other organs or structures, grossly, is classified cT4b. However, if no tumor is present in the adhesion, microscopically, the classification should be pT1-4a depending on the anatomical depth of wall invasion. The V and L classifications should be used to identify the presence or absence of vascular or lymphatic invasion whereas the PN site-specific factor should be used for perineural invasion.

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**
- **NX**: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0**: No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1**: Metastasis in 1–3 regional lymph nodes
- **N1a**: Metastasis in one regional lymph node
- **N1b**: Metastasis in 2–3 regional lymph nodes
- **N1c**: Tumor deposit(s) in the subserosa, mesentry, or nonperitonealized pericolic or perirectal tissues without regional nodal metastasis
- **N2**: Metastasis in four or more regional lymph nodes
- **N2a**: Metastasis in 4–6 regional lymph nodes
- **N2b**: Metastasis in seven or more regional lymph nodes

Note: A satellite peritumoral nodule in the pericolorectal adipose tissue of a primary carcinoma without histologic evidence of residual lymph node in the nodule may represent discontinuous spread, venous invasion with extravascular spread (V1/2), or a totally replaced lymph node (N1/2). Replaced nodes should be counted separately as positive nodes in the N category, whereas discontinuous spread or venous invasion should be classified and counted in the Site-Specific Factor category Tumor Deposits (TD).

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Dukes*</th>
<th>MAC*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIC</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T1–T2</td>
<td>N1/N1c</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2a</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T3–T4a</td>
<td>N1/N1c</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2–T3</td>
<td>N2a</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C1/C2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1–T2</td>
<td>N2b</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIC</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N2a</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3–T4a</td>
<td>N2b</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>N1–N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: cTNM is the clinical classification, pTNM is the pathologic classification. The y prefix is used for those cancers that are classified after neoadjuvant pre-treatment (e.g., ypTNM). Patients who have a complete pathologic response are ypT0N0M0 that may be similar to Stage Group 0 or I. The r prefix is to be used for those cancers that have recurred after a disease-free interval (rTNM).

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**
- **NX**: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0**: No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1**: Metastasis in 1–3 regional lymph nodes
- **N1a**: Metastasis in one regional lymph node
- **N1b**: Metastasis in 2–3 regional lymph nodes
- **N1c**: Tumor deposit(s) in the subserosa, mesentry, or nonperitonealized pericolic or perirectal tissues without regional nodal metastasis
- **N2**: Metastasis in four or more regional lymph nodes
- **N2a**: Metastasis in 4–6 regional lymph nodes
- **N2b**: Metastasis in seven or more regional lymph nodes

**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)**

**Required for staging**
- None

**Clinically significant**
- Preoperative or pretreatment carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) (ng/ml)
HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

GX  Grade cannot be assessed
G1  Well differentiated
G2  Moderately differentiated
G3  Poorly differentiated
G4  Undifferentiated (corresponds to the histologic type “undifferentiated carcinoma” as below)

It is recommended that the terms “low-grade” (G1–G2) and “high-grade” (G3–G4) be applied, because data indicate that low and high grade may be associated with outcome independently of TNM stage group for both colon and rectum adenocarcinoma. Some authors suggest that G4 lesions be identified separately because they may represent a small subgroup of carcinomas that are very aggressive. However, these tumors would be designated as “undifferentiated” carcinomas within the classification histologic types shown previously.

RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

R0  Complete resection, margins histologically negative, no residual tumor left after resection (primary tumor, regional nodes)
R1  Incomplete resection, margins histologically involved, microscopic tumor remains after resection of gross disease (primary tumor, regional nodes)
R2  Incomplete resection, margins macroscopically involved or gross disease remains after resection (e.g., primary tumor, regional nodes, or liver metastasis)

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

This staging classification applies to carcinomas that arise in the colon or rectum. The classification does not apply to sarcomas, to lymphomas, or to carcinoid tumors of the large intestine or appendix. The histologic types include:

- Adenocarcinoma in situ*
- Adenocarcinoma
- Medullary carcinoma
- Mucinous carcinoma (colloid type) (greater than 50% mucinous carcinoma)
- Signet ring cell carcinoma (greater than 50% signet ring cell)
- Squamous cell (epidermoid) carcinoma
- Adenosquamous carcinoma
- Small cell carcinoma
- Undifferentiated carcinoma
- Carcinoma, NOS

* The terms “high grade dysplasia” and “severe dysplasia” may be used as synonyms for in situ adenocarcinoma and in situ carcinoma. These cases should be assigned pTis.

BIBLIOGRAPHY


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.


Swanson RS, Compton CC, Stewart AK, Bland KI. The prognosis of T3N0 colon cancer is dependent upon the number of lymph nodes examined. Ann Surg Oncol. 2003;10:65–71.


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
## Colon and Rectum Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Extent of disease before any treatment</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>☐ y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>Tumor Size: ____________</td>
<td>☐ y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRIMARY TUMOR (T)</th>
<th>TX</th>
<th>T0</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>T1</th>
<th>T2</th>
<th>T3</th>
<th>T4a</th>
<th>T4b</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ: intraepithelial or invasion of lamina propria*</td>
<td>Tumor invades submucosa</td>
<td>Tumor invades muscularis propria</td>
<td>Tumor invades through the muscularis propria into pericolectal tissues</td>
<td>Tumor penetrates to the surface of the visceral peritoneum**</td>
<td>Tumor directly invades or is adherent to other organs or structures***</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Tis includes cancer cells confined within the glandular basement membrane (intraepithelial) or mucosal lamina propria (intramucosal) with no extension through the muscularis mucosae into the submucosa.

**Note: Direct invasion in T4 includes invasion of other organs or other segments of the colorectum as a result of direct extension through the serosa, as confirmed on microscopic examination (for example, invasion of the sigmoid colon by a carcinoma of the cecum) or, for cancers in a retro-peritoneal or subperitoneal location, direct invasion of other organs or structures by virtue of extension beyond the muscularis propria (i.e., respectively, a tumor on the posterior wall of the descending colon invading the left kidney or lateral abdominal wall; or a mid or distal rectal cancer with invasion of prostate, seminal vesicles, cervix or vagina).

***Note: Tumor that is adherent to other organs or structures, grossly, is classified cT4b. However, if no tumor is present in the adhesion, microscopically, the classification should be PT1-4a depending on the anatomical depth of wall invasion. The V and L classifications should be used to identify the presence or absence of vascular or lymphatic invasion whereas the PN site-specific factor should be used for perineural invasion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)</th>
<th>NX</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>N1</th>
<th>N1a</th>
<th>N1b</th>
<th>N1c</th>
<th>N2</th>
<th>N2a</th>
<th>N2b</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td>Metastasis in 1 to 3 regional lymph nodes</td>
<td>Metastasis in 1 regional lymph node</td>
<td>Metastasis in 2-3 regional lymph nodes</td>
<td>Tumor deposit(s) in the subserosa, mesentery, or non-peritonealized pericolic or perirectal tissues without regional nodal metastasis</td>
<td>Metastasis in 4 or more regional lymph nodes</td>
<td>Metastasis in 4 to 6 regional lymph nodes</td>
<td>Metastasis in 7 or more regional lymph nodes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: A satellite peritumoral nodule in the pericolic or perirectal adipose tissue of a primary carcinoma without histologic evidence of residual lymph node in the nodule may represent discontinuous spread, venous invasion with extravascular spread (V1/2) or a totally replaced lymph node (N1/2). Replaced nodes should be counted separately as positive nodes in the N category, whereas discontinuous spread or venous invasion should be classified and counted in the Site-Specific Factor category Tumor Deposits (TD).

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Colon and Rectum Staging Form

#### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 Tis N0 M0</td>
<td>0 Tis N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I T1 N0 M0 A A</td>
<td>I T1 N0 M0 A A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>II A T3 N0 M0 B B</td>
<td>II A T3 N0 M0 B B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IIIB T4a N0 M0 B B</td>
<td>IIIB T4a N0 M0 B B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IIIC T4b N0 M0 B B</td>
<td>IIIC T4b N0 M0 B B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IIIA T1-T2 N1/N1c M0 C C1</td>
<td>IIIA T1-T2 N1/N1c M0 C C1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IIIIB T3-T4a N1/N1c M0 C C3</td>
<td>IIIIB T3-T4a N1/N1c M0 C C3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IV A Any T Any N M1a M1b</td>
<td>IV A Any T Any N M1a M1b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Dukes B is a composite of better (T3 N0 M0) and worse (T4 N0 M0) prognostic groups, as is Dukes C (Any TN1 M0 and Any T N2 M0). MAC is the modified Astler-Coller classification.

**Stage unknown**

#### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**REQUIRED FOR STAGING:** None

**CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:**
- Pre-operative or pre-treatment carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) ng/ml
- Tumor Deposits (TD)
- Circumferential Resection Margin (CRM)
- Perineural Invasion (PN)
- Microsatellite Instability (MSI)
- Tumor Regression Grade (with neoadjuvant therapy)
- KRAS gene analysis
- 18q loss of heterozygosity (LOH) assay

**Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)**

- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

**Grade**
- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

---

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Colon and Rectum Staging Form

**Additional Descriptors**

Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**General Notes (continued):**

- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.
- surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.
- neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): ____________________________

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning □ NCCN □ Other (describe): ____________________________

---

Physician signature ____________________________ Date/Time ____________________________

---

**Hospital Name/Address**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hospital Name/Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Patient Name/Information**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Name/Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
|                          | (continued on next page)
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

Illustration

Celiac axis nodes
Spermatic artery and nodes
Inferior mesenteric artery and nodes

Middle sacral artery and nodes
Common iliac nodes
External iliac nodes
Femoral nodes
Obturator node

Deep epigastric artery

HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS

PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION

(continued from previous page)
Anus

*The classification applies to carcinomas only; melanomas, carcinoid tumors, and sarcomas are not included.*

**At-A-Glance**

**SUMMARY OF CHANGES**

- The definitions of TNM and the stage groupings for this chapter have not changed from the sixth edition
- The descriptions of both the boundaries of the anal canal and anal carcinomas have been clarified
- The collection of the reported status of the tumor for the presence of human papilloma virus is included

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS</th>
<th>ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 Tis N0 M0</td>
<td>C21.0 Anus, NOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I T1 N0 M0</td>
<td>C21.1 Anal canal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II T2 N0 M0</td>
<td>C21.2 Cloacogenic zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA T1 N1 M0</td>
<td>C21.8 Overlapping lesion of rectum, anus, and anal canal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB T4 N1 M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV Any T Any N M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES**


**INTRODUCTION**

The proximal region of the anus encompasses true mucosa of three different histologic types: glandular, transitional, and squamous (proximal to distal, respectively). Distally, the squamous mucosa transitions into the perianal skin (true epidermis) at the point that historically has been called the anal verge. Thus, two distinct categories of tumors arise in the anal region. Tumors that develop from mucosa (of any of the three types) are termed anal canal cancers, whereas those that arise within the skin at or distal to the squamous mucocutaneous junction are termed perianal cancers. The boundary between the mucosa-lined anal canal and the skin of the perianal zone is indistinct on macroscopic examination and, anatomically, its location may vary with the patient’s body habitus but in general may coincide with the intersphincteric groove. Radially, the squamous mucosa transitions into the perianal zone ends approximately 5–6 cm from the squamous mucocutaneous junction (intersphincteric groove) in the majority of adults.

Anal canal tumors are staged using the classification system described and illustrated herein. Perianal tumors are biologically comparable to other skin tumors and therefore are staged according to the parameters described in Chap. 29. However, the regional nodal drainage (relevant to the N category) of the perianal skin is specific to this anatomic site, as described later.

The primary management of carcinomas of the anal canal has shifted from surgical resection to nonoperative...
treatment, precluding pathologic staging in most cases. Therefore, carcinomas of the anal canal are typically staged clinically according to the size and extent of the untreated primary tumor. Patients with cancer of the anal canal are typically staged at the time of presentation with inspection, palpation and biopsy of the mass, palpation (and biopsy as needed) of regional lymph nodes, and radiologic imaging of the chest, abdomen, and pelvis.

In contrast, the management of perianal carcinomas remains primarily operative, and nonoperative treatments are used selectively based on involvement of adjacent structures and tumor size. Complete pathologic staging is often possible for a primary tumor at this location. The remainder of the staging of the regional lymph nodes and distant disease is as described for anal cancers.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The anatomic subsites of the anal canal are illustrated in Figure 15.1. The anal canal begins where the rectum enters the puborectalis sling at the apex of the anal sphincter complex (palpable as the anorectal ring on digital rectal examination and approximately 1–2 cm proximal to the dentate line) and ends with the squamous mucosa blending with the perianal skin, which roughly coincides with the palpable intersphincteric groove or the outermost boundary of the internal sphincter muscle. The most proximal aspect of the anal canal is lined by colorectal mucosa in which squamous metaplasia may occur. When involved by metaplasia, this zone also may be referred to as the transformation zone. Immediately proximal to the macroscopically visible dentate line, a narrow zone of transitional mucosa that is similar to urothelium is variably present. The proximal zone of the anal canal that extends from the top of the puborectalis to the dentate line measures approximately 1–2 cm. In the region of the dentate line, anal glands are subjacent to the mucosa, often penetrating through the internal sphincter into the intersphincteric plane. The distal zone of the anal canal extends from the dentate line to the mucocutaneous junction with the perianal skin and is lined by a nonkeratinizing squamous epithelium devoid of epidermal appendages (hair follicles, apocrine glands, and sweat glands).

Determination of the anatomic site of origin of carcinomas that overlap the anorectal junction may be problematic. For staging purposes, such tumors should be classified as rectal cancers if their epicenter is located more than 2 cm proximal to the dentate line or proximal to the anorectal ring on digital examination and as anal canal cancers if their epicenter is 2 cm or less from the dentate line. For rectal cancers that extend beyond the dentate line, as for anal canal cancers, the superficial inguinal lymph nodes are among the regional nodal groups at risk of metastatic spread and included in cN/pN analysis (see later).

Regional Lymph Nodes. Lymphatic drainage and nodal involvement of anal cancers depend on the location of the primary tumor. Tumors above the dentate line spread primarily to the anorectal, perirectal, and internal iliac nodes, whereas tumors below the dentate line spread primarily to the superficial inguinal nodes.

The regional lymph nodes are as follows (Figure 15.2):

- Perirectal
- Anorectal
- Perirectal
- Lateral sacral
- Internal iliac (hypogastric)
- Inguinal
- Superficial

All other nodal groups represent sites of distant metastasis.

Metastatic Sites. Cancers of the anus may metastasize to any organs, but the liver and lungs are the distal organs that are most frequently involved. Involvement of the abdominal cavity is not unusual.
**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

For carcinoma of the anal canal, the 5-year observed survival rates for each of the stage groups are as follows: Stage I, \( n = 637 \), 69.5%; Stage II, \( n = 1,711 \), 61.8%; Stage IIIA, \( n = 453 \), 45.6%; Stage IIIB, \( n = 495 \), 39.6%; Stage IV, \( n = 285 \), 15.3%. Stage-related survival is shown in Figure 15.3.

Notably, within each stage grouping, overall 5-year survival rates for anal canal carcinomas vary significantly according to histologic type. At each stage, survival rates for patients with squamous cell carcinomas are better than that for patients with nonsquamous tumors as shown in Table 15.1.

Historically recognized histologic variants of squamous cell carcinoma, such as large cell keratinizing, large cell nonkeratinizing and basaloid subtypes, have no associated prognostic differences. Therefore, the World Health Organization recommends that the generic term “squamous cell carcinoma” be used for all squamous tumors of the anal canal. Nonsquamous histologies of anal canal carcinomas include adenocarcinoma, mucinous adenocarcinoma, small cell carcinoma (high-grade neuroendocrine carcinoma), and undifferentiated carcinoma.

Human papilloma virus (HPV) may be an etiologic agent in anal carcinoma. When the data are reported, it is of value to record the HPV status in the cancer registry.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

**Primary Tumor (T)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TX</th>
<th>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ (Bowen’s disease, high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (HSIL), anal intraepithelial neoplasia II–III (AIN II–III))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension (Figure 15.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension (Figure 15.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor more than 5 cm in greatest dimension (Figure 15.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor of any size invades adjacent organ(s), e.g., vagina, urethra, bladder* (Figure 15.7)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Note: Direct invasion of the rectal wall, perirectal skin, subcutaneous tissue, or the sphincter muscle(s) is not classified as T4.

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NX</th>
<th>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Metastasis in perirectal lymph node(s) (Figure 15.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Metastasis in unilateral internal iliac and/or inguinal lymph node(s) (Figure 15.9A, B)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
<td>Metastasis in perirectal and inguinal lymph nodes and/or bilateral internal iliac and/or inguinal lymph nodes (Figure 15.10A–C)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Distant Metastasis (M)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M0</th>
<th>No distant metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 15.1.** Patient outcome stratified by AJCC stage group and tumor histology (squamous vs. nonsquamous types)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage group</th>
<th>Squamous</th>
<th>Nonsquamous</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>71.4</td>
<td>59.1</td>
<td>0.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>63.5</td>
<td>52.9</td>
<td>0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>48.1</td>
<td>37.7</td>
<td>0.085</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>43.2</td>
<td>24.4</td>
<td>0.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>20.9</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FIGURE 15.5. Two views of T2 showing tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension. On the right side of the diagram, the tumor extends above the dentate line.

FIGURE 15.6. T3 is defined as tumor more than 5 cm in greatest dimension.

FIGURE 15.7. T4 is defined as tumor of any size invading adjacent organ(s), e.g., vagina (as illustrated), urethra, bladder. Note: Direct invasion of the rectal wall, perirectal skin, subcutaneous tissue, or the sphincter muscle(s) is not classified as T4.

FIGURE 15.8. N1 is defined as metastasis in perirectal lymph node(s).

FIGURE 15.9. (A) Two views of N2, which is defined as metastasis in unilateral internal iliac (left) and/or inguinal lymph node(s) (right). (B) N2: metastases in unilateral internal iliac and inguinal lymph node(s).
ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)
(Recommended for Collection)

Required for staging  None
Clinically significant  HPV Status

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

- GX  Grade cannot be assessed
- G1  Well differentiated
- G2  Moderately differentiated
- G3  Poorly differentiated
- G4  Undifferentiated

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

The staging system applies to all carcinomas arising in the anal canal, including carcinomas that arise within anorectal fistulas. Melanomas, carcinoid tumors, and sarcomas are excluded from this staging system. Most carcinomas of the anal canal are squamous cell carcinomas. The WHO classification of the types and subtypes of carcinomas of the anal canal is shown later. The terms transitional cell and cloacogenic carcinoma have been abandoned, because these tumors are now recognized as nonkeratinizing types of squamous cell carcinoma.

FIGURE 15.10. (A) N3 is defined as metastasis in perirectal and inguinal lymph nodes (as illustrated) and/or bilateral internal iliac and/or inguinal lymph nodes. (B) N3: metastases in bilateral internal iliac lymph nodes. (C) N3: metastases in bilateral internal iliac and inguinal lymph nodes.
**WHO Classification of Carcinoma of the Anal Canal**

- Squamous cell carcinoma
- Adenocarcinoma
  - Rectal type
  - Of anal glands
  - Within anorectal fistula
- Mucinous adenocarcinoma
- Small cell carcinoma
- Undifferentiated carcinoma

* The term *carcinoma, NOS* (not otherwise specified) is not part of the WHO classification.

Perianal skin and anal margin (junction of squamous mucosa and skin) tumor types include squamous cell carcinoma, giant condyloma (verrucous carcinoma), basal cell carcinoma, Bowen's disease, and Paget's disease. These tumors are staged as skin cancers according to the system outlined in Chap. 29.

**BIBLIOGRAPHY**


**ANUS STAGING FORM**

**CLINICAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extent of disease before any treatment</th>
<th>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- **Tumor Size:**
  - **TX:** Primary tumor cannot be assessed
  - **T0:** No evidence of primary tumor
  - **Tis:** Carcinoma in situ (Bowen's disease, High-grade Squamous Intraepithelial Lesion (HSIL), Anal Intraepithelial Neoplasia II-III (AIN II-III))
  - **T1:** Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension
  - **T2:** Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension
  - **T3:** Tumor more than 5 cm in greatest dimension
  - **T4:** Tumor of any size invades adjacent organ(s), e.g., vagina, urethra, bladder*  
  *Direct invasion of the rectal wall, perirectal skin, subcutaneous tissue, or the sphincter muscle(s) is not classified as T4.

- **Laterality:**
  - **Left**
  - **Right**
  - **Bilateral**

- **NX:** Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0:** No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1:** Metastasis in perirectal lymph node(s)
- **N2:** Metastasis in unilateral internal iliac and/or inguinal lymph node(s)
- **N3:** Metastasis in perirectal and inguinal lymph nodes and/or bilateral internal iliac and/or inguinal lymph nodes

- **M0:** No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- **M1:** Distant metastasis

**ANATOMIC STAGE • PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T N M</th>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T N M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)**

- **REQUIRED FOR STAGING:** None
- **CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:** HPV Status _________

**General Notes:** For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the...
Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

Grading system
- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

Grade
- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS
Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

National guidelines were used in treatment planning  NCCN  Other (describe):

Physician signature  Date/Time

Hospital Name/Address  Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

1. Transitional epithelium
2. Squamous epithelium devoid of hair and glands (not skin)
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Gastrointestinal Stromal Tumor

**At-A-Glance**

**SUMMARY OF CHANGES**

- This staging system is new for the seventh edition

### ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

#### Gastric GIST*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Mitotic rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>T1 or T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any rate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Small Intestinal GIST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Mitotic rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1 or T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any rate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Also to be used for omentum.

**Note: Also to be used for esophagus, colorectal, mesentery, and peritoneum.

### ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code Ranges</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C15.0–C15.9</td>
<td>Esophagus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C16.0–C16.9</td>
<td>Stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C17.0–C17.2, C17.8–C17.9</td>
<td>Small intestine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C18.0–C18.9</td>
<td>Colon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C19.9</td>
<td>Rectosigmoid junction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C20.9</td>
<td>Rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C48.0–C48.8</td>
<td>Retroperitoneum &amp; Peritoneum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code Ranges</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8935, 8936</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INTRODUCTION**

Gastrointestinal stromal tumor (GIST) is the most common mesenchymal tumor in the gastrointestinal tract. The designation of GIST refers to a specific tumor type that is generally immunohistochemically KIT-positive and is driven by KIT or PDGFRα activating mutations.

In terms of biologic potential, GISTs encompass a continuum. They include minute or small, paucicellular, mitotically inactive, obviously benign-looking tumors previously often designated as leiomyomas. At the other end of the spectrum there are larger tumors many of which contain significant mitotic activity and are histologically sarcomatous, previously often called leiomyosarcomas. In the middle,
nearly all permutations of tumor size and mitotic activity occur, except that small (<2 cm) tumors with high mitotic activity are very rare. Based on the continuous biologic spectrum of GISTs, this staging scheme encompasses all GISTs. In fact, some authors maintain that most if not all GISTs should be considered having at least some potential for malignancy.

Finally, the unique management strategy for GIST needs to be considered in the staging system. In addition to a complete excision, as much as it is possible, adjuvant treatment via KIT/PDGFRα tyrosine kinase inhibitors (notably, imatinib mesylate) are used in metastatic and unresectable GIST. Use of adjuvant therapy, especially imatinib, in GISTs deemed to be at high risk for metastasis, is being studied in clinical trials, but is currently largely experimental. This staging system attempts to assist GIST management by offering statistical probabilities of metastasis development, by tumor size and mitotic rate, the most important and most widely studied prognostic parameters in GIST.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. GISTs occur throughout the gastrointestinal tract. They are most common in the stomach (60%) and small intestine (jejunum and ileum) (30%) and are relatively rare in the duodenum (5%), rectum (3%), colon (1–2%), and esophagus (<1%). In some cases, they present as disseminated tumors without a known primary site, and a small number of GISTs may be primary in the omentum or mesenteries. Regional Lymph Nodes. Nodal metastasis is very rare and virtually unheard of in GIST, especially if one adheres to its rigorous histologic verification. Surgeons generally agree that nodal dissection is not indicated for GIST. In the absence of information on regional lymph node status, N0/pN0 is appropriate; NX should not be used.

Metastatic Sites. Metastases include intra-abdominal soft tissue, liver, and distant metastases. Presence of any of these is designated M1. Distant metastases are relatively rare in GISTs, but they are increasingly detected with sophisticated radiologic studies. The most common distinct, nonabdominal metastatic sites are bone, soft tissues, and skin, whereas lung metastases are distinctly rare.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

The following staging system parallels the one used for peripheral soft tissue tumors. In addition, a numerical value for risk of metastasis is provided, based on the largest follow-up studies. Although T, N, and M definitions are identical for all GISTs, separate stage grouping schemes are provided for gastric and small intestinal tumors. Staging criteria for gastric tumors should be applied in primary, solitary omental GISTs.

Primary, solitary, mesenteric, and duodenal GISTs should be staged according to the small intestinal (jejunal-ileal) grouping. Data on GISTs in less common sites (esophagus, colon, rectum) are insufficient to allow presentation of a detailed stage grouping. It is believed that the staging criteria for small intestinal GISTs should be followed in these cases. This staging system uses tumor size, dissemination status, and mitotic rate as the staging parameters.

Definition of T. Tumor size and depth. Because most GISTs are spherical or ovoid, the maximum tumor diameter is easy to determine. In the case of ruptured tumors, one may have to resort to estimates of the tumor size, or obtain assistance for maximum diameter measurement from radiologic studies.

For the purpose of this staging system, mitotic rates are categorized as follows:

- Mitotic rates ≤ 5/50 HPFs are considered low
- Mitotic rates > 5/50 HPFs are considered high

Metastases. Intra-abdominal metastasis refers to tumor involvement in the abdominal cavity outside the main tumor mass in the peritoneum, omentum, organ serosa, and cul-de-sac, among others. Tumor multiplicity, that is, the presence of anatomically separate, multiple gastrointestinal primary tumors of various sizes, usually in the setting of neurofibromatosis type 1 or familial GIST syndrome, should not be considered intra-abdominal dissemination. Also, rare cases of multiple independent GISTs at different GI sites have been reported.

A solitary omental tumor mass should not be considered evidence of dissemination as it may represent a primary tumor. The same may be true for solitary mesenteric masses; however, experience is limited. Separation of these tumors from their gastric or intestinal origin during tumor growth is a likely explanation for primary omental and mesenteric GISTs. Furthermore, a retroperitoneal location of some segments of intestines makes a retroperitoneal location of a primary GIST also possible. However, great caution should be exercised in defining a primary extragastrointestinal GIST, so that the possibility of this being a metastasis from a gastric or intestinal origin is thoroughly excluded by clinical and radiologic studies.
Liver metastasis implies the presence of tumor inside the liver parenchyma as one or more nodules. Adherence to liver capsule, even if extensive, as sometimes seen in gastric GISTs, should not be considered liver metastasis.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

In some cases, patients have survived for a long time after a solitary intra-abdominal GIST metastasis. Tumors with mitotic rates in the lower end of “high mitotic rate” (6–10 mitoses/50 HPFs) may behave better than those with significantly elevated mitotic rates (>10 mitoses/50 HPFs).

There may be differences in behavior between GISTs with different types of KIT and PDGFRA mutations. Because of limitations of the universal application of mutation studies (most importantly, their limited availability), mutations are not considered in this staging system. Further research is needed to examine these and other prognostic factors in detail.

Tables 16.1 and 16.2 show the disease progression of gastric and small intestinal GISTs.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM (FOR GISTS AT ALL SITES)**

**Primary Tumor (T)**
- TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- T0: No evidence for primary tumor
- T1: Tumor 2 cm or less
- T2: Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm
- T3: Tumor more than 5 cm but not more than 10 cm
- T4: Tumor more than 10 cm in greatest dimension

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**
- N0: No regional lymph node metastasis*
- N1: Regional lymph node metastasis

*If regional node status is unknown, use N0, not NX

**Distant Metastasis (M)**
- M0: No distant metastasis
- M1: Distant metastasis

**TABLE 16.1. Disease progression in gastric GISTs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tumor size (cm)</th>
<th>Mitotic rate</th>
<th>Prognostic group</th>
<th>Observed rate of progressive disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>≤5</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>0–2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>&gt;5–10</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>3a</td>
<td>3–4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>&gt;5–10</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Insufficient data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;5–10</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>15%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>3b</td>
<td>12%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>&gt;5–10</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>6a</td>
<td>49%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIIB</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>6b</td>
<td>86%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**TABLE 16.2. Disease progression in small intestinal GIST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tumor size (cm)</th>
<th>Mitotic rate</th>
<th>Prognostic group</th>
<th>Observed rate of progressive disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>≤5</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>0–2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>&gt;5–10</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>3a</td>
<td>3–4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>&gt;5–10</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Insufficient data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;5–10</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>15%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>3b</td>
<td>12%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>&gt;5–10</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>6a</td>
<td>49%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIIB</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>6b</td>
<td>86%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*From Miettinen M, Makhlouf HR, Sobin LH, Lasota J. Gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs) of the jejunum and ileum – a clinicopathologic, immunohistochemical and molecular genetic study of 906 cases prior to imatinib with long-term follow-up. Am J Surg Pathol. 2006;30:477–89, with permission from Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC GRADE**

Grading for GISTs is dependent on mitotic rate
- Low mitotic rate: 5 or fewer per 50 HPF
- High mitotic rate: over 5 per 50 HPF

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

**Gastric GIST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Mitotic rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1 or T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II B</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Small Intestinal GIST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Mitotic rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1 or T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II B</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any rate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Also to be used for omentum.
**Note: Also to be used for esophagus, colorectal, mesentery, and peritoneum.
**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)**  
*(For GISTs At All Sites)*  
*(Recommended for Collection)*

Required for staging  
Mitotic rate

Clinically significant  
KIT immunohistochemistry  
Mutational status of KIT, PDGFRA

**HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)**

Histologic grading, an ingredient in sarcoma staging, is not well suited to GISTs, because a majority of these tumors have low or relatively low mitotic rates below the thresholds used for grading of soft tissue tumors, and because GISTs often manifest aggressive features with mitotic rates below the thresholds used for soft tissue tumor grading (the lowest tier of mitotic rates for soft tissue sarcomas being 10 mitoses per 10 HPFs). In GIST staging, the grade is replaced by mitotic activity.

GX  Grade cannot be assessed
G1  Low grade; mitotic rate ≤5/50 HPF
G2  High grade, mitotic rate >5/50 HPF

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

This staging system applies to all GISTs. The morphologic subtypes of GISTs include spindle cell (70%), epithelioid (20%), and mixed cell types. The prognostic significance of cell type remains unproven.

**BIBLIOGRAPHY**


## Gastrointestinal Stromal Tumor Staging Form

### Extent of disease before any treatment

- **Tumorsize:** ______________

#### PRIMARY TUMOR (T)

- **Tx:** Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- **T0:** No evidence of primary tumor
- **T1:** Tumor 2 cm or less
- **T2:** Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm
- **T3:** Tumor more than 5 cm but not more than 10 cm
- **T4:** Tumor more than 10 cm in greatest dimension

#### REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)

- **N0:** No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1:** Regional lymph node metastasis

*If regional node status is unknown, use N0, not NX*

#### DISTANT METASTASIS (M)

- **M0:** No distant metastasis
- **M1:** Distant metastasis

### Extent of disease during and from surgery

- **y clinical—staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery**
- **y pathologic—staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery**

### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups – Gastric GIST

(Also to be used for omentum)

#### Clinical

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Mitotic Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1 or T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pathologic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Mitotic Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1 or T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups – Small Intestinal GIST

(Also to be used for esophagus, colorectal, mesentery, and peritoneum)

#### Clinical

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Mitotic Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1 or T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pathologic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Mitotic Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1 or T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hospital Name/Address

| Patient Name/Information | (continued on next page) |
### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors) – For GIST at All Sites

**Required for Staging:** Mitotic rate

**Clinically Significant:**
- KIT Immunohistochemistry:
- Mutational status of KIT, PDGFRα:

### Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

Histological grading, an ingredient in sarcoma staging, is not well suited to GISTs, because a majority of these tumors have low or relatively low mitotic rates below the thresholds used for grading of soft tissue tumors, and because GISTs often manifest aggressive features with mitotic rates below the thresholds used for soft tissue tumor grading (the lowest tier of mitotic rates for soft tissue sarcomas being 10 mitoses per 10 HPFs). In GIST staging, the grade is replaced by mitotic activity.

- **GX** Grade cannot be assessed
- **G1** Low grade; mitotic rate <5/50 HPF
- **G2** High grade, mitotic rate >5/50 HPF

### Additional Descriptors

*Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)* have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

### Residual Tumor (R)

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

### General Notes:

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- **m** suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM
- **y** prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- **r** prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- **a** prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

### Surgical Margins

Data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

### Neoadjuvant Treatment

Treatment prior to definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

---

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued from previous page)
Neuroendocrine Tumors

(Gastric, small bowel, colonic, rectal, and ampulla of vater carcinoid tumors [well-differentiated neuroendocrine tumors and well-differentiated neuroendocrine carcinomas]; carcinoid tumors of the appendix [see Chap. 13] and neuroendocrine tumors of the pancreas [see Chap. 24] are not included.)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

* This staging system is new for the 7th edition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS</th>
<th>ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0  Tis*  N0  M0</td>
<td>C16.0–C16.9  Stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I  T1  N0  M0</td>
<td>C17.0–C17.9  Small intestine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA T2  N0  M0</td>
<td>C18.0, 18.2–18.9  Colon  (excludes C18.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB T3  N0  M0</td>
<td>C19.9  Rectosigmoid junction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA T4  N0  M0</td>
<td>C20.9  Rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB Any T  N1  M0</td>
<td>C24.1  Ampulla of Vater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV Any T  Any N  M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Tis applies only to stomach.

INTRODUCTION

Neuroendocrine tumors (NETs) arise from the diffuse neuroendocrine system, which comprises neuroendocrine cells spread as a single cell or clusters of cells throughout the entire gastrointestinal tract, the bronchopulmonary system, and the urogenital tract. These lesions are often referred to generically using the archaic term carcinoid in deference to the original report of 1907 by Oberndorfer. In the past the “traditional” classification of carcinoids (1963 Sandler/Williams) was based upon their presumed embryonic origin and comprised foregut (lung, thymus, stomach, pancreas, and duodenum), midgut (from duodenum beyond the Treitz ligament to the proximal transverse colon), and hindgut carcinoids (distal colon and rectum). Although this classification is used, a tumor-based classification introduced by the World Health Organization (WHO) in 2000 has far greater scientific and clinical applicability. This classification utilizes the more generic term NET, and classification of the lesions is variously based upon size, proliferative rate, localization, differentiation, and hormone production. However, the term carcinoid is still in widespread use in the clinical setting and in data collected by tumor registries.

Investigation of the Surveillance Epidemiology and End Results (SEER) data base, 1973–2004, demonstrates that the incidence of gastric NETs in the US population in 2004 was 0.34/100,000, and since 1973 the annual increase in incidence has been approximately 9%. For small intestinal NETs, the annual increase in incidence since 1973 is 3.51%, and the incidence in the US population for duodenal NETs is 2.06/100,000, jejunal 0.36/100,000, and ileal 4.06/100,000 in 2004. Furthermore, NETs comprised 1.25% of all malignancies in 2004 compared to only 0.73% of all malignancies in 1994. The reason for this increase is unclear; however, it may reflect changes in diagnostic criteria, the use of endoscopy, and the public’s overall awareness of cancer.
the marked increase in incidence (prevalence) of these tumors probably represents an increased awareness by pathologists and clinicians as well as the availability of more sophisticated diagnostic tools. A connection between the introduction of potent acid suppressive medications that induce hypergastrinemia and gastric NETs has been suggested but a direct relationship remains unproven. Overall, NETs are slightly more common in women (55%); however, gastric NETs exhibit a more pronounced female predominance (64.5%). Pancreatic (66.7%) and small intestinal (53.4%) NETs are more common in men. The overall black:white ratio for GEP-NETs has increased from 1.13–1.32 since 1973. Particular sites for NETs, rather than NETs as a whole, exhibit differential incidence proclivities within the US population. As an example, duodenal NETs demonstrate an incidence propensity in black patients 3.12 times greater than what might be predicted. The lesions may also occur as a component of familial syndromes such as multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN), von Hippel–Lindau syndrome, and neurofibromatosis and elements for the genetic basis of some associations has been suggested.

Overall the tumors exhibit a propensity for slower growth than adenocarcinomas but aggressive variants are not uncommon. In general, NETs often present a considerable diagnostic challenge especially if covert. Since the majority of small intestinal NETs (90%) are metastatic at diagnosis, a therapeutic management strategy is often complex and requires multispecialty input. A substantial number of NETs (20% of small intestinal, but <5% of gastric) exhibit disabling hormonal-induced symptomatology (flush, sweating, diarrhea, bronchospasm), which can be difficult to control. The primary tumor is usually small, may be multicentric (2% overall but as much as 33% in the small intestine) and clinical symptoms are often absent (hence diagnosis is delayed) until the tumor has metastasized to the liver. Extensive local and distant fibrosis due to production of fibroblastic growth factors is a common feature of small bowel NETs and may result in local problems (adhesive obstruction) or even cardiac valve disease.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. NETs can arise from neuroendocrine cells of the entire gastrointestinal-pancreatic system, although the small intestine is the commonest overall location (20.7%). The terminal ileal area is the most common location and lesions may be multicentric. The progenitor cell of the majority of gastrointestinal NETs is the EC cell. Gastric NETs arise from the enterochromaffin-like (ECL) cells of the fundic gastric glands. Among 12,259 GEP-NETs in the SEER database, 8.2% were gastric, 5.4% pancreatic, and 20.7% small intestinal (duodenal 19.1%, jejunal 9.2%, ileal 71.7%). The proportion of nonfunctional lesions in GEP-NETs ranges from 10 to 25% depending upon the rigorously with which criteria of nonfunctionality are applied; some series indicate an incidence as high as 48%.

Regional Lymph Nodes. A rich lymphatic network surrounds the gastrointestinal organs, and NETs exhibit an almost equal affinity for spread via the lymphatic system as well as the bloodstream.

Stomach

- Greater curvature of the stomach. Greater curvature greater omental, gastroduodenal, gastroepiploic, pyloric and pancreaticoduodenal nodes
- Pancreatic and splenic areas. Pancreaticocolienal, peri-pancreatic, and splenic nodes
- Lesser curvature of the stomach. Lesser curvature, lesser omental, left gastric, cardioesophageal, common hepatic, celiac, and hepatoduodenal nodes
- “Distant metastasis” nodal groups. Retropancreatic, para-aortic, portal, retroperitoneal, and mesenteric

Small Intestine

- Duodenum. Duodenal, hepatic, pancreaticoduodenal, infrapyloric, gastroduodenal, pyloric, superior mesenteric, and percholedochal nodes
- Ileum and jejunum. Posterior ileal (terminal ileum only), superior mesenteric, and mesenteric NOS nodes
- “Distant metastasis” nodal groups. Celiac nodes

Large Intestine

- Cecum. Pericolic, anterior cecal, posterior cecal, ileocolic, right colic
- Ascending colon. Pericolic, ileocolic, right colic, middle colic
- Hepatic flexure. Pericolic, middle colic, right colic
- Transverse colon. Pericolic, middle colic
- Splenic flexure. Pericolic, middle colic, left colic, inferior mesenteric
- Descending colon. Pericolic, left colic, inferior mesenteric, sigmoid
- Sigmoid colon. Pericolic, inferior mesenteric, superior rectal (hemorrhoidal), sigmoid, sigmoid mesenteric
- Rectosigmoid. Pericolic, perirectal, left colic, sigmoid mesenteric, sigmoidal, inferior mesenteric, superior rectal (hemorrhoidal), middle rectal (hemorrhoidal)
- Rectum. Perirectal, sigmoid mesenteric, inferior mesenteric, lateral sacral presacral, internal iliac, sacral promontory (Gerota’s), internal iliac, superior rectal (hemorrhoidal), middle rectal (hemorrhoidal), inferior rectal (hemorrhoidal)

Metastatic Sites. The most common metastatic distribution for GEP-NETs is lymph nodes (89.8%), the liver (44.1%), lung (13.6%), peritoneum (13.6%), and pancreas (6.8%). Local spread to adjacent organs is often characterized by associated extensive fibrosis.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. Clinical staging depends upon the anatomic extent and hormonal activity of the primary tumor, which can be ascertained by examination before treatment.
Such examination includes a medical history, physical examination, routine laboratory studies, and biochemical markers of NET disease including chromogranin A (CgA). Gastroscopy can identify lesions down to the ligament of Treitz. Endoscopic ultrasound (EUS) is a highly sensitive method for diagnostic and preoperative evaluation of NETs of the stomach, duodenum, and pancreas, since it not only identifies submucosal lesions but also facilitates staging and allows fine-needle aspiration for histology. Capsule endoscopy and enteroscopy are useful to identify small bowel lesions. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and computed tomography (CT) are effective in the initial localization of NETs or their metastases with a median detection rate and sensitivity of approximately 80%. Somatostatin receptor scintigraphy (SRS) and positron emission tomography (PET) have an overall sensitivity approximately 90% to localize GI-NETs. Combinations of SRS or PET with CT or MRI imaging systems are especially effective with a high sensitivity (96–100%) for NETs detection.

**Pathologic Staging.** Pathologic staging is based on endoscopic biopsy specimens, percutaneous biopsies, fine-needle aspirates, surgical exploration, and on examination of surgically resected primary tumor, lymph nodes, and distant metastases.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

Important determinants of survival in NETs are neuroendocrine cell type, nodal status, and Ki67 index. Negative predictable variables are the presence of clinical symptoms, size of primary tumor, elevated CgA and hormonally active tumor by-products, and a high mitotic index.

Gastric NETs may be subdivided into ECL cell carcinoid type I–III. Type I tumors (approximately 80–90%) originate in a hypergastrinemic milieu (rarely metastasize approximately 1–3%, 5-year survival of approximately 100%). Type II lesions are rare (5–7%), occur in the context of MEN-1 and exhibit a more aggressive neoplastic phenotype (10–30% metastasis, 5-year survival of 60–90%). Type III lesions occur in a normogastrinemic environment and constitute approximately 10–15% of tumors, behave as adenocarcinomas, are usually metastatic (50%), and have a 5-year survival <50%.

Little biological information exists regarding the mechanisms responsible for human ECL cell transformation.

The malignancy of gastric NETs types can be further defined by elevation of levels of CCN2, metastasis associated protein 1 – MTA1, and melanoma antigen D2 – MAGE-D2, whose gene and protein expression correlates with invasion and metastatic potential.

Duodenal NETs with a tumor size greater than 2 cm, involvement of the muscularis propria, and presence of mitotic figures have a poor prognosis. The presence of regional lymph node metastases, however, cannot be predicted reliably on the basis of tumor size or depth of invasion, although EUS is of use. In a study including 89 patients with duodenal NETs, the overall 5-year survival was 60%.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

**Stomach**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Tumor (T)</th>
<th>TX</th>
<th>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ/dysplasia (tumor size less than 0.5 mm), confined to mucosa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor invades lamina propria or submucosa and 1 cm or less in size</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor invades muscularis propria or more than 1 cm in size</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor penetrates submucosa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor invades visceral peritoneum (serosal) or other organs or adjacent structures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For any T, add (m) for multiple tumors.
Regional Lymph Nodes (N)
NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
N0 No regional lymph node metastasis
N1 Regional lymph node metastasis

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)
NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
N0 No regional lymph node metastasis
N1 Regional lymph node metastasis

Distant Metastases (M)
M0 No distant metastases
M1 Distant metastasis

Distant Metastases (M)
M0 No distant metastases
M1 Distant metastasis

Duodenum/Ampulla/Jejunum/Ileum

Primary Tumor (T)
TX Primary tumor cannot be assessed
T0 No evidence of primary tumor
T1 Tumor invades lamina propria or submucosa and size 1 cm or less* (small intestinal tumors); tumor 1 cm or less (ampullary tumors)
T2 Tumor invades muscularis propria or size > 1 cm (small intestinal tumors); tumor > 1 cm (ampullary tumors)
T3 Tumor invades through the muscularis propria into subserosal tissue without penetration of overlying serosa (jejunal or ileal tumors) or invades pancreas or retroperitoneum (ampullary or duodenal tumors) or into non-peritonealized tissues
T4 Tumor invades visceral peritoneum (serosa) or invades other organs For any T, add (m) for multiple tumors

Primary Tumor (T)
TX Primary tumor cannot be assessed
T0 No evidence of primary tumor
T1 Tumor invades lamina propria or submucosa and size 2 cm or less
T1a Tumor size less than 1 cm in greatest dimension
T1b Tumor size 1–2 cm in greatest dimension
T2 Tumor invades muscularis propria or size more than 2 cm with invasion of lamina propria or submucosa
T3 Tumor invades through the muscularis propria into the subserosa, or into non-peritonealized pericolic or perirectal tissues
T4 Tumor invades peritoneum or other organs For any T, add (m) for multiple tumors

Primary Tumor (T)
TX Primary tumor cannot be assessed
T0 No evidence of primary tumor
T1 Tumor invades lamina propria or submucosa and size 1 cm or less* (small intestinal tumors); tumor 1 cm or less (ampullary tumors)
T2 Tumor invades muscularis propria or size > 1 cm (small intestinal tumors); tumor > 1 cm (ampullary tumors)
T3 Tumor invades through the muscularis propria into subserosal tissue without penetration of overlying serosa (jejunal or ileal tumors) or invades pancreas or retroperitoneum (ampullary or duodenal tumors) or into non-peritonealized tissues
T4 Tumor invades visceral peritoneum (serosa) or invades other organs For any T, add (m) for multiple tumors

 Colon or Rectum

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)
NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
N0 No regional lymph node metastasis
N1 Regional lymph node metastasis

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)
NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
N0 No regional lymph node metastasis
N1 Regional lymph node metastasis

Distant Metastases (M)
M0 No distant metastases
M1 Distant metastasis

Distant Metastases (M)
M0 No distant metastases
M1 Distant metastasis

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS
Stage 0  Tis  N0  M0
Stage I  T1  N0  M0
Stage IIA  T2  N0  M0
Stage IIB  T3  N0  M0
Stage IIIA  T4  N0  M0
Stage IIIB  Any T  N1  M0
Stage IV  Any T  Any N  M1

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)
(Recommended for Collection)
Required for staging None
Clinically significant Preoperative plasma chromogranin A level (CgA)
Urinary 5-hydroxyindolacetic acid (5-HIAA) level
Mitotic count

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)
Cellular pleomorphism is not a useful feature for grading carcinoid tumors. High proliferative index has been linked with more aggressive behavior, and it has been proposed that systemic chemotherapy can be considered in the management of midgut tumors with a high mitotic count. The following grading scheme has been proposed for GI NETs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Mitotic count (10 HPF)*</th>
<th>Ki-67 index (%)**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G1</td>
<td>&lt;2</td>
<td>≤2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G2</td>
<td>2–20</td>
<td>3–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G3</td>
<td>&gt;20</td>
<td>&gt;20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: 10 HPF: high power field = 2 mm², at least 40 fields (at 40× magnification) evaluated in areas of highest mitotic density.

**Note: MIB1 antibody; % of 2,000 tumor cells in areas of highest nuclear labeling.
HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

This staging system applies to carcinoid tumors (well-differentiated NETs), and atypical carcinoid tumors (well-differentiated neuroendocrine carcinomas) as listed below. High-grade neuroendocrine carcinomas and mixed glandular/well-differentiated NETs are excluded and should be staged according to guidelines for staging carcinomas at that site.

- Carcinoid tumor
- Well-differentiated NET
- Atypical carcinoid
- Well-differentiated neuroendocrine carcinoma
- Gangliocytic paraganglioma

BIBLIOGRAPHY


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
## Neuroendocrine Tumor Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLINICAL Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC Stage Category Definitions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Primary Tumor (T)</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, clinical– staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>Stomach</td>
<td>Yes, pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>TX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T0</td>
<td>T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumors cannot be assessed</td>
<td>Tumors cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ/dysplasia (tumor size &lt;0.5mm), confined to mucosa</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ/dysplasia (tumor size &lt;0.5mm), confined to mucosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor invades lamina propria or submucosa and ≤1cm in size</td>
<td>Tumor invades lamina propria or submucosa and ≤1cm in size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor invades muscularis propria or &gt;1cm in size</td>
<td>Tumor invades muscularis propria or &gt;1cm in size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor penetrates subserosa</td>
<td>Tumor penetrates subserosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor invades visceral peritoneum (serosa) or other organs or adjacent structures</td>
<td>Tumor invades visceral peritoneum (serosa) or other organs or adjacent structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For any T, add (m) for multiple tumors</td>
<td>For any T, add (m) for multiple tumors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Stomach

#### Regional lymph nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</th>
<th>No evidence of primary tumor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades lamina propria or submucosa and size ≤1cm (small intestinal tumors); tumor ≤1 cm (ampullary tumors)</td>
<td>Tumor invades lamina propria or submucosa and size ≤1cm (small intestinal tumors); tumor ≤1 cm (ampullary tumors)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades muscularis propria or size &gt;1 cm (small intestinal tumors); tumor &gt;1 cm (ampullary tumors)</td>
<td>Tumor invades muscularis propria or size &gt;1 cm (small intestinal tumors); tumor &gt;1 cm (ampullary tumors)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades through the muscularis propria into subserosal tissue without penetration of overlying serosa (jejunal or ileal tumors) or invades pancreas or retroperitoneum (ampullary or duodenal tumors) or into non-peritonealized tissues.</td>
<td>Tumor invades through the muscularis propria into subserosal tissue without penetration of overlying serosa (jejunal or ileal tumors) or invades pancreas or retroperitoneum (ampullary or duodenal tumors) or into non-peritonealized tissues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades visceral peritoneum (serosa) or invades other organs</td>
<td>Tumor invades visceral peritoneum (serosa) or invades other organs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For any T, add (m) for multiple tumors</td>
<td>For any T, add (m) for multiple tumors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Limited to ampulla of Vater for ampullary gangliocytic paraganglioma*

### Duodenum/Ampulla/Jejunum/Ileum

#### Regional lymph nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</th>
<th>No evidence of primary tumor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades lamina propria or submucosa and size ≤1 cm* (small intestinal tumors); tumor ≤1 cm (ampullary tumors)</td>
<td>Tumor invades lamina propria or submucosa and size ≤1 cm* (small intestinal tumors); tumor ≤1 cm (ampullary tumors)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades muscularis propria or size &gt;1 cm (small intestinal tumors); tumor &gt;1 cm (ampullary tumors)</td>
<td>Tumor invades muscularis propria or size &gt;1 cm (small intestinal tumors); tumor &gt;1 cm (ampullary tumors)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades through the muscularis propria into subserosal tissue without penetration of overlying serosa (jejunal or ileal tumors) or invades pancreas or retroperitoneum (ampullary or duodenal tumors) or into non-peritonealized tissues.</td>
<td>Tumor invades through the muscularis propria into subserosal tissue without penetration of overlying serosa (jejunal or ileal tumors) or invades pancreas or retroperitoneum (ampullary or duodenal tumors) or into non-peritonealized tissues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades visceral peritoneum (serosa) or invades other organs</td>
<td>Tumor invades visceral peritoneum (serosa) or invades other organs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For any T, add (m) for multiple tumors</td>
<td>For any T, add (m) for multiple tumors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Limited to ampulla of Vater for ampullary gangliocytic paraganglioma*

### Colon or Rectum

#### Regional lymph nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</th>
<th>No evidence of primary tumor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades lamina propria or submucosa and size ≤2 cm</td>
<td>Tumor invades lamina propria or submucosa and size ≤2 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor size &lt;1 cm in greatest dimension</td>
<td>Tumor size &lt;1 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor size 1 to 2 cm in greatest dimension</td>
<td>Tumor size 1 to 2 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades muscularis propria or size &gt;2 cm with invasion of lamina propria or submucosa</td>
<td>Tumor invades muscularis propria or size &gt;2 cm with invasion of lamina propria or submucosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades through the muscularis propria into the subserosa, or into non-peritonealized pericolic or perirectal tissues</td>
<td>Tumor invades through the muscularis propria into the subserosa, or into non-peritonealized pericolic or perirectal tissues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades peritoneum or other organs</td>
<td>Tumor invades peritoneum or other organs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For any T, add (m) for multiple tumors</td>
<td>For any T, add (m) for multiple tumors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Limited to ampulla of Vater for ampullary gangliocytic paraganglioma*
### Neuroendocrine Tumor Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumor Site</th>
<th>Clinical Staging</th>
<th>Pathologic Staging</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duodenum/Ampulla/Jejunum/Ileum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colon or Rectum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stomach</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Clinical Stage**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis*</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pathologic Stage**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis*</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Tis applies only to stomach.

**Prognostic Factors**

**Histologic Grade (G)** (also known as overall grade)

- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- No 2 or 3 grade system is available

**Grade**

- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3

**General Notes:**

- For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- The **m** suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.

- The **y** prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix.

---

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued from previous page)
ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS
Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

General Notes (continued):
The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The “y” categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the “r” prefix: rTNM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): ______________________________________

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning  □ NCCN □ Other (describe): __________________________

________________________  __________________________
Physician signature Date/Time
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Liver

(Excluding intrahepatic bile ducts; Sarcomas and tumors metastatic to the liver are not included.)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

Intrahepatic bile ducts are no longer included in this staging chapter. The staging of liver cancer now includes only hepatocellular carcinoma.

T Category Changes
- In the T3 category, patients with invasion of major vessels are distinguished from patients with multiple tumors, of which any are >5 cm, but lack major vessel invasion because of the markedly different prognosis of these subgroups.
  - T3a includes multiple tumors, any >5 cm
  - T3b includes tumors of any size involving a major portal vein or hepatic vein
  - T4 category unchanged

N Category Changes
- Inferior phrenic lymph nodes were reclassified to regional lymph nodes from distant lymph nodes.

Stage Grouping Changes
- Changes in T3 classification led to changes in Stage III groupings.
  - Stage IIIA now includes only T3a; patients with major vessel invasion are removed from the IIIA stage grouping.
  - Stage IIIB now includes only T3b (major vessel invasion)
  - T4 is shifted to Stage IIIC
  - Stage IV includes all patients with metastasis, whether nodal or distant, separated into IVA and B to permit identification of each subgroup.
    - Stage IVA now includes node-positive disease (N1)
    - Stage IVB now includes distant metastasis (M1)

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
INTRODUCTION

Primary malignancies of the liver include tumors arising from the hepatocytes (hepatocellular carcinoma), intrahepatic bile ducts (intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma and cystadenocarcinoma), and mesenchymal elements (primary sarcoma). Only primary hepatocellular carcinoma is included in the current staging system described here. Hepatocellular carcinoma is the most common primary cancer of the liver and is a leading cause of death from cancer worldwide. Although it is uncommon in the United States, its incidence is rising. The majority of hepatocellular carcinomas arise in a background of chronic liver disease due to viral hepatitis (B or C), ethanol-related cirrhosis, and, possibly, related steatohepatitis. Cirrhosis may dominate the clinical picture and determine the prognosis. Other important indicators of outcome in hepatocellular carcinoma are resectability for cure and the extent of vascular invasion. Previously, intrahepatic bile duct cancer was staged using the system derived for hepatocellular carcinoma, but due to the markedly different incidence, epidemiology, treatment and prognosis for these diseases, staging for bile duct cancer has been removed from this chapter. A separate staging system is included for intrahepatic bile duct (see Chap. 19).

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The liver has a dual blood supply: the hepatic artery, which typically branches from the celiac artery, and the portal vein, which drains the intestine. Blood from the liver passes through the hepatic veins and enters the inferior vena cava. The liver is divided into right and left liver by a plane (Cantlie’s line) projecting between the gallbladder fossa and the vena cava and defined by the middle hepatic vein. Couinaud refined knowledge about the functional anatomy of the liver and proposed division of the liver into four sectors (formerly called segments) and eight segments. In this nomenclature, the liver is divided by vertical and oblique planes or scissurae defined by the three main hepatic veins and a transverse plane or scissura that follows a line drawn through the right and left portal branches. Thus, the four traditional segments (right anterior, right posterior, left medial, and left lateral) are replaced by sectors (right anterior, right posterior, left anterior, and left posterior), and these sectors are divided into segments by the transverse scissura (Figure 18.1). The eight segments are numbered clockwise in a frontal plane. Recent advances in hepatic surgery have made possible anatomic (also called typical) resections along these planes.

Histologically, the liver is divided into lobules with central veins draining each lobule. The portal triads between the lobules contain the intrahepatic bile ducts and the blood supply, which consists of small branches of the hepatic artery and portal vein and intrahepatic lymphatic channels.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The regional lymph nodes are the hilar, hepaticoduodenal ligament lymph nodes, inferior phrenic, and caval lymph nodes, among which the most prominent are the hepatic artery and portal vein lymph nodes. Nodal involvement should be coded as N1. Nodal involvement is now considered stage IV disease.

Distant Metastatic Sites. The main mode of dissemination of liver carcinomas is via the portal veins (intrahepatic) and hepatic veins. Intrahepatic venous dissemination cannot be differentiated from satellitosis or multifocal tumors and...
is classified as multiple tumors. The most common sites of extrahepatic dissemination are the lungs and bones. Tumors may extend through the liver capsule to adjacent organs (adrenal, diaphragm, and colon) or may rupture, causing acute hemorrhage and peritoneal metastasis.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

The T classification is based on the results of multivariate analyses of factors affecting prognosis after resection of liver carcinomas. The classification considers the presence or absence of vascular invasion (as assessed radiographically or pathologically), the number of tumor nodules (single versus multiple), and the size of the largest tumor (≤5 cm vs. >5 cm). For pathologic classification, vascular invasion includes gross as well as microscopic involvement of vessels. Major vascular invasion is defined as invasion of the branches of the main portal vein (right or left portal vein; this does not include sectoral or segmental branches) or as invasion of one or more of the three hepatic veins (right, middle, or left). Multiple tumors include satellitosis, multifocal tumors, and intrahepatic metastases. Invasion of adjacent organs other than the gallbladder or with perforation of the visceral peritoneum is considered T4.

**Validation.** Validation of T1, T2, and T3 categories of this staging system is based on multivariate analyses of outcome and survival data of single-institution and multi-institution studies of hepatic resection of hepatocellular carcinoma worldwide. The survival curves obtained from analysis of the database of the International Cooperative Study Group for Hepatocellular Carcinoma are presented in Figures 18.2 and 18.3. The system has been independently validated in several large cohorts of patients who underwent hepatic resection for hepatocellular carcinoma worldwide. Recently, this system was validated in a large cohort of patients who underwent liver transplantation (Figure 18.4). As such, this is the first staging system independently validated in patients following both hepatic resection and liver transplantation.

**Clinical Staging.** Clinical staging depends on imaging procedures designed to demonstrate the size of the primary tumor and vascular invasion. Surgical exploration is not carried out if imaging shows that complete resection is not possible or if the hepatic reserve is deemed insufficient for safe resection. In the presence of cirrhosis, the Child-Pugh class and the Model of Endstage Liver Disease (MELD) score should be recorded. When advanced underlying liver disease (cirrhosis) dominates the prognosis, primary tumor factors (T classification) may become less relevant in terms of prognosis. In these instances, other clinical staging systems (Okuda staging, Cancer of the Liver Italian Program [CLIP] score, or Barcelona Clinic Liver Cancer [BCLC] staging) that combine the evaluation of liver disease and hepatocellular carcinoma may be helpful to supplement TNM staging.

**Pathologic Staging.** Complete pathologic staging consists of evaluation of the primary tumor, including histologic grade, regional lymph node status, and underlying liver disease.
Regional lymph node involvement is rare (5%) except in the fibrolamellar variant of hepatocellular carcinoma. A major change from the 6th edition is that tumors with positive lymph nodes are classified as Stage IV because they carry the same prognosis as other patients with distant metastases. The grade is based on the cytopathologic study of nuclear pleomorphism as described by Edmonson and Steiner. Because of the prognostic significance of underlying liver disease in hepatocellular carcinoma, it is recommended that the results of the histopathologic analysis of the adjacent (non-tumorous) liver be reported. Severe fibrosis/cirrhosis (F1; Ishak score of 5–6) is associated with a worse prognosis than is absence of or moderate fibrosis (F0; Ishak score of 0–4). Although grade and underlying liver disease have prognostic significance, they are not included in the current staging system.

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

Clinical factors predictive of decreased survival duration include an elevated serum alpha-fetoprotein level and Child-Pugh class B and C liver disease. For patients who undergo tumor resection, the main predictor of poor outcome is a positive surgical margin (grossly or microscopically involved tumors indicative of incomplete resection). The effect of the extent of surgical clearance at the closest margin (<10 mm vs. >10 mm) remains controversial. Other prognostic factors associated with decreased survival include major vessel invasion and tumor size >5 cm in patients with multiple tumors.

FIBROSIS SCORE (F)

The fibrosis score as defined by Ishak is recommended because of its prognostic value in overall survival. This scoring system uses a 0–6 scale.

F0  Fiber score 0–4 (none to moderate fibrosis)
F1  Fiber score 5–6 (severe fibrosis or cirrhosis)

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

**Primary Tumor (T)**

| TX | Primary tumor cannot be assessed |
| T0 | No evidence of primary tumor |
| T1 | Solitary tumor without vascular invasion |
| T2 | Solitary tumor with vascular invasion or multiple tumors none more than 5 cm |
| T3a | Multiple tumors more than 5 cm |
| T3b | Single tumor or multiple tumors of any size involving a major branch of the portal vein or hepatic vein |
| T4 | Tumor(s) with direct invasion of adjacent organs other than the gallbladder or with perforation of visceral peritoneum |

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

| NX | Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed |
| N0 | No regional lymph node metastasis |
| N1 | Regional lymph node metastasis |

**Distant Metastasis (M)**

| M0 | No distant metastasis |
| M1 | Distant metastasis |

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required for staging</th>
<th>None</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinically significant</td>
<td>Alpha fetoprotein (AFP) Fibrosis score Hepatitis serology Creatinine (part of the Model for End Stage Liver Disease score) Bilirubin (part of the Model for End Stage Liver Disease score) Prothrombin time international normalized ratio (INR) (part of the Model for End Stage Liver Disease score)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)**

The grading scheme of Edmondson and Steiner is recommended. The system employs four grades as follows:

| G1 | Well differentiated |
| G2 | Moderately differentiated |
| G3 | Poorly differentiated |
| G4 | Undifferentiated |

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

The staging system applies only to primary carcinomas of the liver. These include:

Hepatocellular carcinoma
Fibrolamellar variant of hepatocellular carcinoma
Hepatocellular carcinoma is by far the more common of the two types of primary carcinoma of the liver. The staging classification does not apply to primary sarcomas or metastatic tumors, and no longer applies to tumors of the bile ducts (cholangiocarcinomas including mixed hepatocellular-cholangiocarcinoma), which are now considered in a separate, new staging system (see Chap. 19). The histologic type and subtype should be recorded, since they may provide prognostic information.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Liver Staging Form

**Clinical Extent of Disease before any treatment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□ y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>□ y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tumor Size:**

- □ left
- □ right
- □ bilateral

**Primary Tumor (T):**

- □ TX
- □ T0
- □ T1
- □ T2
- □ T3a
- □ T3b
- □ T4
- □ T0
- □ T1
- □ T2
- □ T3a
- □ T3b
- □ T4

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N):**

- □ NX
- □ N0
- □ N1
- □ NX
- □ N0
- □ N1

**Distant Metastasis (M):**

- □ M0
- □ M1
- □ M0
- □ M1

**Anatomic Stage + Prognostic Groups**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIIC</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>any T</td>
<td>any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors):**

- Required for Staging: None
- Clinically Significant:
  - Alpha Fetoprotein (AFP)
  - Fibrosis Score
  - Hepatitis Serology
  - Creatinine (part of the Model for End Stage Liver Disease score)
  - Bilirubin (part of the Model for End Stage Liver Disease score)
  - Prothrombin time international normalized ratio (INR) (part of the Model for End Stage Liver Disease score)

**General Notes:**

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
### LIVER STAGING FORM

**Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade system</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Grade**

- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

**ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS**

*Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)* have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**General Notes (continued):**

- **y** prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- **r** prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- **a** prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

**surgical margins** is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

**neoadjuvant treatment** is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):
- National guidelines were used in treatment planning
- NCCN
- Other (describe):

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued from previous page)

---

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary
tumor and regional nodes
involved.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Intrahepatic Bile Ducts

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- This is a novel staging system that is independent of the staging system for hepatocellular carcinoma and independent of the staging system for extrahepatic bile duct malignancy, including hilar bile duct cancers. The rare combined hepatocellular and cholangiocarcinoma (mixed hepatocholangiocarcinomas) are included with the intrahepatic bile duct cancer staging classification.
- The tumor category (T) is based on three major prognostic factors including tumor number, vascular invasion, and direct extrahepatic tumoral extension.
- The nodal category (N) is a binary classification based on the presence or absence of regional lymph node metastasis.
- The metastasis category (M) is a binary classification based on the presence or absence of distant disease.
- Recommend collection of preoperative or pretreatment serum CA19–9.

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

C22.1 Intrahepatic bile duct

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8160, 8161, 8180

INTRODUCTION

Primary hepatobiliary malignancy includes tumors of the hepatocytes (hepatocellular carcinoma), bile ducts (cholangiocarcinoma), gallbladder, and the parenchyma of the liver (sarcoma). This TNM classification applies only to cancers arising in intrahepatic bile ducts (intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma). Hepatocellular carcinoma, tumors of the perihilar bile duct, and gallbladder carcinomas are classified separately.

Tumors of intrahepatic bile duct origin represent 15–20% of all primary liver malignancies. The tumors of the bile ducts can be anatomically subdivided into three categories including intrahepatic, perihilar, and distal cholangiocarcinoma. The proportion of cholangiocarcinoma that is accounted for by intrahepatic tumors is approximately 20%.

Clinically, these intrahepatic tumors can be difficult to differentiate from metastatic adenocarcinomas from other primary sites. The etiologic factors that predispose to the development of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma include primary sclerosing cholangitis, hepatobiliary parasitosis, intrahepatic lithiasis, and chronic viral hepatitis. The overall incidence rate of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma is 0.7 cases per 100,000 adults in the USA. The incidence of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma is age-dependent, with a progressive increase in cases starting in the sixth decade of life and peaking in the ninth decade. Although less common than either hepatocellular carcinoma or hilar bile duct...
infiltrating growth pattern (B).

**ANATOMY**

**Primary Site.** At the hilar plate, the right and left hepatic bile ducts enter the liver parenchyma (Figure 19.1). Histologically these bile ducts are lined by a single layer of tall uniform columnar cells. The mucosa usually forms irregular pleats or small longitudinal folds. The walls of the bile ducts have a layer of subepithelial connective tissue and muscle fiber. However, these muscle fibers are typically sparse or absent within the hepatic parenchyma. There is a periductal neural component, which is frequently involved by cholangiocarcinomas.

The tumor growth patterns of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma include the mass forming type, the periductal infiltrating type, and a mixed type. Mass forming intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma shows a radial growth pattern invading into the adjacent liver parenchyma with well-demarcated gross margins. On histopathologic examination, these are nodular sclerotic masses with distinct borders. In contrast, the periductal infiltrating type of cholangiocarcinoma demonstrates a diffuse longitudinal growth pattern along the bile duct.

The percentage of patients with the purely mass forming type is estimated to be 60% of all patients with intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma, while the purely periductal infiltrating type represents 20% of all cases and a mixed pattern of mass forming and periductal infiltrating type represents the remaining 20% of cases of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. Limited analyses suggest that the diffuse periductal infiltrating type is associated with a poor prognosis. However, comparison of the prognostic significance of this variable to other prognostic factors is lacking. Either histologic type may invade vascular structures, although this is less commonly observed for mass forming intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. Anatomically, the intrahepatic bile ducts extend from the periphery of the liver to the second order bile duct ducts (see perihilar bile duct definition).

**Regional Lymph Nodes.** Compared with primary hepatocellular carcinoma, regional lymph node metastases are more commonly associated with intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. The lymph node drainage patterns from the intrahepatic bile ducts demonstrate laterality. Tumors in the left lateral bisegment (segment 2–3) of the liver may preferentially drain to lymph nodes along the lesser curvature of the stomach and subsequently to the celiac nodal basin. In contrast, intrahepatic cholangiocarcinomas of the right liver (segment 5–8) may primarily drain to hilar lymph nodes and subsequently to caval and periaortic lymph nodes.

For right liver (segment 5–8) intrahepatic cholangiocarcinomas, the regional lymph nodes include the hilar (common bile duct, hepatic artery, portal vein, and cystic duct) periduodenal and peripancreatic lymph nodes. For left liver (segment 2–4) intrahepatic cholangiocarcinomas, regional lymph nodes include hilar, and gastrohepatic lymph nodes. For intrahepatic cholangiocarcinomas, disease spread to the celiac and/or periaortic and caval lymph nodes are considered distant metastases (M1). Inferior phrenic nodes are considered regional, not distant nodes.

**Metastatic Sites.** Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinomas usually metastasize to other intrahepatic locations (classified in the T category as multiple tumors) and to the peritoneum, and subsequently, to the lungs and pleura (classified in the M category as distant metastasis).

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

Intraductal papillary bile duct tumors may be identified in some patients with unilateral biliary obstruction and are classified as in situ tumors (Tis). The T classification of invasive intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma is determined by the number of tumors present (solitary vs. multiple), the presence of vascular invasion, and the presence of visceral peritoneal perforation with or without direct involvement.
of local extrahepatic structures. The definition of the term “multiple tumors” includes satellitosis, multifocal tumors, and intrahepatic metastasis. Vascular invasion includes both major vessel invasion (defined as invasion of the branches of the main portal vein (right or left portal vein) or as invasion of one or more of the three hepatic veins (right, middle, or left)) and microscopic invasion of smaller intraparenchymal vascular structures identified on histopathologic examination. Direct invasion of adjacent organs, including colon, duodenum, stomach, common bile duct, portal lymph nodes, abdominal wall, and diaphragm is considered T3 disease, not as distant metastasis. Regional nodal involvement as defined above is considered N1 disease. Extraregional nodal involvement and other distant metastatic sites are classified as M1 disease.

**Validation.** Validation of T1, T2, T3, and N1 categories is based on multivariate analyses of outcome and survival data of single institution and multi-institution studies of patients with intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma.

**Clinical Staging.** Clinical staging depends on imaging procedures designed to demonstrate the tumor growth pattern of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma, the number of intrahepatic masses, and the presence or absence of vascular invasion. Surgical exploration is carried out if imaging shows that a complete resection is possible and that hepatic reserve is sufficient for a safe resection. In the presence of cirrhosis, the Child-Pugh class and components of the Model for End stage Liver Disease (MELD) score should be recorded. Radiographic assessment for the presence or absence of distant metastases prior to surgical exploration is warranted.

**Pathologic Staging.** Complete pathologic staging consists of evaluation of the primary tumor, including tumor number, involvement of local regional lymph nodes, and the presence or absence of vascular invasion.

Solitary tumors with no vascular invasion and no lymph node involvement or metastasis are classified as T1. Solitary tumors with vascular invasion are classified as T2a. Multiple tumors, with or without vascular invasion, are classified as T2b. Tumors that perforate the visceral peritoneum, with or without invasion of extrahepatic structures are classified as T3. Finally, tumors with periductal invasion are classified as T4. The pathologic definition of the periductal infiltrating type is the finding of a diffuse longitudinal growth pattern along the intrahepatic bile ducts on both gross and microscopic examination. T4 includes the diffuse periductal infiltrating tumors and the mixed mass forming and periductal infiltrating tumors.

Stage I tumors are defined as T1 without regional lymph node metastasis (pN0, cN0). Stage II is defined as T2 tumors without regional lymph node involvement. Stage III is defined as T3 tumors without regional lymph node metastasis. Stage IVA is defined as either T4 or any T category with positive regional lymph nodes. Patients with distant metastasis, regardless of T and N status are considered stage IVB.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

Clinical factors predictive of decreased survival include serum CA 19.9 level, the presence of underlying liver disease, and multiple tumors. For patients treated with surgical resection, the main predictors of poor outcome include regional lymph node involvement and incomplete resection. Other important prognostic factors include the finding of satellitosis or multiple intrahepatic tumors, vascular invasion, and periductal infiltrating tumor growth pattern.

Figure 19.2 shows stratification of survivals for 647 patients with confirmed intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma based on new T category classification using SEER registry data.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Tumor (T)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ (intraductal tumor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Solitary tumor without vascular invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>Solitary tumor with vascular invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>Multiple tumors, with or without vascular invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor perforating the visceral peritoneum or involving the local extra hepatic structures by direct invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor with periductal invasion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regional Lymph Nodes (N)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis present</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distant Metastasis (M)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis present</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FIGURE 19.2.** Stratification of survival for 647 patients with confirmed intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma based on new T category classification using SEER registry data. T1: Solitary tumor without vascular invasion; T2: Solitary tumor with vascular invasion or multiple tumors; T3: Tumor perforating the visceral peritoneum or involving the local extra hepatic structures by direct invasion.
ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage 0</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

Required for staging
None

Clinically significant
Tumor growth pattern
Primary sclerosing cholangitis
CA 19-9

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

The histologic grade should be reported using the following scheme:

- **G1**: Well differentiated
- **G2**: Moderately differentiated
- **G3**: Poorly differentiated
- **G4**: Undifferentiated

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

The staging system applies to primary carcinomas of the intrahepatic bile ducts. These include the following:

- Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma
  - Mass forming tumor growth pattern
  - Periductal infiltrating tumor growth pattern
  - Mixed mass forming and periductal infiltrating growth pattern
  - Mixed Hepatocellular

This staging classification does not apply to primary sarcomas of the liver stroma or to liver metastases from other sites. The histopathologic subtype and, in the case of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma, the tumor growth pattern both should be recorded, since they may provide prognostic information.

BIBLIOGRAPHY


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to 'Always' in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Intrahepatic Bile Duct Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Tumor Size:</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Primary Tumor (T)</td>
<td>T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td>Solitary tumor without vascular invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ (intraductal tumor)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional Lymph Nodes (N)</td>
<td>NX</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distant Metastasis (M)</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)**

**Required for Staging:** None

**Clinically Significant:**
- Tumor growth pattern
- Primary sclerosing cholangitis
- CA 19-9

**General Notes:**
- For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.
- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.

### Hospital Name/Address

### Patient Name/Information

(continued on next page)
Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

Grading system

- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

Grade

- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

Additional Descriptors

Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

Residual Tumor (R)

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

National guidelines were used in treatment planning NCCN Other (describe):

Physician signature Date/Time

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

Intrahepatic bile duct

Extrahepatic bile duct

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Gallbladder

(Carcinoid tumors and sarcomas are not included)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- The cystic duct is now included in this classification scheme
- The N classification now distinguishes hilar nodes (N1: lymph nodes adjacent to the cystic duct, bile duct, hepatic artery, and portal vein) from other regional nodes (N2: celiac, periduodenal, and peripancreatic lymph nodes and those along the superior mesenteric artery)
- Stage groupings have been changed to better correlate with surgical resectability and patient outcome; locally unresectable T4 tumors have been reclassified as Stage IV
- Lymph node metastasis is now classified as Stage IIIB (N1) or Stage IVB (N2)

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T1-3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0-1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C23.9 Gallbladder
- C24.0 Cystic duct only

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES


INTRODUCTION

Cancers of the gallbladder are staged according to their depth of invasion into the gallbladder wall and extent of spread to surrounding structures and lymph nodes. The liver is a common site of involvement; thus, liver invasion impacts the primary tumor (T) classification. Other surrounding structures, such as the duodenum and transverse colon, are at risk of direct tumor extension. Invasion of hilar structures (common bile duct, hepatic artery, portal vein) usually renders these tumors locally unresectable. Development of jaundice suggests hilar involvement and is associated with unresectability and poor prognosis. Cholelithiasis is associated with carcinoma of the gallbladder in the majority of cases. Many of these cancers are found incidentally following cholecystectomy, either at operation or on final histologic analysis of the specimen. Tumors encountered this way may have a better prognosis when amenable to definitive surgical resection either at the time of cholecystectomy or at a subsequent operation. As many as 50% of resected gallbladder cancers undergo definitive resection at a second operation, with the gallbladder having been removed previously for presumed benign disease. Cystic duct involvement merits consideration of formal bile duct resection at the time of the definitive operation to achieve negative margin status. Peritoneal involvement is common, and diagnostic laparoscopy at the time of surgery is usually advised. Systemic therapeutic options are limited, making prognosis for patients with unresectable disease extremely poor. Survival correlates with stage of disease.
ANATOMY

Primary Site. The gallbladder is a pear-shaped saccular organ located under the liver situated in line with the physiologic division of the right and left lobes of the liver (Cantlie’s line). It straddles Couinaud segments IVb and V. The organ can be divided into three parts: a fundus, a body, and a neck, which tapers into the cystic duct (Figure 20.1). The wall is considerably thinner than that of other hollow organs and lacks a submucosal layer. Its make up consists of a mucosa, a muscular layer, perimuscular connective tissue, and a serosa on one side (serosa is lacking on the side embedded in the liver). An important anatomic consideration is that the serosa along the liver edge is more densely adherent to the liver (cystic plate) and much of this is often left behind at the time of cholecystectomy. For this reason, partial hepatic resection incorporating portions of segments IVb and V is undertaken for some cases. Primary carcinomas of the cystic duct are included in this staging classification schema.

Regional Lymph Nodes. For accurate staging, all nodes removed at operation should be assessed for metastasis. Regional lymph nodes are limited to the hepatic hilus (including nodes along the common bile duct, hepatic artery, portal vein, and cystic duct). Celiac and superior mesenteric artery node involvement is now considered distant metastatic disease.

Metastatic Sites. Cancers of the gallbladder usually metastasize to the peritoneum and liver and occasionally to the lungs and pleura.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Gallbladder cancers are staged primarily on the basis of surgical exploration or resection, but not all patients with gallbladder cancer undergo surgical resection. Many in situ and early-stage carcinomas are not recognized grossly. They are usually staged pathologically on histologic examination of the resected specimen. The T classification depends on the depth of tumor penetration into the wall of the gallbladder, on the presence or absence of tumor invasion into the liver, hepatic artery, or portal vein, and on the presence or absence of adjacent organ involvement. Direct tumor extension into the liver is not considered distant metastasis (M). Likewise, direct invasion of other adjacent organs, including colon, duodenum, stomach, common bile duct, abdominal wall, and diaphragm, is not considered distant metastasis but is classified in the T category (T3 or T4). Tumor confined to the gallbladder is classified as either T1 or T2, depending on the depth of invasion. It must be noted that because there is no serosa on the gallbladder on the side attached to the liver, a simple cholecystectomy may not completely remove a T2 tumor, even though such tumors are considered to be confined to the gallbladder.

Validation. Validation of stage grouping is based on multivariate analyses of outcome and survival data of the National Cancer Database (totaling 10,705 patients nationwide, Figure 20.2).

Clinical Staging. Clinical evaluation usually depends on the results of ultrasonography, computed tomography, and magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography. Clinical staging may also be based on findings from surgical exploration (laparoscopic or open) when the main tumor mass is not resected.

Pathologic Staging. Pathologic staging is based on examination of the surgical resection specimen.

The extent of resection (R0, complete resection with grossly and microscopically negative margins of resection; R1, grossly negative but microscopically positive margins of resection; R2, grossly and microscopically positive margins of resection) is a descriptor in the TNM staging system and is
the most important stage-independent prognostic factor. It should be reported in all cases.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

In as many as 50% of cases, gallbladder cancers are discovered at pathologic analysis after simple cholecystectomy for presumed gallstone disease. Five-year survival is 50% for patients with T1 tumors. Patients with T2 tumors have a 5-year survival rate of 29%, which appears to be improved with more radical resection. Patients with lymph node metastases (Stage IIIb or higher) or locally advanced tumors (Stage IVA or higher) rarely experience long-term survival. The site-specific prognostic factors include histologic type, histologic grade, and vascular invasion. Papillary carcinomas have the most favorable prognosis. Unfavorable histologic types include small cell carcinomas and undifferentiated carcinomas. Lymphatic and/or blood vessel invasion indicate a less favorable outcome. Histologic grade also correlates with outcome.

Patients with T2–T3 cancers discovered at pathologic analysis are usually offered a second operation for radical resection of residual tumor. This may include nonanatomic resection of the gallbladder bed (segments IVB and V of the liver) or more formal anatomic resection such as a right hepatectomy. Resection of the biliary tree is dependent on surgical decision making at the time of the definitive procedure and may be based on cystic duct margin status. Staging classification should be reported for tumors removed by either a single operation or a staged surgical procedure (cholecystectomy followed by definitive resection). In cases where the surgical procedure was staged, it should be noted whether the cholecystectomy was performed laparoscopically or via an open approach. Finally, comment should be made as to whether the primary tumor was located on the free peritoneal or the hepatic side of the gallbladder.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

**Primary Tumor (T)**
- TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- T0: No evidence of primary tumor
- Tis: Carcinoma in situ
- T1: Tumor invades lamina propria or muscular layer (Figure 20.3)
  - T1a: Tumor invades lamina propria
  - T1b: Tumor invades muscular layer
- T2: Tumor invades perimuscular connective tissue; no extension beyond serosa or into liver (Figure 20.4)
- T3: Tumor perforates the serosa (visceral peritoneum) and/or directly invades the liver and/or one other adjacent organ or structure, such as the stomach, duodenum, colon, pancreas, omentum, or extrahepatic bile ducts
- T4: Tumor invades main portal vein or hepatic artery or invades two or more extrahepatic organs or structures

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**
- NX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- N0: No regional lymph node metastasis
- N1: Metastases to nodes along the cystic duct, common bile duct, hepatic artery, and/or portal vein
- N2: Metastases to periportal, pericaval, superior mesenteric artery, and/or celiac artery lymph nodes

**Distant Metastasis (M)**
- M0: No distant metastasis
- M1: Distant metastasis

**FIGURE 20.3.** Schematic of T1, showing the tumor invading the lamina propria or muscle layer of the gallbladder.

**FIGURE 20.4.** Schematic of T2, showing the tumor invading perimuscular connective tissue of the gallbladder with no extension of the tumor beyond serosa or into the liver.
ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T1-3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0-1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mucinous carcinoma
Signet ring cell carcinoma
Squamous carcinoma
Adenosquamous carcinoma
Small cell carcinoma
Undifferentiated carcinoma
Spindle and giant cell types
Small cell types
Carcinoma, NOS
Carcinosarcoma
Other (specify)

*Grade 4 by definition

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)
(Recommended for Collection)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required for staging</th>
<th>None</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinically significant</td>
<td>Tumor location, Specimen type, Extent of liver resection, Free peritoneal side vs. hepatic side for T2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

GX  Grade cannot be assessed
G1  Well differentiated
G2  Moderately differentiated
G3  Poorly differentiated
G4  Undifferentiated

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

The staging system applies only to primary carcinomas of the gallbladder and cystic duct. It does not apply to carcinoid tumors or to sarcoma. Adenocarcinomas are the most common histologic type. More than 98% of gallbladder cancers are carcinomas. The histologic types of carcinomas are listed below:

Carcinoma in situ
Adenocarcinoma, NOS
Papillary carcinoma
Adenocarcinoma, intestinal type
Clear cell adenocarcinoma

BIBLIOGRAPHY

**Gallbladder Staging Form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>Tumor Size:</td>
<td>y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laterality:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>☐ left ☐ right ☐ bilateral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Tumor (T)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>TX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td>T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor invades lamina propria or muscular layer</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>Tumor invades lamina propria</td>
<td>T1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>Tumor invades muscular layer</td>
<td>T1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor invades perimuscular connective tissue; no extension beyond serosa or into liver</td>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor perforates the serosa (visceral peritoneum) and/or directly invades the liver and/or one other adjacent organ or structure, such as the stomach, duodenum, colon, pancreas, omentum, or extrahepatic bile ducts</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor invades main portal vein or hepatic artery or invades two or more extrahepatic organs or structures</td>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional Lymph Nodes (N)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td>NX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Metastases to nodes along the cystic duct, common bile duct, hepatic artery, and/or portal vein.</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Metastases to periaortic, pericaval, superior mesentery artery and/or celiac artery lymph nodes</td>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distant Metastasis (M)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups**

| Stage unknown | |

| Hospital Name/Address | Patient Name/Information |

*(continued on next page)*
**GALLBLADDER STAGING FORM**

**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)**

**REQUIRED FOR STAGING:** None

**CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:**
- Tumor location
- Specimen type
- Extent of liver resection
- Free peritoneal side vs hepatic side for T2

**Histologic Grade (G)** (also known as overall grade)

- **Grading system**
  - 2 grade system
  - 3 grade system
  - 4 grade system
  - No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

- **Grade**
  - Grade I or 1
  - Grade II or 2
  - Grade III or 3
  - Grade IV or 4

**ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS**

*Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)* have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**General Notes:**

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- **m suffix** indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.

- **y prefix** indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

- **r prefix** indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.

- **a prefix** designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

**surgical margins** is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

**neoadjuvant treatment** is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning  
  - NCCN  
  - Other (describe):

  ________________________________

---

**HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS**

**PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION**

(continued from previous page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Perihilar Bile Ducts

(Sarcoma and carcinoid tumors are not included.)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- Extrahepatic bile duct tumors have been separated into perihilar (proximal) and distal groups and separate staging classifications defined for each.
- T1 (confined to bile duct) and T2 (beyond the wall of the bile duct) have been specified histologically.
- T2 includes invasion of adjacent hepatic parenchyma.
- T3 is defined as unilateral vascular invasion.
- T4 is defined on the basis of bilateral biliary and/or vascular invasion.
- Lymph node metastasis has been reclassified as stage III (upstaged from stage II).
- The stage IV grouping defines unresectability based on local invasion (IVA) or distant disease (IVB).

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2a-b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T1-3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0-1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C24.0 Extrahepatic bile duct (proximal or perihilar only)

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES


INTRODUCTION

Proximal or perihilar cholangiocarcinomas (Klatskin tumors) involve the biliary confluence of the right or left hepatic ducts and comprise 50–70% of all cases of bile duct carcinomas (Figure 21.1). They are rare tumors, with an incidence of 1–2 per 100,000 in the USA. Early symptoms, including abdominal pain, anorexia, and weight loss, are nonspecific and occur in approximately one-third of patients. Symptoms and signs from bile duct obstruction, such as jaundice, clay-colored stools, dark urine, and pruritus, occur later in the disease.

Complete resection with negative histologic margins is the most robust predictor of long-term survival. However, the proximity of perihilar tumors to vital structures, including the hepatic artery, portal vein, and hepatic parenchyma, makes curative excision technically difficult. Over the past decade, improvements in imaging, perioperative care, and operative technique have allowed more patients to undergo curative resection. Recognition of the propensity of perihilar tumors for intrahepatic ductal extension, with invasion of the hepatic parenchyma in 85% of patients, has led to increased rates of extended hepatectomy (partial hepatic resection) or total hepatectomy with transplantation, with resultant

Job Name: -- /381449t

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
increase in margin-negative resections and improved overall survival rates.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. Cholangiocarcinoma can develop anywhere along the biliary tree, from proximal peripheral intrahepatic ducts to the distal intraduodenal bile duct. Extrahepatic bile duct tumors have traditionally been separated into perihilar (or proximal), middle, and distal subgroups. However, middle lesions are rare and managed either as a proximal tumor with combined hepatic and hilar resection or as a distal tumor with pancreateicoduodenectomy. In this edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, extrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma is divided into perihilar and distal subgroups, with middle lesions classified according to their treatment. Perihilar cholangiocarcinomas are defined anatomically as tumors located in the extrahepatic biliary tree proximal to the origin of the cystic duct. They may extend proximally into either the right hepatic duct, the left hepatic duct, or both. Laterally refers to tumor extension related to either right or left periductal regions.

The sixth edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual classified invasion of adjacent hepatic parenchyma and unilateral vascular involvement as T3. However, patients with invasion of adjacent hepatic parenchyma have been found to have a better prognosis than patients with vascular invasion (Figure 21.2). Thus, adjacent hepatic invasion is now classified T2, whereas unilateral vascular involvement is classified as T3.

T4 tumors are defined as those with bilateral hepatic involvement of vascular structures, bilateral tumor expansion into secondary biliary radicals, or extension to secondary biliary radicals with contralateral vascular invasion. The median survival of patients with T4 tumors is 8–13 months, and in this edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, T4 tumors are classified as stage IVA. However, highly selected patients with T4 tumors may be candidates for protocol-based chemoradiation followed by liver transplantation.

Regional Lymph Nodes. In perihilar cholangiocarcinoma, the prevalence of lymphatic metastasis increases directly with T category and ranges from 30% to 53% overall. Hilar and pericholedochal nodes in the hepatoduodenal ligament are most often involved.

Metastatic Sites. Perihilar cholangiocarcinoma is characterized by intrahepatic ductal extension, as well as spread along perineural and periductal lymphatic channels. While the liver is a common site of metastases, spread to other organs, especially extra-abdominal sites, is uncommon. Extrahepatic metastases have been reported in the peritoneal cavity, lung, brain, and bone.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Most patients with perihilar cholangiocarcinoma have locoregional extension or distant metastasis that precludes resection and thus are treated without pathologic staging. A single TNM classification must apply to both clinical and pathologic staging.

Clinical Staging. Clinical evaluation usually depends on the results of duplex ultrasound, computed tomography, and magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP). The biliary extent of disease is assessed with percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography or MRCP. Clinical staging also may be based on findings from surgical exploration when the main tumor mass is not resected.

Pathologic Staging. Pathologic staging is based on examination of the resected specimen and/or biopsies sufficient to document the greatest extent of disease. The extent of resection (R0, complete resection with grossly and microscopically negative margins of resection; R1, grossly negative but microscopically positive margins of resection;
R2, grossly and microscopically positive margins of resection) is a descriptor in the TNM staging system and is the most important stage-independent prognostic factor and should be reported.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

Patients who undergo surgical resection for localized perihilar cholangiocarcinoma have a median survival of approximately 3 years and a 5-year survival rate of 20% to 40%. In carefully selected patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis and early-stage perihilar cholangiocarcinoma, preliminary data report excellent results with neoadjuvant chemoradiation and liver transplantation. Complete resection with negative histologic margins is the major predictor of outcome, and liver resection is essential to achieve negative margins. Factors adversely associated with survival include high tumor grade, vascular invasion, lobar atrophy, and lymph node metastasis. Papillary morphology carries a more favorable prognosis than nodular or sclerosing tumors.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

**Primary Tumor (T)**
- TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- T0: No evidence of primary tumor
- Tis: Carcinoma in situ
- T1: Tumor confined to the bile duct, with extension up to the muscle layer or fibrous tissue
- T2a: Tumor invades beyond the wall of the bile duct to surrounding adipose tissue
- T2b: Tumor invades adjacent hepatic parenchyma
- T3: Tumor invades unilateral branches of the portal vein or hepatic artery
- T4: Tumor invades main portal vein or its branches bilaterally; or the common hepatic artery; or the second-order biliary radicals bilaterally; or unilateral second-order biliary radicals with contralateral portal vein or hepatic artery involvement

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**
- NX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- N0: No regional lymph node metastasis
- N1: Regional lymph node metastasis (including nodes along the cystic duct, common bile duct, hepatic artery, and portal vein)
- N2: Metastasis to periaortic, pericaval, superior mesenteric artery, and/or celiac artery lymph nodes

**Distant Metastasis (M)**
- M0: No distant metastasis
- M1: Distant metastasis

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2a-b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T1-3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0-1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)**

(Recommended for Collection)

- Required for staging: None
- Clinically significant:
  - Tumor location
  - Papillary variant
  - Tumor growth pattern
  - Primary sclerosing cholangitis
  - CA 19-9

**HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)**

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

- GX: Grade cannot be assessed
- G1: Well differentiated
- G2: Moderately differentiated
- G3: Poorly differentiated
- G4: Undifferentiated

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

The staging system applies to all carcinomas that arise in the perihilar extrahepatic bile ducts. Sarcomas and carcinoid tumors are excluded. Adenocarcinoma that is not further subclassified is the most common histologic type. Carcinomas account for more than 98% of cancers of the extrahepatic bile ducts. The histologic types include the following:

- Carcinomas in situ
- Adenocarcinoma
- Adenocarcinoma, intestinal type
- Clear cell adenocarcinoma
- Mucinous carcinoma
- Signet ring cell carcinoma
- Squamous cell carcinoma
- Adenosquamous carcinoma
Small cell carcinoma*
Undifferentiated carcinoma*
   Spindle and giant cell types
Small cell types
Papillomatosis
Papillary carcinoma, noninvasive
Papillary carcinoma, invasive
Carcinoma, NOS
Other (specify)

*Grade 4 by definition.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

### Perihilar Bile Ducts Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Extent of disease before any treatment</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
<th>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor Size:</td>
<td>Laterality:</td>
<td></td>
<td>y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>left □ right □ bilateral</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>TX □ T0 □ Tis □ T1 □ T2a □ T2b □ T3 □ T4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PRIMARY TUMOR (T)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
<td>Tumor confined to the bile duct, with extension up to the muscle layer or fibrous tissue</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor invades beyond the wall of the bile duct to surrounding adipose tissue</td>
<td>Tumor invades adjacent hepatic parenchyma</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor invades unilateral branches of the portal vein or hepatic artery</td>
<td>Tumor invades main portal vein or its branches bilaterally; or the common hepatic artery; or the second-order biliary radicals bilaterally; or unilateral second-order biliary radicals with contralateral portal vein or hepatic artery involvement</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NX □ N0 □ N1 □ N2 □ M0 □ M1</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis (including nodes along the cystic duct, common bile duct, hepatic artery, and portal vein)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis (including nodes along the cystic duct, common bile duct, hepatic artery, and portal vein)</td>
<td>Metastasis to periaortic, pericaval, superior mesentery artery, and/or celiac artery lymph nodes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DISTANT METASTASIS (M)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M0 □ M1</td>
<td>No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Distal metastasis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T</td>
<td>N  M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2a-b</td>
<td>N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T1-3</td>
<td>N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0-1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

(continued on next page)
PERIHILAR BILE DUCTS STAGING FORM

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)
REQUIRED FOR STAGING: None

CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:
- Tumor location _______________________________
- Papillary variant ______________________________
- Tumor growth pattern _________________________
- Primary sclerosing cholangitis ___________________
- CA 19-9 ____________________________________
- Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) _________________

Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

Grading system
- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

Additional descriptors
Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): ________________________________________

National guidelines were used in treatment planning □ NCCN □ Other (describe): ________________________________

General Notes:
- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The ctNM or ptNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

Surgeical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

Neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

Physician signature ____________________________ Date/Time ____________________________

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Distal Bile Duct

(Sarcoma and carcinoid tumors are not included.)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- Extrahepatic bile duct was a single chapter in the sixth edition, this has been divided into two chapters for the seventh edition [Perihilar Bile Ducts (see Chap. 21) and Distal Bile Duct]
- Two site-specific prognostic factors, preoperative or pretreatment serum carcinoembryonic antigen and CA19.9, are recommended for collection

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C24.0  Distal bile duct only

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES


INTRODUCTION

Malignant tumors can develop anywhere along the extrahepatic bile ducts. Of these tumors, 70–80% involve the confluence of the right and left hepatic ducts (perihilar carcinomas), and about 20–30% arise more distally. Diffuse involvement of the ducts is rare, occurring in only about 2% of cases. As a result of differences in anatomy of the bile duct and consideration of local factors that relate to resectability, extrahepatic bile duct carcinomas have been divided into perihilar and distal bile duct cancers. All malignant tumors of the extrahepatic bile ducts inevitably cause partial or complete ductal obstruction. Because the bile ducts have a small diameter, the signs and symptoms of obstruction usually occur while tumors are relatively small. Distal bile duct tumors are classified as those lesions arising between the junction of the cystic duct–bile duct and the ampulla of Vater. This TNM classification applies only to cancers arising in the extrahepatic bile ducts above the ampulla of Vater (Figure 22.1). It includes malignant tumors that develop in congenital choledochal cysts and tumors that arise in the intrapancreatic portion of the common bile duct. Patients with advanced (metastatic) disease and a primary tumor in the intrapancreatic portion of the common bile duct may be misclassified as having pancreatic cancer if surgical resection is not performed. In such cases, it is often impossible to determine (from radiographic images or endoscopy) whether a tumor arises from the intrapancreatic portion of the bile duct, the ampulla of Vater, or the pancreas. Tumors of the pancreas and ampulla of Vater are staged separately.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The cystic duct connects to the gallbladder and joins the common hepatic duct to form the common bile duct, which passes posterior to the first part of the duodenum, traverses the head of the pancreas, and then enters the second part of the duodenum through the ampulla of Vater. Histologically, the bile ducts are lined by a single layer of tall, uniform columnar cells. The mucosa usually forms irregular pleats or small longitudinal folds. The walls of the bile ducts have a layer of subepithelial connective tissue and muscle fibers. It should be
noted that the muscle fibers are most prominent in the distal segment of the common bile duct. The extrahepatic ducts lack a serosa but are surrounded by varying amounts of adventitial adipose tissue. Adipose tissue surrounding the fibromuscular wall is not considered part of the bile duct mural anatomy. Invasion of the perimural adventitial adipose tissue is considered extension beyond the bile duct wall.

Regional Lymph Nodes. Accurate tumor staging requires that all lymph nodes that are removed be analyzed. Optimal histologic examination of a pancreaticoduodenectomy specimen should include analysis of a minimum of 12 lymph nodes. If the resected lymph node is negative but this number examined is not met, pN0 should still be assigned. The regional lymph nodes are the same as those resected for cancers of the head of the pancreas; i.e., nodes along the common bile duct, hepatic artery, and back toward the celiac trunk, the posterior and anterior pancreaticoduodenal nodes, and the nodes along the superior mesenteric vein and the right lateral wall of the superior mesenteric artery. Anatomic division of regional lymph nodes is not necessary; however, separately submitted lymph nodes should be reported as submitted.

Metastatic Sites. Carcinomas that arise in the distal segment of the common bile duct can spread to the pancreas, duodenum, stomach, colon, or omentum. Distant metastases usually occur late in the course of the disease and are most often found in the liver, lungs, and peritoneum.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Most often, patients are staged following surgery and pathologic examination. In a third to a half of cases, surgical resection is not attempted because of local/regional extension, and patients are treated without pathologic staging. A single TNM classification applies to both clinical and pathologic staging. With advances in imaging, integrated radiologic and pathologic staging of patients can be satisfactorily achieved.

Clinical Staging. Clinical evaluation usually depends on the results of ultrasonography, contrast-enhanced multidetector computerized tomography (CT), or magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP), including arterial and portal venous phases, with thin sections whenever possible. Clinical staging may also be based on findings from surgical exploration when the main tumor mass is not resected.

Pathologic Staging. Pathologic staging depends on surgical resection and pathologic examination of the specimen and associated lymph nodes.

The extent of resection (R0, complete resection with grossly and microscopically negative margins of resection; R1, grossly negative but microscopically positive margins of resection; R2, grossly and microscopically positive margins of resection) is a descriptor in the TNM staging system and is the most important stage-independent prognostic factor and should be reported.

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

Patients who undergo surgical resection for localized bile duct adenocarcinoma have a median survival of approximately 2 years and a 5-year survival of 20–40% based on extent of disease at the time of surgery. Several adverse prognostic factors based on the pathologic characteristics of the primary tumor have been reported for carcinomas of the extrahepatic bile ducts. These include histologic type, histologic grade,
and vascular, lymphatic, and perineural invasion. Papillary carcinomas have a more favorable outcome than other types of carcinoma. High-grade tumors (grades 3–4) have a less favorable outcome than low-grade tumors (grades 1–2). Positive surgical margins have emerged as a very important prognostic factor. Residual tumor classification (R0, R1, R2) should be reported if the margins are involved.

Patients who undergo pancreaticoduodenectomy for localized periampullary adenocarcinoma of nonpancreatic origin have a superior survival duration compared with similarly treated patients who have adenocarcinoma of pancreatic origin (median survival 3–4 years compared with 18–24 months; 5-year survival 35–45% compared with 10–20%). However, as is true of the natural history of pancreatic adenocarcinoma, extent of disease and the histologic characteristics of the primary tumor predict survival duration. Even in patients who undergo a potentially curative resection, the presence of lymph node metastasis, poorly differentiated histology, positive margins of resection, and tumor invasion into the pancreas are associated with a less favorable outcome. Histologic evidence of tumor extension from the ampulla into the pancreatic parenchyma appears to reflect the extent of both local and regional disease. Perineural invasion, ulceration, and high histopathologic grade are also adverse prognostic factors. Although tumor size is not part of the TNM classification, it has prognostic significance.

Preoperative or pretreatment level of two serum markers, carcinoembryonic antigen and CA19-9, may have prognostic significance and their collection is recommended.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Tumor (T)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>TX Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>T0 No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Tis Carcinoma in situ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>T1 Tumor confined to the bile duct histologically</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>T2 Tumor invades beyond the wall of the bile duct</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>T3 Tumor invades the gallbladder, pancreas, duodenum, or other adjacent organs without involvement of the celiac axis, or the superior mesenteric artery</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>T4 Tumor involves the celiac axis, or the superior mesenteric artery</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regional Lymph Nodes (N)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N0 No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>N1 Regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distant Metastasis (M)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0 No distant metastasis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>M1 Distant metastasis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Primary Tumor</th>
<th>Regional Lymph Nodes</th>
<th>Distant Metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)**

(Recommended for Collection)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required for staging</th>
<th>None</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinically significant</td>
<td>Tumor location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CA 19-9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)**

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

| GX   | Grade cannot be assessed |
| G1   | Well differentiated |
| G2   | Moderately differentiated |
| G3   | Poorly differentiated |
| G4   | Undifferentiated |

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

The staging system applies to all carcinomas that arise in the distal extrahepatic bile ducts. Sarcomas and carcinoid tumors are excluded. Adenocarcinoma without specific subtype features is the most common histologic type. Carcinomas account for more than 98% of cancers of the distal extrahepatic bile ducts. The histologic types include:

- Carcinomas in situ
- Adenocarcinoma
- Adenocarcinoma, intestinal type
- Clear cell adenocarcinoma
- Mucinous carcinoma
- Signet ring cell carcinoma
- Squamous cell carcinoma
- Adenosquamous carcinoma
- Small cell carcinoma
Undifferentiated carcinoma  
  Spindle and giant cell types  
  Small cell types  
  Papillary carcinoma, noninvasive  
  Papillary carcinoma, invasive  
  Carcinoma, NOS  
  Other (specify)

BIBLIOGRAPHY

## Distal Bile Duct Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>TUMOR SIZE: ______________________</td>
<td>y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LATERALITY:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ left □ right □ bilateral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ TX</td>
<td>PRIMARY TUMOR (T)</td>
<td>□ TX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td>□ T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ T1s</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
<td>□ T1s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ T1</td>
<td>Tumor confined to the bile duct histologically</td>
<td>□ T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ T2</td>
<td>Tumor invades beyond the wall of the bile duct</td>
<td>□ T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ T3</td>
<td>Tumor invades the gallbladder, pancreas, duodenum or other adjacent organs without involvement of the celiac axis, or the superior mesenteric artery</td>
<td>□ T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ T4</td>
<td>Tumor involves the celiac axis, or the superior mesenteric artery</td>
<td>□ T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ NX</td>
<td>REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)</td>
<td>□ NX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ N0</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td>□ N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ N1</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td>□ N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ M0</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
<td>□ M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

#### CLINICAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>T1s</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PATHOLOGIC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>T1s</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**REQUIRED FOR STAGING:** None

**CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:**
- Tumor location ______________________
- Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) __________
- CA 19-9 ______________________________

### General Notes:

- For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.
- The "m" suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.

---

Distal Bile Duct
Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

- **Grading system**
  - 2 grade system
  - 3 grade system
  - 4 grade system
  - No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

- **Grade**
  - Grade I or 1
  - Grade II or 2
  - Grade III or 3
  - Grade IV or 4

**General Notes (continued):**
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

**ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS**
- Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.
  - Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
  - Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
  - Not Applicable
  - Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.
  - RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
  - R0 No residual tumor
  - R1 Microscopic residual tumor
  - R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):**

**National guidelines were used in treatment planning**
- NCCN
- Other (describe):

**Physician signature**

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued from previous page)
**DISTAL BILE DUCT STAGING FORM**

**Illustration**
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

---

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

---

Distal Bile Duct
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Ampulla of Vater

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- The definitions of TNM and the Stage Grouping for this chapter have not changed from the Sixth Edition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS</th>
<th>ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0  Tis  N0  M0</td>
<td>C24.1  Ampulla of Vater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA T1  N0  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB T2  N0  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA T3  N0  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB T1  N1  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2  N1  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3  N1  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III T4  Any N  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV Any T  Any N  M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES


INTRODUCTION

The ampulla of Vater is strategically located at the confluence of the pancreatic and common bile ducts (Figure 23.1). Most tumors that arise in this small structure obstruct the common bile duct, causing jaundice, abdominal pain, occasionally pancreatitis, and bleeding. Clinically and pathologically, carcinomas of the ampulla may be difficult to differentiate from those arising in the head of the pancreas or in the distal segment of the common bile duct. Primary cancers of the ampulla are not common, accounting for roughly 15–25% of neoplasms arising in the periampullary region, although they constitute a high proportion of malignant tumors occurring in the duodenum. Tumors of the ampulla must be differentiated from those arising in the second part of the duodenum and invading the ampulla. Carcinomas of the ampulla and periampullary region are often associated with familial adenomatous polyposis coli.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The ampulla is a small dilated duct less than 1.5-cm long, formed in most individuals by the union of the terminal segments of the pancreatic and common bile ducts. In 42% of individuals, however, the ampulla is the termination of the common duct only, the pancreatic duct having its own entrance into the duodenum adjacent to the ampulla. In these individuals, the ampulla may be difficult to locate or even nonexistent. The ampulla opens into the duodenum, usually on the posterior-medial wall, through a small mucosal elevation, the duodenal papilla, which is also called the papilla of Vater. Although carcinomas can arise either in the ampulla or on the papilla, they most commonly arise near the junction of the mucosa of the ampulla with that of the papilla. It may not be possible to determine the exact site of origin for large tumors. Nearly all cancers that arise in this area are well-differentiated adenocarcinomas.

Regional Lymph Nodes. A rich lymphatic network surrounds the pancreas and periampullary region, and accurate tumor staging requires that all lymph nodes that are removed be analyzed. The regional lymph nodes are the peripancreatic lymph nodes, which also include the lymph nodes along the hepatic artery and portal vein. Anatomic division of regional lymph nodes is not necessary. However, separately submitted lymph nodes should be reported as submitted. Optimal histologic examination of a pancreaticoduodenectomy specimen should include analysis of a minimum of 12 lymph nodes.
If the resected lymph nodes are negative, but this number examined is not met, pN0 should still be assigned. The number of lymph nodes sampled and the number of involved lymph nodes should be recorded.

**Metastatic Sites.** Tumors of the ampulla may infiltrate adjacent structures, such as the wall of the duodenum, the head of the pancreas, and extrahepatic bile ducts. Metastatic disease is most commonly found in the liver and peritoneum and is less commonly seen in the lungs and pleura.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

Most patients are staged pathologically after examination of the resected specimen. Classification is based primarily on local extension. The T classification depends on extension of the primary tumor through the ampulla of Vater or the sphincter of Oddi into the duodenal wall or beyond into the head of the pancreas or contiguous soft tissue. The designation T4 most commonly refers to local soft tissue invasion, but even T4 tumors are usually locally resectable.

**Clinical Staging.** Endoscopic ultrasonography and computed tomography are effective in preoperative staging and in evaluating resectability of ampullary carcinomas. Magnetic resonance imaging with magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography may be helpful, especially in the setting of complete obstruction of the pancreatic duct. Fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography (FDG-PET) has not emerged as useful in the initial evaluation of ampullary neoplasms, although it may be useful in detection of metastatic disease. Laparoscopy is occasionally performed for patients who are believed to have localized, potentially resectable tumors to exclude peritoneal metastases and small metastases on the surface of the liver.

**Pathologic Staging.** Pathologic staging depends on surgical resection and pathologic examination of the specimen and associated lymph nodes. The finding of positive regional lymph nodes has a significant negative impact on survival, with 5-year overall survival rates in one study falling from 63% for node negative patients to 40% for patients with one positive regional lymph node and 0% for those with four or more positive nodes. The completeness of resection (R0, complete resection with no residual tumor; R1, microscopic residual tumor; R2, macroscopic residual tumor) is not part of the TNM staging system but is prognostically of great significance.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

Patients who undergo pancreaticoduodenectomy for localized periampullary adenocarcinoma of non-pancreatic origin have a superior survival duration compared with similarly treated patients who have adenocarcinoma of pancreatic origin (median survival 3–4 years compared with 18–24 months; 5-year survival 35–45% compared with 10–20%). However, as is true of the natural history of pancreatic adenocarcinoma, extent of disease and the histologic characteristics of the primary tumor predict survival duration. Even in patients who undergo a potentially curative resection, the presence of lymph node metastases, poorly differentiated histology, positive margins of resection, and tumor invasion into the pancreas are associated with a less favorable outcome. Histologic evidence of tumor extension from the ampulla into the pancreatic parenchyma appears to reflect the extent of both local and regional disease. Perineural invasion, ulceration, and high histopathologic grade are also adverse prognostic factors.

Although tumor size is not part of the TNM classification, it has prognostic significance. Tumor involvement (positivity) of resection margins repeatedly has been demonstrated to be an adverse prognostic factor. The residual tumor classification (R1, or R2) should be reported if the margins are involved.

Lymph node metastasis in patients with adenocarcinoma of the ampulla of Vater is consistently reported to be a predictor of poor outcome, although it does not appear to be as powerful a predictor of disease recurrence or short survival duration as for pancreatic carcinoma. The actuarial 5-year survival following potentially curative surgery in node-positive patients with pancreatic adenocarcinoma is 0–5%;
in those with ampullary adenocarcinoma it is 15–30%. Extended retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy has not been shown to improve survival. Tumors with papillary histology have a better outcome than non-papillary tumors. Two serum markers may have prognostic significance and should be routinely collected before surgery or treatment begins and may be useful to assess treatment response. These are carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) and CA19-9.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

**Primary Tumor (T)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor limited to ampulla of Vater or sphincter of Oddi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor invades duodenal wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor invades pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor invades peripancreatic soft tissues or other adjacent organs or structures other than pancreas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Distant Metastasis (M)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)**

- Required for staging: None
- Clinically significant: Preoperative or pretreatment carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), Preoperative or pretreatment CA 19-9

**HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)**

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

- GX: Grade cannot be assessed
- G1: Well differentiated
- G2: Moderately differentiated
- G3: Poorly differentiated
- G4: Undifferentiated

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

The staging system applies to all primary carcinomas that arise in the ampulla or on the duodenal papilla. Adenocarcinomas are the most common histologic type. The classification does not apply to carcinoid tumors or to other neuroendocrine tumors. The following histologic types are included:

- Carcinoma in situ
- Adenocarcinoma
- Adenocarcinoma, intestinal type
- Clear cell adenocarcinoma
- Mucinous carcinoma
- Signet ring cell carcinoma
- Squamous cell carcinoma
- Adenosquamous carcinoma
- Small cell carcinoma
- Undifferentiated carcinoma
- Spindle and giant cell types
- Papillary carcinoma, noninvasive
- Papillary carcinoma, invasive
- Carcinoma
- Other (specify)

*Grade 4 by definition

**OUTCOMES RESULTS**

Observed survival rates for 4,328 cases with carcinoma of the ampulla of Vater from 1998 to 2002 are shown in Figure 23.2.
BIBLIOGRAPHY


### CLINICAL Extent of disease before any treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumor Size:</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC Extent of disease during and from surgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRIMARY TUMOR (T)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor limited to ampulla of Vater or sphincter of Oddi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor invades duodenal wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor invades pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor invades peripancreatic soft tissues or other adjacent organs or structures other than pancreas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DISTANT METASTASIS (M)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PATHOLOGIC Extent of disease during and from surgery

- y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery

### ANATOMIC STAGE - PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

#### Clinical

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pathologic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)

**REQUIRED FOR STAGING:** None

**CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:**

- Preoperative or pre-treatment carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA): __________
- Preoperative or pre-treatment CA 19-9 lab value: __________

### General Notes:

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- **m suffix**: indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
## Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grading system</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**General Notes (continued):**

- **y** prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

- **r** prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.

- **a** prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

- **surgical margins** is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

- **neoadjuvant treatment** is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

## Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)

Lymphatic-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

## Residual Tumor (R)

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

## Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

## National guidelines were used in treatment planning

- NCCN
- Other (describe):

## Physician signature

## Date/Time

### Hospital Name/Address

### Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
Exocrine and Endocrine Pancreas

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

● Pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors (including carcinoid tumors) are now staged by a single pancreatic staging system
● Survival tables and figures have been added for adenocarcinoma and neuroendocrine tumors
● The definition of TNM and the Anatomic Stage/Prognostic Groupings for this chapter have not changed from the sixth edition for exocrine tumors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS</th>
<th>ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0  Tis   N0  M0</td>
<td>C25.0  Head of pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA T1    N0  M0</td>
<td>C25.1  Body of pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB T2    N0  M0</td>
<td>C25.2  Tail of pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA T3   N0  M0</td>
<td>C25.3  Pancreatic duct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB T1   N1  M0</td>
<td>C25.4  Islets of Langerhans (endocrine pancreas)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2    N1  M0</td>
<td>C25.7  Other specified parts of pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3    N1  M0</td>
<td>C25.8  Overlapping lesion of pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III T4     Any N M0</td>
<td>C25.9  Pancreas, NOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV Any T   Any N M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8971, 8980–8981

INTRODUCTION

In the USA, pancreatic cancer is the second most common malignant tumor of the gastrointestinal tract and the fourth leading cause of cancer-related death in adults. The disease is difficult to diagnose, especially in its early stages, and pessimism regarding pancreatic cancer has resulted in underutilization of surgery for resectable patients. Most pancreatic cancers arise in the head of the pancreas, often causing bile duct obstruction that results in clinically evident jaundice. Cancers that arise in either the body or the tail of the pancreas are insidious in their development and often far advanced when first detected. Most pancreatic cancers are adenocarcinomas, which originate from the pancreatic duct cells. Pancreatic neuroendocrine carcinomas also arising from pancreatic duct cells capable of neuroendocrine differentiation comprise 3–5% of pancreatic malignancies. Surgical resection remains the only potentially curative approach, although multimodality therapy consisting of systemic agents, and often radiation, may improve survival. Staging of pancreatic cancers depends on the size and extent of the primary tumor.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The pancreas is a long, coarsely lobulated gland that lies transversely across the posterior abdomen and extends from the duodenum to the splenic hilum. The organ is divided into a head with a small uncinate process, a neck, a body, and a tail. The anterior aspect of the body of the

Exocrine and Endocrine Pancreas
pancreas is in direct contact with the posterior wall of the stomach; posteriorly, the pancreas extends to the inferior vena cava, superior mesenteric vein, splenic vein, and left kidney.

**Regional Lymph Nodes.** A rich lymphatic network surrounds the pancreas, and accurate tumor staging requires that all lymph nodes that are removed be analyzed. Optimal histologic examination of a pancreaticoduodenectomy specimen should include analysis of a minimum of 12 lymph nodes. The standard regional lymph node basins and soft tissues resected for tumors located in the head and neck of the pancreas include lymph nodes along the common bile duct, common hepatic artery, portal vein, posterior and anterior pancreaticoduodenal arcades, and along the superior mesenteric vein and right lateral wall of the superior mesenteric artery. For cancers located in body and tail, regional lymph node basins include lymph nodes along the common hepatic artery, celiac axis, splenic artery, and splenic hilum. Anatomic division of regional lymph nodes is not necessary. However, separately submitted lymph nodes should be reported as labeled by the surgeon.

**Metastatic Sites.** Distant spread is common on presentation and typically involves the liver, peritoneal cavity, and lungs. Metastases to other sites are uncommon.

**DEFINITION OF LOCATION**

Tumors of the head of the pancreas are those arising to the right of the superior mesenteric–portal vein confluence (Figure 24.1). The uncinate process is part of the pancreatic head. Tumors of the body of the pancreas are defined as those arising between the left edge of the superior mesenteric–portal vein confluence and the left edge of the aorta. Tumors of the tail of the pancreas are those arising to the left of the left edge of the aorta.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

Because only a minority of patients with pancreatic cancer undergo surgical resection of the pancreas (and adjacent lymph nodes), a single TNM classification must apply to both clinical and pathologic staging.

**Changes from the Sixth Edition**

1. Pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors and carcinoid tumors were specifically excluded in prior editions of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual. Pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors typically have a better prognosis than adenocarcinoma. However, neuroendocrine tumors can be staged by the exocrine cancer staging system. Although tumor size and the presence of lymph node metastases are of questionable importance, the survival discrimination seen likely stems from T and N stage serving as proxy for other prognostic factors that have been shown to be significant for neuroendocrine tumors such as tumor differentiation and functional status. Inclusion of these tumors in the staging system will improve data collection to facilitate investigation of prognostic factors.

2. Survival tables have been added for pancreatic adenocarcinoma and neuroendocrine tumors. These data from the National Cancer Data Base (NCDB) offer prognostic information for patients, provide detailed information for treatment decisions, and improve for stratification in clinical trials.

**Clinical Staging.** Information necessary for the clinical staging of pancreatic cancer can be obtained from physical examination and three-dimensional radiographic imaging studies, which include triphasic, contrast-enhanced multislice computed tomography or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). On the basis of the interpretation of CT images and chest radiographs, patients can be classified as having localized resectable (Stage I or II), locally advanced (Stage III), or metastatic (Stage IV) pancreatic cancer. Endoscopic ultrasonography (when done by experienced gastroenterologists) also provides information helpful for clinical staging and is the procedure of choice for performing fine-needle aspiration biopsy of the pancreas. Tumor involvement of the superior mesenteric or portal veins will usually be classified as T3 in the current AJCC T classification. Such tumors are considered resectable in some centers and there are limited data on the prognostic significance of venous invasion. The distinction between T3 and T4 reflects the difference between potentially resectable (T3) and locally advanced (T4) primary pancreatic tumors, both of which demonstrate radiographic or pathologic evidence of extrapancreatic tumor extension. The standard radiographic assessment of resectability includes evaluation for peritoneal or hepatic metastases; the patency of the superior mesenteric vein and portal vein and the relationship of these vessels and their tributaries to the tumor; and the relationship of the tumor to the superior mesenteric artery, celiac axis, and hepatic artery.

---

**FIGURE 24.1.** Tumors of the head of the pancreas are those arising to the right of the superior mesenteric–portal vein confluence.
Laparoscopy may be performed on patients believed to have localized, potentially resectable tumors to exclude peritoneal metastases and small metastases on the surface of the liver. Laparoscopy will reveal tiny (<1 cm) peritoneal or liver metastases and upstage (to Stage IV) approximately 10% of patients with tumors in the pancreatic head, and probably a greater percentage of patients with tumors in the body and tail. The necessity of obtaining peritoneal cytology from washings during laparoscopy remains controversial. At present, positive peritoneal cytology is considered M1 disease.

**Pathologic Staging.** The College of American Pathologists (CAP) Checklist for Endocrine or Exocrine Pancreatic Tumors is recommended as a guideline for the pathologic evaluation of these pancreatic resection specimens (http://www.cap.org/apps/cap.portal?_nfpb=true&_pageLabel=reference). Partial resection (pancreaticoduodenectomy or distal pancreatectomy) or complete resection of the pancreas, including the tumor and associated regional lymph nodes, provides the information necessary for pathologic staging. In pancreaticoduodenectomy specimens, the bile duct, pancreatic duct, and superior mesenteric artery margins should be evaluated grossly and microscopically. The superior mesenteric artery margin has also been termed the retroperitoneal, mesopancreatic, and uncinate margin. In total pancreatectomy specimens, the bile duct and retroperitoneal margins should be assessed. Duodenal (with pylorus-preserving pancreaticoduodenectomy) and gastric (with standard pancreaticoduodenectomy) margins are rarely involved, but their status should be included in the surgical pathology report. Reporting of margins may be facilitated by ensuring documentation of the pertinent margins: (1) Common bile (hepatic) duct, (2) pancreatic neck, (3) superior mesenteric artery margin, (4) other soft tissue margins (i.e., posterior pancreatic, duodenum, and stomach).

Particular attention should be paid to the superior mesenteric artery margin (soft tissue that often contains perineural tissue adjacent to the right lateral wall of the superior mesenteric artery; see Figure 24.2) because most local recurrences arise in the pancreatic bed along this critical margin. The soft tissue between the anterior surface of the inferior vena cava and the posterior aspect of the pancreatic head and duodenum is best referred to as the posterior pancreatic margin (not the retroperitoneal margin). The superior mesenteric artery margin (retroperitoneal or uncinate margin) should be inked as part of the gross evaluation of the specimen; the specimen is then cut perpendicular to the inked margin for histologic analysis. The closest microscopic approach of the tumor to the margin should be recorded in millimeters.

Seeding of the peritoneum (even if limited to the lesser sac region) is considered M1. Similarly, peritoneal fluid that contains cytologic (microscopic) evidence of carcinoma is considered M1. In patients without ascites, the implications of positive peritoneal cytology are not clear at this time, although the available data suggest that this finding predicts a short survival. Therefore, positive peritoneal cytology is also considered M1.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

**Adenocarcinoma.** Patients who undergo surgical resection for localized nonmetastatic adenocarcinoma of the pancreas have a long-term survival rate of approximately 20% and a median survival of 12–20 months (Table 24.1). Patients with locally advanced, non-metastatic disease have a median survival of 6–10 months (Table 24.2). Patients with metastatic disease have a short survival (3–6 months), the length of which depends on the extent of disease, performance status, and response to systemic therapy.

A number of investigators have examined pathologic factors of the resected tumor (in patients with apparently localized, resectable pancreatic cancer) in an effort to establish reliable prognostic variables associated with decreased survival duration. Metastatic disease in regional lymph nodes, poorly differentiated histology, and increased size of the primary tumor have been associated with decreased survival duration. Perineural invasion, lymphovascular invasion, and elevated CA 19-9 levels are also associated with a poor prognosis. Another prognostic factor of importance in patients who...
undergo pancreaticoduodenectomy is incomplete resection. Therefore, margin assessment is of major importance in the gross and microscopic evaluation of the pancreaticoduodenectomy specimen. It is important to note that the extent of resection (R0, complete resection with grossly and microscopically negative margins of resection; R1, grossly negative but microscopically positive margins of resection; R2, grossly and microscopically positive margins of resection) is not part of the TNM staging system but is prognostically significant. Retrospective pathologic analysis of archival material does not allow accurate assessment of the margins of resection or of the number of lymph nodes retrieved; this information must be obtained when the specimen is removed and examined in the surgical pathology laboratory. The margin of resection most likely to be positive is the superior mesenteric artery margin along the right lateral border of the superior mesenteric artery. This margin is defined as the soft tissue margin directly adjacent to the proximal 3–4 cm of the superior mesenteric artery and is inked for evaluation of margin status on permanent-section histologic evaluation (see the “Pathologic Staging” section). Incomplete resection resulting in a grossly positive retroperitoneal margin provides no survival advantage from surgical resection (compared with those who receive chemoradiation and no surgery).

**Neuroendocrine Tumors.** Patients who undergo surgical resection for localized neuroendocrine carcinoma of the pancreas have a 5-year overall survival rate of approximately 55.4%, significantly better than patients with pancreatic adenocarcinoma (Table 24.3). Those who do not undergo resection have 5-year survival of approximately 15.6%. The natural history of these tumors is poorly understood due to their relative rarity, but demonstrated prognostic factors include patient age, distant metastases, tumor functional status, and degree of differentiation. Including these tumors in the pancreatic cancer staging system will allow for improved data collection and subsequent identification of potential prognostic factors. Importantly, the classification of these tumors as “benign” or “malignant” is not consistent, thus all pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors irrespective of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Number of patients (N)</th>
<th>1-Year (%)</th>
<th>2-Year (%)</th>
<th>3-Year (%)</th>
<th>4-Year (%)</th>
<th>5-Year (%)</th>
<th>Median survival (months)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>1886</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td>71.3</td>
<td>50.2</td>
<td>40.7</td>
<td>34.7</td>
<td>31.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>2364</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>67.3</td>
<td>45.4</td>
<td>35.3</td>
<td>29.6</td>
<td>27.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>3846</td>
<td>17.9</td>
<td>60.7</td>
<td>34.9</td>
<td>23.8</td>
<td>18.4</td>
<td>15.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>7828</td>
<td>36.4</td>
<td>52.7</td>
<td>23.8</td>
<td>14.4</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>2850</td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>44.5</td>
<td>19.3</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>2738</td>
<td>12.7</td>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>2.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total** | 21,512 | 12.6 |


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Number of patients (N)</th>
<th>1-Year (%)</th>
<th>2-Year (%)</th>
<th>3-Year (%)</th>
<th>4-Year (%)</th>
<th>5-Year (%)</th>
<th>Median survival (months)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>3,412</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>29.2</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>4,298</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>26.0</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>8,486</td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>6,570</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>26.9</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>12,981</td>
<td>13.0</td>
<td>27.0</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>28,501</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>28,352</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total** | 100,201 | 12.6 |


**Table 24.3.** Five and ten-year survival rates for patients who underwent resection of pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Observed survival</th>
<th>Relative survival</th>
<th>Median survival</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-Year (%)</td>
<td>10-Year (%)</td>
<td>5-Year (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>61.0</td>
<td>46.0</td>
<td>75.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>52.0</td>
<td>28.8</td>
<td>64.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>41.4</td>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>60.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>19.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Superscript: Comparisons between each stage group are significant to $P < 0.0001$.

Superscript: Survival adjusted for patient age by matching against 1990 United States Census Bureau data.
being classified as benign or malignant should be staged by this system and reported to cancer registries.

### DEFINITIONS OF TNM

**Primary Tumor (T)**

- **TX**: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- **T0**: No evidence of primary tumor
- **Tis**: Carcinoma in situ
- **T1**: Tumor limited to the pancreas, 2 cm or less in greatest dimension
- **T2**: Tumor limited to the pancreas, more than 2 cm in greatest dimension
- **T3**: Tumor extends beyond the pancreas but without involvement of the celiac axis or the superior mesenteric artery
- **T4**: Tumor involves the celiac axis or the superior mesenteric artery (unresectable primary tumor)

*This also includes the "PanInIII" classification.

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

- **NX**: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0**: No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1**: Regional lymph node metastasis

**Distant Metastasis (M)**

- **M0**: No distant metastasis
- **M1**: Distant metastasis

### ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage 0</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

- **Required for staging**: None
- **Clinically significant**: Preoperative CA 19-9
  - Preoperative carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)
  - Preoperative plasma chromogranin A level (CgA) (endocrine pancreas)
  - Mitotic count (endocrine pancreas)

### HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

- **GX**: Grade cannot be assessed
- **G1**: Well differentiated
- **G2**: Moderately differentiated
- **G3**: Poorly differentiated
- **G4**: Undifferentiated

### HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

The staging system applies to all tumors that arise in the pancreas. Neuroendocrine tumors have a distinctly different tumor biology and better long-term survival; however, the TNM system provides reasonable stage discrimination. The following tumors are included:

- Severe ductal dysplasia/carcinoma in situ (PanIn III; pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia)
- Ductal adenocarcinoma
- Mucinous noncystic carcinoma
- Signet ring cell carcinoma
- Adenosquamous carcinoma
- Undifferentiated carcinoma
  - Spindle and giant cell types
  - Small cell types
- Mixed ductal-endocrine carcinoma
- Osteoclast-like giant cell tumor
- Serous cystadenocarcinoma
- Mucinous cystadenocarcinoma
- Intraductal papillary mucinous carcinoma with or without invasion (IPMN)
- Acinar cell carcinoma
- Acinar cell cystadenocarcinoma
- Mixed acinar-endocrine carcinoma
- Pancreaticoblastoma
- Solid pseudopapillary carcinoma
- Borderline (uncertain malignant potential) tumors
  - Mucinous cystic tumor with moderate dysplasia
  - Intraductal papillary-mucinous tumor with moderate dysplasia
  - Solid pseudopapillary tumor
- Composite carcinoid (combined with adenocarcinoma)
- Adenocarcinoid tumor
- Mixed islet cell and exocrine adenocarcinoma
- Islet cell carcinoma
- Insulinoma
- Glucagonoma
- Gastrinoma
- Vipoma
- Somatostatinoma
- Enteroglucagonoma

---

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Carcinoid tumor, NOS
Atypical carcinoid tumor
Neuroendocrine carcinoma, NOS

BIBLIOGRAPHY
**Pancreas Staging Form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Clinical</strong></th>
<th><strong>Stage Category Definitions</strong></th>
<th><strong>Pathologic</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td></td>
<td>☐ y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy and subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tumor Size:

- **Primary Tumor (T)**
  - T0: No evidence of primary tumor
  - Tis: Carcinoma in situ*
  - T1: Tumor limited to the pancreas, 2 cm or less in greatest dimension
  - T2: Tumor limited to the pancreas, more than 2 cm in greatest dimension
  - T3: Tumor extends beyond the pancreas but without involvement of the celiac axis or the superior mesenteric artery
  - T4: Tumor involves the celiac axis or the superior mesenteric artery (unresectable primary tumor)

*Note: This also includes the “PanInIII” classification*

- **Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**
  - Nx: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
  - N0: No regional lymph node metastasis
  - N1: Regional lymph node metastasis

- **Distant Metastasis (M)**
  - M0: No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
  - M1: Distant metastasis

### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Clinical</strong></th>
<th><strong>Pathologic</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Stage unknown</td>
<td>☐ Stage unknown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.

---

(continued on next page)
# Pancreas Staging Form

## Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Required for Staging:** None  
**Clinically Significant:**
- Preoperative CA 19-9  
- Preoperative Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA)  
- Preoperative plasma chromogranin A level (CgA) (endocrine pancreas)  
- Mitotic count (endocrine pancreas)  

## Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grading system</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Additional Descriptors

**Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars.** The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

## General Notes:

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- **m** suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- **y** prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- **r** prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- **a** prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

**surgical margins** is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

**neoadjuvant treatment** is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

## Clinical Stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning  
  - NCCN  
  - Other (describe): ________________

---

**Physician signature**  
**Date/Time**

---

### Hospital Name/Address  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Name/Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(continued from previous page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
PART IV
Thorax
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Lung

(Carcinoid tumors are included. Sarcomas and other rare tumors are not included.)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- This staging system is now recommended for the classification of both non-small cell and small cell lung carcinomas and for carcinoid tumors of the lung
- The T classifications have been redefined:
  - T1 has been subclassified into T1a (≤2 cm in size) and T1b (>2–3 cm in size)
  - T2 has been subclassified into T2a (>3–5 cm in size) and T2b (>5–7 cm in size)
  - T2 (>7 cm in size) has been reclassified as T3
  - Multiple tumor nodules in the same lobe have been reclassified from T4 to T3
  - Multiple tumor nodules in the same lung but a different lobe have been reclassified from M1 to T4
- No changes have been made to the N classification. However, a new international lymph node map defining the anatomical boundaries for lymph node stations has been developed
- The M classifications have been redefined:
  - M1 has been subdivided into M1a and M1b
  - Malignant pleural and pericardial effusions have been reclassified from T4 to M1a
  - Separate tumor nodules in the contralateral lung are considered M1a
  - M1b designates distant metastases

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occult Carcinoma</th>
<th>TX</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C34.0 Main bronchus
- C34.1 Upper lobe, lung
- C34.2 Middle lobe, lung
- C34.3 Lower lobe, lung
- C34.8 Overlapping lesion of lung
- C34.9 Lung, NOS
**INTRODUCTION**

Lung cancer is among the most common malignancies in the Western world and is the leading cause of cancer deaths in both men and women. The primary etiology of lung cancer is exposure to tobacco smoke. Other less common factors, such as asbestos exposure, may contribute to the development of lung cancer. In recent years, the level of tobacco exposure, generally expressed as the number of cigarette pack-years of smoking, has been correlated with the biology and clinical behavior of this malignancy. Lung cancer is usually diagnosed at an advanced stage and consequently the overall 5-year survival for patients is approximately 15%. However, patients diagnosed when the primary tumor is resectable experience 5-year survivals ranging from 20 to 80%. Clinical and pathologic staging is critical to selecting patients appropriately for surgery and multimodality therapy.

**ANATOMY**

**Primary Site.** Carcinomas of the lung arise either from the alveolar lining cells of the pulmonary parenchyma or from the mucosa of the tracheobronchial tree. The trachea, which lies in the middle mediastinum, divides into the right and left main bronchi, which extend into the right and left lungs, respectively. The bronchi then subdivide into the lobar bronchi in the upper, middle, and lower lobes on the right and the upper and lower lobes on the left. The lungs are encased in membranes called the visceral pleura. The inside of the chest cavity is lined by a similar membrane called the parietal pleura. The potential space between these two membranes is the pleural space. The mediastinum contains structures in between the lungs, including the heart, thymus, great vessels, lymph nodes, and esophagus.

The great vessels include:

- Aorta
- Superior vena cava
- Inferior vena cava
- Main pulmonary artery
- Intrapericardial segments of the trunk of the right and left pulmonary artery
- Intrapericardial segments of the superior and inferior right and left pulmonary veins

**Regional Lymph Nodes.** The regional lymph nodes extend from the supraclavicular region to the diaphragm. During the past three decades, two different lymph node maps have been used to describe the regional lymph nodes potentially involved by lung cancers. The first such map, proposed by Naruke (Figure 25.1) and officially endorsed by the Japan Lung Cancer Society, is used primarily in Japan. The second, the Mountain-Dresler modification of the American Thoracic Society (MD-ATS) lymph node map (Figure 25.2), is used in North America and Europe. The nomenclature for the anatomical locations of lymph nodes differs between these two maps especially with respect to nodes located in the paratracheal, tracheobronchial angle, and subcarinal areas. Recently, the International Association for the Study of Lung Cancer (IASLC) proposed a lymph node map (Figure 25.3) that reconciles the discrepancies between these two previous maps, considers other published proposals, and provides more detailed nomenclature for the anatomical boundaries of lymph nodes stations. Table 25.1 shows the definition for lymph node stations in all three maps. The IASLC lymph node map is now the recommended means in order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
of describing regional lymph node involvement for lung cancers. Analyses of a large international lung cancer database suggest that for purposes of prognostic classification, it may be appropriate to amalgamate lymph node stations into “zones” (Figure 25.3). However, the use of lymph node “zones” for N staging remains investigational and needs to be confirmed by future prospective studies.

There are no evidence-based guidelines regarding the number of lymph nodes to be removed at surgery for adequate staging. However, adequate N staging is generally considered to include sampling or dissection of lymph nodes from stations 2R, 4R, 7, 10R, and 11R for right-sided tumors, and stations 5, 7, 10 L, and 11 L for left-sided tumors. Station 9 lymph nodes should also be evaluated for lower lobe tumors. The more peripheral lymph nodes at stations 12–14 are usually evaluated by the pathologist in lobectomy or pneumonectomy specimens but may be separately removed when sublobar resections (e.g., segmentectomy) are performed. There is evidence to support the recommendation that histological examination of hilar and mediastinal lymphenectomy specimen(s) will ordinarily include 6 or more lymph nodes/stations. Three of these nodes/stations should be mediastinal, including the sub-carinal nodes and three from N1 nodes/stations.

**Distant Metastatic Sites.** The most common metastatic sites are the brain, bones, adrenal glands, contralateral lung, liver, pericardium, kidneys, and subcutaneous tissues. However, virtually any organ can be a site of metastatic disease.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

Lung cancers are broadly classified as either non-small cell (approximately 85% of tumors) or small cell carcinomas (15% of tumors). This general histological distinction reflects the clinical and biological behavior of these two tumor types. Approximately half of all non-small cell lung cancers (NSCLC) are either localized or locally advanced at the time of diagnosis and are treated by resection alone or by combined modality therapy with or without resection. By contrast, small cell lung cancers (SCLC) are metastatic in 80% of cases at diagnosis. The 20% of SCLC that are initially localized to the hemithorax are usually locally advanced tumors managed by combination chemotherapy and radiotherapy. Less than 10% of SCLC are detected at a very early stage when they can be treated by resection and adjuvant chemotherapy.

The TNM staging system has traditionally been used for NSCLC. Although it is supposed to be applied also to SCLC, in practice these tumors have been classified as “limited” or “extensive” disease, a staging system introduced in the 1950s by the Veterans’ Administration Lung Study Group for use in their clinical trials. Limited disease (LD) was characterized by tumors confined to one hemithorax, although local extension and ipsilateral supraclavicular nodes could also be present if they could be encompassed in the same radiation portal as the primary tumor. No extrathoracic metastases could be present. All other patients were classified as extensive disease (ED). In 1989, a consensus report from the IASLC recommended that LD be defined as tumors limited to one hemithorax with regional lymph node metastases including hilar, ipsilateral and contralateral mediastinal and ipsilateral and contralateral supraclavicular nodes. This report also recommends that patients with ipsilateral pleural effusion regardless of whether cytology positive or negative should be considered to have LD if no extrathoracic metastases were detected. More recently, analysis of an international database developed by the IASLC that includes 8088 SCLC patients showed that the TNM staging system is applicable to SCLC. Therefore, the staging system being presented in this edition of the staging manual should now be applied to both NSCLC and SCLC.

Bronchopulmonary carcinoid tumors are also frequently classified according to the TNM staging system for NSCLC, even though they are not officially included in the AJCC or UICC staging manuals. Recent analysis of both the SEER and the IASLC international lung tumor databases indicates that the TNM staging system for NSCLC is also applicable to bronchopulmonary carcinoid tumors. Therefore, typical carcinoid and atypical carcinoid tumors should also now be routinely classified according to the TNM system used for NSCLC and SCLC.

**Clinical Staging.** Clinical classification (cTNM) is based on the evidence acquired before treatment, including physical examination, imaging studies (e.g., computed and positron emission tomography), laboratory tests, and staging procedures such as bronchoscopy or esophagoscopy with ultrasound directed biopsies (EBUS, EUS), mediastinoscopy,
mediastinotomy, thoracentesis, and thoracoscopy (VATS) as well as exploratory thoracotomy.

Pathologic Staging. Pathological classification uses the evidence acquired before treatment, supplemented or modified by the additional evidence acquired during and after surgery, particularly from pathologic examination. The pathologic stage provides additional precise data used for estimating prognosis and calculating end results.

- The pathologic assessment of the primary tumor (pT) entails resection of the primary tumor sufficient to evaluate the highest pT category.
- The complete pathologic assessment of the regional lymph nodes (pN) ideally entails removal of a sufficient number of lymph nodes to evaluate the highest pN category.
- If pathologic assessment of lymph nodes reveals negative nodes but the number of lymph node stations examined are fewer than suggested above, classify the N category as pN0.
- Isolated tumor cells (ITC) are single tumor cells or small clusters of cells not more than 0.2 mm in greatest dimension that are usually detected by immunohistochemistry or molecular methods. Cases with ITC in lymph nodes or at distant sites should be classified as N0 or M0, respectively. The same applies to cases with findings suggestive of tumor cells or their components by non-morphologic techniques such as flow cytometry or DNA analysis.
- The following classification of ITC may be used:
  - pN0: No regional lymph node metastasis histologically, no examination for ITC
  - pN0(i−): No regional lymph node metastasis histologically, negative morphological findings for ITC
  - pN0(i+): No regional lymph node metastasis histologically, positive morphological findings for ITC

FIGURE 25.2. Mountain/Dresler lymph node map. (From Mountain CF, Dresler CM. Regional lymph node classification for lung cancer staging. Chest 1997;111:1718–1723, used with permission.)
pN0(mol−) No regional lymph node metastasis histologically, negative non-morphological findings for ITC

pN0(mol+) No regional lymph node metastasis histologically, positive non-morphological findings for ITC

- The pathologic assessment of metastases may be either clinical or pathologic when the T and/or N categories meet the criteria for pathologic staging (pT, pN, cM, or pM).

Pathologic staging depends on the proven anatomic extent of disease, whether or not the primary lesion has been completely removed. If a biopsied primary tumor technically cannot be removed, or when it is unreasonable to remove it, and if the highest T and N categories or the M1 category of the tumor can be confirmed microscopically, the criteria for pathologic classification and staging have been satisfied without total removal of the primary cancer.

Basis for Current Revisions to the Lung Cancer Staging System. The 6th edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, introduced in 2002, made no changes to the previous edition with regards to lung cancer. The proposals for lung cancer staging in the 5th edition, published in 1997, were based on a relatively small database of 5,319 cases of NSCLC accumulated since 1975 by Dr. Clifton Mountain at the MD Anderson Cancer Center (Houston, TX, USA). During this time, there had been many refinements to the techniques available for clinical staging, principally the routine use of computed tomography and more recently, an increasing use of positron emission tomography. The database was largely...
**TABLE 25.1.** Definition for lymph node stations in Japan Lung Cancer Society Map, MD-ATS Map, and IASLC Map

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japan Lung Cancer Society map</th>
<th>MD-ATS map</th>
<th>IASLC map</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Low cervical, supraventricular and sternal notch nodes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Located in the area of the upper 1/3 of the intrathoracic trachea. Boundary level from the upper margin of the subclavian artery or the apex to the crossing point of the upper margin of the left brachiocephalic vein and the midline of the trachea</td>
<td>Nodes lying above a horizontal line at the upper rim of the brachiocephalic (left innominate) vein where it ascends to the left, crowing in front of the trachea at its midline</td>
<td>Upper border: lower margin of cricoid cartilage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lower border: clavicles bilaterally and, in the midline, the upper border of the manubrium, 1R designates right-sided nodes, 1L left-sided nodes in this region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For lymph node station 1, the midline of the trachea serves as the border between 1R and 1L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2 Paratracheal lymph nodes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Located in the area between the superior mediastinal lymph nodes (1) and the tracheobronchial lymph nodes (4). Paratracheal lymph nodes with primary tumor can be defined as ipsilateral lymph nodes; paratracheal lymph nodes without primary tumor can be defined as contralateral lymph nodes</td>
<td>Nodes lying above a horizontal line drawn tangential to the upper margin of the aortic arch and below the inferior boundary of No. 1 nodes</td>
<td>2R: Upper border: apex of the right lung and pleural space, and in the midline, the upper border of the manubrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lower border: intersection of caudal margin of innominate vein with the trachea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>As for lymph node station 4R, 2R includes nodes extending to the left lateral border of the trachea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2L: Upper border: apex of the left lung and pleural space, and in the midline, the upper border of the manubrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lower border: superior border of the aortic arch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3 Pretracheal lymph nodes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Located in the area anterior to the trachea and inferior to the superior mediastinal lymph nodes (1). On the right side, the boundary is limited to the posterior wall of the superior vena cava. On the left side, the boundary is limited to the posterior wall of the brachiocephalic vein</td>
<td>Prevascular and retrotracheal nodes may be designated 3A and 3P; midline nodes are considered to be ipsilateral</td>
<td>3a: Prevascular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>On the right:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Upper border: apex of chest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lower border: level of carina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anterior border: posterior aspect of sternum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Posterior border: anterior border of superior vena cava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>On the left:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Upper border: apex of chest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lower border: level of carina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anterior border: posterior aspect of sternum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Posterior border: left carotid artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3p: Retrotracheal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Upper border: apex of chest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lower border: carina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3 Pre-vascular and retrotracheal lymph nodes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Located in the retrotracheal or posterior area of the trachea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 4 Tracheobronchial lymph nodes

Located in the area superior to the carina. On the right side, located medial to the azygos vein. On the left side, located in the area surrounded by the medial wall of the aortic arch.

- The lower paratracheal nodes on the right lie to the right of the midline of the trachea between a horizontal line drawn tangential to the upper margin of the aortic arch and a line extending across the right main bronchus at the upper margin of the right lobe bronchus, and contained within the mediastinal pleural envelope; the lower paratracheal nodes on the left lie to the left of the midline of the trachea between a horizontal line drawn tangential to the upper margin of the aortic arch and a line extending across the left main bronchus at the level of the upper margin of the left upper lobe bronchus, medial to the ligamentum arteriosum and contained within the mediastinal pleural envelope. Researchers may wish to designate the lower paratracheal nodes as No. 4s (superior) and No. 4i (inferior) subsets for study purposes; the No. 4s nodes may be defined by a horizontal line extending across the trachea and drawn tangential to the cephalic border of the azygos vein; the No. 4i nodes may be defined by the lower boundary of No. 4s and the lower boundary of No. 4, as described above.

4R: includes right paratracheal nodes, and pretracheal nodes extending to the left lateral border of trachea.

Upper border: intersection of caudal margin of innominate vein with the trachea.

Lower border: lower border of azygos vein.

4L: includes nodes to the left of the left lateral border of the trachea, medial to the ligamentum arteriosum.

Upper border: upper margin of the aortic arch.

Lower border: upper rim of the left main pulmonary artery.

### 5 Subaortic lymph nodes

Located in the area adjacent to the ligamentum arteriosum (Botallo’s ligament). The boundary extends from the aortic arch to the left main pulmonary artery.

- Subaortic lymph nodes lateral to the ligamentum arteriosum or the aorta or left pulmonary artery and proximal to the first branch of the left pulmonary artery and lie within the mediastinal pleural envelope.

### 6 Para-aortic nodes (ascending aorta or phrenic)

Located along the ascending aorta, and in the area of the lateral wall of the aortic arch. Posterior boundary limited to the site of the vagal nerve.

- Nodes lying anterior and lateral to the ascending aorta and the aortic arch or the innominate artery, beneath a line tangential to the upper margin of the aortic arch.

### 7 Subcarinal nodes

Located in the area below the carina, where the trachea bifurcates to the two main bronchi.

- Nodes lying caudal to the carina of the trachea, but not associated with the lower lobe bronchi or arteries within the lung.

### 8 Para-esophageal nodes (below carina)

Located below the subcarinal lymph nodes, and along the esophagus.

- Nodes lying adjacent to the wall of the esophagus and to the right or left of the midline, excluding subcarinal nodes.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japan Lung Cancer Society map</th>
<th>MD-ATS map</th>
<th>IASLC map</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>9 Pulmonary ligament nodes</strong></td>
<td>Nodes lying within the pulmonary ligament, including those in the posterior wall, and lower part of the inferior pulmonary vein</td>
<td>Nodes lying within the pulmonary ligament  Upper border: the inferior pulmonary vein Lower border: the diaphragm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Located in the area of the posterior and the lower edge of the inferior pulmonary vein</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10 Hilac nodes</strong></td>
<td>The proximal lobar nodes, distal to the mediastinal pleural reflection and the nodes adjacent to the bronchus intermedius on the right; radiographically, the hilar shadow may be created by enlargement of both hilar and interlobar nodes</td>
<td>Includes nodes immediately adjacent to the mainstem bronchus and hilac vessels including the proximal portions of the pulmonary veins and main pulmonary artery  Upper border: the lower rim of the azygos vein on the right; upper rim of the pulmonary artery on the left  Lower border: interlobar region bilaterally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Located around the right and left main bronchi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>11 Interlobar nodes</strong></td>
<td>Nodes lying between the lobar bronchi</td>
<td>Between the origin of the lobar bronchi  11s: between the upper lobe bronchus and bronchus intermedius on the right  11i: between the middle and lower lobe bronchi on the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Located between the lobar bronchi. On the right side, subclassified into two groups:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11s: Superior interlobar nodes  located at the bifurcation of the upper and middle lobar bronchi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11i: Inferior interlobar nodes: located at the bifurcation of the middle and lower lobar bronchi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>12 Lobar nodes</strong></td>
<td>Nodes adjacent to the distal lobar bronchi</td>
<td>Adjacent to the lobar bronchi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Located in the area around the lobar branches, which are subclassified into three groups:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12u: Upper lobar lymph nodes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 m: Middle lobar lymph nodes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12l: Lower lobar lymph nodes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>13 Segmental nodes</strong></td>
<td>Nodes adjacent to the segmental bronchi</td>
<td>Adjacent to the segmental bronchi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Located along the segmental branches</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>14 Subsegmental nodes</strong></td>
<td>Nodes around the subsegmental bronchi</td>
<td>Adjacent to the subsegmental bronchi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Located along the subsegmental branches</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
from a single institution, containing cases predominantly treated surgically. Repeated iterations of the TNM staging system had seen recommendations for lung cancer staging evolve with little internal validation and no external validation of the descriptors or the stage groupings. Increasingly reports from other databases challenged some of the descriptors and stage groupings. In preparation for this 7th edition of the staging manual, the IASLC established a Lung Cancer Staging Project in 1998 to bring together the large databases available worldwide to inform recommendations for revision that would be intensively validated. The results of this project were accepted by the International Union Against Cancer (UICC) and the AJCC as the primary source for revisions of the lung cancer staging system in the 7th editions of their staging manuals.

The IASLC lung cancer database includes cases from 46 sources in more than 19 countries, diagnosed between 1990 and 2000 and treated by all modalities of care. A total of 100,869 cases were submitted to the data center at Cancer Research and Biostatistics (Seattle, WA, USA). After an initial sift to exclude cases outside the study period, those for whom cell type was not known, cases not newly diagnosed at the point of entry, and those with inadequate information on stage, treatment, or follow-up, 81,015 cases remained available data that met the requirements for conversion to newly presented T and M categories, reserving the other one-third of cases for later validation. The random selection process was stratified by type of database submission and time period of case entry (1990–1994 vs. 1995–2000).

Selection of a final stage grouping proposal from among the candidate schemes was done based on its statistical properties in the training set and its relevance to clinical practice and by consensus.

Table 25.2 shows a comparison of the 6th edition and 7th edition TNM for lung cancer to assure clarity for the user. The final 7th edition TNM is described in the "Definitions of TNM" section that follows.

**PROGNOStIC FEATuRES**

The IASLC lung cancer database, although retrospective, provides the largest published analyses of prognostic factors in both NSCLC and SCLC. Potentially useful prognostic variables for lung cancer survival that were considered included: TNM on indicator variables for the newly presented TM categories and an ordered variable for N category, excluding NX cases (Figures 25.4 and 25.5). The analysis was performed on a randomly selected training set comprising two-thirds of the available data that met the requirements for conversion to newly presented T and M categories, reserving the other one-third of cases for later validation. The random selection process was stratified by type of database submission and time period of case entry (1990–1994 vs. 1995–2000).

Selection of a final stage grouping proposal from among the candidate schemes was done based on its statistical properties in the training set and its relevance to clinical practice and by consensus.

Table 25.2 shows a comparison of the 6th edition and 7th edition TNM for lung cancer to assure clarity for the user. The final 7th edition TNM is described in the "Definitions of TNM" section that follows.

**PROGNOStIC FEATuRES**

The IASLC lung cancer database, although retrospective, provides the largest published analyses of prognostic factors in both NSCLC and SCLC. Potentially useful prognostic variables for lung cancer survival that were considered included: TNM on indicator variables for the newly presented TM categories and an ordered variable for N category, excluding NX cases (Figures 25.4 and 25.5). The analysis was performed on a randomly selected training set comprising two-thirds of the available data that met the requirements for conversion to newly presented T and M categories, reserving the other one-third of cases for later validation. The random selection process was stratified by type of database submission and time period of case entry (1990–1994 vs. 1995–2000).

Selection of a final stage grouping proposal from among the candidate schemes was done based on its statistical properties in the training set and its relevance to clinical practice and by consensus.

Table 25.2 shows a comparison of the 6th edition and 7th edition TNM for lung cancer to assure clarity for the user. The final 7th edition TNM is described in the "Definitions of TNM" section that follows.
stage, tumor histology, patient age, sex, and performance status, various laboratory values and molecular markers.

**Clinical Factors.** Analyses of the IASLC lung cancer database revealed that in addition to clinical stage, performance status and patient age and sex (male gender being associated with a worse survival) were important prognostic factors for both NSCLC and SCLC. In NSCLC, squamous cell carcinoma was associated with a better prognosis for patients with Stage III disease but not in other tumor stages. In advanced NSCLC (Stages IIIB/IV), some laboratory tests (principally white blood cells and hypercalcemia) were also important prognostic variables. In SCLC, albumin was an independent biological factor. Analyses that incorporate these factors along with overall TNM stage stratify both NSCLC and SCLC patients into 4 groups that have distinctly different overall survivals. In addition to these, a recent study of 455 patients with completely resected pathologic Stage I NSCLC suggests that high preoperative serum carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) levels identify patients who have a poor prognosis, especially if those levels also remain elevated postoperatively. Other retrospective studies report that the intensity of hypermetabolism on FDG-PET scan is correlated with outcome in NSCLC patients managed surgically. Additional prospective studies are needed to validate these findings and to determine whether FDG-PET is prognostic across all lung cancer stages and histologies.

In the lung, arterioles are frequently invaded by cancers. For this reason, the V classification is applicable to indicate vascular invasion, whether venous or arteriolar.

**Biological Factors.** In recent years, multiple biological and molecular markers have been found to have prognostic value for survival in lung cancer, particularly NSCLC. These are summarized in Table 25.3. Although some molecular abnormalities, for example EGFR and K-ras mutations, are now being used to stratify patients for treatment, none is yet routinely used for lung cancer staging.

### TABLE 25.2. Stage grouping comparisons: 6th edition vs. 7th edition descriptors, T and M categories, and stage groupings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sixth edition T/M descriptor</th>
<th>7th edition T/M</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>N1</th>
<th>N2</th>
<th>N3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T1 (≤2 cm)</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 (&gt;2–3 cm)</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 (≤5–7 cm)</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>IB</td>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 (&gt;7 cm)</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3 invasion</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4 (same lobe nodules)</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4 (extension)</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1 (ipsilateral lung)</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1 (contralateral lung)</td>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>IV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cells in bold indicate a change from the 6th edition for a particular TNM category.


### TABLE 25.3. Metaanalyses published on the prognostic value of biological or genetic markers for survival in lung cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Biological variable</th>
<th>Prognostic factor</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bcl-2</td>
<td>Favorable</td>
<td>Martin et al. 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTF1</td>
<td>Adverse</td>
<td>Berghmans et al. 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cox2</td>
<td>Adverse</td>
<td>Mascaux et al. 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR overexpression</td>
<td>Adverse</td>
<td>Nakamura et al. 2006 Meert et al. 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR mutation</td>
<td>Favorable</td>
<td>Marks et al. 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ras</td>
<td>Adverse</td>
<td>Mascaux et al. 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huncharek et al. 1999</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ki67</td>
<td>Adverse</td>
<td>Martin et al. 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HER2</td>
<td>Adverse</td>
<td>Meert et al. 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nakamura et al. 2005</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VEGF</td>
<td>Adverse</td>
<td>Delmotte et al. 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microvascular density</td>
<td>Adverse</td>
<td>Meert et al. 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p53</td>
<td>Adverse</td>
<td>Steels et al. 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huncharek et al. 2000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aneuploidy</td>
<td>Adverse</td>
<td>Choma et al. 2001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

Primary Tumor (T)

TX Primary tumor cannot be assessed, or tumor proven by the presence of malignant cells in sputum or bronchial washings but not visualized by imaging or bronchoscopy

T0 No evidence of primary tumor

Tis Carcinoma in situ

T1 Tumor 3 cm or less in greatest dimension, surrounded by lung or visceral pleura, without bronchoscopic evidence of invasion more proximal than the lobar bronchus (i.e., not in the main bronchus)*

T1a Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension

T1b Tumor more than 2 cm but 3 cm or less in greatest dimension

T2 Tumor more than 3 cm but 7 cm or less in greatest dimension, or tumor with any of the following features (T2 tumors with these features are classified T2a if 5 cm or less); Involves main bronchus, 2 cm or more distal to the carina; Invades visceral pleura (PL1 or PL2); Associated with atelectasis or obstructive pneumonitis that extends to the hilar region but does not involve the entire lung

T2a Tumor more than 3 cm but 5 cm or less in greatest dimension

T2b Tumor more than 5 cm but 7 cm or less in greatest dimension

T3 Tumor more than 7 cm or one that directly invades any of the following: parietal pleural (PL3), chest wall (including superior sulcus tumors), diaphragm, phrenic nerve, mediastinal pleura, parietal pericardium; or tumor in the main bronchus (less than 2 cm distal to the carina* but without involvement of the carina; or associated atelectasis or obstructive pneumonitis of the entire lung or separate tumor nodule(s) in the same lobe

T4 Tumor of any size that invades any of the following: mediastinum, heart, great vessels, trachea, recurrent laryngeal nerve, esophagus, vertebral body, carina, separate tumor nodule(s) in a different ipsilateral lobe

*The uncommon superficial spreading tumor of any size with its invasive component limited to the bronchial wall, which may extend proximally to the main bronchus, is also classified as T1a.

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed

N0 No regional lymph node metastases

N1 Metastasis in ipsilateral peribronchial and/or ipsilateral hilar lymph nodes and intrapulmonary nodes, including involvement by direct extension

N2 Metastasis in ipsilateral mediastinal and/or subcarinal lymph node(s)

N3 Metastasis in contralateral mediastinal, contralateral hilar, ipsilateral or contralateral scalene, or supraclavicular lymph node(s)

Distant Metastasis (M)

M0 No distant metastasis

M1 Distant metastasis

M1a Separate tumor nodule(s) in a contralateral lobe tumor with pleural nodules or malignant pleural (or pericardial) effusion*

M1b Distant metastasis (in extrathoracic organs)


*Most pleural (and pericardial) effusions with lung cancer are due to tumor. In a few patients, however, multiple cytologic examinations of pleural (pericardial) fluid are negative for tumor, and the fluid is nonbloody and is not an exudate. Where these elements and clinical judgment dictate that the effusion is not related to the tumor, the effusion should be excluded as a staging element and the patient should be classified as M0.

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occult carcinoma</th>
<th>TX</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Clinical significance of pleural/elastic layer invasion (based on H&E and elastic stains)
- Separate tumor nodules
- Vascular invasion – V classification (venous or arteriolar)

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE
- Bronchioloalveolar component
- Multiple synchronous primary tumors should be staged separately. The highest T category and stage of disease should be assigned and the multiplicity or the number of tumors should be indicated in parenthesis, e.g., T2(m) or T2(5).

**Vocal cord paralysis** (resulting from involvement of the recurrent branch of the vagus nerve), superior vena caval obstruction, or compression of the trachea or esophagus may be related to direct extension of the primary tumor or to lymph node involvement. The treatment options and prognosis associated with this direct extension of the primary tumor fall within the T4N0-1 (Stage IIIA) category; therefore, a classification of T4 is recommended. If the primary tumor is peripheral, vocal cord paralysis is usually related to the presence of N2 disease and should be classified as such.

The designation of “Pancoast” tumors relates to the symptom complex or syndrome caused by a tumor arising in the superior sulcus of the lung that involves the inferior branches of the brachial plexus (C8 and/or T1) and, in some cases, the stellate ganglion. Some superior sulcus tumors are more anteriorly located and cause fewer neurological symptoms but encase the subclavian vessels. The extent of disease varies in these tumors, and they should be classified according to the established rules. If there is evidence of invasion of the vertebral body or spinal canal, encasement of the subclavian vessels, or unequivocal involvement of the superior branches of the brachial plexus (C8 or above), the tumor is then classified as T4. If no criteria for T4 disease pertain, the tumor is classified as T3.

Tumors directly invading the diaphragm in the absence of other signs of locally advanced disease are rare, constituting less than 1% of all cases of potentially resectable NSCLC. These tumors are considered to be T3, but appear to have a poor prognosis, even after complete resection and in the absence of N2 disease. The classification of such tumors may need to be reevaluated in the future as more survival data become available.

The term “satellite nodules” was included in the 6th edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual. It was defined as additional small nodules in the same lobe as the primary tumor but anatomically distinct from it that could be recognized grossly. Additional small nodules that could be identified only microscopically were not included in this definition.

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE
- The World Health Organization histologic classification of tumors of the lung, 2004, is shown in Table 25.4.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Malignant epithelial tumors</th>
<th>ICD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Squamous cell carcinoma</td>
<td>8070/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papillary</td>
<td>8052/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear cell</td>
<td>8084/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small cell</td>
<td>8073/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basaloid</td>
<td>8083/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small cell carcinoma</td>
<td>8041/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined small cell carcinoma</td>
<td>8045/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8140/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma, mixed subtype</td>
<td>8255/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acinar adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8550/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papillary adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8260/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bronchioloalveolar carcinoma</td>
<td>8250/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonmucinous</td>
<td>8252/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucinous</td>
<td>8253/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed nonmucinous and mucinous or indeterminate</td>
<td>8254/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid adenocarcinoma with mucin production</td>
<td>8230/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8333/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucinous (&quot;colloid&quot;) carcinoma</td>
<td>8480/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucinous cystadenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8470/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signet ring adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8490/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear cell adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8310/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large cell carcinoma</td>
<td>8012/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large cell neuroendocrine carcinoma</td>
<td>8013/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined large cell neuroendocrine carcinoma</td>
<td>8013/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basaloid carcinoma</td>
<td>8123/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphoepithelioma-like carcinoma</td>
<td>8082/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear cell carcinoma</td>
<td>8310/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large cell carcinoma with rhabdoid phenotype</td>
<td>8014/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenosquamous carcinoma</td>
<td>8560/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarcomatoid carcinoma</td>
<td>8033/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pleomorphic carcinoma</td>
<td>8023/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spindle cell carcinoma</td>
<td>8032/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giant cell carcinoma</td>
<td>8031/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinosarcoma</td>
<td>8980/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary blastoma</td>
<td>8972/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoïd tumor</td>
<td>8240/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Typical carcinoïd</td>
<td>8240/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atypical carcinoïd</td>
<td>8249/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salivary gland tumours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucoepidermoid carcinoma</td>
<td>8430/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenoid cystic carcinoma</td>
<td>8200/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epithelial-myoepithelial carcinoma</td>
<td>8562/3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Morphology code of the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-0) and the Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine (http://snomed.org). Behavior is coded /0 for benign tumors, /3 for malignant tumors, and /1 for borderline or uncertain behavior.


BIBLIOGRAPHY


# Lung Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Tumor Size:</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>Laterality:</td>
<td>y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>T0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Tumor (T)</td>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis Carcinoma in situ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor ≤3 cm in greatest dimension, surrounded by lung or visceral pleura, without bronchoscopic evidence of invasion more proximal than the lobar bronchus (i.e., not in the main bronchus)*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor &gt; 2 cm but ≤3 cm in greatest dimension</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor &gt; 3 cm but ≤7 cm or tumor with any of the following features (T2 tumors with these features are classified T2a if ≤5 cm)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>involves main bronchus, &gt;2 cm distal to the carina</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invades visceral pleura (PL1 or PL2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associated with atelectasis or obstructive pneumonitis that extends to the hilar region but does not involve the entire lung</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor &gt; 3 cm but ≤5 cm in greatest dimension</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor &gt; 5 cm but ≤7 cm in greatest dimension</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor &gt; 7 cm or one that directly invades any of the following: parietal pleural (PL3), chest wall (including superior sulcus tumors), diaphragm, phrenic nerve, mediastinal pleura, parietal pericardium; or tumor in the main bronchus (&lt;2 cm distal to the carina* but without involvement of the carina; or associated atelectasis or obstructive pneumonitis of the entire lung or separate tumor nodule(s) in the same lobe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor of any size that invades any of the following: mediastinum, heart, great vessels, trachea, recurrent laryngeal nerve, esophagus, vertebral body, carina, separate tumor nodule(s) in a different ipsilateral lobe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The uncommon superficial spreading tumor of any size with its invasive component limited to the bronchial wall, which may extend proximally to the main bronchus, is also classified as T1a.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional Lymph Nodes (N)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastasis in ipsilateral peribronchial and/or ipsilateral hilar lymph nodes and intrapulmonary nodes, including involvement by direct extension</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastasis in ipsilateral mediastinal and/or subcarinal lymph node(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastasis in contralateral mediastinal, contralateral hilar, ipsilateral or contralateral scalene, or supraclavicular lymph node(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distal Metastasis (M)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Separate tumor nodule(s) in a contralateral lobe; tumor with pleural nodules or malignant pleural (or pericardial) effusion**</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distant metastasis (in extrathoracic organs)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**Most pleural (and pericardial) effusions with lung cancer are due to tumor. In a few patients, however, multiple cytopathologic examinations of pleural (pericardial) fluid are negative for tumor, and the fluid is nonbloody and is not an exudate. Where</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

(continued on next page)
these elements and clinical judgement dictate that the effusion is not related to the tumor, the effusion should be excluded as a staging element and the patient should be classified as M0.

### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Occult</td>
<td>TX N0 M0</td>
<td>Occult TX N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis N0 M0</td>
<td>0 Tis N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a N0 M0</td>
<td>IA T1a N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T2a N0 M0</td>
<td>IB T2a N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T2b N0 M0</td>
<td>IIA T2b N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2b N1 M0</td>
<td>IIB T2b N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3 N0 M0</td>
<td>IIIA T3 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T3 N1 M0</td>
<td>IIIB T3 N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T N1 M0</td>
<td>IV Any T N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Required for Staging:** None

**Clinically Significant:**
- Pleural/Elastic Layer Invasion (based on H&E and elastic stains)
- Separate Tumor Nodules

**General Notes:**
For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.
**Lung Staging Form**

### Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

**Grading system**
- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

**Grade**
- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

### Additional Descriptors

**Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)** have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

### Residual Tumor (R)

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

### General Notes (continued):

- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

### Surgical Margins

surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

### Neoadjuvant Treatment

neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

### Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning  □ NCCN  □ Other (describe): ____________________________

---

**Hospital Name/Address** | **Patient Name/Information**
--- | ---

---

(continued on next page)
Illustration
The IASLC lymph node map shown with the proposed amalgamation of lymph node levels into zones.
(© Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center, 2009.)

Supraclavicular zone
- 1 Low cervical, supraclavicular, and sternal notch nodes

Superior Mediastinal Nodes
Upper zone
- 2R Upper Paratracheal (right)
- 2L Upper Paratracheal (left)
- 3a Pre-vascular
- 3p Retrotracheal
- 4R Lower Paratracheal (right)
- 4L Lower Paratracheal (left)

Aortic Nodes
AP zone
- 5 Subaortic
- 6 Para-aortic (ascending aorta or phrenic)

Inferior Mediastinal Nodes
Subcarinal zone
- 7 Subcarinal

Lower zone
- 8 Paraesophageal (below carina)
- 9 Pulmonary ligament

N1 Nodes
Hilar/Interlobar zone
- 10 Hilar
- 11 Interlobar

Peripheral zone
- 12 Lobar
- 13 Segmental
- 14 Subsegmental

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
Pleural Mesothelioma

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES
• Peridiaphragmatic lymph nodes have been added to the N2 category

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0, N1, N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES
- C38.4 Pleura, NOS

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES
- 9050–9053

INTRODUCTION

Malignant mesotheliomas are relatively rare tumors that arise from the mesothelium lining the pleural, pericardial, and peritoneal cavities. They represent less than 2% of all cancers. The most common risk factor for malignant mesotheliomas is previous exposure to asbestos. The latency period between the asbestos exposure and the development of malignant mesothelioma is generally 20 years or more. Although peritoneal mesotheliomas are thought to occur in individuals who have had more extensive exposure than those with pleural mesothelioma, there is no clearly documented relationship between the amount of asbestos exposure and the subsequent development of this neoplasm. Malignant mesotheliomas were previously thought to be virulent tumors. However, this impression was probably related to the fact that most mesotheliomas are diagnosed when they are already at an advanced stage. Recent data indicate that the clinical and biological behavior of mesotheliomas is variable and that most mesotheliomas grow relatively slowly.

All mesotheliomas are fundamentally epithelial tumors. However, their morphology ranges from a pure epithelial appearance to an entirely sarcomatoid or even desmoplastic one. Distinguishing the pleomorphic histology of mesotheliomas from that of other neoplasms can be difficult, especially for the pure epithelial mesotheliomas that may closely resemble metastatic adenocarcinoma. Therefore, confirmation of the histological diagnosis by immunohistochemistry and/or electron microscopy is essential.

During the past 30 years, many staging systems have been proposed for malignant pleural mesothelioma. The first staging system for this disease published by the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) and simultaneously accepted by the International Union Against Cancer appeared in the fifth edition of the AJCC Staging Manual. The staging system described here represents an adoption of the one proposed in 1995 by the International Mesothelioma Interest Group (IMIG), which was based on updated information about the relationships between tumor T and N status and overall survival. This system has been validated by several surgical reports, but will likely require revision in the future as further data in larger numbers of patients become available. This staging system applies only to tumors arising in the pleura. Peritoneal and pericardial mesotheliomas are rare and do not lend themselves easily to a TNM staging system.
ANATOMY

Primary Site. The mesothelium covers the external surface of the lungs and the inside of the chest wall. It is usually composed of flat tightly connected cells no more than one layer thick.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The regional lymph nodes include:

- Intrathoracic
- Scalene
- Supraclavicular
- Internal mammary
- Peridaphragmatic

The regional lymph node map and nomenclature adopted for the mesothelioma staging system is identical to that used for lung cancer. See Chap. 25 for a detailed list of intrathoracic lymph nodes. For pN, histologic examination of a mediastinal lymphadenectomy or lymph node sampling specimen will ordinarily include regional nodes taken from the ipsilateral N1 and N2 nodal stations. In addition, mesotheliomas often metastasize to lymph nodes not involved by lung cancers, most commonly the internal mammary and peridaphragmatic nodes. These latter two regions also are classified as N2 nodal stations. Contralateral mediastinal and supraclavicular nodes may be available if a mediastinoscopy or node biopsy is also performed. If involved by metastatic disease these would be staged as N3.

Distant Metastatic Sites. Advanced malignant pleural mesotheliomas often metastasize widely to uncommon sites, including retroperitoneal lymph nodes, the brain, and spine, or even to organs such as the thyroid or prostate. However, the most frequent sites of metastatic disease are the peritoneum, contralateral pleura, and lung.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

This staging system serves both clinical and pathologic staging. Clinical staging depends on imaging; most frequently computed tomography (CT) and more recently FDG positron emission tomography (FDG-PET) scanning. Pathologic staging is based on surgical resection. The extent of disease before and after resection should be carefully documented. In some cases, complete N classification may not be possible, especially if technical unresectable tumor (T4) is found at thoracotomy which prevents access to both N1 and N2 lymph nodes. In this situation, the pN stage should be based on the histological findings in whichever lymph nodes were removed or should be designated as pNX if no lymph nodes could be removed.

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

Several factors are reported to have prognostic significance in patients with malignant pleural mesothelioma. Histologic subtype and patient performance status are consistently reported as prognostically significant. Patient age, gender, symptoms (absence or presence of chest pain), and history of asbestos exposure are also cited in various studies as potential prognostic factors. The intensity of primary tumor hypermetabolism on FDG-PET scan as measured by the standardized uptake value (SUV) has also been reported to correlate with overall survival, with tumor SUV greater than 10 being associated with a worse outcome. Further analysis of these various factors in a large multicenter database is needed to determine their true prognostic validity.

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

IMIG Staging System for Diffuse Malignant Pleural Mesothelioma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Tumor (T)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor limited to the ipsilateral parietal pleura with or without mediastinal pleura and with or without diaphragmatic pleural involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>No involvement of the visceral pleura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>Tumor also involving the visceral pleura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor involving each of the ipsilateral pleural surfaces (parietal, mediastinal, diaphragmatic, and visceral pleura) with at least one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Involvement of diaphragmatic muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Extension of tumor from visceral pleura into the underlying pulmonary parenchyma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Locally advanced but potentially resectable tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor involving all of the ipsilateral pleural surfaces (parietal, mediastinal, diaphragmatic, and visceral pleura) with at least one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Involvement of the endothoracic fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Extension into the mediastinal fat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Solitary, completely resectable focus of tumor extending into the soft tissues of the chest wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nontransmural involvement of the pericardium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Locally advanced technically unresectable tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor involving all of the ipsilateral pleural surfaces (parietal, mediastinal, diaphragmatic, and visceral pleura) with at least one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diffuse extension or multifocal masses of tumor in the chest wall, with or without associated rib destruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Direct transdiaphragmatic extension of tumor to the peritoneum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Direct extension of tumor to the contralateral pleura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Direct extension of tumor to mediastinal organs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Direct extension of tumor into the spine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tumor extending through to the internal surface of the pericardium with or without a pericardial effusion or tumor involving the myocardium

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Lymph Node Metastases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Metastases in the ipsilateral bronchopulmonary or hilar lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Metastases in the subcarinal or the ipsilateral mediastinal lymph nodes including the ipsilateral internal mammary and peridiaphragmatic nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
<td>Metastases in the contralateral mediastinal, contralateral internal mammary, ipsilateral or contralateral supraclavicular lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Distant Metastasis (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Distant Metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis present</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tumor Extent</th>
<th>Lymph Node Status</th>
<th>Distant Metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0, N1, N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

- Required for staging: None
- Clinically significant: Histological subtype (epithelioid, mixed or biphasic, sarcomatoid, desmoplastic) Presence or absence of chest pain FDG-PET SUV

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

There are four types of malignant pleural mesothelioma, which are listed here in descending order of frequency:

1. Epithelioid
2. Biphasic (at least 10% of both epithelioid and sarcomatoid components)
3. Sarcomatoid
4. Desmoplastic

In general, the pure epithelioid tumors are associated with a better prognosis than the biphasic or sarcomatoid tumors. Despite their bland histological appearance, desmoplastic tumors appear to have the worst prognosis. The biology underlying these differences is not yet understood.

BIBLIOGRAPHY


**Pleural Mesothelioma Staging Form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extent of disease during and from surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>Tumor Size: ____________________</td>
<td>y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laterality: □ left □ right □ bilateral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRIMARY TUMOR (T)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumor Size</th>
<th>Laterality</th>
<th>Staging System for Diffuse Malignant Pleural Mesothelioma (MPM)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td></td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td></td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor limited to the ipsilateral parietal pleura with or without mediastinal pleura and with or without diaphragmatic pleural involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor also involving the visceral pleura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor involving each of the ipsilateral pleural surfaces (parietal, mediastinal, diaphragmatic, and visceral pleura) with at least one of the following features:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>involvement of diaphragmatic muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>extension of tumor from visceral pleura into the underlying pulmonary parenchyma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td></td>
<td>Locally advanced but potentially resectable tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Locally advanced technically unresectable tumor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)**

| N0         | No regional lymph node metastases                              |
| N1         | Metastases in the ipsilateral bronchopulmonary or hilar lymph nodes |
| N2         | Metastases in the subcarinal or the ipsilateral mediastinal lymph nodes |
| N3         | Metastases in the contralateral mediastinal, contralateral internal mammary, ipsilateral or contralateral supraclavicular lymph nodes |

**DISTANT METASTASIS (M)**

| M0         | No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group) |
| M1         | Distant metastasis                                                 |

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Pleural Mesothelioma Staging Form

#### Clinical Stage • Prognostic Grouping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0, N1, N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Stage unknown

#### Pathologic Stage • Prognostic Grouping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0, N1, N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Stage unknown

#### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

- **Required for Staging:** None
- **Clinically Significant:**
  - Histological subtype: □ epithelioid □ mixed or biphasic □ sarcomatoid □ desmoplastic
  - History of asbestos exposure: □ Yes □ No
  - Presence or absence of chest pain: □ Present □ Absent
  - FDG-PET SUV: __________

#### Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade system</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Additional Descriptors

- **Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)** have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.
  - Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
  - Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
  - Not Applicable
  - Unknown/Indeterminate

#### General Notes:

- For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- **m suffix** indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: p(Tm)NM.

- **y prefix** indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

- **r prefix** indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.

- **a prefix** designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

---

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued from previous page)
Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): ________________________________

National guidelines were used in treatment planning  
- NCCN  
- Other (describe): ________________________________

Physician signature ___________________________ Date/Time ___________________________

surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
PART V
Musculoskeletal Sites
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Bone

(Primary malignant lymphoma and multiple myeloma are not included.)

At-A-Glance

### SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- Stage III is reserved for G3, G4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS</th>
<th>ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA T1 N0 M0 G1,2 Low grade, GX</td>
<td>C40.0 Long bones of upper limb, scapula, and associated joints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB T2 N0 M0 G1,2 Low grade, GX T3 N0 M0 G1,2 Low grade, GX</td>
<td>C40.1 Short bones of upper limb and associated joints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA T1 N0 M0 G3,4 High grade</td>
<td>C40.2 Long bones of lower limb and associated joints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB T2 N0 M0 G3,4 High grade</td>
<td>C40.3 Short bones of lower limb and associated joints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III T3 N0 M0 G3,4</td>
<td>C40.8 Overlapping lesion of bones, joints, and articular cartilage of limbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA Any T N0 M1a Any G</td>
<td>C40.9 Bone of limb, NOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB Any T N1 Any M Any G</td>
<td>C41.0 Bones of skull and face and associated joints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T Any N M1b Any G</td>
<td>C41.1 Mandible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C41.2 Vertebral column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C41.3 Rib, sternum, clavicle, and associated joints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C41.4 Pelvic bones, sacrum, coccyx, and associated joints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C41.8 Overlapping lesion of bones, joints, and articular cartilage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C41.9 Bone, NOS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8800–9136, 9142–9582
INTRODUCTION

This classification is used for all primary malignant tumors of bone except primary malignant lymphoma and multiple myeloma. These tumors are relatively rare, representing less than 0.2% of all malignancies. Osteosarcoma (35%), chondrosarcoma (30%), and Ewing's sarcoma (16%) are the three most common forms of primary bone cancer. Osteosarcoma and Ewing's sarcoma develop mainly in children and young adults, whereas chondrosarcoma is usually found in middle aged and older adults. Data from these three histologies analyzed at multiple institutions, predominantly influence this staging system. Staging of bone sarcomas is the process whereby patients are evaluated with regard to histology, as well as the local and distant extent of disease. Bone sarcomas are staged based on grade, size, and the presence and location of metastases. The system is designed to help stratify patients according to known risk factors.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. All bones of the skeleton are included in this system. The current staging system does not take into account anatomic site. However, anatomic site is known to influence outcome, and therefore outcome data should be reported specifying site. Site groups for bone sarcoma:

- Extremity
- Pelvis
- Spine

Regional Lymph Nodes. Regional lymph metastases from bone tumors are extremely rare.

Metastatic Sites. A metastatic site includes any site beyond the regional lymph nodes of the primary site. Pulmonary metastases are the most frequent site for all bone sarcomas. Extra pulmonary metastases occur infrequently, and may include secondary bone metastases, for example.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. Clinical staging includes all relevant data prior to primary definitive therapy, including physical examination, imaging, and biopsy. It is dependent on the T, N, M characteristics of the identified tumor. T is divided into lesions of maximum dimension 8 cm or less (T1), and lesions greater than 8 cm (T2). T3 has been redefined to include only high-grade tumors, discontinuous, within the same bone. Metastatic disease should be evaluated for and described. In general, the minimum clinical staging workup of a bone sarcoma should include axial imaging using MRI and/or CT, CT scan of the chest, and technetium scintigraphy of the entire skeleton.

The radiograph remains the mainstay in determining whether a lesion of bone requires staging and usually is the modality that permits reliable prediction of the probable histology of a lesion of bone.

Local staging of all bone sarcomas is most accurately achieved by magnetic resonance (MR) imaging. Axial imaging, complemented by either coronal or sagittal imaging planes using T1- and T2-weighted SPIN-echo sequences, most often provides accurate depiction of intra- and extraneous tumor. To improve conspicuity in locations such as the pelvis or vertebral, these sequences could be augmented by fat-suppressed pulse sequences. The maximum dimension of the tumor must be measured prior to any treatment. The decision to use intravenous contrast should be based upon medical appropriateness.

Computerized tomography (CT) has a limited role in local staging of tumors. In those situations, where characterization of a lesion by radiography may be incomplete or difficult because of inadequate visualization of the matrix of a lesion, CT may be preferred to MR imaging. The role of CT in these circumstances is to characterize the lesion and determine whether it is potentially malignant or not, and the obtained CT images may suffice for local staging. CT remains the examination of choice for evaluating the presence or absence of pulmonary metastases.

Technetium scintigraphy is the examination of choice for evaluating the entire skeleton to determine whether there are multiple bony lesions. The role of positron emission tomography (PET) in the evaluation and staging of bone sarcomas remains incompletely defined. Reports indicate usefulness in detecting extrapulmonary metastases, evaluating response to chemotherapy, and determining local recurrence adjacent to prosthetic implants.

Biopsy. Biopsy of the tumor completes the staging process, and the location of the biopsy must be carefully planned to allow for eventual en bloc resection of the entire biopsy tract together with a malignant neoplasm. Staging of the lesion should precede biopsy. Imaging the tumor after biopsy may compromise the accuracy of the staging process.

Pathologic Staging. The pathologic diagnosis is based on the microscopic examination of tissue, correlated with imaging studies. Pathologic staging pTNM includes pathologic data obtained from examination of a resected specimen sufficient to evaluate the highest T category; histopathologic type and grade, regional lymph nodes as appropriate, or distant metastasis. Because regional lymph node involvement from bone tumors is rare, the pathologic stage grouping includes any of the following combinations: pT pG pN pM, or pT pG cN cM, or cT cN pM. Grade should be assigned to all bone sarcomas. Based upon published outcomes data, the current staging system accommodates a two-tiered system (low vs. high grade) for recording grade.

Restaging of Recurrent Tumors. The same staging should be used when a patient requires restaging of sarcoma recurrence. Such reports should specify whether patients have...
primary lesions or lesions that were previously treated and have subsequently recurred. The identification and reporting of etiologic factors such as radiation exposure and inherited or genetic syndromes are encouraged.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

Known prognostic factors for malignant bone tumors are as follows. (1) T1 tumors have a better prognosis than T2 tumors. (2) Histopathologic low grade (G1, G2) has a better prognosis than high grade (G3, G4). (3) Location of the primary tumor is a prognostic factor. Patients who have an anatomically resectable primary tumor have a better prognosis than those with a non-resectable tumor, and tumors of the spine and pelvis tend to have a poorer prognosis. (4) The size of the primary tumor is a prognostic factor for osteosarcoma and Ewing's sarcoma. Ewing's sarcoma patients with a tumor 8 cm or less in greatest dimension have a better prognosis than those with a tumor greater than 8 cm. Osteosarcoma patients with a tumor 9 cm or less in greatest dimension have a better prognosis than those with a tumor greater than 9 cm. (5) Patients who have a localized primary tumor have a better prognosis than those with metastases. (6) Certain metastatic sites are associated with a poorer prognosis than other sites: bony and hepatic metastases convey a much worse prognosis than do lung metastases, and patients with solitary lung metastases have a better prognosis than those with multiple lung lesions. (7) Histologic response of the primary tumor to chemotherapy is a prognostic factor for osteosarcoma and Ewing's sarcoma. Those patients with a “good” response, >90% tumor necrosis, have a better prognosis than those with less necrosis. (8) Patients with osteosarcoma who experience pathologic fractures may have a poorer prognosis, particularly if their fracture does not heal during chemotherapy. (9) Recent studies have shown that the biologic behavior of osteosarcoma and Ewing's sarcoma is related to specific molecular abnormalities identified in these neoplasms. As with soft tissue sarcomas, investigation has been undertaken to identify molecular markers that are useful both as prognostic tools as well as in directing treatment. The results of this investigation have shown that the biologic behavior of osteosarcoma and Ewing's sarcoma can be related to specific molecular abnormalities. For practical purposes, prognostically relevant molecular aberrations are considered in terms of gene translocations, expression of multidrug resistance genes, expression of growth factor receptors, and mutations in cell cycle regulators.

Investigation as to whether the type of fusion gene detected in Ewing's sarcoma has prognostic significance has been met with mixed results. Initial studies suggested that the EWS-FLI1 type 1 fusion gene was associated with longer relapse-free survival in patients with localized disease and have been confirmed with a subsequent study which found an association between type 1 EWS-FLI1 and overall survival by multivariate analysis. In contrast, a study concluded that no prognostic value was attributed to different fusion genes when evaluated for event-free and overall survival by univariate analysis.

P-glycoprotein, the product of the multidrug resistance 1 gene (MDR1), functions to remove certain chemotherapeutic drugs, such as doxorubicin, from tumor cells. In osteosarcoma, P-glycoprotein status has been noted to be an independent predictor of clinical outcome and to be associated with a nine-fold increase in the odds of death and a fivefold increase in the odds of metastases in patients with Stage IIB osteosarcoma. Further investigation showed that P-glycoprotein-positivity at diagnosis emerged as the single factor significantly associated with an unfavorable outcome from survival and multivariate analyses and this association was strong enough to be useful in stratifying patients in whom alternative treatments were being considered.

Also in osteosarcoma, investigation of human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2/erbB-2) has led to differing results between investigators as well. Gorlick et al. identified a significant percentage (42.6%) of initial biopsies with high levels of HER2/erbB-2 expression. They noted that there was a correlation with histologic response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy and event-free survival. Zhou et al. noted an association between HER2/erbB-2 expression with an increased risk of metastasis. Scotlandi also confirmed an advantage in event-free survival with HER2 overexpression. Subsequent analysis by Scotlandi has failed to show HER2 amplification/overexpression by immunohistochemistry/CISH and FISH, respectively.

In Ewing's sarcoma, the status of several cell cycle regulators has been shown to correlate with outcome. Aberrant P53, p16INK4A, and p14ARF expression has been shown by several investigators to identify a subset of patients whose tumors will exhibit aggressive behavior and a poor response to chemotherapy. Additional studies revealed that loss of INK4 expression correlated with metastatic disease at presentation and also showed a trend toward shortened survival. Suppression of the cyclin-dependant kinase inhibitor p27(kip1) by EWS-FLI1 has been associated with poor event-free survival in univariate analysis and the expression level of p27 correlates significantly with patient survival. Overall event-free survival has been correlated to P53 alteration in osteosarcoma as well.

A variety of other markers have been described as relevant to the prognosis of osteosarcoma. This includes KI-67, a proliferative marker which has been suggested as a marker for the development of pulmonary metastasis. Heat shock proteins (HSP) have been shown to aid in the growth and development of tumors and overexpression of HSP27 specifically has been shown to carry negative prognostic value. Overexpression of parathyroid hormone Type 1 has been shown to confer an aggressive phenotype in osteosarcoma. Platelet-derived growth factor-AA expression was found to be an independent predictor of tumor progression in osteosarcoma. Nuclear survivin expression/localization has been associated with prolonged survival. Vascular endothelial growth factor expression in untreated osteosarcoma is predictive of pulmonary metastasis and poor prognosis. HLA class I expression has been shown...
to be associated with significantly better overall and event-free survival than patients lacking HLA class I expression in osteosarcoma. Finally, telomerase expression in osteosarcoma is associated with decreased progression-free survival and overall survival.

Investigation to identify molecular markers in chondrosarcoma has progressed at a slower pace. Rozeman et al. investigated a variety of markers, none of which had prognostic importance independent of histologic grade. Decreased Indian Hedgehog signaling and loss of INK4A/p16 has been found to be important in the progression of peripheral chondrosarcoma and enchondroma, respectively.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

**Primary Tumor (T)**
- TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- T0: No evidence of primary tumor
- T1: Tumor 8 cm or less in greatest dimension
- T2: Tumor more than 8 cm in greatest dimension
- T3: Discontinuous tumors in the primary bone site

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**
- NX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- N0: No regional lymph node metastasis
- N1: Regional lymph node metastasis

**Distant Metastasis (M)**
- M0: No distant metastasis
- M1a: Lung
- M1b: Other distant sites

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M0</th>
<th>G1,2 Low grade, GX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G1,2 Low grade, GX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G1,2 Low grade, GX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G3, 4 High grade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G3, 4 High grade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G3, 4 High grade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M1a Any G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Any M Any G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)**

(Recommended for Collection)

- Required: Grade for staging
- Clinically significant: Three dimensions of tumor size
- Percentage necrosis post neoadjuvant systemic therapy from pathology report
- Number of resected pulmonary metastases from pathology report

**HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)**

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

- GX: Grade cannot be assessed
- G1: Well differentiated – low grade
- G2: Moderately differentiated – low grade
- G3: Poorly differentiated
- G4: Undifferentiated

*Note: Ewing's sarcoma is classified as G4.*

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

**Classification of Primary Malignant Bone Tumors**

1. Osteosarcoma
   - a. Intramedullary high grade
     - Osteoblastic
     - Chondroblastic
     - Fibroblastic
     - Mixed
     - Small cell
     - Other (telangiectatic, epithelioid, chondromyxoid fibroma-like, chondroblastoma-like, osteoblastoma-like, giant cell rich)
   - b. Intramedullary low grade
   - c. Juxtacortical high grade (high grade surface osteosarcoma)
   - d. Juxtacortical intermediate grade chondroblastic (periosteal osteosarcoma)
   - e. Juxtacortical low grade (parosteal osteosarcoma)
2. Chondrosarcoma
   - a. Intramedullary
     - Conventional (hyaline/myxoid)
     - Clear cell
     - Dedifferentiated
     - Mesenchymal
   - b. Juxtacortical
3. Primitive neuroectodermal tumor/Ewing’s sarcoma
4. Angiosarcoma
   - a. Conventional
   - b. Epithelioid hemangioendothelioma
5. Fibrosarcoma/malignant fibrous histiocytoma
6. Chordoma
   a. Conventional
   b. Dedifferentiated
7. Adamantinoma
   a. Conventional
   b. Well differentiated – osteofibrous dysplasia-like
8. Other
   a. Liposarcoma
   b. Leiomyosarcoma
c. Malignant peripheral nerve sheath tumor
d. Rhabdomyosarcoma
e. Malignant mesenchymoma
f. Malignant hemangioendothelioma

**BIBLIOGRAPHY**


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
**Bone Staging Form**

### Clinical Staging Definitions

#### Extent of disease before any treatment
- **Tumor Size:**
- **Laterality:** left □, right □, bilateral □

#### Primary Tumor (T)
- TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- T0: No evidence of primary tumor
- T1: Tumor 8 cm or less in greatest dimension
- T2: Tumor more than 8 cm in greatest dimension
- T3: Discontinuous tumors in the primary bone site

#### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)
- NX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- N0: No regional lymph node metastasis
- N1: Regional lymph node metastasis

#### Distant Metastasis (M)
- M0: No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- M1: Distant metastasis
- M1a: Lung
- M1b: Other distant sites

### Pathologic Staging Definitions

#### Extent of disease during and from surgery
- **Pathology – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery**

#### Anatomic Stage - Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>Any T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Ewing's sarcoma is classified as G4.
* Stage unknown

**Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)**

- Required for staging: Grade ______________
- Clinically significant:
  - Three dimensions of tumor size _____ x _____ x _____
  - Percentage necrosis post neoadjuvant systemic therapy from pathology report: ________
  - Number of resected pulmonary metastases from pathology report: ________

**General Notes:**
For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

**m suffix** indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

Grading system
- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

Grade
- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS
Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

National guidelines were used in treatment planning

Physician signature
Date/Time

HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS

PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION

(continued from previous page)
Soft Tissue Sarcoma

(Kaposi’s sarcoma, fibromatosis [desmoid tumor], and sarcoma arising from the dura mater, brain, parenchymatous organs, or hollow viscera are not included.)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- Gastrointestinal stromal tumor (GIST) is now included in Chap. 16; fibromatosis (desmoid tumor), Kaposi’s sarcoma, and infantile fibrosarcoma are no longer included in the histological types for this site
- Angiosarcoma, extraskeletal Ewing’s sarcoma, and dermatofibrosarcoma protuberans have been added to the list of histologic types for this site
- N1 disease has been reclassified as Stage III rather than Stage IV disease
- Grading has been reformatted from a four grade to a three-grade system as per the criteria recommended by the College of American Pathologists

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS</th>
<th>ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>C38.0 Heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a, T1b</td>
<td>C38.1 Anterior mediastinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0, M0</td>
<td>C38.2 Posterior mediastinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G1, GX</td>
<td>C38.3 Mediastinum, NOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>C38.8 Overlapping lesion of heart, mediastinum, and pleura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a, T2b</td>
<td>C47.0 Peripheral nerves and autonomic nervous system of head, face, and neck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0, M0</td>
<td>C47.1 Peripheral nerves and autonomic nervous system of upper limb and shoulder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G1, GX</td>
<td>C47.2 Peripheral nerves and autonomic nervous system of lower limb and hip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>C47.3 Peripheral nerves and autonomic nervous system of thorax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a, T1b</td>
<td>C47.4 Peripheral nerves and autonomic nervous system of abdomen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0, M0</td>
<td>C47.5 Peripheral nerves and autonomic nervous system of pelvis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G2, G3</td>
<td>C47.6 Peripheral nerves and autonomic nervous system of trunk, NOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>C47.7 Overlapping lesion of peripheral nerves and autonomic nervous system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a, T2b</td>
<td>C47.8 Autonomic nervous system, NOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0, M0</td>
<td>C47.9 Retropertioneum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G2</td>
<td>C48.0 Specified parts of peritoneum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>C48.1 Peritoneum, NOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a, T2b</td>
<td>Any T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0, M0</td>
<td>Any N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G3</td>
<td>Any G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any G</td>
<td>Any G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
INTRODUCTION

The staging system applies to all soft tissue sarcomas except Kaposi's sarcoma, gastrointestinal stromal tumors, fibromatosis (desmoid tumor), and infantile fibrosarcoma. In addition, sarcomas arising within the confines of the dura mater, including the brain, and sarcomas arising in parenchymatous organs and from hollow viscera are not optimally staged by this system.

Data to support this staging system are based on current analyses from multiple institutions and represent the recommendations of an AJCC task force on soft tissue sarcoma. In the era of cytoreductive neoadjuvant treatments, clinical and pathologic staging may be altered in the future. Because pathologic staging drives adjuvant therapy decisions, patients should be restaged after neoadjuvant therapies have been administered.

Histologic type, grade, and tumor size and depth are essential for staging. Histologic grade of a sarcoma is one of the most important parameters of the staging system. Grade is based on analysis of various pathologic features of a tumor, such as histologic subtype, degree of differentiation, mitotic activity, and necrosis. Accurate grading requires an adequate sample of well-fixed tissue for evaluation. Accurate grading is not always possible on the basis of needle biopsies or in tumors that have been previously irradiated or treated with chemotherapy. The current staging system does not take into account anatomic site. However, anatomic site is known to influence outcome, and therefore outcome data should be reported specifying site. This is particularly applicable in sites such as head and neck or retroperitoneum, where grade (head and neck) or size (retroperitoneum) may disproportionately drive prognosis relative to other staging criteria in comparison with sarcomas arising elsewhere in the body. Primary sarcomas of the breast are another special situation in which the tumor should be staged and managed as would any comparably staged sarcoma located elsewhere in the body (e.g., staged and treated in a manner analogous to an extremity sarcoma). Generic grouping of site is accepted. The following site groups can be used for reports that include sarcomas arising in tissues other than soft tissues (such as parenchymal organs). Extremity and superficial trunk can be combined; viscera, including all the intra-abdominal viscera, can also be combined. Where enough numbers exist, these can be reported by subdivision into the various components of the gastrointestinal tract. Lung, gastrointestinal, genitourinary, and gynecologic sarcomas should be grouped separately.

Site Groups for Soft Tissue Sarcoma

- Head and neck
- Extremity and superficial trunk
- Gastrointestinal
- Genitourinary
- Visceral retroperitoneal
- Gynecologic
- Breast
- Lung, pleura, mediastinum
- Other

ANATOMY

Staging of Soft Tissue Sarcoma

Inclusions. The present staging system applies to soft tissue sarcomas. Primary sarcomas can arise from a variety of soft tissues. These tissues include fibrous connective tissue, fat, smooth or striated muscle, vascular tissue, peripheral neural tissue, and visceral tissue.

Regional Lymph Nodes. Involvement of regional lymph nodes by soft tissue sarcomas is uncommon in adults.

Metastatic Sites. Metastatic sites for soft tissue sarcoma are often dependent on the original site of the primary lesion. For example, the most common site of metastatic disease for patients with extremity sarcoma is the lung, whereas retroperitoneal and gastrointestinal sarcomas often have liver as the first site of metastasis.
RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. Clinical staging is dependent on characteristics of T, N, and M. T is divided into lesions of maximum dimension 5 cm or less and lesions of more than 5 cm in greatest dimension. Tumor size can be measured clinically or radiologically. Depth is evaluated relative to the investing fascia of the extremity and trunk. Superficial is defined as lack of any involvement of the superficial investing muscular fascia in extremity or trunk lesions. For staging, nonsuperficial head and neck, intrathoracic, intra-abdominal, retroperitoneal, and visceral lesions are considered to be deep lesions.

Depth. Depth is evaluated in relation to tumor size (T):
1. Superficial – located entirely in the subcutaneous tissues without any degree of extension through the muscular fascia or into underlying muscle. In these cases, pretreatment imaging studies demonstrate a subcutaneous tumor without involvement of muscle, and excisional pathology reports demonstrate a tumor located within the subcutaneous tissues without extension into underlying muscle.
2. Deep – located partly or completely within one or more muscle groups within the extremity. Deep tumors may extend through the muscular fascia into the subcutaneous tissues or even to the skin but the critical criterion is location of any portion of the tumor within the muscular compartments of the extremity. In these cases, pretreatment imaging studies demonstrate a tumor located completely or in part within the muscular compartments of the extremity.
3. Depth is evaluated in relation to tumor size (T):
   a. Tumor ≤ 5 cm: T1a = superficial, T1b = deep
   b. Tumor > 5 cm: T2a = superficial, T2b = deep

Nodal Disease. Nodal involvement is rare in adult soft tissue sarcomas. In the assigning of stage group, patients whose nodal status is not determined to be positive for tumor, either clinically or pathologically, should be designated as N0.

Grade. Grade should be assigned to all sarcomas. Historically the AJCC soft tissue staging system has used a four-grade system, but within the soft tissue sarcoma staging groups this effectively functioned as a two-stage system by combining G1/G2 (low) and G3/G4 (high). The traditional AJCC grading system based on differentiation (well, moderate, poor, and undifferentiated) is poorly suited to soft tissue sarcoma. Comprehensive grading of soft tissue sarcomas is strongly correlated with disease-specific survival and incorporates differentiation (histology-specific), mitotic rate, and extent of necrosis. The two most widely employed grading systems, French (FNCLCC) and NIH, are three-grade systems. In accordance with the College of American Pathologists (CAP) recommendations (see Rubin et al. below), the French system (see Guillou et al. below) is preferred over the NIH system for reasons of ease of use/reproducibility and perhaps slightly superior performance. This revision of the AJCC staging system incorporates a three-tiered grading system. Applying histologic grading to core needle biopsies is problematic when neoadjuvant chemotherapy or radiation has been administered. However, given the importance of grade to staging and treatment, efforts to separate sarcomas on needle biopsies into at least two tiers (i.e., low and high grade) as described above are encouraged. In many instances the type of sarcoma will readily permit this distinction (i.e., Ewing sarcoma/PNET, malignant fibrous histiocytoma), whereas in less obvious instances the difficulty of assigning grade should be noted. In general, multiple core needle biopsies disclosing a high-grade sarcoma can be regarded as high grade since the probability of subsequent downgrading is remote, but limited cores biopsies of low-grade sarcoma carry a risk of subsequent upgrading.

FNCLCC Grading. The FNCLCC grade is determined by three parameters: differentiation (histology specific), mitotic activity, and extent of necrosis. Each parameter is scored: differentiation (1–3), mitotic activity (1–3), and necrosis (0–2). The scores are summed to designate grade.
Grade 1 2 or 3
Grade 2 4 or 5
Grade 3 6–8

**Differentiation.** Tumor differentiation is histology specific and is generally scored as follows:

- **Score 1** Sarcomas closely resembling normal, mature mesenchymal tissue
- **Score 2** Sarcomas of definite histologic type
- **Score 3** Synovial sarcomas, embryonal sarcomas, undifferentiated sarcomas, and sarcomas of unknown/doubtful tumor type

Tumor differentiation score is the most subjective aspect of the FNCLCC system (Table 28.1). In addition, it is not validated for every subtype of sarcoma and inapplicable to certain subtypes as noted below. However, this score is critical given its proportional weight such that any sarcoma assigned a differentiation score of 3 will be at least intermediate to high grade.

**Mitotic Count.** In the most mitotically active area of the sarcoma, ten successive high-power fields (HPFs) (one HPF at 400× magnification = 0.1734 mm²) are assessed using a 40× objective.

- **Score 1** 0–9 mitoses per 10 HPFs
- **Score 2** 10–19 mitoses per 10 HPFs
- **Score 3** 20 or more mitoses per 10 HPFs

**Tumor Necrosis.** Evaluated on gross examination and validated with histologic sections.

- **Score 0** No tumor necrosis
- **Score 1** Less than or equal to 50% tumor necrosis
- **Score 2** More than 50% tumor necrosis

**Restaging of Recurrent Tumors.** The same staging should be used when a patient requires restaging of sarcoma recurrence. Such reports should specify whether patients have primary lesions or lesions that were previously treated and have subsequently recurred. The identification and reporting of etiologic factors such as radiation exposure and inherited or genetic syndromes are encouraged. Appropriate workup for recurrent sarcoma should include cross-sectional imaging (CT scan or MRI scan) of the tumor, a CT scan of the chest, and a tissue biopsy to confirm diagnosis prior to initiation of therapy.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

**Neurovascular and Bone Invasion.** In earlier staging systems, neurovascular and bone invasion by soft tissue sarcomas had been included as a determinant of stage. It is not included in the current staging system, and no plans are proposed to add it at the present time. Nevertheless, neurovascular and bone invasion should always be reported where possible, and further studies are needed to determine whether or not such invasion is an independent prognostic factor.

**Molecular Markers.** Molecular markers and genetic abnormalities are being evaluated as determinants of outcome. At the present time, however, insufficient data exist to include specific molecular markers in the staging system. For the present time, molecular and genetic markers should be considered as important information to aid in histopathologic diagnosis, rather than as determinants of stage.

**Validation.** The current staging system has the capacity to discriminate the overall survival of patients with soft tissue sarcoma. Patients with Stage I lesions are at low risk for disease-related mortality, whereas Stages II and III entail progressively greater risk.
DEFINITION OF TNM

**Primary Tumor (T)**
- TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- T0: No evidence of primary tumor
- T1: Tumor 5 cm or less in greatest dimension*
  - T1a: Superficial tumor
  - T1b: Deep tumor
- T2: Tumor more than 5 cm in greatest dimension*
  - T2a: Superficial tumor
  - T2b: Deep tumor

*Note: Superficial tumor is located exclusively above the superficial fascia without invasion of the fascia; deep tumor is located either exclusively beneath the superficial fascia, superficial to the fascia with invasion of or through the fascia, or both superficial yet beneath the fascia.

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**
- NX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- N0: No regional lymph node metastasis
- N1*: Regional lymph node metastasis

*Note: Presence of positive nodes (N1) in M0 tumors is considered Stage III.

**Distant Metastasis (M)**
- M0: No distant metastasis
- M1: Distant metastasis

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G1, GX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G1, GX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G1, GX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G1, GX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G2, G3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G2, G3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Ta, T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required for staging</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinically significant</td>
<td>Neurovascular invasion as determined by pathology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bone invasion as determined by imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If pM1, source of pathologic metastatic specimen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 28.2. Five-year survival rates in extremity soft tissue sarcoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Freedom from local recurrence (%)</th>
<th>Disease-free survival (%)</th>
<th>Overall survival (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>137</td>
<td>88.04</td>
<td>86.13</td>
<td>90.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>491</td>
<td>81.97</td>
<td>71.68</td>
<td>80.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>469</td>
<td>83.44</td>
<td>51.77</td>
<td>56.29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Local recurrence, disease-free survival, and overall survival by stage.
Source: Data from Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center (MSKCC) for the time period of July 1, 1982 to June 30, 2000.

Table 28.2 presents the 5-year survival rates in extremity soft tissue sarcomas.

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

(FNCLCC System Preferred)

- GX: Grade cannot be assessed
- G1: Grade 1
- G2: Grade 2
- G3: Grade 3

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

Tumors included in the soft tissue category are listed below as per the 2002 World Health Organization classification of tumors:

- Adipocytic Tumors
  - Dedifferentiated liposarcoma*
  - Myxoid/round cell liposarcoma
  - Pleomorphic liposarcoma

- Fibroblastic/Myofibroblastic Tumors
  - Fibrosarcoma**
  - Myxofibrosarcoma, low grade
  - Low-grade fibromyxoid sarcoma
  - Sclerosing epithelioid fibrosarcoma

- So-called Fibrohistiocytic Tumors
  - Undifferentiated pleomorphic sarcoma/malignant fibrous histiocytoma (MFH) (including pleomorphic, giant cell, myxoid/high-grade myxofibrosarcoma and inflammatory forms)

- Smooth Muscle Tumors
  - Leiomyosarcoma

- Skeletal Muscle Tumors
  - Rhabdomyosarcoma (embryonal, alveolar, and pleomorphic forms)

- Vascular Tumors
  - Epithelioid hemangioendothelioma
  - Angiosarcoma, deep***

- Tumors of Peripheral Nerves
  - Malignant peripheral nerve sheath tumor
Chondro-osseous Tumors
  Extraskelatal chondrosarcoma
    (mesenchymal and other variants)
  Extraskeletal osteosarcoma
Tumors of Uncertain Differentiation
  Synovial sarcoma
  Epithelioid sarcoma
  Alveolar soft part sarcoma
  Clear cell sarcoma of soft tissue
  Extraskeletal myxoid chondrosarcoma
  Primitive neuroectodermal tumor (PNET)/
   extraskeletal Ewing tumor
  Desmoplastic small round cell tumor
  Extranodal rhabdoid tumor
  Undifferentiated sarcoma; sarcoma, not otherwise
   specified (NOS)

Notes: *It is recognized that dedifferentiated liposarcoma
  primarily arises in the context of deep atypical lipomatous
  tumor/well-differentiated liposarcoma, a sarcoma of inter-
  mediate malignancy due to lack of metastatic capacity.

** The category of fibrosarcoma can be considered to be
  inclusive of fibrosarcomatous differentiation in dermatofo-
  biosarcoma protuberans.

***Cutaneous angiosarcoma may be difficult to stage using
  the AJCC system. Gastrointestinal stromal tumor (GIST) is
  addressed in Chap. 16.)

The following histologic types are not included: inflamma-
  tory myofibroblastic tumor, fibromatosis (desmoid tumor),
  mesothelioma, sarcomas arising in tissues apart from soft tis-
  sue (e.g., parenchymal organs).

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Behranwala KA, A’Hern R, Omar AM, et al. Prognosis of lymph

Billingsley KG, Burt ME, Jara E, Ginsberg RJ, Woodruff JM,
  Leung DHY, et al. Pulmonary metastases from soft tissue
  sarcoma: analysis of patterns of disease and postmetastasis

  1999;6:8–9.

Brennan MF, Kattan MW, Klimstra D, et al. Prognostic nomo-
  gram for patients undergoing resection for adenocarcinoma

Coindre JM. Pathology and grading of soft tissue sarcomas.

Coindre JM, Terrier P, Bui NB, Bonichon F, Collin CF, Le Dous-
  sal V, et al. Prognostic factors in adult patients with locally
controlled soft tissue sarcoma: a study of 546 patients from
  the French Federation of Cancer Centers Sarcoma Group.

  prognostic nomogram for patients with primary liposar-
  2006;244:381–91.

  Long-term outcome of patients with American Joint Com-
  mittee on Cancer Stage IIB extremity soft tissue sarcoma.

Guillou L, Coindre JM, Bonichon F, Bui NB, Terrier P, Collin CF,
  et al. Comparative study of the National Cancer Institute and
  French Federation of Cancer Centers Sarcoma Group grad-
  ing systems in a population of 410 adult patients with soft

Heslin MJ, Lewis JJ, Nadler E, Newman E, Woodruff JM, Casper
  ES, et al. Prognostic factors associated with long-term
  survival for retroperitoneal sarcoma: implications for man-

Kattan MW, Leung DH, Brennan MF. Postoperative nomo-

Kattan MW, Heller G, Brennan MF. A competing-risks nomo-
  gram for sarcoma-specific death following local recurrence.

Kotilingam D, Lev DC, Lazar AJ, Pollock RE. Staging soft tis-
  sue sarcoma: evolution and change. CA Cancer J Clin.

Pisters PWT, Pollock RE. Prognostic factors in soft tissue sar-
  coma. In: Gospodarowicz M, O’Sullivan B, editors. UICC:

Pisters PWT, Leung DHY, Woodruff JM, Shi W, Brennan MF.
  Analysis of prognostic factors in 1041 patients with localized
  1996;14:1679–89.

Riad S, Griffin AM, Liberman B, et al. Lymph node metastasis in

Rubin, BP, Fletcher CDM. Inwards C, et al. Protocol for the exam-
  ination of specimens from patients with soft tissue tumors
  of intermediate malignant potential, malignant soft tissue
  tumors, and borderline/locally aggressive and malignant

Van Glabbeke M, van Oosterom AT, Oosterhuis JW, Mouridsen H,
  Crowther D, Somers R, et al. Prognostic factors for the out-
  come of chemotherapy in advanced soft tissue sarcoma: an
  analysis of 2185 patients treated with anthracycline-contain-
  ing first-line regimens – European Organization for Research
  and Treatment of Cancer Soft Tissue and Bone Sarcoma

Weiss SW, Goldblum JR. Enzinger and Weiss’s soft tissue tumor,

World Health Organization classification of tumours. Pathology
  and genetics. Tumours of soft tissue and bone. Lyon: IARC;
  2002.
# Soft Tissue Sarcoma Staging Form

## Clinical Extent of Disease Before Any Treatment

- PRIMARY TUMOR (T)
  - TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
  - T0: No evidence of primary tumor
  - T1: Tumor 5 cm or less in greatest dimension
    - T1a: Superficial tumor
    - T1b: Deep tumor
  - T2: Tumor more than 5 cm in greatest dimension
    - T2a: Superficial tumor
    - T2b: Deep tumor
  - Note: Superficial tumor is located exclusively above the superficial fascia without invasion of the fascia; deep tumor is located either exclusively beneath the superficial fascia, superficial to the fascia with invasion of or through the fascia, or both superficial yet beneath the fascia.

- REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)
  - NX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
  - N0: No regional lymph node metastasis
  - N1*: Regional lymph node metastasis
  - *Note: Presence of positive nodes (N1) in M0 tumors is considered Stage III

- DISTANT METASTASIS (M)
  - M0: No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage grouping)
  - M1: Distant metastasis

## Anatomic Stage - Prognostic Groups

### Clinical

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G1, GX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G1, GX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G2, G3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T2a, T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pathologic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G1, GX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G1, GX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G2, G3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T2a, T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>G3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Stage Category Definitions

- TX: Tumor cannot be assessed
- T0: No evidence of tumor
- T1: Tumor 5 cm or less
  - T1a: Superficial
  - T1b: Deep
- T2: Tumor more than 5 cm
  - T2a: Superficial
  - T2b: Deep
- NX: Lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- N0: No lymph node metastasis
- N1*: Regional lymph node metastasis
- M0: No distant metastasis
- M1: Distant metastasis

## Hospital Name/Address

#### Patient Name/Information

(continued on next page)
PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)

REQUIRED FOR STAGING: Grade _____________________

CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:

Neurovascular invasion as determined by pathology: ____________________________

Bone invasion as determined by imaging: ______________________________________

If pM1, source of pathologic metastatic specimen: _______________________________

General Notes:
For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.

y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.

a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

Grading system

- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

Grade

- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

Additional Descriptors

Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): ____________________________

National guidelines were used in treatment planning: Other (describe): ____________________

Physician signature: ____________________ Date/Time: ____________________

Hospital Name/Address: ____________________ Patient Name/Information: ____________________

(continued from previous page)
PART VI

Skin
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Cutaneous Squamous Cell Carcinoma and Other Cutaneous Carcinomas

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- The previous edition chapter, entitled “Carcinoma of the Skin,” has been eliminated and two chapters have been created in its place:
  - Merkel Cell Carcinoma: An entirely new chapter specifically for Merkel cell carcinoma (MCC) has been designed (see Chap. 30)
  - This chapter has been renamed “Cutaneous Squamous Cell Carcinoma and Other Cutaneous Carcinomas” and is an entirely new staging system that, for the first time, reflects a multidisciplinary effort to provide a mechanism for staging nonmelanoma skin cancers according to evidence-based medicine. In total, seven board-certified disciplines collaborated to develop this chapter: Dermatology, Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery, Surgical Oncology, Dermatopathology, Oncology, Plastic Surgery, and Oral and Maxillofacial Surgery. The title of this chapter reflects the basis of the data, which is focused on cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma (cSCC). All other nonmelanoma skin carcinomas (except Merkel cell carcinoma) will be staged according to the cSCC staging system

- Anatomic site of the eyelid is not included – staged by Ophthalmic Carcinoma of the Eyelid (see Chap. 48)

- The T staging has eliminated the 5-cm-size breakpoint and invasion of extradermal structures for T4. Two cm continues to differentiate T1 and 2, however, a list of clinical and histologic “high-risk features” has been created that can increase the T staging, independent of tumor size

- Grade has been included as one of the “high-risk features” within the T category and now contributes toward the final stage grouping. Other “high-risk features” include primary anatomic site ear or hair-bearing lip, >2 mm depth, Clark level ≥IV, or perineural invasion

- Advanced T stage is reserved for bony extension or involvement (e.g., maxilla, mandible, orbit, temporal bone, or perineural invasion of skull base or axial skeleton for T3 and T4, respectively)

- Nodal (N) staging has been completely revised to reflect published evidence-based data demonstrating that survival decreases with increasing nodal size and number of nodes involved

- Because the majority of cSCC tumors occur on the head and neck, the seventh edition staging system for cSCC and other cutaneous carcinomas was made congruent with the AJCC Head and Neck staging system
INTRODUCTION

The term nonmelanoma skin carcinoma (NMSC) includes approximately 82 types of skin malignancies with wide variability in prognosis, ranging from those that generally portend a poor prognosis, such as Merkel cell carcinoma (MCC), to the far more frequent and clinically favorable basal cell carcinoma (BCC) and cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma (cSCC). Because of important differences in natural behavior of MCC and other NMSC, the previous chapter entitled “Carcinoma of the Skin,” has been split in this seventh edition into two separate chapters entitled “Merkel Cell Carcinoma” (see Chap. 30) and the current chapter, which has been renamed as “Cutaneous Squamous Cell Carcinoma (cSCC) and Other Cutaneous Carcinomas.” Although the primary focus of the discussion in this chapter is on cSCC, the staging system applies to all NMSC except MCC. Recently published data regarding prognostic factors has been utilized as the basis for this new and revised staging system.

The incidence of cSCC and other carcinomas of the skin varies globally, but is thought to be increasing overall since the 1960s at a rate of 3–8% per year. In the United States, NMSC is the most frequent cancer. Although the vast majority of these tumors present at Stage I and II, cSCC is responsible for the majority of NMSC deaths and accounts for approximately 20% of all skin cancer-related deaths. The high incidence of cSCC and BCC is thought to be mostly the result of sun exposure and mutagenic effects of ultraviolet (UV) light. BCC and cSCC tumors are far more common in fair skinned patients and typically located on anatomic areas exposed to the sun, such as the head, neck, or extremities. Incidence varies with geographic latitude as well as ozone depletion, with a high incidence in areas such as Australia and New Zealand. Other risk factors for developing NMSC include advanced age and induced or acquired immunosuppression, seen after solid organ transplantation or in patients diagnosed and treated for leukemia or lymphoma. Male gender is a well-described risk factor for the development of cSCC. A completely revised staging system is described herein, along with operational definitions. This new staging system was designed based on published evidence-based data demonstrating significant mortality associated with specific clinical and histologic features. This revised version of cSCC staging more accurately reflects the prognosis and natural history of cSCC and therefore will be more applicable to treatment planning and design of clinical trials for carcinomas of the skin. Because a significant number of NMSC primaries occur on the head and neck, concordance with the head and neck staging system was planned and achieved. The major differences between the new chapter entitled “Cutaneous Squamous Cell Carcinoma and Other Cutaneous Carcinomas” and the chapter found in the sixth edition AJCC manual entitled “Carcinoma of the Skin” are summarized below. The chapter summary outlines the major revisions while more details about the staging system revision rationale and interpretation are forthcoming in separate manuscripts (in preparation).
to be applied to all eyelid tumors (Table 29.1). The final decision of the Editorial Board was to assign eyelid cSCC staging to the Ophthalmic eyelid staging system, and to recommend collection for eyelid cSCC of the prognostic and high-risk factors defined below for all cSCC so that future staging revisions will be based on as high-level evidence as possible (see Carcinoma of the Eyelid, Chap. 48).

### ANATOMY

**Primary Site.** Cutaneous squamous cell and other carcinomas can occur anywhere on the skin. Cutaneous SCC and BCC most commonly arise on anatomic sites that have been exposed to sunlight. Cutaneous SCC can also arise in skin that was previously scarred or ulcerated—that is, at sites of burns and chronic ulcers (chronic inflammation). All of the components of the skin (epidermis, dermis, and adnexal structures) can give rise to malignant neoplasms.

Nonaggressive NMSC, such as BCC, usually grow solely by local extension, both horizontally and vertically. Continued local extension may result in growth into deep structures, including adipose tissue, cartilage, muscle, and bone. Perineural extension is a particularly insidious form of local extension, as this is often clinically occult. If neglected for an extended length of time, nodal metastasis can occur with nonaggressive NMSC.

Aggressive NMSC, including cSCC and some types of sebaceous and eccrine neoplasms, also grow by local lateral and vertical extension early in their natural history. Once deeper extension occurs, growth may become discontinuous, resulting in deeper local extension, in transit metastasis, and nodal metastasis. In more advanced cases, cSCC and other tumors can extend along cranial foramina through the skull.

### TABLE 29.1. Comparison of sixth edition and seventh editions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tumor types included</strong></td>
<td>All NMSC were included</td>
<td>Merkel Cell Carcinoma placed in a separate chapter, current chapter covers Squamous Cell Carcinoma and other Cutaneous Carcinomas</td>
<td>Merkel Cell Carcinoma natural history differs significantly from other NMSC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anatomic sites</strong></td>
<td>Excluded eyelid</td>
<td>cSCC of the eyelid are to be staged using the system defined in Chapter 48, Carcinoma of the Eyelid</td>
<td>Ophthalmic staging system will stage NMSC tumors and eyelid is not included within this new cSCC chapter. The NMSC task force will continue to collect and analyze prognostic factors for cSCC and the 8th edition AJCC NMSC task force will analyze their data which includes eyelid staging system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tumor size threshold</strong></td>
<td>T1: ≤2 cm</td>
<td>T1: ≤2 cm</td>
<td>Lack of evidence to support 5-cm threshold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Histopathologic grade</strong></td>
<td>Not included in the final stage grouping</td>
<td>Included as part of the T staging and therefore contributes to final staging</td>
<td>Degree of differentiation has been reported as a risk factor for cSCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>High-risk features</strong></td>
<td>Not used for T or final staging</td>
<td>“High-risk features” can upgrade T staging and include: histologic grade, anatomic site ear or hair-bearing lip, &gt;2-mm depth, Clark level II, or perineural invasion</td>
<td>Many different histologic or clinical determinants have been reported to predict cSCC recurrence or metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Histologic extradermal invasion</strong></td>
<td>Used to determine T4</td>
<td>Eliminated</td>
<td>Lack of data demonstrating uniform prognostic effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anatomic sites</strong></td>
<td>Not used for T or final staging</td>
<td>Added as high-risk features</td>
<td>Specific anatomic sites confer worse prognosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cranial or facial bone involvement</strong></td>
<td>Included as T4, invasion of extradermal structure</td>
<td>Invasion of maxilla, mandible, orbit, or temporal bone defined as T3</td>
<td>Correlates with head and neck cancer staging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Invasion of skull base or axial skeleton</strong></td>
<td>Included as T4, invasion of extradermal structure</td>
<td>T4 is redefined as tumor involvement of skull base or axial skeleton</td>
<td>Correlates with head and neck cancer staging and recently published data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>N staging</strong></td>
<td>Based on presence (N1) or absence (N0) of nodal disease</td>
<td>N0–N3 disease has been established based on size and number of nodal metastases</td>
<td>(1) Congruence with head and neck staging is achieved and (2) published data shows decreasing survival with increased size or number of metastatic nodal involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M staging</strong></td>
<td>Based on presence (M1) or absence (M0) of distant metastasis</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>M remains the only unchanged staging determinant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
base into the cranial vault. Uncommon types of NMSC vary considerably in their propensity for metastasis.

Regional Lymph Nodes. When deep invasion and eventual metastasis occurs, local and regional lymph nodes are the most common sites of metastasis. Nodal metastasis usually occurs in an orderly manner, initially in a single node, which expands in size. Eventually, multiple nodes become involved with metastasis. Metastatic disease may spread to secondary nodal basins, including contralateral nodes when advanced. Uncommonly, nodal metastases may bypass a primary nodal basin.

Metastatic Sites. Nonaggressive NMSC more often involves deep tissue by direct extension than by metastasis. After metastasizing to nodes, cSCC may spread to visceral sites, including lung.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

The clinical and pathologic classifications are identical. However, pathologic staging uses the symbol p as a prefix.

Clinical Staging. The clinical staging of skin cancer is based on inspection and palpation of the involved area and the regional lymph nodes. Imaging studies may be important to stage cSCC for which there is clinical suspicion for nodal metastasis or bone invasion.

Pathologic Staging. Complete resection of the primary tumor site is required for accurate pathologic staging and for cure. Surgical resection of lymph node tissue is necessary when involvement is suspected. Pathologists should comment on histologic characteristics of the tumor, particularly depth, grade, and perineural invasion. Low-grade tumors show considerable cell differentiation, uniform cell size, infrequent cellular mitoses and nuclear irregularity, and intact intercellular bridges. High-grade tumors show poor differentiation, spindle cell characteristics, necrosis, high mitotic activity, and deep invasion. Depth of cSCC invasion, as measured by Breslow depth, correlates with metastatic potential.

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

Most studies that analyze early stage cSCC are retrospective in nature and do not rely on multivariate analysis. The revision of the staging system for Stage I and II cSCC was primarily based on consensus opinion of the NMSC Task Force. Poor prognosis for recurrence and metastasis has been correlated with multiple factors such as anatomic site, tumor diameter, poor differentiation, perineural invasion, as well extension >2 mm depth. These prognostic factors are discussed in detail below. They apply primarily to cSCC and an aggressive subset of NMSC, but rarely to BCC. The following rationale determined the multiple factors used for the T staging:

Tumor Diameter. Tumor size refers to the maximum clinical diameter of the cSCC lesion. In the sixth edition AJCC staging system, 2- and 5-cm tumor size thresholds were used to define the primary tumor (T) and were the sole criteria for T1, T2, and T3. Multiple studies corroborate a correlation between tumor size and more biologically aggressive disease, including local recurrence and metastasis in univariate analysis. 4,17–19 Tumor size remains a significant variable on multivariate analysis in some reports. Several published studies point toward 2 cm as a threshold beyond which tumors are more likely to metastasize to lymph nodes. A 3.8-fold risk of recurrence and metastasis for tumors >2 cm was noted by Mullen 18 when reviewing M.D. Anderson Cancer Center’s database of 149 cSCC on the trunk and extremities. In a large review of all published literature on the prognosis of SCC occurring on the skin and lip since 1940, Rowe et al. 4 found that among tumors that exceeded 2 cm in diameter, the local recurrence rate was double (15 vs. 7%) and metastatic rates were triple (30 vs. 9%) the rates when the primary was ≤2 cm.

After considering all of this published data, the AJCC cSCC Task Force decided to continue 2 cm as one of the key delineating features between T1 and T2 cSCC staging in the seventh edition AJCC Manual (Table 29.1). This threshold was decided based on the existing published data that ≥2 cm clinical diameter is associated with a poor prognosis. In addition, this breakpoint allowed congruence between cSCC and Head and Neck Staging. Prognostically relevant breakpoints beyond 2 cm are difficult to establish. A limited number of studies suggest 4 cm as significant thresholds, 20 while others show other factors to be important. 17 Therefore, there is a lack of sufficient evidence to support the 5-cm breakpoint featured in the previous NMSC staging system. Thus, a 5-cm breakpoint has been removed from the seventh edition AJCC T staging definitions for cSCC.

High-Risk Tumor Features. Although 2 cm is recognized by many to be an important size cutoff, the metastatic potential of tumors smaller than 2 cm cannot be ignored, as they too can metastasize. In a prospective study of 266 patients with head and neck cSCC metastatic to lymph nodes, the majority of patients had tumors <2 cm in size, leading the investigators to conclude that size alone is a poor predictor of outcome. 12 A review of 915 cSCC in Netherlands’ national registry over a 10-year period (comparing nonmetastatic and metastatic lesions matched for gender, location, and other clinicopathologic variables) suggested that the risk of metastasis significantly increased with tumors >1.5 cm. 21 In conceptualizing how to integrate the multiple other clinicopathologic tumor characteristics into the overall staging system, the NMSC Task Force felt that the independent prognostic validity of the multiple other features was insufficient to accurately place them into stage-specific locations. Instead, the Task Force approved a group of “high-risk” features which are combined with diameter to classify tumors as T1 or T2 (Table 29.1).

Additionally, because of data suggesting that immunosuppression correlates with worse prognosis as described in Lee et al. (in preparation), strong consideration was given toward
including immunosuppression as a risk factor. However, because strict TNM criteria preclude inclusion of clinical risk factors in the staging system, this factor should be collected by tumor registries as a site-specific factor rather than incorporated in the final staging system. For centers collecting such data and performing studies, immunosuppressed status may be designated with an “I” after the staging designation.

Depth of Tumor. Recent studies show that both tumor thickness and the depth of invasion are important variables for the prognosis of cSCC. Prospective studies showed that increasing tumor thickness as well as anatomic depth of invasion correlate with an increased risk of metastases. In an initial study, no metastases were associated with primary tumors less than 2 mm in depth (tumor thickness), but a metastatic rate of 15% was noted with tumors greater than 6 mm in depth. This study also reported increasing metastatic rates as tumor invasion progressed from dermis to subcutaneous adipose tissue, to muscle, or bone. Based on the prospective and multivariate data, the seventh edition AJCC cSCC staging system incorporates >2 mm Breslow depth as one of the high-risk features in the T classification. Clark’s level ≥IV is included as an additional high-risk feature. Differentiation between the prognostic contributions of Breslow thickness vs. Clark level will depend on future studies.

Anatomic Site. Specific anatomic locations on the hair-bearing lip and ear appear to have an increased local recurrence and metastatic potential and thus have been categorized as high risk in the seventh edition system (Table 29.1).

Perineural Invasion. Goepfert et al., in their review of 520 patients with 967 cSCC of the face, found an increased incidence of cervical lymphadenopathy and distant metastasis, as well as significantly reduced survival in patients with tumors that showed perineural invasion. Several univariate studies, all retrospective, have also confirmed that perineural invasion has a negative prognostic impact in cSCC.

Histopathologic Grade or Differentiation. Early studies recognized that the histological grade or degree of differentiation of a cSCC affects prognosis: the more well-differentiated, the less aggressive the clinical course. In 1978, Mols, in his review of “microscopically controlled surgery,” reported significant differences in cure rates for well-differentiated tumors (99.4%) compared with poorly differentiated tumors (42.1%). A multivariate analysis has also confirmed that histopathologic grade correlates with recurrence. The sixth edition staging system used a separate G classification system to denote histopathologic grade, however, grade did not contribute toward overall stage grouping (Table 29.1). For the seventh edition AJCC cSCC staging, histopathologic grade includes poorly differentiated tumors as one of the several high-risk features.

Extension to Bony Structures. In the sixth edition T staging system, the T4 designation was used for tumors that “invaded extradermal structures.” The most common and important instances of deep anatomic extension for cSCC involve extension to bone of the head and neck and perineural extension to bony structures vs. the skull base. Based on these considerations, in the seventh edition cSCC staging system, T3 designation denotes direct invasion of cSCC into cranial bone structures. The T4 designation is reserved for direct or perineural invasion of the skull base independent of tumor thickness or depth (Table 29.1) consistent with data from several head and neck studies suggesting that cSCC extending to skull base is associated to poor prognosis similar to advanced lymph node disease.

Evidence-Based Medicine and Nodal Disease. Since the sixth edition AJCC manual, four studies have examined the outcomes in patients with cSCC and regional lymph node metastasis. Approximately 761 patients from ten centers and three countries (Table 29.2) have been studied suggesting the number nodes involved and size of lymph node metastasis correlates with poor prognosis.

In 2002, O’Brien et al. conducted a prospective study with multivariate analysis and therein proposed a new clinical staging system for cSCC. He used a new staging system in which he separated the parotid gland involvement from the cervical node metastasis and applied this new P (parotid) N (neck) system to 87 patients with parotid and cervical cSCC metastasis to analyze the influence of clinical stage, extent of surgery, and pathologic findings on outcome by applying this new staging system. The multivariate analysis showed that increasing P stage, positive margins, and a failure to have postoperative radiotherapy independently predicted decrease in local control. It also demonstrated that positive surgical margins and the advanced (N2) clinical and pathologic neck disease were independent risk factors for survival. The results from this study concluded that patients with metastatic cSCC in both the parotid gland and neck have significantly worse prognosis than those in the parotid gland only. O’Brien et al. recommended that a new clinical staging system for cSCC of the head and neck should separate parotid (P) and neck (N) nodal involvement.

In 2003, Palm et al. in a retrospective, multicenter study, independently tested this new PN staging system on 126 patients with metastatic cSCCs involving the parotid and/or neck. The multivariate analysis showed that advanced P staging (P2 and P3) were independent risk factors for a decrease in local control rate, and the pathologic involvement of neck nodes did not worsen survival of patients with parotid disease. Overall, this analysis concluded that single-modality therapy, P3 stage, and presence of immunosuppression independently predicted a decrease in survival. This study confirmed that the extent of metastatic disease in the parotid gland significantly
TABLE 29.2. Published data on advanced cSCC tumors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of patients</th>
<th>Type of study</th>
<th>Major statistically significant conclusions</th>
<th>Number of centers</th>
<th>Number of countries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>O’Brien et al.</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>Advanced nodal disease associated with (a/w) poor prognosis</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palme et al.</td>
<td>126</td>
<td>Immunosuppression, single modality treatment, advanced parotid disease a/w poor prognosis</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audet et al.</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>Facial nerve involvement, advanced parotid disease a/w poor prognosis</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andruchow et al.</td>
<td>322</td>
<td>Advanced parotid and pathologic cervical lymph node disease a/w poor prognosis</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ch’ng et al.</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>Advanced disease a/w poor prognosis</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total patients</td>
<td>761</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Included in the nodal analysis were studies where prospective or retrospective data and multivariate analysis were performed. Survival was based on overall survival or disease-specific survival. Follow-up varied from at least 1 year, 18 months, 2 years, or 5 years. Total numbers of patients may be 649; however, the real number of patients is likely to be less than 600 since some analyses likely have overlapping patients.

Influences outcome and that separating the parotid from the neck metastasis may be useful.

In 2004, Audet et al., in their retrospective study on 56 patients with previously untreated metastatic head and neck cSCC involving the parotid gland, confirmed that metastatic cSCC to the parotid gland is an aggressive neoplasm that requires combination therapy. They also reported that the presence of a lesion in excess of 6 cm or with facial nerve involvement is associated with a poor prognosis.

In 2006, a larger cohort, multicenter, retrospective study was conducted by Andruchow et al. on 322 patients from six independent institutions to further clarify the clinical behavior of metastatic cSCC and to determine whether or not the proposed changes to the clinical staging system could be validated. In this study, 322 patients with parotid and/or neck metastatic cSCC were restaged with the O’Brien P and N staging system and were followed up for at least 2 years. Both univariate and multivariate analysis confirmed that survival was significantly worse for patients with advanced P stage, suggesting a revised classification of nodal status. This concept of increasing nodal disease correlating with decreased survival was confirmed in a separate prospective analysis of 67 patients with metastatic disease.

Patient survival from the published studies is shown in Figure 29.1. Based on this data, the NMSC Task Force decided that there is sufficient evidence to stage patients according to increasing nodal disease. While preliminary data exists to suggest that cervical disease may portend a worse prognosis than similar disease in the parotid, there is insufficient data to support this separation at this time. Separating out facial nerve involvement or involvement of the skull base (now T4) from extensive parotid disease will further clarify the prognosis of these patients.

Immunosuppression and Advanced Disease. It is well known that immunosuppressed patients are at risk for developing malignancies, especially cSCCs. Organ transplant recipients develop squamous cell carcinoma 65 times more frequently than in age-matched controls. The cSCCs in immunocompromised patients are more aggressive: they are numerous, tend to recur, and metastasize at a higher rate. It has been reported that immunocompromised patients have a 7.2 times increased risk of local recurrence and a 5.3 times increased risk of any recurrence of disease. Mortality is also increased with skin cancer, the fourth most common cause of death in a renal transplant cohort. In transplant recipients, cSCC develops 10–30 years earlier than in immunocompetent hosts.

Histopathology of cSCC in an immunocompromised host show more acantholytic changes, early dermal invasion, infiltrative growth pattern, Bowen’s disease with carcinoma, and increased depth of the primary. Tumors in immunocompromised patients can range widely in size from 6 to 75 mm;
however, Lindelof and colleagues report that most lethal cSCCs in their study were 5–19 mm in diameter. They also point out that focusing on tumor size may be misleading in immunocompromised populations because small tumors can behave very aggressively. For centers prospectively studying cSCC, recording of presence and type of immunosuppression is recommended.

**CONCLUSIONS**

The seventh edition of the AJCC Staging Manual features MCC as a separate chapter and cSCC is staged in this chapter entitled "Cutaneous Squamous cell and Other Carcinomas." The remainder of NMSC tumors (such as appendageal tumors and BCC) will also be included within the cSCC chapter since those tumors can rarely be advanced and are occasionally described to undergo metastasis. As the first published staging system devoted specifically to cSCC prognosis, this represents an important step for better understanding and studying the prognosis of this potentially metastatic tumor. Additionally, since many cSCC tumors occur on the head and neck, the seventh edition cSCC staging system is congruent with Head and Neck Cancer staging system. Furthermore, the new T staging definitions for the seventh edition for cSCC now capture additional features believed to correlate with high-risk cSCC in order to more meaningfully stratify patients based on prospective systematic data. Certainly there is still a need for multivariate data analysis, particularly to determine the relative contributions of the various described T factors influencing cSCC prognosis. Finally, the new N staging definitions are congruent with Head and Neck staging and reflect recent data that suggests that prognosis is inversely correlated with increasing nodal disease.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

Definitions for clinical (cTNM) and pathologic (pTNM) classifications are the same. Patients with cSCC in situ are categorized as Tis. Carcinomas that are indeterminate or cannot be staged should be category TX. Carcinomas 2 cm or less in diameter are T1, if they have fewer than two high-risk features. Clinical high-risk features include primary site on ear or hair-bearing lip. Histologic high-risk features include depth >2 mm, Clark level ≥IV/V, poor differentiation, and the presence of perineural invasion. Tumors greater than 2 cm in diameter are classified as T2. Tumors 2 cm or less in diameter are classified as T2 if the tumor has two or more high-risk features. Invasion into facial bones is classified as T3, while invasion to base of skull or axial skeleton is classified as T4.

Local and regional metastases most commonly present in the regional lymph nodes. The actual status of nodal metastases identified by clinical inspection or imaging and the status and number of positive and total nodes by pathologic analysis must be reported for staging purposes. In instances where lymph node status is not recorded, a designation of NX is used. A solitary parotid or regional lymph node metastasis measuring 3 cm or less in size is given a N1 designation. Several different lymph node states are classified as N2: N2a represents a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension; N2b is defined by multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension; N2c includes bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension. Nodal metastases more than 6 cm in greatest dimension are classified as N3.

Distant metastases are staged primarily by the presence (M1) or absence (M0) of metastases in distant organs or sites outside of the regional lymph nodes.

### Primary Tumor (T)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension with two or more high-risk features**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor greater than 2 cm in greatest dimension or tumor any size with two or more high-risk features**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor with invasion of maxilla, mandible, orbit, or temporal bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor with invasion of skeleton (axial or appendicular) or perineural invasion of skull base</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**High-risk features for the primary tumor (T) staging**

- Depth/invasion: >2 mm thickness
- Clark level: ≥IV/V
- Perineural invasion
- Anatomic location: Primary site ear
- Primary site hair-bearing lip
- Poorly differentiated or undifferentiated

### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, 3 cm or less in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension; or in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension; or in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2a</td>
<td>Metastasis in a single ipsilateral lymph node, more than 3 cm but not more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2b</td>
<td>Metastasis in multiple ipsilateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2c</td>
<td>Metastasis in bilateral or contralateral lymph nodes, none more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
<td>Metastasis in a lymph node, more than 6 cm in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Distant Metastasis (M)**

- M0: No distant metastases
- M1: Distant metastases

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

Patients with primary cSCC or other cutaneous carcinomas with no evidence (clinical, radiologic, or pathologic) of regional or distant metastases are divided into two stages: Stage I for tumors measuring ≤ 2 cm in size and Stage II for those that are greater than 2 cm in size. In instances where there is clinical concern for extension of tumor into bone and radiologic evaluation has been performed (and is negative), these data may be included to support the Stage I vs. II designation. Tumors that are ≤ 2 cm in size can be upstaged to Stage II if they contain two or more high-risk features. Stage III patients are those with (1) clinical, histologic, or radiologic evidence of one solitary node measuring ≤ 3 cm in size or (2) Tumor extension into bone: maxilla, mandible, orbit, or temporal bone. Stage IV patients are those with (1) tumor with direct or perineural invasion of skull base or axial skeleton, (2) ≥ 2 lymph nodes or (3) single or multiple lymph nodes measuring >3 cm in size or (4) distant metastasis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T Any</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T Any</td>
<td>N Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)**

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

- GX: Grade cannot be assessed
- G1: Well differentiated
- G2: Moderately differentiated
- G3: Poorly differentiated
- G4: Undifferentiated

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

The classification applies only to carcinomas of the skin, primarily cSCC and other carcinomas. It also applies to the adenocarcinomas that develop from eccrine or sebaceous glands and to the spindle cell variant of cSCC. Microscopic verification is necessary to group by histologic type. A form of in situ cSCC or intraepidermal cSCC is often referred to as Bowen’s disease. This lesion should be coded as Tis.

**BIBLIOGRAPHY**

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Cutaneous Squamous Cell/Other Cutaneous Carcinoma Staging Form

#### CLINICAL
**Extent of disease before any treatment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Clinical–staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Tis Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension with less than two high risk features**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor greater than 2 cm in greatest dimension or Tumor any size with two or more high risk features**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor with invasion of maxilla, orbit, or temporal bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor with invasion of skeleton (axial or appendicular) or perineural invasion of skull base</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Excludes cSCC of the eyelid – See Chapter 48.

**High Risk Features for the Primary Tumor (T) Staging:**
- Depth/Invasion: >2 mm thickness, Clark level $\geq$ IV, Perineural invasion
- Anatomic Location: Primary site ear, Primary site hair-bearing lip
- Differentiation: Poorly differentiated or undifferentiated

#### PATHOLOGIC
**Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Tis Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension with less than two high risk features**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor greater than 2 cm in greatest dimension or Tumor any size with two or more high risk features**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor with invasion of maxilla, orbit, or temporal bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor with invasion of skeleton (axial or appendicular) or perineural invasion of skull base</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS

#### LATERALITY:
- □ left
- □ right
- □ bilateral

#### TX
- □ T0
- □ Tis
- □ T1
- □ T2
- □ T3
- □ T4

#### NX
- □ N0
- □ N1
- □ N2
- □ N2a
- □ N2b
- □ N2c
- □ N3

#### M0
- □ M1

---

*Excludes cSCC of the eyelid – See Chapter 48.

**High Risk Features for the Primary Tumor (T) Staging:**
- Depth/Invasion: >2 mm thickness, Clark level $\geq$ IV, Perineural invasion
- Anatomic Location: Primary site ear, Primary site hair-bearing lip
- Differentiation: Poorly differentiated or undifferentiated

---

### Cutaneous Squamous Cell Carcinoma and Other Cutaneous Carcinomas

311

---

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T Any</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N Any</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T Any</td>
<td>N Any</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Stage unknown**

---

### Anatomical Stage - Prognostic Groups

#### Clinical

- 0: Tis N0 M0
- I: T1 N0 M0
- II: T2 N0 M0
- III: T3 N0 M0
-IV: T1 N2 M0

#### Pathologic

- 0: Tis N0 M0
- I: T1 N0 M0
- II: T2 N0 M0
- III: T3 N0 M0
-IV: T1 N2 M0

---

### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Required for Staging:**
- Tumor thickness (in mm)
- Clark’s Level
- Presence / absence of perineural invasion
- Primary site location on ear or hair-bearing lip
- Histologic grade
- Size of largest lymph node metastasis

**Clinically Significant:** No additional factors

#### Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

**Grading System**

- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

---

### Additional Descriptors

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registry. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

---

### General Notes:

- For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.
- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

---

### Hospital Name/Address

### Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
### Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

### General Notes (continued):
- Surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.
- Neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

---

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning

- [ ] NCCN

- [ ] Other (describe):

---

**Physician signature**

**Date/Time**

---

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued on next page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
Merkel Cell Carcinoma

(Staging for Merkel Cell of the eyelid [C44.1] is not included in this chapter – see Chap. 48, “Carcinoma of the Eyelid”)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- This is the first staging chapter specific for Merkel cell carcinoma. Merkel cell carcinoma was previously included in the "Carcinoma of the Skin" chapter

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

Patients with primary Merkel cell carcinoma with no evidence of regional or distant metastases (either clinically or pathologically) are divided into two stages: Stage I for primary tumors ≤2 cm in size and Stage II for primary tumors >2 cm in size. Stages I and II are further divided into A and B substages based on method of nodal evaluation. Patients who have pathologically proven node negative disease (by microscopic evaluation of their draining lymph nodes) have improved survival (substaged as A) compared with those who are only evaluated clinically (substaged as B). Stage II has an additional substage (IIC) for tumors with extracutaneous invasion (T4) and negative node status regardless of whether the negative node status was established microscopically or clinically. Stage III is also divided into A and B categories for patients with microscopically positive and clinically occult nodes (IIIA) and macroscopic nodes (IIIB). There are no subgroups of Stage IV Merkel cell carcinoma.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage 0</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>pN0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>cN0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>T2/T3</td>
<td>pN0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>T2/T3</td>
<td>cN0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIC</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>cN1/N1b/N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Isolated tumor cells should be considered positive nodes, similar to melanoma (see Chapter 31).
INTRODUCTION

Merkel cell carcinoma (MCC) is a relatively rare, potentially aggressive primary cutaneous neuroendocrine carcinoma, originally described by Tang and Toker in 1972 as trabecular carcinoma. The mortality rate is twice that observed in melanoma (33% vs. 15%). Although the molecular pathogenesis remains largely unknown, ultraviolet radiation and immune suppression are likely significant predisposing factors. The identification of a novel polyomavirus termed Merkel cell polyomavirus in the majority of MCC tumors suggests a viral component in many cases. Merkel cell carcinoma occurs most commonly on sun-exposed skin in fair-skinned individuals older than 50 years with a slight male predominance. An increased incidence is also observed in patients with HIV infection, leukemias, and organ transplantation. Merkel cell carcinoma is increasing in frequency, rising from 0.15 cases per 100,000 in 1986 to 0.44 cases per 100,000 in 2001. Much of this increase in reported frequency is likely due to increased recognition and improved techniques for diagnosis. Currently in the United States, approximately 1,500 cases of MCC are diagnosed annually. As the US population ages and improved transplantation regimens prolong the lives of organ transplant recipients, the incidence of MCC will likely continue to rise.

Merkel cell carcinoma has a nonspecific clinical presentation, though rapid growth of a firm, red to violaceous, non-tender papule or nodule is often noted. Diagnosis is made via biopsy, almost invariably with the aid of immunohistochemistry, classically demonstrating a peri-nuclear dot pattern of cytokeratin-20 staining. The majority of patients present with clinically localized disease. However, the disease can rapidly spread to regional and distant sites. The regional draining lymph node basin is the most common site for recurrence. The natural history of the disease is variable but heavily dependent on the stage at time of diagnosis.

Five different staging systems for Merkel cell carcinoma have been described in the literature and all are currently in use. Depending on the system used, Stage III MCC could represent local, nodal, or metastatic disease. This situation impedes effective patient-physician communication, data comparison, and outcomes analysis. Therefore, development of a standardized, data-driven staging system is important for improving clinical care and research in this disease. Moreover, a separate staging system for MCC is appropriate given its unique behavior compared with other malignancies that will remain in the “Cutaneous Squamous Cell Carcinoma and other Cutaneous Carcinomas” staging chapter (see Chap. 29). This new staging system is based on an analysis of over 4,700 patients using the National Cancer Database as well as extensive review of the literature.

ANATOMY

Primary Sites. Merkel cell carcinoma is postulated to arise from the Merkel cell, a neuroendocrine cell of the skin. MCC can occur anywhere on the skin but arises most often in sun-exposed areas. It occurs most commonly on the head and neck, followed by the extremities. In 14% of cases, the primary site remains unknown with MCC presentation in nodal or visceral sites.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The draining regional lymph nodes are the most common site of metastasis. Regional lymph node metastasis occurs relatively frequently and early, even in the absence of deep local extension or large primary tumor size. Thirty-two percent of clinically negative draining lymph node basins were in fact positive for microscopic metastases as revealed by sentinel or elective lymphadenectomy. Intra lymphatic “in transit” regional metastases also occur but are uncommon. For MCC, an in transit metastasis is defined as a tumor distinct from the primary lesion and located either (1) between the primary lesion and the draining regional lymph nodes or (2) distal to the primary lesion. In contrast to melanoma, for MCC there is no separate subclassification of in transit metastases based on distance from the primary (i.e., no satellite metastasis classification). By convention, the term “regional nodal metastases” refers to disease confined to one nodal basin or two contiguous nodal basins, as in patients with nodal disease in combinations of femoral/iliac, axillary/supraclavicular, or cervical/supraclavicular metastases or in primary truncal disease with axillary/femoral, bilateral axillary, or bilateral femoral metastases.

Metastatic Sites. Merkel cell carcinoma can metastasize to virtually any organ site. Metastases occur most commonly to distant lymph nodes, followed by the liver, lung, bone, and brain.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

The primary difference between the definitions of clinical and pathologic nodal staging is whether the regional lymph nodes were staged by clinical/radiologic exam only or by pathologic exam (after partial or complete lymphadenectomy).

Clinical Staging. Clinical staging is defined as regional lymph nodes that are staged by clinical inspection and palpation of the involved area and the regional lymph nodes and/or by radiologic studies. For cases without documentation of abnormal regional nodes on physical exam, patients should be considered to not have macroscopic nodal disease.

Pathologic Staging. Pathologic staging is defined as regional lymph nodes that are staged by focused (sentinel lymph node biopsy), therapeutic, or complete lymphadenectomy. With regard to Merkel cell carcinoma, the distinction between clinical vs. pathologic staging is highly significant. The natural history of MCC is variable and dependent on the pathologic stage at time of presentation.
Sentinel lymph node biopsy should be performed routinely on MCC patients, as approximately 32% of patients without palpable lymph nodes will have positive sentinel lymph node biopsies. Pathologic staging with negative sentinel lymph node biopsy at time of diagnosis is a predictor of improved survival. Despite these issues, approximately two-thirds of MCC patients captured in the National Cancer Database did not have pathologic staging of the regional nodes.

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES AND SURVIVAL RESULTS

Survival in Merkel cell carcinoma is based on stage at presentation (Figure 30.1). Overall survival relative to an age- and sex-matched population was determined using 4,700 Merkel cell carcinoma patients in the National Cancer Database registry (manuscript in preparation). Tumor size is a continuous variable with increasing tumor size correlating with modestly poorer prognosis (Figure 30.2). True lymph node negativity by pathologic evaluation portends a better prognosis compared with patients whose lymph nodes are only evaluated by clinical or radiographic examination (Figure 30.3). This is in large part likely due to the high rate (33%) of false negative nodal determination by clinical exam alone. Thus, patients should have pathologic evaluation of the draining nodal basin to most accurately predict survival and guide optimal therapy. Percent relative survival based on stage is shown in Figure 30.4.

Profound immune suppression, such as in HIV/AIDS, chronic lymphocytic leukemia, or solid organ transplantation have all been associated with worse survival in MCC. Further, immunosuppressed patients frequently present with more advanced disease.

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

Those patients with MCC presentations where the primary tumor cannot be assessed should be categorized as TX. Patients with Merkel cell carcinoma in situ are categorized as Tis. The T category of MCC is classified primarily by measuring the maximum dimension of the tumor: 2 cm or less (T1), greater than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm (T2), and greater than 5 cm (T3). Node status is divided into node negative microscopically, node negative clinically, node status unknown, node positive pathologically, and node positive clinically. The curve indicated by “Node positive pathologically” includes pathologic node positive patients with clinical node status negative or unknown. Total number of patients was 4,426, and individual groupings were as follows: node negative microscopically = 630, node negative clinically = 1,726, node status unknown = 1,134, node positive pathologically = 794, node positive clinically = 143.
than 5 cm (T3). Extracutaneous invasion by the primary tumor into bone, muscle, fascia, or cartilage is classified as T4. Inclusion of 2 cm MCC tumors as T1 is consistent with the prior AJCC staging system but differs from other frequently used MCC staging systems that categorize 2 cm tumors as T2. The breakdown of T category is conserved from the prior version of AJCC staging for "Carcinoma of the Skin."

Regional metastases most commonly present in the regional lymph nodes. A second staging definition is related to nodal tumor burden: microscopic vs. macroscopic. Therefore, patients without clinical or radiologic evidence of lymph node metastases but who have pathologically documented nodal metastases are defined by convention as exhibiting "microscopic" or "clinically occult" nodal metastases. In contrast, MCC patients with both clinical evidence of nodal metastases and pathologic examination confirming nodal metastases are defined by convention as having "macroscopic" or "clinically apparent" nodal metastases. Nodes clinically positive by exam and negative by pathology would be classified as pN0. Clinically positive nodes in the draining nodal basin that are assumed to be involved with Merkel cell carcinoma but are without pathologic confirmation (no pathology performed) should be classified as N1b and the pathologic classification would be NX. Then in determining the stage grouping, it would be Stage IIIB defaulting to the higher N category.

Distant metastases are defined as metastases that have spread beyond the draining lymph node basin, including cutaneous, nodal, and visceral sites.

Primary Tumor (T)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor (e.g., nodal/metastatic presentation without associated primary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>In situ primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Less than or equal to 2 cm maximum tumor dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Greater than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm maximum tumor dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Over 5 cm maximum tumor dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Primary tumor invades bone, muscle, fascia, or cartilage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cN0</td>
<td>Nodes negative by clinical exam* (no pathologic node exam performed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0</td>
<td>Nodes negative by pathologic exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Metastasis in regional lymph node(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>Micrometastasis**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>Macrometastasis***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>In transit metastasis****</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Clinical detection of nodal disease may be via inspection, palpation, and/or imaging.

**Isolated tumor cells in a lymph node are classified as micrometastases (N1a) and the presence of isolated tumor cells recorded using the prognostic factor. Micrometastases are diagnosed after sentinel or elective lymphadenectomy.

***Macrometastases are defined as clinically detectable nodal metastases confirmed by therapeutic lymphadenectomy or needle biopsy.

****In transit metastasis: a tumor distinct from the primary lesion and located either (1) between the primary lesion and the draining regional lymph nodes or (2) distal to the primary lesion.

Distant Metastasis (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Metastasis beyond regional lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>Metastasis to skin, subcutaneous tissues or distant lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>Metastasis to lung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1c</td>
<td>Metastasis to all other visceral sites</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

Patients with primary Merkel cell carcinoma with no evidence of regional or distant metastases (either clinically or pathologically) are divided into two stages: Stage I for primary tumors ≤2 cm in size and Stage II for primary tumors >2 cm in size. Stages I and II are further divided into A and B substages based on method of nodal evaluation. Patients who have pathologically proven node...
negative disease (by microscopic evaluation of their draining lymph nodes) have improved survival (substaged as A) compared to those who are only evaluated clinically (substaged as B). Stage II has an additional substage (IIC) for tumors with extracutaneous invasion (T4) and negative node status regardless of whether the negative node status was established microscopically or clinically. Stage III is also divided into A and B categories for patients with microscopically positive and clinically occult nodes (IIIA) and macroscopic nodes (IIIB). There are no subgroups of Stage IV Merkel cell carcinoma.

Stage 0  Tis  N0  M0  
Stage IA  T1  pN0  M0  
Stage IB  T1  cN0  M0  
Stage IIA  T2/T3  pN0  M0  
Stage IIB  T2/T3  cN0  M0  
Stage IIC  T4  N0  M0  
Stage IIIA  Any T  N1a  M0  
Stage IIIB  Any T  cN1/N1b/N2  M0  
Stage IV  Any T  Any N  M1

Note: Isolated tumor cells should be considered positive nodes, similar to melanoma (see Chapter 31).

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)  
(Recommended for Collection)

Required for staging  None
Clinically significant  Measured thickness (depth)  
Tumor base transection status  Profound immune suppression  
Tumor infiltrating lymphocytes in the primary tumor (TIL)  
Growth pattern of primary tumor  
Size of tumor nests in regional lymph nodes  
Clinical status of regional lymph nodes  
Regional lymph nodes pathological extrapol-capsular extension  
Isolated tumor cells in regional lymph node(s)

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Histologic grade is not used in the staging of Merkel cell carcinoma.

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

While several distinct morphologic patterns have been described for MCC, these have not been reproducibly found to be of prognostic significance. These histologic subtypes include: intermediate type (most common), small cell type (second most common), and trabecular type (least common but most characteristic pattern of MCC).

REFERENCES

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Merkel Cell Carcinoma Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **TUMOR SIZE:**
  - Primary tumor cannot be assessed
  - Primary tumor invades bone, muscle, fascia, or cartilage

- **LATERALITY:**
  - left
  - right
  - bilateral

- **PRIMARY TUMOR (T)**
  - TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
  - T0: No evidence of primary tumor
  - Tis: In situ primary tumor
  - T1: Less than or equal to 2 cm maximum tumor dimension
  - T2: Greater than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm maximum tumor dimension
  - T3: Over 5 cm maximum tumor dimension
  - T4: Primary tumor invades bone, muscle, fascia, or cartilage

- **REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)**
  - NX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
  - N0: No regional lymph node metastasis
  - N1: Metastasis in regional lymph node(s)
    - M1: Micrometastasis
    - N2: Macrometastasis
  - N1a: Isolated tumor cells in a lymph node are classified as micrometastases (N1a) and the presence of isolated tumor cells recorded using the prognostic factor. Micrometastases are diagnosed after sentinel or elective lymphadenectomy
  - N1b: Macrometastases are defined as clinically detectable nodal metastases confirmed by therapeutic lymphadenectomy or needle biopsy
  - N2: In transit metastasis

- **DISTANT METASTASIS (M)**
  - M0: No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
  - M1: Metastasis beyond regional lymph nodes
  - M1a: Metastasis to skin, subcutaneous tissues or distant lymph nodes
  - M1b: Metastasis to lung
  - M1c: Metastasis to all other visceral sites

- **ANATOMIC STAGE • PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GROUP T N M</td>
<td>GROUP T N M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 Tis N0 M0</td>
<td>0 Tis N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB T1 N0 M0</td>
<td>IA T1 pN0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB T2/T3 N0 M0</td>
<td>IIIA T2/T3 pN0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC T4 N0 M0</td>
<td>IIIC T4 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB Any T cN1/N1b/N2 M0</td>
<td>III A Any T N1a M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV Any T Any N M1</td>
<td>IVB Any T N1b/N2 M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Isolated tumor nodes should be considered positive nodes.

**HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS**

**PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION**

---

(continued on next page)
Merkel Cell Carcinoma Staging Form

Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

Required for Staging: None

Clinically Significant:
- Measured Thickness (Depth)
- Tumor Base Transection Status
- Profound Immune Suppression
- Tumor Infiltrating Lymphocytes in the Primary Tumor (TIL)
- Growth Pattern of Primary Tumor
- Size of tumor nests in regional lymph nodes
- Clinical Status of Regional Lymph Nodes
- Regional Lymph Nodes Pathological Extracapsular Extension
- Isolated Tumor Cells in Regional Lymph Node(s)

Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

Histologic grade is not used in the staging of Merkel cell carcinoma.

Additional Descriptors

Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

Residual Tumor (R)

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

General Notes:

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.

General Notes (continued):

- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.

- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

Surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

Neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.


date/time

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
Merkel Cell Carcinoma Staging Form

Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Melanoma of the Skin

At-A-Glance

**SUMMARY OF CHANGES**

- Mitotic rate (histologically defined as mitoses/mm², not mitoses/10 HPF) is an important primary tumor prognostic factor. A mitotic rate equal to or greater than 1/mm² denotes a melanoma at higher risk for metastasis. It should now be used as one defining criteria of T1b melanomas.

- Melanoma thickness and tumor ulceration continue to be used in defining strata in the T category. For T1 melanomas, in addition to tumor ulceration, mitotic rate replaces level of invasion as a primary criterion for defining the subcategory of T1b.

- The presence of nodal micrometastases can be defined using either H&E or immunohistochemical staining (previously, only the H&E could be used).

- There is no lower threshold of tumor burden defining the presence of regional nodal metastasis. Specifically, nodal tumor deposits less than 0.2 mm in diameter (previously used as the threshold for defining nodal metastasis) are included in the staging of nodal disease as a result of the consensus that smaller volumes of metastatic tumor are still clinically significant. A lower threshold of clinically insignificant nodal metastases has not been defined based on evidence.

- The site of distant metastases [nonvisceral (i.e., skin/soft tissue/distant nodal) vs. lung vs. all other visceral metastatic sites] continues to represent the primary component of categorizing the M category.

- An elevated serum lactic dehydrogenase (LDH) level remains a powerful predictor of survival and is also to be used in defining the M category.

- Survival estimates for patients with intralymphatic regional metastases (i.e., satellites and in transit metastasis) are somewhat better than for the remaining cohort of Stage IIIB patients. Nevertheless, Stage IIIB still represents the closest statistical fit for this group, so the current staging definition for intralymphatic regional metastasis has been retained.

- The prognostic significance of microsatellites has been established less broadly. The Melanoma Task Force recommended that this uncommon feature be retained in the N2c category, largely because the published literature is insufficient to substantiate revision of the definitions used in the Sixth Edition Staging Manual.

- The staging definition of metastatic melanoma from an unknown primary site was clarified, such that isolated metastases arising in lymph nodes, skin, and subcutaneous tissues are to be categorized as Stage III rather than Stage IV.

- The definitions of tumor ulceration, mitotic rate and microsatellites were clarified.

- Lymphoscintigraphy followed by lymphatic mapping and sentinel lymph node biopsy (sentinel lymphadenectomy) remain important components of melanoma staging and should be used (or discussed with the patient) in defining occult Stage III disease among patients who present with clinical Stage IB or II melanoma.
INTRODUCTION

The sixth edition of the AJCC staging system for cutaneous melanoma has been widely adopted over the past 5 years and few major changes are recommended for the seventh edition. The AJCC Melanoma Staging Database represents a collaborative, international effort developed over several decades. An analysis of prognostic factors involving almost 60,000 patients from these 14 cancer centers and organizations was performed to validate the staging categories and groupings for the seventh edition. The TNM categories and the stage groupings are defined in the following chapter. Twenty-year survival rates for patients with Stages I–IV melanoma are shown in Figure 31.1. Differences between the sixth edition version and the seventh edition version of the melanoma staging system are listed in Table 31.1. Within each stage grouping and subgroups, there is a uniform risk for survival (Figure 31.1).

ANATOMY

Primary Sites. Cutaneous melanoma can occur anywhere on the skin. It occurs most commonly on the extremities in female subjects and on the trunk in male subjects.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The regional lymph nodes are the most common site of metastases. The widespread use of cutaneous lymphoscintigraphy followed by lymphatic mapping and sentinel lymph node biopsy has greatly enhanced the ability to identify nodal micrometastases and to define the stage of clinically node-negative melanoma patients. Indeed, the distribution of Stage III patients has changed dramatically since the last melanoma staging review; those patients presenting with clinically occult nodal metastases (Stage IIIA) comprise the majority of the Stage III patients, and the number of patients with clinically detectable metastases (Stage IIIB and IIIC) has declined considerably.

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

C44.0 Skin of lip, NOS
C44.1 Eyelid
C44.2 External ear
C44.3 Skin of other and unspecified parts of face
C44.4 Skin of scalp and neck
C44.5 Skin of trunk
C44.6 Skin of upper limb and shoulder
C44.7 Skin of lower limb and hip
C44.8 Overlapping lesion of skin
C44.9 Skin, NOS
C51.0 Labium majus
C51.1 Labium minus
C51.2 Clitoris
C51.8 Overlapping lesion of vulva
C51.9 Vulva, NOS
C60.0 Prepuce
C60.1 Glans penis
C60.2 Body of penis
C60.8 Overlapping lesion of penis
C60.9 Penis, NOS
C63.2 Scrotum, NOS

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8720–8790
Intralymphatic local and regional metastases may also become clinically manifest as (1) satellite metastases (defined arbitrarily as grossly visible cutaneous and/or subcutaneous metastases occurring within 2 cm of the primary melanoma); (2) microsatellites – microscopic and discontinuous cutaneous

Metastatic Sites. Melanoma can metastasize to virtually any organ site. Distant metastases most commonly occur in the skin or soft tissues, the lung, liver, brain, bone, or gastrointestinal tract.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

The definitions of clinical vs. pathologic stage grouping differ according to whether the regional lymph nodes are staged by clinical/radiographic exam or by pathologic evaluation of the nodal status.

Clinical Staging. Clinical Stages I and II are confined to those patients who have no evidence of metastases, either at regional or distant sites based upon clinical, radiographic, and/or laboratory evaluation. Stage III melanoma patients

FIGURE 31.1. Twenty-year survival curves for patients with localized melanoma (Stages I and II), regional metastases (Stage III), and distant metastases (Stage IV). The numbers in parentheses are the numbers of patients from the AJCC Melanoma Staging Database used to calculate the survival rates. The differences between the curves are highly significant ($p < 0.0001$).


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor</th>
<th>6th Edition criteria</th>
<th>7th Edition criteria</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thickness</td>
<td>Primary determinant of T staging; thresholds of 1.0, 2.0, 4.0 mm</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>Correlation of metastatic risk is a continuous variable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level of invasion</td>
<td>Used only for defining T1 melanomas</td>
<td>No longer used</td>
<td>Clark's levels ≥IV or V may be used in rare instances as a criterion for defining T1b melanoma only if mitotic rate cannot be determined in a nonulcerated T1 melanoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ulceration</td>
<td>Included as a second determinant of T and N staging</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>Signifies a locally advanced lesion; dominant prognostic factor for grouping Stage I, II, and III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitotic rate per mm²</td>
<td>Not Used</td>
<td>Used for categorizing T1 melanoma</td>
<td>Mitosis ≥1/mm² used as a primary determinant for defining T1b melanoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satellite metastases</td>
<td>In N category</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>Merged with in transit lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunohistochemical detection of nodal metastases</td>
<td>Not allowed</td>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>Must include at least one melanoma-specific marker(e.g., HMB-45, Melan-A, MART 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2-mm threshold of defined node-positive</td>
<td>Implied</td>
<td>No lower threshold of staging node-positive disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of nodal metastases</td>
<td>Dominant determinant of N staging</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>Thresholds of 1 vs. 2–3 vs. ≥4 nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastatic &quot;volume&quot;</td>
<td>Included as a second determinant of N staging</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>Clinically occult (&quot;microscopic&quot;) vs. clinically apparent (&quot;macroscopic&quot;) nodal volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lang metastases</td>
<td>Separate category as M1b</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>Has a somewhat better prognosis than other visceral metastases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elevated serum LDH</td>
<td>Included as a second determinant of M staging</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>Recommend a second confirmatory LDH if elevated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical vs. pathologic staging</td>
<td>Sentinel node results incorporated into definition of pathologic staging</td>
<td>Large variability in outcome between clinical and pathologic staging; Sentinel node staging encouraged for standard patient care and should be required prior to entry into clinical trials</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Logically defined Stage III patients is quite large, ranging from range of survival rates among various subgroups of pathologic metastatic risk within Stage III melanoma. Thus, the Stage III patients have revealed an extraordinary heterogeneity. These previously understaged undetected nodal metastases. These previously staged as "node negative," but who in fact have metastases at one or more distant sites. Stage IV melanoma patients have histological documentation and the number of nodes that contain metastases. Pathologic staging will use information gained from the primary melanoma and from pathologic examination of the regional lymph nodes after sentinel or complete lymphadenectomy.

Pathologic Staging. In contrast to clinical staging, there is greater accuracy (both qualitatively and quantitatively) in defining distinctive prognostic subgroups when combining pathologic information from the primary melanoma and from pathologic examination of the regional lymph nodes after sentinel lymph node biopsy.

Pathologic Stages I and II melanoma comprise those patients who have no evidence of regional or distant metastases, when clinically appropriate use of sentinel lymph node biopsy demonstrates the absence of nodal metastases after careful pathologic examination and routine clinical and radiographic examination demonstrate the absence of distant metastases. Pathologic Stage III melanoma patients have pathologic evidence of regional metastases, either in the regional lymph nodes or at intralymphatic sites. The quantitative classification for pathologic nodal status requires careful pathologic examination of the surgically resected nodal basin and documentation of number of lymph nodes examined and the number of nodes that contain metastases. Pathologic Stage IV melanoma patients have histological documentation of metastases at one or more distant sites.

With the widespread use of sentinel lymph node biopsy, it is clear that there is considerable stage migration of patients previously staged as "node negative," but who in fact have undetected nodal metastases. These previously understaged Stage III patients have revealed an extraordinary heterogeneity of metastatic risk within Stage III melanoma. Thus, the range of survival rates among various subgroups of pathologically defined Stage III patients is quite large, ranging from 38 to 78% 5-year survival (Table 31.2).12

Clinical vs. Pathologic Staging. The AJCC Melanoma Task Force recommends that sentinel lymph node biopsy be performed as a staging procedure in patients for whom the information will be useful in planning subsequent treatment and follow-up regimens. Specifically, the procedure should be recommended for (or at least discussed with) patients who have T1b, T2, T3, or T4 melanomas, and clinically or radiographically uninvolved regional lymph nodes. In all prospective studies performed to date involving such patients, sentinel node status was one of the most powerful independent prognostic factors examined.3–17

The AJCC Melanoma Task Force also strongly recommends that sentinel lymph node biopsy be required as an entry criterion for all melanoma patients presenting with clinical Stage IB or II disease (including T1a patients with melanoma \( \geq 1.00 \text{ mm} \)) before entry into clinical trials involving new surgical techniques or adjuvant therapy.

By convention, clinical staging should be performed after complete excision of the primary melanoma (including microstaging) with clinical assessment of regional lymph nodes. Pathologic staging will use information gained from both microstaging of the primary melanoma and pathologic evaluation of the nodal status after sentinel lymph node biopsy and/or complete regional lymphadenectomy.

In some centers, ultrasound examination of the regional lymph nodes and fine needle aspiration (FNA) of abnormal lymph nodes has been used to detect small nodal metastases.18–22 The sensitivity, specificity, and yield of this diagnostic approach have been variable and its use should not replace sentinel lymph node biopsy in clinical Stage IB and II patients when the ultrasound examination and needle biopsy are negative or inconclusive.20,21 In contrast, when the cytologic examination after a needle biopsy demonstrates the presence of melanoma, a sentinel lymph node biopsy is superfluous in that nodal basin and the final staging is determined after complete or formal regional lymphadenectomy, when the number of metastatic lymph nodes can be pathologically assessed.21

Significant differences in survival rates have been identified for melanoma patients who were clinically staged compared with those whose nodal disease was staged pathologically.12,23,24 These survival differences between clinically and pathologically staged patients were statistically significant among all T categories except for T4b.12,24 The differences were most striking in patients with clinical T2b – T4a T categories; 10-year survival rates for the same T category of clinically vs. pathologically staged patients varied significantly with diminished survival ranging from 12 to 29% in absolute numbers among clinically vs. pathologically staged patients.12,24 These results highlight the compelling prognostic value of knowing the nodal status as identified by lymphatic mapping and sentinel lymph node biopsy.

### Table 31.2. Five-year survival rates of pathologically staged patients (from the 2008 AJCC Melanoma Staging Database)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>IA</th>
<th>IB</th>
<th>IIA</th>
<th>IIB</th>
<th>IIC</th>
<th>IIIA</th>
<th>IIIB</th>
<th>IIIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>97%</td>
<td>91%</td>
<td>79%</td>
<td>71%</td>
<td>78%</td>
<td>48%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>94%</td>
<td>82%</td>
<td>68%</td>
<td>53%</td>
<td>55%</td>
<td>38%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N2a</td>
<td>N2b</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>38%</td>
<td>33%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N4a</td>
<td>N4b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>71%</td>
<td>38%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N5a</td>
<td>N5b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>53%</td>
<td>29%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the stage groupings involve upstaging to account for melanoma ulceration, where thinner melanomas with ulceration are grouped with the next greatest T substage for nonulcerated melanomas.

1The presence of tumor ulceration of a primary melanoma (designated T1b) causes upstaging by one substage compared to a nonulcerated melanoma (designated Ta).
PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

Primary Tumor. Twenty-year survival rates for each of the T categories in clinically staged patients are shown in Table 31.2 and Figure 31.2.

Melanoma Thickness. The T category of melanoma is classified primarily by measuring the thickness of the melanoma as defined by Dr. Alexander Breslow.\(^26,27\) In the seventh edition staging version, the T category thresholds of melanoma thickness are still defined in even integers (1.0, 2.0, and 4.0 mm). Although these are arbitrary thresholds for staging purposes, they were previously determined to represent both a statistical "best fit" for the (N0) patient population and the thresholds most compatible with contemporary clinical decision making.\(^1,24\)

The AJCC Melanoma Staging Database includes prospectively accumulated data on over 27,000 melanoma patients with clinically or pathologically localized melanoma (Stage I and II) for whom tumor thickness and follow-up information is available. As tumor thickness increased, there was a highly significant decline in 5- and 10-year survival \((p < 0.001)\).

Among the 5,296 patients with 0.01–0.5-mm thick melanomas, the 10-year survival was 96%, while it was 89% in the 6,545 patients with 0.51–1.00 mm thick, 80% in the 8,046 patients with 1.01–2.00 mm thick, 65% in 3,539 patients with 2.01–3.00 mm thick, 57% in 1,752 patients with 3.01–4.00 mm thick, and 54% in 1,464 patients with 4.01–6.00-mm thick melanomas. For patients with tumor thickness greater than 6.00 mm, the 10-year survival rate was 42%.

Melanoma Ulceration. The second criterion for determining T category is primary tumor ulceration, i.e., the presence or absence of an intact epidermis above the primary melanoma based upon a histopathologic examination. Melanoma ulceration is defined as the combination of the following features: full-thickness epidermal defect (including absence of stratum corneum and basement membrane), evidence of reactive changes (i.e., fibrin deposition and neutrophils), and thinning, effacement, or reactive hyperplasia of the surrounding epidermis in the absence of trauma or a recent surgical procedure.\(^28–\)\(^32\)

Survival rates for patients with an ulcerated melanoma are proportionately lower than those of patients with a non ulcerated melanoma of equivalent T category, but are remarkably similar to those of patients with a non ulcerated melanoma of the next highest T category (Figure 31.2 and Tables 31.2 and 31.3).

Melanoma Mitotic Rate. Primary tumor mitotic rate has been introduced as a required element for the seventh edition melanoma staging system. Data from the AJCC Melanoma Staging Database demonstrated a highly significant correlation with increasing mitotic rate and declining survival rates (Tables 31.4 and 31.5), especially within thin melanoma subgroups. In a multifactorial analysis of 10,233 patients with clinically localized melanoma, mitotic rate was the second most powerful predictor of survival outcome, after tumor thickness (Table 31.6). Single institutions have also identified mitotic rate as an adverse prognostic factor.\(^33–\)\(^37\)

Mitotic rate should be assessed on all primary melanomas. The recommended approach to enumerating mitoses is to first find the areas in the dermis containing the most mitotic figures, such as dermal papillae. Mitoses should be enumerated in these areas, especially those that are perpendicular to the reticular dermis. Mitotic figures should be enumerated in both the superficial and intermediate layers of the dermis. The recommendation is to count 10 high-power fields (400x magnification) in each of the five areas, for a total of 50 high-power fields for each primary melanoma.

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
the so-called hot spot. After counting the mitoses in the hot spot, the count is extended to adjacent fields until an area corresponding to 1 mm² is assessed. If no hot spot can be found and mitoses are sparse and randomly scattered throughout the lesion, then a representative mitosis is chosen and beginning with that field the count is then extended to adjacent fields until an area corresponding to 1 mm² is assessed. The count then is expressed as the number of mitoses/mm² (i.e., an area corresponding to approximately four high power fields at 400× in most microscopes). To obtain accurate measurement, calibration of individual microscopes is recommended. For classifying thin (≤1 mm) melanomas, the threshold for a nonulcerated melanoma to be defined as T1b is ≥1 mitoses/mm².

When the invasive component of tumor is <1 mm² (in area), the number of mitoses present in 1 mm² of dermal tissue that includes the tumor should be enumerated and recorded as a number per millimeter squared. Alternatively, in tumors where the invasive component is <1 mm² in area, the simple presence or absence of a mitosis can be designated as at least 1/mm² (i.e., “mitogenic”) or 0/mm² (i.e., “nonmitogenic”), respectively. At some institutions, when mitotic figures are not found after numerous fields are examined, the mitotic count cannot be accurately determined, a level invasion of either IV or V as defined by Clark can be used to categorize patients into the T1b classification.

### TABLE 31.4. Data from the 2008 AJCC Melanoma Staging Database demonstrating a highly significant correlation between increasing mitotic rate and declining survival in patients with localized melanoma (stages I and II)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of mitoses/mm²</th>
<th>Survival rate ± SE</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>5-Year</th>
<th>10-Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.01–0.50</td>
<td>&lt;1.0</td>
<td>1,194</td>
<td>0.991 ± 0.004</td>
<td>0.974 ± 0.006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.01–0.50</td>
<td>≥1.0</td>
<td>327</td>
<td>0.970 ± 0.012</td>
<td>0.952 ± 0.017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.51–1.00</td>
<td>&lt;1.0</td>
<td>1,472</td>
<td>0.977 ± 0.005</td>
<td>0.930 ± 0.010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.51–1.00</td>
<td>≥1.0</td>
<td>1,868</td>
<td>0.935 ± 0.006</td>
<td>0.871 ± 0.012</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Includes patients with mitosis, tumor thickness, and follow-up information available.

### TABLE 31.5. Survival rates for 4,861 T1 melanoma patients (1.00 mm or less) subgrouped by thickness and mitotic rate of the primary melanoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thickness (mm)</th>
<th>Mitosis</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>5-Year</th>
<th>10-Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.01–0.50</td>
<td>&lt;1.0</td>
<td>1,194</td>
<td>0.991 ± 0.004</td>
<td>0.974 ± 0.006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.01–0.50</td>
<td>≥1.0</td>
<td>327</td>
<td>0.970 ± 0.012</td>
<td>0.952 ± 0.017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.51–1.00</td>
<td>&lt;1.0</td>
<td>1,472</td>
<td>0.977 ± 0.005</td>
<td>0.930 ± 0.010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.51–1.00</td>
<td>≥1.0</td>
<td>1,868</td>
<td>0.935 ± 0.006</td>
<td>0.871 ± 0.012</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

from the block on a single slide. As a guide, we suggest that no more than two slides with such multiple sections be evaluated so that exhaustive evaluation of the lesion is not performed. Excellent interobserver reproducibility among specialist, general, and trainee pathologists for their assessment of mitotic rate as defined above has been previously described. 24–42

### Level of Invasion.

The level of invasion, as defined by Dr. Wallace Clark, 29, has been used for over 40 years for various staging systems of melanomas. Although Clark’s levels of invasion have prognostic significance in univariate analysis, numerous publications have shown that the level of invasion is less reproducible among pathologists and does not reflect prognosis as accurately as tumor thickness. 29, 30, 39–42 In the sixth edition of the Cancer Staging Manual, level of invasion was used in defining the specific subgroup of thin (T1) melanomas. 24–42 However, newer information has demonstrated that while level of invasion is an independent prognostic factor, it has the lowest statistical correlation with survival rates compared with the other six independent prognostic variables (Table 31.6).

### Defining T1 Melanomas.

In the T1 cohort of melanomas, the assignment of T1a is restricted to melanomas with three criteria (1) ≤1.0 mm thick, (2) absence of ulceration, and (3) mitotic rate of less than 1/mm². Thus, T1b melanomas are now defined as those whose tumor thickness is ≤1.0 mm and have at least 1 mitosis/mm² or tumor ulceration. This is a major change from the sixth edition Cancer Staging Manual where the level of invasion was used to define T1b melanomas. In the rare circumstances where the mitotic rate cannot be accurately determined, a level invasion of either IV or V as defined by Clark can be used to categorize patients into the T1b classification.

These recommendations were made after reviewing the statistical information involving 4,861 T1 melanomas from the updated AJCC Melanoma Staging Database demonstrating that mitotic rate was the most powerful predictor of survival outcome for T1 melanoma patients, and conversely, that the level of invasion was no longer statistically significant when mitotic rate and ulceration were included (data not shown). Ten-year survival rates ranged from 97% for T1 melanomas of 0.01–0.50 mm in thickness and <1 mitosis/mm² to...
Melanoma of the Skin

Sentinel Nodal Staging in T1b Melanoma. In the sixth edition of the AJCC Staging Manual it was recommended that sentinel node staging be considered in patients presenting with T1bN0M0 or thicker melanomas, based upon the secondary features of either tumor ulceration or Clark’s level IV depth of invasion, which were associated with an approximately 10% yield of occult nodal metastases. The use of mitotic rate for the purpose of classifying thin melanomas as T1b in the seventh edition was based on a survival analysis. The AJCC Melanoma Staging Database did not contain sufficient data for precisely estimating risk for occult nodal micrometastases in this population. However, preliminary evidence from several other large studies would suggest that T1b melanomas (as defined in the new system) of ≥0.76 mm in thickness are associated with an approximately 10% risk of occult nodal metastases. Conversely, T1a melanomas with <1 mitoses/mm², or T1b melanomas <0.5 mm in thickness have a very low risk of nodal micrometastases. These data may help in indicating the need for sentinel lymph node biopsy for staging with individual patients with T1b melanoma.

Melanoma In Situ, Indeterminate Melanomas, Multiple Primary Melanomas. Patients with melanoma in situ are categorized as Tis. Those patients with melanoma presentations that are indeterminate or cannot be microstaged should be categorized as TX. However, when the pathology of the initial biopsy finds that the tumor was transected at the base, the maximal thickness should be recorded without the addition of any residual tumor found in the re-excision. If the total thickness found in the re-excision is greater than the thickness of the original biopsy, then only the maximal thickness in the re-excision should be recorded. When patients present with multiple primary melanomas, the T category staging is based upon the melanoma with the worst prognostic features.

Melanoma Growth Patterns. The data used to derive the TNM categories were largely based on melanomas with superficial spreading and nodular growth patterns. There is some evidence that melanomas of other growth patterns, namely lentigo maligna, acral lentigious, and desmoplastic melanomas, have a different etiology and natural history. At present, the same staging criteria should be used for melanomas with all growth patterns, even though their prognosis may differ somewhat from the more commonly occurring growth patterns.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The 2008 AJCC Staging Melanoma Database contains over 3,400 Stage III patients, the vast majority of whom presented with micrometastases after a sentinel lymph node biopsy and completion lymphadenectomy. A multivariate Cox regression analysis of the database demonstrated that the number of tumor-bearing nodes, tumor burden at the time of staging (i.e., microscopic vs. macrometastases), and presence or absence of ulceration of the primary melanoma were the most predictive independent factors for survival in these patients (Table 31.7). These characteristics were incorporated into the stage grouping criteria. For example, the presence of tumor ulceration was used as a criterion for a higher assigned stage due to lower observed survival rates, such that, there was a uniform 5-year survival probability within each of the Stage III subgroups (see Table 31.2).

Number of Metastatic Nodes. This factor is the primary criterion for defining the N category, because the number of metastatic nodes correlated best with 10-year survival outcomes in all substages of Stage III in the AJCC analysis (see Table 31.7). Thus, patients with one node involved by metastasis are categorized as N1, those with 2–3 metastatic nodes as N2 and those with ≥4 metastatic nodes involved (or matted nodes) are defined as N3. Survival rates for these N subgroups are shown in Figure 31.3.

Micrometastases vs. Macrometastases. Another significant prognostic feature for patients with nodal metastases is the tumor burden of nodal metastases (Table 31.7). This terminology is defined operationally, not by actual measurements. Thus, those patients without clinical or radiographic evidence of lymph node metastases but who have pathologically documented nodal metastases are defined by convention as “microscopic” or “clinically occult” nodal metastases. It is recognized that such nodal metastases may vary in dimensions (especially for deep-seated nodes or in obese patients), but such a delineation can be identified in the medical record, based upon the preoperative clinical exam and the operative notation about the intent of the lymphadenectomy (i.e., whether it is a completion lymphadenectomy after sentinel lymph node biopsy for clinically occult disease or a “therapeutic” lymphadenectomy for clinically detected disease). Survival rates for these two patient groups are significantly different.

### Table 31.7. Multivariate Cox regression analysis of prognostic factors in 1,338 patients with regional lymph node metastases (Stage III)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>All patient with stage III (n = 1,338)</th>
<th>Patient with micrometastasis (n = 1,070)</th>
<th>Patients with macrometastasis (n = 268)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. of positive nodes</td>
<td>27.4</td>
<td>27.8</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ulceration</td>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor thickness</td>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor burden (micro vs. macro)</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitotic rate</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>12.7</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>24.8</td>
<td>15.8</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site</td>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clark’s level</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Immunohistochemical Detection of Micrometastases. Immunohistochemistry should always be adjunctive to good quality hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) stained sections. That being said, for the purposes of staging for nodal metastases, it is no longer mandatory for histopathologic confirmation using standard H&E staining, although this is highly recommended. With the availability of immunohistochemical (IHC) staining, it is now possible to detect nodal metastases as small as <0.1-mm or even aggregates of a few cells. The availability of immunohistochemical methods to detect melanoma-associated antigens is sufficiently available worldwide, that the AJCC Melanoma Task Force considers it acceptable to classify node-positive metastases based solely on immunohistochemical staining of melanoma-associated markers. In the sixth edition of the Cancer Staging Manual, micrometastases were only defined when they were detected by standard H&E staining.

Since some IHC markers are sensitive, but not specific, for staining melanoma cells (e.g., S100, tyrosinase), the definitive diagnosis must include detection with at least one melanoma-associated marker (e.g., HMB-45, Melan-A/MART-1) if cellular morphology is not otherwise diagnostic. These “specific” melanoma markers are of limited sensitivity and may not stain up to 15% of melanomas. In several studies, however, the combination of permanent H&E sections with multiple levels and S-100, Melan-A, and/or HMB-45 IHC increased the overall diagnostic sensitivity of sentinel lymph node biopsy.

The reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) technique may detect metastases not identifiable by the light microscope. Such sophisticated detection procedures may be incorporated into future staging criteria, but at the present time are associated with conflicting results in the literature and are therefore not sufficiently standardized to warrant their inclusion at this time.

Node Positive Threshold for Defining Nodal Micrometastases. There is no definitive evidence that defines a lower threshold of microscopically identifiable tumor burden that should not be used to define node positive disease for staging purposes. Evidence published in the melanoma literature demonstrates that even small volumes of metastatic tumor (e.g., those of 0.1 mm or less in diameter) are associated with a worse prognosis than pathologically negative nodes over time. The concept that isolated tumor cells in the lymph nodes (especially in subcapsular sinuses) are of no adverse biological significance cannot be substantiated for melanoma at this time, and a lower threshold of clinically insignificant nodal metastases has not been defined based on any evidence known to the AJCC Melanoma Task Force membership. These findings are in contrast to the findings often cited from breast cancer where micrometastases of <0.2 mm are defined as “not clinically relevant” and therefore not used as a criterion for staging node positive breast cancer.

Intralymphatic Metastases. The third criterion for defining the N category is the presence or absence of satellites or in transit metastases, regardless of the number of lesions. The available data show no substantial difference in survival outcome for these two anatomically defined entities. The clinical or microscopic presence of satellites around a primary
melanoma or of in transit metastases between the primary melanoma site and the regional lymph node basin represent intralymphatic metastases that portend a relatively poor prognosis.40–72 The sixth edition staging manual classification of Stage III melanoma included those patients with regional lymph node metastases or with metastases within the lymphatics manifesting as either satellite (including microsatellites) or in transit metastases. The latter situation would be designated as “N2c” without nodal metastases or “N3” with synchronous nodal metastasis. The identification of satellite or in transit metastases is associated with a poorer survival rate comparable to that of patients with Stage IIIB melanoma (without concomitant nodal metastases) or IIIC melanoma (with nodal metastases or arising from an ulcerated primary melanoma). The 2008 AJCC Melanoma Staging Database contained new information about patients with intralymphatic metastases (N2c). The 5- and 10-year survival rates were 69% and 52%, respectively (see Figure 31.3). These are somewhat more favorable than that previously reported in the literature and higher than the remaining cohort of Stage IIIB patients (Table 31.8).40 Nonetheless, the AJCC Melanoma Task Force noted that the category of Stage IIIB was presently the closest to that of Stage III melanoma.

The number of patients is shown in parentheses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Survival rate ± SE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>1,196</td>
<td>0.78 ± 0.02 0.68 ± 0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB (including N2c)</td>
<td>1,391</td>
<td>0.59 ± 0.02 0.43 ± 0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB (excluding N2c)</td>
<td>992</td>
<td>0.54 ± 0.02 0.38 ± 0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>720</td>
<td>0.40 ± 0.02 0.24 ± 0.03</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*399 N2c patients (intralymphatic metastases) had 5- and 10-year survival rates of 69% and 52%.

Contiguous or Multiple Nodal Basins and Staging. By convention, the term regional nodal metastases refers to disease confined to one nodal basin or two contiguous nodal basins, such as patients with nodal disease involving combinations of femoral/iliac, axillary/supraclavicular, cervical/supraclavicular, axillary/femoral or bilateral axillary/femoral metastases. All such patients would be categorized as having Stage III melanoma.

Distant Metastasis. In patients with distant metastases, the site(s) of metastases and elevated serum levels of lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) are used to delineate the M categories into three groups: M1a, M1b, and M1c, with 1-year survival rates ranging from 40 to 60% (Figures 31.4 and 31.5).

Site(s) of Distant Metastases. Patients with distant metastases in the skin, subcutaneous tissue, or distant lymph nodes are categorized as M1a provided the LDH level is normal; they have a relatively better prognosis compared with those patients with metastases located in any other anatomic site.45,47,39 Patients with metastasis to the lung and a normal LDH level are categorized as M1b and have an “intermediate” prognosis when comparing survival rates. Those patients with metastases to any other visceral sites or with an elevated LDH level have a relatively worse prognosis and are designated as M1c (Figure 31.4).

**FIGURE 31.4.** Survival curves of 7,635 patients with metastatic melanomas at distant sites (stage IV) subgrouped by M category site of disease (LDH levels not included in stratification). The number of patients is shown in parentheses.
Elevated Serum Lactate Dehydrogenase. Although it is uncommon in staging classifications to include serum factors, an exception was made for elevated levels of serum LDH. The updated AJCC Melanoma Staging Database clearly demonstrates that this is an independent and highly significant predictor of survival outcome among patients who present with or develop Stage IV disease (Figure 31.5). The mechanism(s) or source(s) of elevated LDH isoenzymes are unknown, and generally the elevations have a nonspecific pattern of elevation among the various LDH isoenzymes. Nevertheless, the clinical results that have emerged from the assessment of total LDH values in relation to outcome are striking in that survival rates are significantly reduced in those patients with an elevated serum LDH at the time of initial Stage IV diagnosis. Thus 1- and 2-year overall survival rates for those Stage IV patients in the 2008 AJCC Melanoma Staging Database with a normal serum LDH were 65% and 40%, respectively, compared with 32% and 18%, respectively, when the serum LDH was elevated at the time of staging. Furthermore, this factor was among the most predictive independent factors of diminished survival in all published studies when it was analyzed in a multivariate analysis, even after accounting for site and number of metastases.22-25 Therefore, when the serum LDH is elevated above the upper limits of normal at the time of staging, such patients with distant metastases are assigned to M1c regardless of the site of their distant metastases. To confirm the elevated serum LDH for staging purposes, it is recommended to obtain two or more determinations obtained more than 24 h apart, since an elevated serum LDH on a single determination can be falsely positive due to hemolysis or other factors unrelated to melanoma metastases.

Number of Metastases. The number of metastases at distant sites has previously been documented as an important prognostic factor.24,27,31,76 This was also confirmed by preliminary multivariate analyses using the AJCC Melanoma Staging Database. However, this feature was not incorporated into this version of the staging system due to the significant variability in the deployment of diagnostic tests to comprehensively search for distant metastases. These may range from a chest x-ray in some centers to high-resolution double-contrast CT, PET/CT, and MRI in others. Until the indications and types of tests used are better standardized, the number of metastases cannot reliably or reproducibly be used for staging purposes.

Metastatic Melanoma from an Unknown Primary Site. In general, the staging criteria for unknown primary metastatic melanoma should be the same as those for known primary melanomas. Potential sources could be primary cutaneous melanomas that have been previously biopsied or which have regressed, or from mucosal or ocular primary sites. When patients have an initial presentation of metastases in the lymph nodes, these should be presumed to be regional (Stage III instead of Stage IV) if an appropriate staging workup does not reveal any other sites of metastases. These patients have a prognosis and natural history that is similar to, if not more favorable than, patients with the same staging characteristics from a known primary cutaneous melanoma.81-83 A careful history should be obtained and a close examination of the skin from which lymphatics drain to that nodal basin should be made for previous biopsy scars or areas of depigmentation. If there have been previous biopsies, the pathology should be reviewed to determine if, in retrospect, any of these may have been a primary melanoma.

When there are localized metastases to the skin or subcutaneous tissues, these should also be presumed to be regional (i.e., Stage III instead of Stage IV) if an appropriate staging workup does not reveal any other sites of metastases. In patients with presumed skin metastases from an unknown primary site, pathology review by an experienced pathologist or dermatopathologist is appropriate to confirm that the lesion is not a variant of a primary melanoma, particularly a melanoma with a regressed junctional component. In some patients, examination of the skin with a Wood’s light (Black or UV light) reveals skin changes of a regressed primary melanoma that can be confirmed pathologically.89

All other circumstances (i.e., metastases to a visceral site and no known primary melanoma) should be categorized as Stage IV melanoma, using the M1 classification criteria described above reflecting metastatic site and serum LDH status.

Stage Groups

Localized Melanoma (Stages I and II). Patients with primary melanomas with no evidence of regional or distant metastases (either clinically or pathologically) are divided into two stages: Stage I for early-stage patients with relatively “low risk” for metastases and melanoma-specific
mortality and Stage II for those with “intermediate risk” for metastases and melanoma-specific mortality. Within each stage, the presence of melanoma ulceration heralds an increased relative risk for metastases compared to patients with melanomas of equivalent thickness without ulceration. Therefore, Stage I patients are subdivided into two subgroups (1) Stage IA are T1 melanomas with mitotic rate of <1/mm² and without ulceration (T1aN0M0) and (2) Stage IB are either T1 melanomas with mitotic rate of at least 1/mm² or histopathologic evidence of ulceration (T1bN0M0) or those T2 melanomas without ulceration regardless of mitotic rate (T2aN0M0). Stage II patients constitute three subgroups (1) Stage IIA are T2 melanomas with ulceration (T2bN0M0) or T3 melanomas without ulceration (T3aN0M0); (2) Stage IIB are either T3 melanomas with ulceration (T3bN0M0) or T4 melanomas without ulceration (T4aN0M0); and (3) Stage IIC are T4 melanomas with ulceration (T4bN0M0). Survival rates for these stage groupings are shown in Figure 31.2.

**Regional Metastases (Stage III).** There are no subgroups assigned for clinical Stage III melanoma. The major determinants of outcome for pathologic Stage III melanoma are (1) the number of metastatic lymph nodes, (2) whether the tumor burden is “microscopic” (i.e., clinically occult and detected pathologically by sentinel lymph node biopsy) or “macroscopic” (i.e., clinically apparent physical or radiographic examination and verified pathologically), (3) features of the primary melanoma in the presence of nodal micrometastasis, and (4) the presence or absence of satellite or in transit metastases.\(^{21,35,36,73,74-75}\) Note that primary tumor characteristics, including the presence or absence of ulceration of the primary melanoma, increased mitotic rate, and/or tumor thickness, are significant predictors of an adverse outcome in patients with nodal micrometastases, but does not influence outcome in patients who present with nodal macrometastases (Table 31.7). The 5-year survival rates for patients in each of the N categories subgrouped by presence or absence of primary melanoma ulceration are shown in Figure 31.3.

After accounting for these prognostic features in pathologic Stage III melanoma, there are three definable subgroups with statistically significant differences in survival: Stages IIIA, IIIB, and IIC (see Figure 31.3 and Table 31.8). Patients with pathologic Stage IIIA are confined to those who have 1–3 lymph nodes with “microscopic” metastases (detected by sentinel or elective lymphadenectomy), and whose primary melanoma is not ulcerated (T1-4aN1aM0 or T1-4aN2aM0). The 5- and 10-year survival rates for such patients are 77% and 67%, respectively. Patients with pathologic Stage IIIB are those with 1–3 lymph nodes with “macroscopic” metastases and a nonulcerated primary melanoma (i.e., T1-4aN1bM0 or T1-4aN2aM0) or those with 1–3 “macroscopic” lymph node metastases and an ulcerated primary melanoma (T1-4bN1aM0 or T1-4bN2aM0) or patients with intralymphatic regional metastases but without nodal metastases (T1-4aN2cM0) (see Figure 31.3 and Table 31.8). The estimated 5- and 10-year survival for Stage IIB patients is 59% and 43%, respectively (see Figure 31.3 and Table 31.8). In the sixth edition version of the melanoma staging database, the survival rates for patients with isolated intralymphatic metastases were similar to that of patients in the other two subgroups of Stage IIIB disease described above. In the 2008 Melanoma Staging Database, the results of the N2c melanoma patients were somewhat better, with 5- and 10-year survival rates of 69% and 52%, respectively; a more favorable outcome than those in the other two subgroups comprising Stage IIIB melanoma (Figure 31.3 and Table 31.8), but still lower than patients with Stage IIIA melanoma.

Patients grouped as Stage IIC melanoma are defined as those with a 1–3 “macroscopic” lymph node metastases and an ulcerated primary melanoma (T1-4bN1bM0 or T1-4bN2bM0), patients with satellite(s)/in transit metastases arising from an ulcerated primary melanoma (T1-4bN2cM0), or any patient with N3 disease regardless of T status, including patients with any combination of satellites or in transit metastases and nodal metastases. The estimated 5- and 10-year survival rates for pathologic Stage IIC patients is significantly lower at 40% and 24%, respectively (see Figure 31.3 and Table 31.8).

**Distant Metastases (Stage IV).** Because the survival differences between the M categories are small, there are no stage subgroups of Stage IV melanoma.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

**Primary Tumor (T)**

| TX | Primary tumor cannot be assessed (e.g., curettaged or severely regressed melanoma) |
| T0 | No evidence of primary tumor |
| Tis | Melanoma in situ |
| T1 | Melanomas 1.0 mm or less in thickness |
| T2 | Melanomas 1.01–2.0 mm |
| T3 | Melanomas 2.01–4.0 mm |
| T4 | Melanomas more than 4.0 mm |

**Note:** a and b subcategories of T are assigned based on ulceration and number of mitoses per mm² as shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T classification</th>
<th>Thickness (mm)</th>
<th>Ulceration Status/Mitoses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>≤1.0</td>
<td>a: w/o ulceration and mitosis &lt;1/mm²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b: with ulceration or mitosis ≥1/mm²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>1.01–2.0</td>
<td>a: w/o ulceration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b: with ulceration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>2.01–4.0</td>
<td>a: w/o ulceration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b: with ulceration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>&gt;4.0</td>
<td>a: w/o ulceration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b: with ulceration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

NX  Patients in whom the regional nodes cannot be assessed (e.g., previously removed for another reason)
N0  No regional metastases detected
N1-3 Regional metastases based upon the number of metastatic nodes and presence or absence of intralymphatic metastases (in transit or satellite metastases)

Note: N1-3 and a–c subcategories assigned as shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N Classification</th>
<th>No. of Metastatic Nodes</th>
<th>Nodal Metastatic Mass</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>1 node</td>
<td>a: micrometastasis*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b: macrometastasis**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>2–3 nodes</td>
<td>a: micrometastasis*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b: macrometastasis**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>c: in transit met(s)/ satellite(s) without metastatic nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
<td>4 or more metastatic nodes, or matted nodes, or in transit met(s)/ satellite(s) with metastatic node(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Micrometastases are diagnosed after sentinel lymph node biopsy and completion lymphadenectomy (if performed).

**Macrometastases are defined as clinically detectable nodal metastases confirmed by therapeutic lymphadenectomy or when nodal metastasis exhibits gross extracapsular extension.

Distant Metastasis (M)

M0  No detectable evidence of distant metastases
M1a Metastases to skin, subcutaneous, or distant lymph nodes
M1b Metastases to lung
M1c Metastases to all other visceral sites or distant metastases to any site combined with an elevated serum LDH

Note: Serum LDH is incorporated into the M category as shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M Classification</th>
<th>Site</th>
<th>Serum LDH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>Distinct skin, subcutaneous, or nodal mets</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>Lung metastases</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1c</td>
<td>All other visceral metastases</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any distant metastasis</td>
<td>Elevated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

Clinical Staging*
Stage 0  Tis  N0  M0  0  Tis  N0  M0
Stage IA  T1a  N0  M0  IA  T1a  N0  M0
Stage IB  T1b  N0  M0  IB  T1b  N0  M0
Stage IIA T2a  N0  M0  IIA  T2a  N0  M0
Stage IIB T3a  N0  M0  IIB  T3a  N0  M0
Stage IIIB T4a  N0  M0  IIIB  T4a  N0  M0
Stage III T5  Any T ≥ N1  M0  IIIA  T1 – 4a  N1a  M0
|                  |                              | T1 – 4a  N1a  M0 |
|                  |                              | T1 – 4a  N2a  M0 |
|                  |                              | T1 – 4a  N1b  M0 |
|                  |                              | T1 – 4a  N2b  M0 |
|                  |                              | T1 – 4a  N2c  M0 |
|                  | IIIB  T1 – 4b  N1b  M0        |
|                  | T1 – 4b  N2b  M0              |
|                  | T1 – 4b  N2c  M0              |
|                  | Any T N3 M0                  |

Pathologic Staging*

Stage 0  Tis  N0  M0  0  Tis  N0  M0
Stage IA  T1a  N0  M0  IA  T1a  N0  M0
Stage IB  T1b  N0  M0  IB  T1b  N0  M0
Stage IIA T2a  N0  M0  IIA  T2a  N0  M0
Stage IIB T3a  N0  M0  IIB  T3a  N0  M0
Stage IIIB T4a  N0  M0  IIIB  T4a  N0  M0
Stage III T5  Any T ≥ N1  M0  IIIA  T1 – 4a  N1a  M0
|                  |                              | T1 – 4a  N1a  M0 |
|                  |                              | T1 – 4a  N2a  M0 |
|                  |                              | T1 – 4a  N1b  M0 |
|                  |                              | T1 – 4a  N2b  M0 |
|                  |                              | T1 – 4a  N2c  M0 |
|                  | IIIB  T1 – 4b  N1b  M0        |
|                  | T1 – 4b  N2b  M0              |
|                  | T1 – 4b  N2c  M0              |
|                  | Any T N3 M0                  |

Note: Clinical staging includes microstaging of the primary melanoma and clinical/radiologic evaluation for metastases. By convention, it should be used after complete excision of the primary melanoma with clinical assessment for regional and distant metastases.

**Pathologic staging includes microstaging of the primary melanoma and pathologic information about the regional lymph nodes after partial or complete lymphadenectomy. Pathologic Stage 0 or Stage IA patients are the exception; they do not require pathologic evaluation of their lymph nodes.

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

Required for staging: None

Clinically significant:
- Measured thickness
- Ulceration
- Serum lactate dehydrogenase (LDH)
- Mitotic rate
- Tumor infiltrating lymphocytes (TIL)
- Level of invasion
- Vertical growth phase
- Regression

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Histologic grading is not used in the staging of melanoma.
DATA RECORDING CRITERIA

Stages I and II. When entering melanoma TNM data into cancer registries for the purposes of stage grouping, the electronic data fields must record the measured tumor thickness (in hundredths of a millimeter), the presence or absence of ulceration (based upon histopathologic examination), and mitotic rate in order to derive stage groupings for localized melanomas. In those circumstances where there has been an incisional (or punch) biopsy, the maximum tumor thickness in either the biopsy or definitive excision should be recorded (the measurements cannot be added). A deep shave biopsy or curettage may result in transection of the tumor at the deep margin. The maximal thickness should be recorded without the addition of any residual tumor found in the re-excision. If the total thickness found in the re-excision is greater than the thickness of the original biopsy, then only the maximal thickness in the re-excision should be recorded. Other prognostic features of localized melanomas were not incorporated into the new TNM categories, but are important nevertheless to record in medical records and cancer registries so that the information is available for other types of data analysis, such as for clinical trials. These include the patient’s age and gender, the anatomic site of the primary melanoma (i.e., trunk, extremities, or head and neck), regression (if present), and the growth pattern (superficial spreading, nodular, lentigo maligna melanoma, acral lentiginous melanoma, or desmoplastic melanoma).

Stage III Melanoma. Electronic data fields for melanoma should incorporate all the information listed above for the primary melanoma. In addition, the total number of metastatic lymph nodes identified by the pathologist (out of a total number of lymph nodes examined), the presence or absence of intralymphatic metastases (satellites or in transit), and the number of lymph nodes examined), the presence or absence of microscopic tumor burden in recent reports, pathologists should also consider reporting the diameter of the largest metastasis in the sentinel node and/or the percentage area of the node involved by tumor.

Stage IV Melanoma. Electronic fields for patients with Stage IV melanoma should include all the information listed above for the primary melanoma and regional metastases, plus the site(s) of distant metastases as well as the serum LDH level (normal vs. elevated). Additional data to be considered include the number of distant metastases, the patient’s age, gender, and performance status.

BIBLIOGRAPHY


57. van Akkooi AC, de Wilt JH, Verhoef C, et al. Clinical relevance of melanoma micrometastases (<0.1 mm) in sentinel nodes: are these nodes to be considered negative? Ann Oncol. 2006;17:1578–85.


# Melanoma of the Skin Staging Form

## Clinical

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extent of disease before any treatment</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>Tumor Size:</td>
<td>LATERALITY: ☐ left ☑ right ☐ midline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>☐ TX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td>☐ T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Tis</td>
<td>Melanoma in situ</td>
<td>☐ Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ T1</td>
<td>Melanomas (&lt;1.0) mm in thickness</td>
<td>☐ T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ T1a</td>
<td>without ulceration and mitosis (&lt;1/mm^2)</td>
<td>☐ T1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ T1b</td>
<td>with ulceration or mitoses (\geq 1/mm^2)</td>
<td>☐ T1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ T2</td>
<td>Melanomas 1.01 – 2.0 mm</td>
<td>☐ T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ T2a</td>
<td>without ulceration</td>
<td>☐ T2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ T2b</td>
<td>with ulceration</td>
<td>☐ T2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ T3</td>
<td>Melanomas 2.01-4.0 mm</td>
<td>☐ T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ T3a</td>
<td>without ulceration</td>
<td>☐ T3a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ T3b</td>
<td>with ulceration</td>
<td>☐ T3b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ T4</td>
<td>Melanomas (&gt;4.0) mm</td>
<td>☐ T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ T4a</td>
<td>without ulceration</td>
<td>☐ T4a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ T4b</td>
<td>with ulceration</td>
<td>☐ T4b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td>☐NX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td>☐ N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ N1</td>
<td>1 node</td>
<td>☐ N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ N2</td>
<td>micrometastasis*</td>
<td>☐ N1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ N1b</td>
<td>macrometastasis**</td>
<td>☐ N1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ N2c</td>
<td>2-3 nodes</td>
<td>☐ N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ N2a</td>
<td>micrometastasis*</td>
<td>☐ N2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ N2b</td>
<td>macrometastasis**</td>
<td>☐ N2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ N3</td>
<td>in transit met(s)/satellite(s) without metastatic nodes</td>
<td>☐ N3c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ N2c</td>
<td>Clinical: ☐ 1 node with in transit met(s)/satellite(s); pathologic: 4 or more metastatic nodes, or matted nodes, or in transit met(s)/satellite(s) with metastatic node(s)</td>
<td>☐ N3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:
- *Micrometastases are diagnosed after sentinel lymph node biopsy and completion lymphadenectomy (if performed).
- **Macrometastases are defined as clinically detectable nodal metastases confirmed by therapeutic lymphadenectomy or when nodal metastasis exhibits gross extracapsular extension.

## Pathologic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumor Size:</th>
<th>LATERALITY: ☐ left ☑ right ☐ midline</th>
<th>LATERALITY: ☐ left ☑ right ☐ midline</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

## Distal Metastasis (M)

| No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group) | M1a | M1b |
| M1c | M1c |

| Metastases to skin, subcutaneous tissues, or distant lymph nodes | Metastases to lung | Metastases to all other visceral sites or distant metastases to any site combined with an elevated serum LDH |

---

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
**Melanoma of the Skin Staging Form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical* GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Any T ≥ N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Clinical staging includes microstaging of the primary melanoma and clinical/radiologic evaluation for metastases. By convention, it should be used after complete excision of the primary melanoma with clinical assessment for regional and distant metastases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathologic* GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIC</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1 – 4a</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T1 – 4b</td>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1 – 4a</td>
<td>N2a</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIIB</td>
<td>T1 – 4b</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1 – 4a</td>
<td>N2b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1 – 4a</td>
<td>N2c</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IICC</td>
<td>T1 – 4b</td>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1 – 4b</td>
<td>N2b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1 – 4b</td>
<td>N2c</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ Pathologic staging includes microstaging of the primary melanoma and pathologic information about the regional lymph nodes after partial or complete lymphadenectomy. Pathologic Stage 0 or Stage IA patients are the exception; they do not require pathologic evaluation of their lymph nodes.

- Stage unknown

**Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)**

**Required for Staging:** None

**Clinically Significant:**
- Measured thickness (depth)
- Ulceration
- Serum lactate dehydrogenase (LDH)
- Mitotic rate
- Tumor infiltrating lymphocytes (TIL)
- Level of invasion
- Vertical growth phase
- Regression

**Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)**

Histologic grading is not used in the staging of Melanoma.

---

**General Notes:**

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

---

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
**ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS**

*Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)* have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX: Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0: No residual tumor
- R1: Microscopic residual tumor
- R2: Macroscopic residual tumor

**General Notes (continued):**

- *r* prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the 'r' prefix: rTNM.
- *a* prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.
- *surgical margins* is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.
- *neoadjuvant treatment* is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

**Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):**

**National guidelines were used in treatment planning**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Physician signature**

**Date/Time**

---

**Hospital Name/Address**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Name/Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(continued on next page)*
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
PART VII
Breast
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

Tumor (T)

- Identified specific imaging modalities that can be used to estimate clinical tumor size, including mammography, ultrasound, and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)

- Made specific recommendations that (1) the microscopic measurement is the most accurate and preferred method to determine pT with a small invasive cancer that can be entirely submitted in one paraffin block, and (2) the gross measurement is the most accurate and preferred method to determine pT with larger invasive cancers that must be submitted in multiple paraffin blocks

- Made the specific recommendation to use the clinical measurement thought to be most accurate to determine the clinical T of breast cancers treated with neoadjuvant therapy. Pathologic (posttreatment) size should be estimated based on the best combination of gross and microscopic histological findings

- Made the specific recommendation to estimate the size of invasive cancers that are unapparent to any clinical modalities or gross pathologic examination by carefully measuring and recording the relative positions of tissue samples submitted for microscopic evaluation and determining which contain tumor

- Acknowledged “ductal intraepithelial neoplasia” (DIN) as uncommon, and still not widely accepted, terminology encompassing both DCIS and ADH, and clarification that only cases referred to as DIN containing DCIS (±ADH) are classified as Tis (DCIS)

- Acknowledged “lobular intraepithelial neoplasia” (LIN) as uncommon, and still not widely accepted, terminology encompassing both LCIS and ALH, and clarification that only cases referred to as LIN containing LCIS (±ALH) are classified as Tis (LCIS)

- Clarification that only Paget’s disease NOT associated with an underlying noninvasive (i.e., DCIS and/or LCIS) or invasive breast cancer should be classified as Tis (Paget’s) and that Paget’s disease associated with an underlying cancer be classified according to the underlying cancer (Tis, T1, etc.)

- Made the recommendation to estimate the size of noninvasive carcinomas (DCIS and LCIS), even though it does not currently change their T classification, because noninvasive cancer size may influence therapeutic decisions, acknowledging that providing a precise size for LCIS may be difficult

- Acknowledged that the prognosis of microinvasive carcinoma is generally thought to be quite favorable, although the clinical impact of multifocal microinvasive disease is not well understood at this time

- Acknowledged that it is not necessary for tumors to be in separate quadrants to be classified as multiple simultaneous ipsilateral carcinomas, providing that they can be unambiguously demonstrated to be macroscopically distinct and measurable using available clinical and pathologic techniques

continued
SUMMARY OF CHANGES (CONTINUED)

• Maintained that the term “inflammatory carcinoma” be restricted to cases with typical skin changes involving a third or more of the skin of the breast. While the histologic presence of invasive carcinoma invading dermal lymphatics is supportive of the diagnosis, it is not required, nor is dermal lymphatic invasion without typical clinical findings sufficient for a diagnosis of inflammatory breast cancer

• Recommend that all invasive cancer should be graded using the Nottingham combined histologic grade (Elston-Ellis modification of Scarff-Bloom-Richardson grading system)

Nodes (N)

• Classification of isolated tumor cell clusters and single cells is more stringent. Small clusters of cells not greater than 0.2 mm, or nonconfluent or nearly confluent clusters of cells not exceeding 200 cells in a single histologic lymph node cross section are classified as isolated tumor cells

• Use of the (sn) modifier has been clarified and restricted. When six or more sentinel nodes are identified on gross examination of pathology specimens the (sn) modifier should be omitted

• Stage I breast tumors have been subdivided into Stage IA and Stage IB; Stage IB includes small tumors (T1) with exclusively micrometastases in lymph nodes (N1mi)

Metastases (M)

• Created new M0(i+) category, defined by presence of either disseminated tumor cells detectable in bone marrow or circulating tumor cells or found incidentally in other tissues (such as ovaries removed prophylactically) if not exceeding 0.2 mm. However, this category does not change the Stage Grouping. Assuming that they do not have clinically and/or radiographically detectable metastases, patients with M0(i+) are staged according to T and N

Postneoadjuvant Therapy (yc or ypTNM)

• In the setting of patients who received neoadjuvant therapy, pretreatment clinical T (cT) should be based on clinical or imaging findings

• Postneoadjuvant therapy T should be based on clinical or imaging (ycT) or pathologic findings (ypT)

• A subscript will be added to the clinical N for both node negative and node positive patients to indicate whether the N was derived from clinical examination, fine needle aspiration, core needle biopsy, or sentinel lymph node biopsy

• The posttreatment ypT will be defined as the largest contiguous focus of invasive cancer as defined histopathologically with a subscript to indicate the presence of multiple tumor foci. Note: definition of posttreatment ypT remains controversial and an area in transition

• Posttreatment nodal metastases no greater than 0.2 mm are classified as ypN0(i+) as in patients who have not received neoadjuvant systemic therapy. However, patients with this finding are not considered to have achieved a pathologic complete response (pCR)

• A description of the degree of response to neoadjuvant therapy (complete, partial, no response) will be collected by the registrar with the posttreatment ypTNM. The registrars are requested to describe how they defined response [by physical examination, imaging techniques (mammogram, ultrasound, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)) or pathologically]

• Patients will be considered to have M1 (and therefore Stage IV) breast cancer if they have had clinically or radiographically detectable metastases, with or without biopsy, prior to neoadjuvant systemic therapy, regardless of their status after neoadjuvant systemic therapy
INTRODUCTION

This staging system for carcinoma of the breast applies to invasive (also designated infiltrating) as well as in situ carcinomas, with or without microinvasion. Microscopic confirmation of the diagnosis is mandatory, and the histologic type and grade of carcinoma should be recorded. For all sites (T, N, M), clinical staging (c) is determined using information identified prior to surgery or neoadjuvant therapy. Pathologic staging (p) includes information defined at surgery. With neoadjuvant therapy a posttherapy pathologic staging is recorded using the “yp” designator.

The year 2009 marks the 50th anniversary of codification of tumor staging into the TNM system by the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC; originally designated the American Joint Committee for Cancer Staging and End-Results Reporting). Beginning with that initiative, six editions of the AJCC Staging Manual have been published, in which careful definitions of the primary tumor (T), the status of the surrounding lymph nodes (N), and the presence of distant

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

New biomarkers are added and recommended for collection in addition to hormone receptors (estrogen receptor, ER; progesterone receptor, PgR). These are HER2 (also designated as erbB2 and c-neu) status and multigene signature "score" or classifications.

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage 0</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1*</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>T0</td>
<td>N1mi</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>T1*</td>
<td>N1mi</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>T0</td>
<td>N1**</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>T1*</td>
<td>N1**</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T0</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T1*</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
- *T1 includes T1mi.
- **T0 and T1 tumors with nodal micrometastases only are excluded from Stage IIA and are classified Stage IB.

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

C50.0 Nipple
C50.1 Central portion of breast
C50.2 Upper inner quadrant of breast
C50.3 Lower inner quadrant of breast
C50.4 Upper outer quadrant of breast
C50.5 Lower outer quadrant of breast
C50.6 Axillary tail of breast
C50.8 Overlapping lesion of breast
C50.9 Breast, NOS

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981, 9020

Notes:
- M0 includes M0(i+).
- The designation pM0 is not valid; any M0 should be clinical.
- If a patient presents with M1 prior to neoadjuvant systemic therapy, the stage is considered stage IV regardless of response to neoadjuvant therapy.
- Stage designation may be changed if postsurgical imaging studies reveal the presence of distant metastases, provided that the studies are carried out within 4 months of diagnosis in the absence of disease progression and provided that the patient has not received neoadjuvant therapy.
- Postneoadjuvant therapy is designated with "yc" or "yp" prefix. Of note, no stage group is assigned if there is a complete pathologic response (CR) to neoadjuvant therapy, for example, ypT0ypN0cM0.
metastases have been refined to reflect updates in technology and clinical evidence. In each case, changes in the TNM system were made cautiously, so as to reflect modern clinical approaches while maintaining connections with the past. The recommendations by the Breast Cancer Task Force for the seventh edition are made in the same spirit.

Rapid advances in both clinical and laboratory science and in translational research have raised questions about the ongoing relevance of TNM staging, especially in breast cancer. For the most part, the TNM system was developed in 1959 in the absence of effective systemic therapy and certainly in a void of the understanding of the biology of breast cancer that exists today. The system was generated to reflect the risk of distant recurrence and death subsequent to local therapy, which at the time was almost universally aggressive surgery (radical mastectomy) and postoperative radiation to the chest wall. Therefore, the primary objective of TNM staging was to provide a standard nomenclature for prognosis of patients with newly diagnosed breast cancer, and its main clinical utility was to prevent apparently futile therapy in those patients who were destined to die rapidly in spite of aggressive local treatments.

Over the succeeding decades, remarkable progress has led to (1) less disfiguring surgery with modified radical mastectomies and breast conserving therapy, (2) dramatic improvements in the delivery and safety of radiation, (3) the recognition that early (adjuvant) systemic therapy reduces recurrences and mortality, and (4) a better understanding of biologic markers of prognosis, and perhaps more importantly, of prediction of response to selective categories of systemic therapy, such as those targeting cancer cells positive for estrogen receptors (ER) and HER2 overexpression. TNM staging has been used as a guide to select whether to apply systemic therapy based on anatomic prognosis. Increasingly, biologic factors, such as ER and HER2, have become important to select which therapy to give.

These advances raise the questions: Is TNM staging still relevant for breast cancer in the twenty-first century and what, exactly, is the objective of TNM staging for patients with this disease? There are three potential answers to the second question: (1) To permit breast cancer investigators to remain linked to the past, in regards to studying categories of patients that accurately reflect prior groupings over the last six decades, (2) to permit current investigators in the field to communicate with one another in the same manner, and/or (3) to improve individual patient care. The AJCC Breast Cancer Task Force has struggled with these questions, both for the seventh edition as well as for past editions. Indeed, the Breast Cancer Task Force made a major change from the fifth edition to the sixth edition in recommending that the N staging category be divided into three categories based on the number of axillary lymph nodes involved. In this regard, the current Breast Cancer Task Force came to the conclusion that although the TNM staging system provides insight into whether a patient’s prognosis is so favorable the patient might forego systemic therapy, it is becoming anachronistic with regard to making recommendations for specific types of systemic therapy.

Although T, N, and M do still provide some value in determining a patient’s future outcome, the average clinician today must take into account multiple factors that relate both to prognosis and prediction. For example, testing for estrogen and progesterone receptor content as well as HER2 status is now considered standard of care. Although these factors do have intrinsic prognostic value in regards to the risk of subsequent recurrence for patients who do not receive systemic therapy, their main utility is to guide whether a patient should or should not receive adjuvant endocrine (anti-estrogen) or anti-HER2 (such as trastuzumab) therapy. The use of these factors as predictive, rather than prognostic, markers is fundamentally important in evaluation and care of patients with newly diagnosed breast cancer, but the Committee found it difficult to devise a scheme in which they might be incorporated into the TNM system.

The situation has become even more complex with the availability of multigene expression assays. One such assay, based on a 70-gene prognostic signature developed by investigators from Amsterdam,80 has been cleared by the United States Food and Drug Administration for use in women who are less than 61 years old and who have stage I or II, node negative breast cancer, explicitly to “assess a patient’s risk for distant metastases.” (http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cdrh/cfdocs/cfpMN/pmn.cfm?ID=24303). The Tumor Marker Guidelines Committee of the American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO) has recommended that a second multigene assay, which is based on expression of 21-genes as determined by RT-PCR (designated the “21-gene recurrence score assay”) “can be used” to determine prognosis for patients with ER positive breast cancer and uninvolved lymph nodes who will, at the least, receive adjuvant tamoxifen,8 and the Breast Committee of the National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN) Guidelines states that “the use of genomic/gene expression arrays which also incorporate additional prognostic/predictive biomarkers (e.g., Oncotype Dx recurrence score) may provide additional prognostic and predictive information beyond anatomic staging and determination of ER/PR and HER2 status.” How do such assays become incorporated into the TNM staging system, since they portend future outcomes in several ways? (1) As pure prognostic factors (the profile predicts the odds of recurrence independent of systemic therapy),8,10 (2) as markers of residual risk assuming the patient will receive endocrine therapy (the profile predicts favorable or unfavorable chances of recurrence presumably due to both prognosis and prediction of benefit or resistance to endocrine therapy),8,9,11 and (3) perhaps as predictive factors for specific types of, or all, chemotherapies.8,12

Should these multiparameter prognostic assays that appear to predict outcomes in newly diagnosed breast cancer patients be included in staging? Since their value may be as much a predictor of response to chemotherapy regardless of TNM stage than as a prognostic factor, should an entirely new category related to prediction of benefit from systemic therapy be incorporated into the TNM staging system? In other words, increasingly in the modern era, many treatment decisions for patients with newly diagnosed breast cancer are
not, or will not be, based on TNM stage. Although the size of the invasive cancer is a factor, the type of surgery for an individual patient is usually determined by multicentricity and tumor margins, neither of which is part of TNM. Perhaps the only exception is the almost universal recommendation of mastectomy, regardless of other factors, for patients with inflammatory breast cancer. Large tumor size (T3 vs. T1, 2) and lymph node (N 1, 2, or 3 vs. N0) status do play a role in deciding whether radiation should be used after mastectomy or for directing the fields of radiation for women undergoing breast preservation and in the recommendation for axillary dissection. However, in an era where many invasive cancers are detected at very small sizes when breast screening is used, multicentricity and tumor margins appear to be as important as T or N in determining optimal local treatment approaches.

In the past, recommendations for most systemic therapy, especially chemotherapy, have been based on nodal status, and in the absence of involved lymph nodes, tumor size. However, biologic features such as ER, progesterone receptor, HER2, and to some extent, grade, all play a role in a complex dance involving both prognosis and prediction for the specific therapies. With ongoing advances in molecular biology and technology, coupled with increasing options for novel systemic therapies, such as agents that interfere with angiogenesis, we anticipate that anatomic staging with tumor size, lymph node status, and the presence of clinical and radiographically evident metastases may play increasingly less important roles than understanding the biology of the cancer.

While the advances in molecular diagnosis have provided new insights into cancer therapy, the Committee understands that much of this consideration is relevant only to the societies in which resources permit widespread screening, molecular evaluation of tumor tissue, and application of cutting edge biological-directed therapies. Projecting to 2010, the annual global burden of new breast cancer cases will be 1.5 million and an ever-increasing fraction will be from low and middle income countries (LMCs). Despite the common misconception that breast cancer is predominantly a problem of wealthy countries, the majority of breast cancer deaths each year in fact occur in developing rather than developed countries. In this regard, LMCs may simply not be able to afford testing for individual molecular events or multiparameter profiles, nor will they be able to provide expensive therapies directed against HER2 or other emerging targets. Tissue assays as basic as ER and PR may be unavailable in low income settings, even when oral endocrine therapies can be provided. Further complicating these resource limitations, women in LMCs typically present with locally advanced (Stage III) or metastatic disease (Stage IV) at diagnosis. In these settings, downstaging of disease through early detection programs may be the most practical approach to improving cancer outcome at the population level. Thus, anatomic (TNM) staging remains a key aspect of cancer control in LMCs, because it directly reflects the degree to which early detection programs are working. While it is of value to continue education regarding the exciting advances in molecular oncology in LMCs, anatomic staging will remain the fundamental cornerstone on which evaluation and treatment decisions of newly diagnosed breast cancer patients will be made.

Ultimately, and after much deliberation, the Task Force has elected to make minor to modest adjustments to the T, N, and M categories for the seventh edition to reflect new technologies and new clinical outcome data since the sixth edition. The Task Force has also substantially enhanced the "yp" category to distinguish stage after preoperative, or "neoadjuvant" systemic therapy and surgery. This designation has already been used by other disease groups, and its incorporation into the seventh edition seems appropriate in light of the growing application of this strategy.

Nonetheless, the Breast Cancer Task Force does not want to ignore the importance of tumor biology, both in predicting recurrence and benefits from therapy. The Task Force did consider adding a "B" category (for biology), in which the status of ER, PR, HER2, and even multigene expression profiles would be incorporated and ultimately added to the Stage Grouping. However, for the reasons above, the Breast Cancer Task Force decided such a step would add little, since they are already used to care for individual patients. Such a change would, by definition, completely abrogate at least the first objective of TNM staging elucidated above (linkage to the past), and it would almost certainly confuse the second (discussion among peers), since not all clinicians worldwide have access to the necessary assays to determine them, especially the newer multigene assays. Therefore, although the Breast Cancer Task Force has not recommended changes to the TNM staging system to incorporate biology, we have requested that the invasive cancer data, if available, be collected in a highly detailed manner for inclusion into the National Cancer Database (NCDB) and other central registry databases. Although we recognize that the "prognostic" value of these data will be highly confounded by the effects of systemic therapy we hope this inclusion will permit future investigators to further define the role of these important features in future TNM deliberations.

**ANATOMY**

**Primary Site.** The mammary gland, situated on the anterior chest wall, is composed of glandular tissue with a dense fibrous stroma. The glandular tissue consists of lobules that group together into 8–15 lobes, occasionally more, arranged approximately in a spoke-like pattern. Multiple major and minor ducts connect the milk-secreting lobular units to the nipple. Small milk ducts course throughout the breast, converge into larger collecting ducts that open into the lactiferous sinus at the base of the nipple. Each duct system has unique anatomy; the smallest systems may comprise only a portion of a quadrant whereas the largest systems may comprise more than a quadrant. The periphery of each system overlaps along their radial boundaries. Most cancers form initially in the terminal duct lobular units of the breast. Carcinoma spreads along the duct system in the radial axis of the lobe; invasive carcinoma is more likely to spread in a centripetal orientation in the breast stroma from the initial locus...
of invasion, although opportunistic intraductal spread may be enhanced along the radial axes. Glandular tissue is more abundant in the upper outer portion of the breast; as a result, half of all breast cancers occur in this area.

**Chest Wall.** The chest wall includes ribs, intercostal muscles, and serratus anterior muscle, but not the pectoral muscles. Therefore, involvement of the pectoral muscle does not constitute chest wall invasion.

**Regional Lymph Nodes.** The breast lymphatics drain by way of three major routes: axillary, transpectoral, and internal mammary. Intramammary lymph nodes reside within breast tissue and are coded as axillary lymph nodes for staging purposes. Supraclavicular lymph nodes are classified as regional lymph nodes for staging purposes. Metastases to any other lymph node, including cervical or contralateral internal mammary or axillary lymph nodes, are classified as distant (M1) (Figure 32.1.)

The regional lymph nodes are as follows:

1. Axillary (ipsilateral): interpectoral (Rotter’s) nodes and lymph nodes along the axillary vein and its tributaries that may be (but are not required to be) divided into the following levels:
   a. Level I (low-axilla): lymph nodes lateral to the lateral border of pectoralis minor muscle.
   b. Level II (mid-axilla): lymph nodes between the medial and lateral borders of the pectoralis minor muscle and the interpectoral (Rotter’s) lymph nodes.
   c. Level III (apical axilla): lymph nodes medial to the medial margin of the pectoralis minor muscle and inferior to the clavicle. These are also known as apical or infraclavicular nodes. Metastases to these nodes portend a worse prognosis. Therefore, the infraclavicular designation will be used hereafter to differentiate these nodes from the remaining (level I, II) axillary nodes.
2. Internal mammary (ipsilateral): lymph nodes in the intercostal spaces along the edge of the sternum in the endothoracic fascia.
3. Supraclavicular: lymph nodes in the supraclavicular fossa, a triangle defined by the omohyoid muscle and tendon (lateral and superior border), the internal jugular vein (medial border), and the clavicle and subclavian vein (lower border). Adjacent lymph nodes outside of this triangle are considered to be lower cervical nodes (M1).
4. Intramammary: lymph nodes within the breast; these are considered axillary lymph nodes for purposes of N classification and staging.

**Metastatic Sites.** Tumor cells may be disseminated by either the lymphatic or the blood vascular system. The four major sites of involvement are bone, lung, brain, and liver, but tumor cells are also capable of metastasizing to many other sites. Bone marrow micrometastases, circulating tumor cells, and tumor deposits no larger than 0.2 mm detected inadvertently, such as in prophylactically removed ovarian tissue, are collectively known as microscopic disseminated tumor cells (DTCs). These deposits do not alone define or constitute metastatic disease, although there are data that demonstrate that, in early stage disease, DTCs correlate with recurrence and mortality risk, and in patients with established M1 disease, circulating tumor cells (CTCs) are prognostic for shorter survival.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

**Clinical Staging.** Clinical staging includes physical examination, with careful inspection and palpation of the skin, mammary gland, and lymph nodes (axillary, supraclavicular, and cervical), imaging, and pathologic examination of the breast or other tissues as appropriate to establish the diagnosis of breast carcinoma. The extent of tissue examined pathologically for clinical staging is not as great as that required for pathologic staging (see “Pathologic Staging” below). Imaging findings are considered elements of staging if they are collected within 4 months of diagnosis in the absence of disease progression or through completion of surgery, whichever is longer. Such imaging findings would include the size of the primary invasive cancer and of chest wall invasion, and the presence or absence of regional or distant metastases. Imaging and clinical findings obtained after a patient has been treated with neoadjuvant chemotherapy, hormonal therapy, immunotherapy, or radiation therapy are not considered elements of initial clinical staging. If recorded in the medical record, these should be denoted using the modifier prefix “yc.”
**Pathologic Staging.** Pathologic staging includes all data used for clinical staging, plus data from surgical exploration and resection as well as pathologic examination (gross and microscopic) of the primary carcinoma, regional lymph nodes, and metastatic sites (if applicable), including not less than excision of the primary carcinoma with no macroscopic tumor in any margin of resection by pathologic examination. A cancer can be classified pT for pathologic stage grouping if there is only microscopic, but not macroscopic, involvement at the margin. If there is transected tumor in the margin of resection by macroscopic examination, the pathologic size of the tumor may be estimated from available information but will not necessarily be the sum of the sizes of multiple resected pieces of tumor.

If the primary tumor is invasive (with a possible exception of microinvasive cancer), resection of at least the low axillary lymph nodes (Level I) – that is, those lymph nodes located lateral to the lateral border of the pectoralis minor muscle—should be performed for pathologic (pN) classification. Such a resection will ordinarily include six or more lymph nodes. Alternatively, one or more sentinel lymph nodes may be resected and examined for pathologic classification (pN(sn)). Certain histologic invasive cancer types [classic tubular carcinoma <1 cm, classic mucinous carcinoma <1 cm, and microinvasive carcinoma (pT1mi)] have a very low incidence of axillary lymph node metastases and may not require an axillary lymph node dissection, although sentinel lymph node biopsy may be appropriate. Cancerous nodules in the axillary fat adjacent to the breast, without histologic evidence of residual lymph node tissue, are classified as regional lymph node metastases (≥N1). Pathologic stage grouping includes the following two combinations of pathologic and clinical classifications: pT pN pM, or pT pN CM. If surgery occurs after the patient has received neoadjuvant chemotherapy, hormonal therapy, immunotherapy, or radiation therapy, the prefix "yp" should be used with the TNM classification, for example, ypTNM.

**Primary Tumor (T)**

*Determining Tumor Size.* The original size of a primary tumor (T) can be measured based on clinical findings (physical examination and imaging modalities such as mammography, ultrasound, and MRI) and pathologic findings (gross and microscopic measurements). Clinical tumor size (cT) should be based on the clinical findings that are judged to be most accurate for a particular case, although it may still be somewhat inaccurate because the extent of some breast cancers is not always apparent with current imaging techniques, and because tumors are composed of varying proportions of noninvasive and invasive disease, which these techniques are currently unable to distinguish. Pathologic tumor size (pT) based on gross measurement may also be somewhat inaccurate for the same reasons, although microscopic assessment is able to distinguish noninvasive and invasive carcinoma, and microscopically determined pT should be based on measuring only the invasive component. For small invasive tumors that can be submitted in one section/paraffin block, the microscopic measurement is the most accurate way to determine pT. If an invasive tumor is too large to be submitted for microscopic evaluation in one tissue section/block, the gross measurement is the preferred method of determining pT. Whichever method is used, pT should be recorded to the nearest millimeter. The size of the primary tumor is measured for T classification before any tissue is removed for special purposes, such as prognostic biomarkers or tumor banking. In patients who have undergone diagnostic core biopsies prior to surgical excision (particularly vacuum-assisted core biopsy sampling), measuring only the residual tumor may result in underclassifying the T component and understaging the tumor, especially with smaller tumors. In such cases, the original invasive cancer size should be estimated and verified based on the best combination of imaging, gross, and microscopic histological findings. Adding the maximum invasive cancer dimension on the core biopsy to the residual invasive tumor in the excision is not recommended as this often overestimates maximum tumor dimension. In general, the maximum dimension in either the core biopsy or the excisional biopsy is used for T classification unless imaging dimensions suggest a larger invasive cancer.

For patients who receive neoadjuvant systemic or radiation therapy, it is not possible to determine a pretreatment pathologic size. Therefore, pretreatment T is defined as clinical (cT). Pretreatment staging is clinical, and the clinical measurement defined from examination and imaging is recorded (cT). Posttreatment (ypT) size should be estimated based on the best combination of imaging, gross, and microscopic histological findings. The size of some invasive cancers, regardless of previous biopsy or chemotherapy, may be unapparent to any imaging modalities or gross pathologic examination. In these cases, invasive cancer size can be estimated by carefully measuring and recording the relative positions of tissue samples submitted for microscopic evaluation and determining which contain invasive cancer.

*Tis Classification.* Pure noninvasive carcinoma, or carcinoma in situ, is classified as Tis, with an additional parenthetical subclassification indicating the subtype. Three subtypes are currently recognized, including ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS), lobular carcinoma in situ (LCIS), and Paget’s disease of the nipple with no underlying invasive cancer. These are categorized as Tis (DCIS), Tis (LCIS), and Tis (Paget’s), respectively. “Intraductal carcinoma” is an outmoded term for DCIS, which is still used occasionally, and tumors referred to in this manner (which is discouraged) should be categorized as Tis (DCIS). “Ductal intraepithelial neoplasia” (DIN) is a recently proposed but uncommonly used terminology encompassing both DCIS and atypical ductal hyperplasia (ADH), and only cases referred to as DIN containing DCIS (±ADH) should be classified as Tis (DCIS). Similarly, “lobular intraepithelial neoplasia” (LIN) is an uncommon terminology encompassing both atypical lobular hyperplasia (ALH) and LCIS, and only cases referred to as LIN containing LCIS (±ALH) should be classified as Tis (LCIS), DIN and LIN are not widely accepted terminology. "Lobular neoplasia
in situ" is an outmoded term also encompassing both ALH and LCIS, and only tumors referred to in this manner (which is discouraged) containing LCIS (±ALH) should be classified as Tis (LCIS). If DCIS and LCIS are both present, the tumor is currently classified as Tis (DCIS). A recently published Cancer Protocol and Checklist from the College of American Pathology provides much greater detail regarding definition and evaluation of in situ cancer of the breast18 (http://www.cap.org).

Paget's disease is characterized clinically by an exudate or crust of the nipple and areola caused by infiltration of the epidermis by noninvasive breast cancer epithelial cells. This condition usually occurs in one of the following three settings19: (1) Associated with an invasive carcinoma in the underlying breast parenchyma. The T classification should be based on the size of the invasive disease. (2) Associated with an underlying noninvasive carcinoma, usually DCIS but rarely LCIS. T classification should be based on the underlying tumor as Tis (DCIS) or Tis (LCIS), accordingly. However, the presence of Paget's disease associated with invasive or noninvasive carcinomas should still be recorded. (3) Not associated with identifiable underlying invasive or noninvasive disease. These are the only lesions that should be classified as Tis (Paget's).

The size of noninvasive carcinomas does not change their T classification. However, because tumor size may influence therapeutic decisions, an estimate of size should be still provided based on the best combination of imaging, gross, and microscopic histological findings.19 Sizing of LCIS may be difficult, but an attempt to do so, based on either clinical/radiographic and/or pathologic features, is recommended.

Microinvasive Carcinoma. Microinvasive carcinoma is defined as an invasive carcinoma with no focus measuring >1 mm. In cases with only one focus, its microscopic measurement should be provided. In cases with multiple foci, the pathologist should attempt to quantify the number of foci and the range of their sizes, including the largest, but should not report the size of the tumor as the sum of the sizes. If there are multiple foci, reporting of the number may be difficult. In these cases, it is recommended that an estimate of the number be provided, or alternatively a note that the number of foci of microinvasion is too numerous to quantify, but that no identified focus is larger than 1.0 mm. Microinvasive carcinoma is nearly always encountered in a setting of DCIS (or, less often, LCIS) where small foci of tumor cells have invaded through the basement membrane into the surrounding stroma, although rare cases are encountered in the absence of noninvasive disease. The prognosis of microinvasive carcinoma is generally thought to be quite favorable, although the clinical impact of multifocal microinvasive disease is not well understood at this time.

Multiple Simultaneous Ipsilateral Primary Carcinomas. Multiple simultaneous ipsilateral primary carcinomas are defined as infiltrating carcinomas in the same breast, which are grossly or macroscopically distinct and measurable using available clinical and pathologic techniques. T stage assignment in this setting should be based only on the largest tumor and the sum of the sizes should not be used. However, the presence and sizes of the smaller tumor(s) should be recorded using the "(m)" modifier as defined by the TNM rules in Chap. 1.

Invasive cancers that are in close proximity, but are apparently separate grossly, may represent truly separate tumors or one tumor with a complex shape. Distinguishing these two situations may require judgment and close correlation between pathologic and clinical findings (especially imaging), and preference should be given to the modality thought to be the most accurate in a specific case. When macroscopically apparently distinct tumors are very close (e.g., <5 mm), especially if they are similar histologically, they are most likely one tumor with a complex shape, and their T category should be based on the largest combined dimension. Careful and comprehensive microscopic evaluation often reveals subtle areas of continuity between tumor foci in a setting. However, contiguous uniform tumor density in the intervening tissue is needed to justify adding two grossly distinct masses. These criteria apply to multiple macroscopically measurable tumors and do not apply to one macroscopic carcinoma associated with multiple separate microscopic (satellite) foci. Tumors along the same approximate radial axis are frequently related and have arisen in the same duct system.

Simultaneous Bilateral Primary Carcinomas. Each carcinoma is staged as a separate primary carcinoma in a separate organ based on its own characteristics, including T category as specified in the TNM rules (see Chap. 1).

Inflammatory Carcinoma. Inflammatory carcinoma is a clinical-pathologic entity characterized by diffuse erythema and edema (peau d'orange) involving a third or more of the skin of the breast.20 The tumor of inflammatory carcinoma is classified T4d. It is important to remember that inflammatory carcinoma is primarily a clinical diagnosis. On imaging, there may be a detectable mass and characteristic thickening of the skin over the breast. An underlying mass may or may not be palpable, although imaging modalities often reveal one. The skin changes are due to lymphedema caused by tumor emboli within dermal lymphatics, which may or may not be obvious in a small skin biopsy. However, a tissue diagnosis is still necessary to demonstrate an invasive carcinoma in the underlying breast parenchyma or at least in the dermal lymphatics, as well as to determine biologic markers, such as estrogen receptor, progesterone receptor, and HER2 status. Tumor emboli in dermal lymphatics without the clinical skin changes described above do not qualify as inflammatory carcinoma. Locally advanced breast cancers directly invading the dermis or ulcerating the skin without the clinical skin changes and tumor emboli in dermal lymphatics also do not qualify as inflammatory carcinoma. Thus, the term inflammatory carcinoma should not be applied to a patient with neglected locally advanced cancer of the breast presenting late in the course of her disease. The rare case that exhibits all the features of inflammatory breast carcinoma, but in which skin changes...
involve less than one third of the skin, should be classified as T4b or T4c.

**Skin of Breast.** Dimpling of the skin, nipple retraction, or any other skin change except those described under T4b and T4d may occur in T1, T2, or T3 without changing the classification.

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

**Macrometastases.** Cases in which regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed (previously removed or not removed for pathologic examination) are designated NX or pNX. Cases in which no regional lymph node metastases are detected are designated cN0 or pN0.

For patients who are clinically node-positive, cN1 designates metastases to one or more movable ipsilateral level I, II axillary lymph nodes, cN2a designates metastases to level I, II axillary lymph nodes that are fixed to each other (matted) or to other structures, and cN3a indicates metastases to ipsilateral infracavicular (level III axillary) lymph nodes. Metastases to the ipsilateral internal mammary mammary nodes are designated as cN2b when they are detected by imaging studies (including CT scan and ultrasound, but excluding lymphoscintigraphy) or by clinical examination and when they do not occur in conjunction with metastases to the level I, II axillary lymph nodes. Metastases to the ipsilateral internal mammary nodes are designated as cN3b when they are detected by imaging studies or by clinical examination and when they occur in conjunction with metastases to the level I, II axillary lymph nodes. Metastases to the ipsilateral supravacular lymph nodes are designated as cN3c regardless of the presence or absence of axillary or internal mammary nodal involvement. Since lymph nodes that are detected by clinical or imaging examination are frequently larger than 1.0 cm, the presence of tumor deposits should be confirmed by fine needle aspiration or core biopsy with cytologic/histologic examination if possible. Lymph nodes classified as malignant by clinical or imaging characteristics alone, or only by fine needle aspirate cytology examination or core biopsy, and not by formal surgical dissection and pathologic review, are presumed to contain metastases for purposes of clinical staging classification. When confirmed by fine needle aspiration or core biopsy, the (f) modifier should be used to indicate cytologic/histologic confirmation, for example, cN2af. Pathologic classification rules apply when lymph nodes are removed by surgical excisional biopsy and examined histopathologically.

For patients who are pathologically node-positive with macrometastases, at least one node must contain a tumor deposit greater than 2 mm and all remaining quantified nodes must contain tumor deposits greater than 0.2 mm (at least micrometastases); nodes containing only tumor deposits ≤0.2 mm (ITCs) are excluded from the positive node count for purposes of N classification but should be recorded as additional ITC involved nodes and should be included in the total nodes evaluated. Cases with 1–3 positive level I/II axillary lymph nodes are classified pN2a; cases with 4–9 positive axillary lymph nodes are classified pN2a, and cases with 10 or more positive axillary lymph nodes are classified pN3a. Cases with histologically confirmed metastases to the internal mammary nodes, detected by sentinel lymph node dissection but not by clinical examination or imaging studies (excluding lymphoscintigraphy), are classified as pN1b if occurring in the absence of metastases to the axillary lymph nodes and as pN1c if occurring in the presence of metastases to 1–3 axillary lymph nodes. If four or more axillary lymph nodes are involved, and internal mammary sentinel nodes are involved, the classification pN3b is used. Pathologic classification is used when axillary nodes have been histologically examined and clinical involvement of the ipsilateral internal mammary nodes is detected by imaging studies (excluding lymphoscintigraphy); in the absence or presence of axillary nodal metastases, pN2b and pN3b classification is used, respectively.

Histologic evidence of metastases in ipsilateral supraclavicular lymph node(s) is classified as pN3c. A classification of pN3, regardless of primary tumor size or grade, is classified as Stage IIIc. A case in which the classification is based only on sentinel lymph node biopsy is given the additional designation (sn) for “sentinel node” – for example, pN1(sn). For a case in which an initial classification is based on a sentinel lymph node biopsy but a standard axillary lymph node dissection is subsequently performed, the classification is based on the total results of both the axillary lymph node dissection and the sentinel node biopsy, and the (sn) modifier is removed. The (sn) modifier indicates that nodal classification is based on less than an axillary dissection. When the combination of sentinel and nonsentinel nodes removed is less than a standard low axillary dissection (less than six nodes) the (sn) modifier is used. The number of quantified nodes for staging is generally the number of grossly identified, histologically confirmed lymph nodes. Care should be taken to avoid overcounting sectioned nodes or sectioned adipose tissue with no grossly apparent nodes.

The first priority in pathologic evaluation of lymph nodes is to identify all macrometastases (metastases larger than 2.0 mm). The entire lymph node should be submitted for evaluation and larger nodes should be bisected or thinly sliced no thicker than 2.0 mm. A single histologic section of each slice has a high probability of detecting all macrometastases present although the largest dimension of the metastases may not be represented. More comprehensive evaluation of lymph node paraffin blocks is not required for staging; however, techniques such as multilevel sectioning and immunohistochemistry will identify additional tumor deposits, typically less than or equal to 2.0 mm [micrometastases and isolated tumor cell clusters (ITCs)]. It is not recommended that nodal tissue that may contain a macrometastasis be diverted for experimental or alternative testing, such as molecular analysis, if this diversion would potentially result in the pathologist missing macrometastases detectable by routine microscopic examination.

**Isolated Tumor Cell Clusters and Micrometastases.** ITCs are defined as small clusters of cells not greater than 0.2 mm...
in largest dimension, or single cells, usually with little if any histologic stromal reaction. ITCs may be detected by routine histology or by immunohistochemical (IHC) methods. When no single metastasis larger than 0.2 mm is identified, regardless of the number of nodes containing ITCs, the regional lymph nodes should be designated as pN0+(sn), as appropriate, and the number of ITC-involved nodes should be noted.

Approximately 1,000 tumor cells are contained in a three-dimensional 0.2-mm cluster. Thus, if more than 200 individual tumor cells are identified as single dispersed tumor cells or as a nearly confluent elliptical or spherical focus in a single histologic section of a lymph node there is a high probability that more than 1,000 cells are present in the lymph node. In these situations, the node should be classified as containing a micrometastasis (pN1mi). Cells in different lymph node cross or longitudinal sections or levels of the block are not added together; the 200 cells must be in a single node profile even if the node has been thinly sectioned into multiple slices. It is recognized that there is substantial overlap between the upper limit of the ITC and the lower limit of the micrometastasis categories due to inherent limitations in pathologic nodal evaluation and detection of minimal tumor burden in lymph nodes. Thus, the threshold of 200 cells in a single cross-section is a guideline to help pathologists distinguish between these two categories. The pathologist should use judgment regarding whether it is likely that the cluster of cells represents a true micrometastasis or is simply a small group of isolated tumor cells.

Micrometastases are defined as tumor deposits greater than 0.2 mm but not greater than 2.0 mm in largest dimension. Cases in which at least one micrometastasis is detected but no metastases greater than 2 mm (macrometastases) are detected, regardless of the number of involved nodes, are classified pN1mi or pN1mi(sn), as appropriate, and the number of involved nodes should be noted.

The size of a tumor deposit is determined by measuring the largest dimension of any group of cells that are touching one another (confluent or contiguous tumor cells) regardless of whether the deposit is confined to the lymph node, extends outside the node (extranodal or extracapsular extension), or is totally present outside the lymph node and invading adipose. When there are multiple tumor deposits in a lymph node, whether ITCs or micrometastases, the size of only the largest contiguous tumor deposit is used to classify the node; do not use the sum of all individual tumor deposits. When a tumor deposit has induced a fibrous (desmoplastic) stromal reaction, the combined contiguous dimension of tumor cells and fibrosis determines size of the metastasis. When a single case contains multiple positive lymph nodes and the largest tumor deposit in each node is categorically distinct, the number of nodes in each category (micrometastases, micrometastases, ITCs) may be recorded separately to facilitate N classification as described previously.

If histologically negative lymph nodes are examined for evidence of unique tumor or epithelial cell markers using molecular methods [reverse transcriptase–polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR)] and these markers are detected, the regional lymph nodes are classified as pN0(mol+) or pN0(mol+)(sn), as appropriate. Sacrificing lymph node tissue for molecular analysis that would otherwise be available for histologic evaluation and staging is not recommended particularly when the size of the sacrificed tissue is large enough to contain a macrometastasis. If these data are generated, they should be collected by the registrar.

Distant Metastases (M). Cases in which there are no distant metastases as determined by clinical and/or radiographic methods are designated cM0, and cases in which one or more distant metastases are identified by clinical and/or radiographic methods are designated cM1. Positive supravacular lymph nodes are classified as N3 (see previous discussion). A case is classified as clinically free of metastases (cM0) unless there is documented evidence of metastases by clinical means (cM1) or by biopsy of a metastatic site (pM1). M stage of breast cancer refers to the classification of clinically significant distant metastases, which typically distinguishes whether or not there is a potential for long-term cure. The ascertain-ment of M stage requires evaluations consisting of a review of systems, physical examination and often also includes radiographic imaging, blood work, and tissue biopsy. The types of examinations needed in each case may vary and guidelines for these are available. M classification is based on best clinical and radiographic interpretation, but pathologic confirmation is recommended, although it may not be obtained for reasons of feasibility or safety. Additionally, M stage assessment may not yield a definitive answer on the initial set of evaluations, and follow-up studies may be needed such that the final determination is a recursive and iterative process, assuming that the area of question was present at the time of diagnosis of the primary breast cancer. In these cases, the designated stage should remain M0 unless a definitive designation is made that the patient truly had detectable metastases at the time of diagnosis, based on the guidelines that follow. Subsequent development of new metastases in areas not previously thought to be suspicious does not change the patient’s original stage and the patient would now be considered to have converted to recurrent Stage IV, which is considered recurrent disease without altering the original stage.

Physical Examination. Detection of metastatic disease by clinical exam should include a full physical examination with focused detail based on symptoms and radiographic findings. When appropriate, serial physical examinations based on evolving symptoms, physical findings, radiographic findings, and/or laboratory findings should be done on an iterative basis. Physical findings alone rarely will provide the basis for assigning M1 stage, and radiographic studies are almost always required. Whenever feasible, biopsy confirmation should be performed.

Radiographic Studies. It is not necessary for the patient to have radiologic evaluation of distant sites to be classified as clinically free of metastases. The indication for the indicated radiographic evaluation for the presence of an M lesion in the
staging of breast cancer is uncertain and varies by T and N stage category. Certainly, all guidelines stipulate that suspicious findings in the history or physical examination, and/or elevated serologic tests for liver or bone function, are indications to proceed with radiographic systemic imaging, such as bone or body scintigraphy or anatomic, cross-sectional imaging. Most experts agree that systemic radiographic staging evaluation for metastases is not warranted in asymptomatic patients with normal blood tests who have T1–2, N0 breast cancer, and likewise most experts agree that staging is appropriate for patients with Stage III disease (clinical or pathologic). Recommendations are mixed for patients with T2N1.

Regardless, staging studies should focus on common sites of metastatic disease and/or sites indicated by symptoms or blood tests. Certain findings such as multiple lesions with classical characteristics of metastases, and clear changes from earlier studies may provide a very high index of suspicion and result in M1 classification. With radiographic screening or evaluation for another cause, false positive staging studies in patients with newly diagnosed breast cancer are relatively common. Pathologic confirmation of metastatic disease should be performed whenever feasible.

**Tissue Biopsy.** The type of biopsy of a suspicious lesion should be guided by the location of the suspected metastases along with patient preference, safety, and the expertise and equipment available to the care team. Fine needle aspiration (FNA) is adequate, especially for visceral lesions and with equipment available to the care team. Fine needle aspiration along with patient preference, safety, and the expertise and result in M1 classification. With radiographic screening or evaluation for another cause, false positive staging studies in patients with newly diagnosed breast cancer are relatively common. Pathologic confirmation of metastatic disease should be performed whenever feasible.

**Laboratory Abnormalities.** Patients with abnormal liver function tests should undergo liver imaging, whereas those with elevated alkaline phosphatase or calcium levels, or suggestive symptoms, should undergo bone imaging and/or scintigraphy. Unexplained anemia and other cytopenias require a full hematologic evaluation (e.g., examination of the peripheral smear, iron studies, B12/folate levels) and should be investigated with bone imaging and a bone marrow biopsy depending on the results of the evaluation. Other unexplained laboratory abnormalities such as elevations in renal function should also prompt appropriate imaging tests. Elevated tumor markers are known to be associated with variable degrees of false positivity and their use has not been shown to improve outcome. The routine ordering of these tests, such as CA 15–3, CA 27.29, CEA, and other protein-based markers for staging is not indicated.

**Circulating Tumor Cells, Bone Marrow Micrometastases, and Disseminated Tumor Cells.** The presence of circulating tumor cells (CTCs) in the blood or micrometastases (≤0.2 mm) in the bone marrow or other nonregional nodal tissues should not be used to define M stage in the absence of other apparent clinical and/or radiographic findings that correspond to pathologic findings. However, an increasing number of studies are showing microscopic bone marrow and circulating tumor cells in M0 disease to be prognostic for recurrence or survival. Thus, denotation of histologically visible micrometastases in bone marrow, blood, or other organs distant from the breast and regional lymph nodes should be denoted by the term M0(i+). For M1 stage breast cancer (clinically and/or radiographically detectable metastases), the enumeration of CTCs at the time of diagnosis of metastatic disease has been shown to strongly correlate with survival, but neither the presence nor the number of CTCs will change the overall classification.

**OUTCOMES**

Figure 32.2 shows percent survival at 5 years by size of primary tumor and number of nodes involved. Figure 32.3 shows observed survival rates for 211,645 cases with carcinoma of the breast diagnosed in years 2001–2002.

---

![Figure 32.2](image-url) Percent survival at 5 years by size of primary tumor and number of nodes involved.
DEFINITIONS OF TNM

The increasing use of neoadjuvant therapy in breast cancer and the documented prognostic impact of postneoadjuvant extent of disease and response to therapy warrant clear definitions of the use of the "yp" prefix and response to therapy. The use of neoadjuvant therapy does not change the clinical (pretreatment) stage. As per TNM rules, the clinical stage is identified with the prefix "c." In addition, the use of fine needle aspiration and sentinel lymph node biopsy before neoadjuvant therapy is denoted with the subscripts "f" and "sn," respectively. Nodal metastases detected by FNA or core biopsy are classified as macrometastases (N1) regardless of the size of the tumor focus in the final pathologic specimen. For example, if, prior to neoadjuvant systemic therapy, a patient has no palpable nodes but has an ultrasound-guided FNA biopsy of an axillary lymph node that is positive, the patient will be categorized as cN1 (f) for her clinical (pretreatment) staging and would be considered as stage IIA. Likewise, if the patient has a positive axillary sentinel node identified prior to neoadjuvant systemic therapy, the patient will be categorized as cN1 (sn) (Stage IIA).

As per TNM rules, with the absence of pathologic T evaluation (removal of the primary tumor), microscopic evaluation of nodes before neoadjuvant therapy is still classified as clinical "c."

Primary Tumor (T)

The T classification of the primary tumor is the same regardless of whether it is based on clinical or pathologic criteria, or both. Size should be measured to the nearest millimeter. If the tumor size is slightly less than or greater than a cutoff for a given T classification, it is recommended that the size be rounded to the millimeter reading that is closest to the cutoff. For example, a reported size of 1.1 mm is reported as 1 mm, or a size of 2.01 cm is reported as 2.0 cm. Designation should be made with the subscript "c" or "p" modifier to indicate whether the T classification was determined by clinical (physical examination or radiologic) or pathologic measurements, respectively. In general, pathologic determination should take precedence over clinical determination of T size.

TX  Primary tumor cannot be assessed
T0  No evidence of primary tumor
Tis  Carcinoma in situ
Tis (DCIS)  Ductal carcinoma in situ
Tis (LCIS)  Lobular carcinoma in situ
Tis (Paget’s)  Paget’s disease of the nipple NOT associated with invasive carcinoma and/or carcinoma in situ (DCIS and/or LCIS) in the underlying breast parenchyma. Carcinomas in the breast parenchyma associated with Paget’s disease are categorized based on the size and characteristics of the parenchymal disease, although the presence of Paget’s disease should still be noted

T1  Tumor ≤20 mm in greatest dimension
T1mi  Tumor ≤1 mm in greatest dimension
T1a  Tumor >1 mm but ≤5 mm in greatest dimension
T1b  Tumor >5 mm but ≤10 mm in greatest dimension
T1c  Tumor >10 mm but ≤20 mm in greatest dimension
T2  Tumor >20 mm but ≤50 mm in greatest dimension
T3  Tumor >50 mm in greatest dimension
T4  Tumor of any size with direct extension to the chest wall and/or to the skin (ulceration or skin nodules).

Note: Invasion of the dermis alone does not qualify as T4

T4a  Extension to the chest wall, not including only pectoralis muscle adherence/invasion
T4b  Ulceration and/or ipsilateral satellite nodules and/or edema (including peau d’orange) of the skin, which do not meet the criteria for inflammatory carcinoma
T4c  Both T4a and T4b
T4d  Inflammatory carcinoma (see “Rules for Classification”)
**Posttreatment ypT.** Clinical (pretreatment) T will be defined by clinical and radiographic findings, while pathologic (posttreatment) T will be determined by pathologic size and extension. The ypT will be measured as the largest single focus of invasive tumor, with the modifier "m" indicating multiple foci. The measurement of the largest tumor focus should not include areas of fibrosis within the tumor bed. The inclusion of additional information in the pathology report such as the distance over which tumor foci extend, the number of tumor foci present, or the number of slides/blocks in which tumor appears may assist the clinician in estimating the extent of disease. A comparison of the cellularity in the initial biopsy to that in the posttreatment specimen may also aid in the assessment of response.

*N*ote: If a cancer was designated as inflammatory before neoadjuvant chemotherapy, the patient will be designated to have inflammatory breast cancer throughout, even if the patient has complete resolution of inflammatory findings.

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

**Clinical**

NX  Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed (e.g., previously removed)
N0  No regional lymph node metastases
N1  Metastases to movable ipsilateral I, II axillary lymph node(s)
N2  Metastases in ipsilateral level I, II axillary lymph nodes that are clinically fixed or matted; or in clinically detected* ipsilateral internal mammary nodes in the absence of clinically evident axillary lymph node metastases
N2a Metastases in ipsilateral level I, II axillary lymph nodes fixed to one another (matted) or to other structures
N2b Metastases only in clinically detected* ipsilateral internal mammary nodes and in the absence of clinically evident level I, II axillary lymph node metastases
N3  Metastases in ipsilateral infraclavicular (level III axillary) lymph node(s) with or without level I, II axillary lymph node involvement; or in clinically detected* ipsilateral internal mammary lymph node(s) with clinically evident level I, II axillary lymph node metastases; or metastases in ipsilateral supraclavicular lymph node(s) with or without axillary or internal mammary lymph node involvement
N3a Metastases in ipsilateral infraclavicular lymph node(s)
N3b Metastases in ipsilateral internal mammary lymph node(s) and axillary lymph node(s)
N3c Metastases in ipsilateral supraclavicular lymph node(s)

*Note: Clinically detected is defined as detected by imaging studies (excluding lymphoscintigraphy) or by clinical examination and having characteristics highly suspicious for malignancy or a presumed pathologic macrometastasis based on fine needle aspiration biopsy with cytologic examination. Confirmation of clinically detected metastatic disease by fine needle aspiration without excision biopsy is designated with an (f) suffix, for example, cN3a(f). Excisional biopsy of a lymph node or biopsy of a sentinel node, in the absence of assignment of a pT, is classified as a clinical N, for example, cN1. Information regarding the confirmation of the nodal status will be designated in site-specific factors as clinical, fine needle aspiration, core biopsy, or sentinel lymph node biopsy. Pathologic classification (pN) is used for excision or sentinel lymph node biopsy only in conjunction with a pathologic T assignment.

**Pathologic (pN)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pNX</th>
<th>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed (e.g., previously removed, or not removed for pathologic study)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pN0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis identified histologically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0(i−)</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastases histologically, negative IHC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0(i+)</td>
<td>Malignant cells in regional lymph node(s) no greater than 0.2 mm (detected by H&amp;E or IHC including ITC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0 (mol−)</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastases histologically, negative molecular findings (RT-PCR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0 (mol+)</td>
<td>Positive molecular findings (RT-PCR),** but no regional lymph node metastases detected by histology or IHC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN1</td>
<td>Micrometastases; or metastases in 1–3 axillary lymph nodes; and/or in internal mammary nodes with metastases detected by sentinel lymph node biopsy but not clinically detected***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN1mi</td>
<td>Micrometastases (greater than 0.2 mm and/or more than 200 cells, but none greater than 2.0 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN1a</td>
<td>Metastases in 1–3 axillary lymph nodes, at least one metastasis greater than 2.0 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN1b</td>
<td>Metastases in internal mammary nodes with micrometastases or macrometastases detected by sentinel lymph node biopsy but not clinically detected***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN1c</td>
<td>Metastases in 1–3 axillary lymph nodes and in internal mammary lymph nodes with micrometastases or macrometastases detected by sentinel lymph node biopsy but not clinically detected</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pathologic (pN)* (Continued)

| pN2 | Metastases in 4–9 axillary lymph nodes; or in clinically detected**** internal mammary lymph nodes in the absence of axillary lymph node metastases |
| pN2a | Metastases in 4–9 axillary lymph nodes (at least one tumor deposit greater than 2.0 mm) |
| pN2b | Metastases in clinically detected**** internal mammary lymph nodes in the absence of axillary lymph node metastases |
| pN3 | Metastases in ten or more axillary lymph nodes; or in infraclavicular (level III axillary) lymph nodes; or in clinically detected**** ipsilateral internal mammary lymph nodes in the presence of one or more positive level I, II axillary lymph nodes; or in more than three axillary lymph nodes and in internal mammary lymph nodes with micrometastases or macrometastases detected by sentinel lymph node biopsy but not clinically detected****; or in ipsilateral supraclavicular lymph nodes |
| pN3a | Metastases in ten or more axillary lymph nodes (at least one tumor deposit greater than 2.0 mm); or metastases to the infraclavicular (level III axillary lymph) nodes |
| pN3b | Metastases in clinically detected**** ipsilateral internal mammary lymph nodes in the presence of one or more positive axillary lymph nodes; or in more than three axillary lymph nodes and internal mammary lymph nodes with micrometastases or macrometastases detected by sentinel lymph node biopsy but not clinically detected**** |
| pN3c | Metastases in ipsilateral supraclavicular lymph nodes |

Notes:
*Classification is based on axillary lymph node dissection with or without sentinel lymph node biopsy. Classification based solely on sentinel lymph node biopsy without subsequent axillary lymph node dissection is designated (sn) for “sentinel node,” for example, pN0(sn).

**RT-PCR: reverse transcriptase/polymerase chain reaction.

****“Not clinically detected” is defined as not detected by imaging studies (excluding lymphoscintigraphy) or not detected by clinical examination.

*****“Clinically detected” is defined as detected by imaging studies (excluding lymphoscintigraphy) or by clinical examination and having characteristics highly suspicious for malignancy or a presumed pathologic macrometastasis based on fine needle aspiration biopsy with cytologic examination.

Posttreatment ypN

- Post-treatment yp “N” should be evaluated as for clinical (pretreatment) “N” methods above. The modifier “sn” is used only if a sentinel node evaluation was performed after treatment. If no subscript is attached, it is assumed that the axillary nodal evaluation was by axillary node dissection (AND).
- The X classification will be used (ypNX) if no yp posttreatment SN or AND was performed
- N categories are the same as those used for pN.

Distant Metastases (M)

| M0 | No clinical or radiographic evidence of distant metastases |
| cM0(i+) | No clinical or radiographic evidence of distant metastases, but deposits of molecularly or microscopically detected tumor cells in circulating blood, bone marrow, or other nonregional nodal tissue that are no larger than 0.2 mm in a patient without symptoms or signs of metastases |
| M1 | Distant detectable metastases as determined by classic clinical and radiographic means and/or histologically proven larger than 0.2 mm |

Posttreatment yp M classification. The M category for patients treated with neoadjuvant therapy is the category assigned in the clinical stage, prior to initiation of neoadjuvant therapy. Identification of distant metastases after the start of therapy in cases where pretherapy evaluation showed no metastases is considered progression of disease. If a patient was designated to have detectable distant metastases (M1) before chemotherapy, the patient will be designated as M1 throughout.

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

| Stage 0 | Tis | N0 | M0 |
| Stage IA | T1* | N0 | M0 |
| Stage IB | T0 | N1mi | M0 |
| | T1* | N1mi | M0 |
| Stage IIA | T0 | N1** | M0 |
| | T1* | N1** | M0 |
| | T2 | N0 | M0 |
| Stage IIB | T2 | N1 | M0 |
| | T3 | N0 | M0 |
| Stage IIIA | T0 | N2 | M0 |
| | T1* | N2 | M0 |
| | T2 | N2 | M0 |
| | T3 | N1 | M0 |
| | T3 | N2 | M0 |
| Stage IIIB | T4 | N0 | M0 |
| | T4 | N1 | M0 |
| | T4 | N2 | M0 |
| Stage IIIC | Any T | N3 | M0 |
| Stage IV | Any T | Any N | M1 |
Breast

Notes:
*T1 includes T1mi.
**T0 and T1 tumors with nodal micrometastases only are excluded from Stage IIA and are classified Stage IB.
- M0 includes M0(i+).
- The designation M0(i+) is not valid; any M0 should be clinical.
- If a patient presents with M1 prior to neoadjuvant systemic therapy, the stage is considered Stage IV and remains Stage IV regardless of response to neoadjuvant therapy.
- Postneoadjuvant therapy is designated with “yp” prefix. Of note, no stage group is assigned if there is a complete pathologic response (CR) to neoadjuvant therapy, for example, ypT0ypN0cM0.

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS [SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS] (Recommended for Collection)

Required for staging None

Clinically significant Paget’s disease
Tumor grade (Scarff–Bloom–Richardson system)
Estrogen receptor and test method (IHC, RT-PCR, other)
Progesterone receptor and test method (IHC, RT-PCR, other)
HER2 status and test method (IHC, FISH, CISH, RT-PCR, other)
Method of lymph node assessment (e.g., clinical, fine needle aspiration; core biopsy; sentinel lymph node biopsy)
IHC of regional lymph nodes
Molecular studies regional lymph nodes
Distant metastases method of detection (clinical, radiographic, biopsy)
Circulating tumor cells (CTC) and method of detection (RT-PCR, immunomagnetic separation, other)
Disseminated tumor cells (DTC; bone marrow micrometastases) and method of detection (RT-PCR, immunohistochemical, other)
Multigene signature score

Response to neoadjuvant therapy
Partial response (PR)

No response (NR)

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

All invasive breast carcinomas should be graded. The Nottingham combined histologic grade (Elston-Ellis modification of Scarff–Bloom–Richardson grading system) is recommended. The grade for a tumor is determined by assessing morphologic features (tubule formation, nuclear pleomorphism,
and mitotic count), assigning a value of 1 (favorable) to 3 (unfavorable) for each feature, and adding together the scores for all three categories. A combined score of 3–5 points is designated as grade 1; a combined score of 6–7 points is grade 2; a combined score of 8–9 points is grade 3.

**HISTOLOGIC GRADE (NOTTINGHAM COMBINED HISTOLOGIC GRADE IS RECOMMENDED)**

GX  Grade cannot be assessed  
G1  Low combined histologic grade (favorable)  
G2  Intermediate combined histologic grade (moderately favorable)  
G3  High combined histologic grade (unfavorable)

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

The histopathologic types are the following:

**In situ Carcinomas**
- NOS (not otherwise specified)  
- Intraductal  
- Paget’s disease and intraductal

**Invasive Carcinomas**
- NOS  
- Ductal  
- Inflammatory, NOS  
- Medullary, NOS  
- Medullary with lymphoid stroma  
- Mucinous  
- Papillary (predominantly micropapillary pattern)  
- Tubular  
- Lobular  
- Paget’s disease and infiltrating  
- Undifferentiated  
- Squamous cell  
- Adenoid cystic  
- Secretory  
- Cribriform

**SPECIFIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR EVIDENCE-BASED CHANGES TO THE AJCC CANCER STAGING MANUAL, SEVENTH EDITION**

**Revisit of Considerations Between Fifth and Sixth Editions**

**Q:** Should histologic grade (Nottingham combined histologic grade recommended) be incorporated into the TNM classification system?  
**A:** No; see “Considerations” below; T category.

**Q:** Should the classification of pathologic lymph node status in node-negative patients be amplified to include information about isolated tumor cells detected by immunohistochemical techniques?  
**A:** Yes, in part and now further clarified; see “Considerations” below; N category

**Q:** Should micrometastases (pN1mi) detected by immunohistochemical staining and not verified by H&E staining be classified as pN1?  
**A:** Yes; see “Considerations” below; N category. The definition is now based on size, NOT how they were detected.

**Q:** Should size criteria be used to distinguish between isolated tumor cells and micrometastases?  
**A:** Yes; see “Considerations” below; N category. The definition is now based on size, NOT how they were detected.

**Q:** How should RT-PCR be used in the detection of small tumor deposits?  
**A:** If collected, it should be collected by the registrar, but not used for staging; see “Considerations” below; N category

**Q:** Should the classification of pathologic lymph node status in node-positive (all nodes with deposits greater than 0.2 mm) patients be changed to reflect more clearly the prognostic significance of number of affected nodes?  
**A:** It was changed in sixth edition; no change in seventh edition.

**Q:** Should a finding of positive internal mammary lymph nodes retain a current classification of N3?  
**A:** It was reclassified pN2b in the sixth edition. In the seventh edition, if positive internal mammary lymph nodes are identified in the absence of axillary lymph node positivity, then it is classified N2b. If positive lymph nodes are identified in the presence of axillary lymph node positivity, then it is classified N3b.

**Q:** Should a finding of positive supraclavicular lymph nodes be classified as N3 rather than M1?  
**A:** It was reclassified pN3 from M1 in the sixth edition. No change in the seventh edition.

**Q:** Are there other prognostic factors that are powerful enough to consider for inclusion in the TNM grading system?  
**A:** No. See “Considerations” below; B category regarding multiparameter assays.

**New Considerations Between Sixth and Seventh Editions.** The Breast Cancer Task Force deliberated many important issues regarding the TNM staging system for the seventh edition. These can be divided into subtle, but important changes in rules regulating how to collect or interpret already existing factors, such as T, N, and M, and whether new markers and/or technologies should be incorporated into any of these categories. The following discussions highlight these
considerations and justify the changes that have been recommended.

Of note, the Breast Cancer Task Force did not feel that any new factors have reached a level of evidence to justify inclusion into the staging system. Indeed, a literature search using the terms “breast cancer” and “prognostic factors” yielded over 1,800 publications in the English literature during the 5-year period 2003–2007. These factors included ethnic origin, pre- and post-diagnostic life styles and body habits, means of diagnosis and apparent radiographic character of the tumor, germ line polymorphisms in candidate genes related to tumor behavior and/or distribution and activity of therapeutic agents, somatic biologic changes in the primary cancer, and evidence of distant, microscopic metastases using sensitive radiographic, molecular, and cellular detection systems. In most, if not all of these studies, the authors conclude that the investigational factor was statistically significantly associated with outcome. However, the studies were often conducted using datasets and tissue specimens that were conveniently available rather than as prospective, well-designed investigations. Importantly, the effects of systemic therapy, either in the adjuvant or metastatic settings, were often ignored or not even considered. Therefore, one is unable to determine if differential outcomes between those patients who were positive vs. those who were negative occurred because of, or in spite of, the marker. Such considerations must be taken into account in the design, conduct, analysis, and reporting of tumor marker studies.24–30

Primary Tumor (T)

Should histologic grade (Nottingham combined histologic grade recommended) be incorporated into the TNM classification system?

As noted, the issue of inclusion of histologic grade was very seriously considered by the Breast Cancer Task Force in preparation of the sixth edition. Ultimately, after careful deliberation of all of the identified published literature on the subject, the Task Force elected not to include grade as a stage modifying factor in the TNM system.29 The Task Force acknowledged the consistent differences in outcomes between women whose tumors were grade 1 vs. those that were grade 3, using the modified Scarff–Bloom–Richardson scoring system. However, the majority of breast cancers are classified as grade 2, and the prognostic significance of this category inconsistently tracked with either of the other two grades, depending on the study. Moreover, persistent concerns about grading inconsistency between observers contributed to the decision not to include grade.

Several new studies have been published since the sixth edition, but none has clarified the issue any further than what were available to the Task Force at that time. Additionally, several authors have addressed specific molecular components of grade, such as proliferative markers and multigene expression arrays that appear to reflect grade.21,22 However, these assays are either not widely available, or, like standard histopathologic analyses, reproducibility has been an issue. However, the Task Force does recommend collection of tumor grade, using the standardized Nottingham combined histologic score with calibrated mitotic counts, for inclusion in registry databases.

Should T4 be distill to inflammatory carcinoma only?

Recent studies have suggested that the T4 designation should be restricted to inflammatory carcinoma (T4d) only, with the consideration that T4 a, b, and c categories have outcomes similar to those in the T3 category, and substantially better than those with true inflammatory breast cancer, if carefully defined.34–36 In this case, the other subcategories (T4a, T4b, T4c) would then be categorized based on the size of the tumor in each case, regardless of skin or chest wall involvement.

The Breast Cancer Task Force concluded that the data from the main study suggesting this change were interesting, but size of the study was modest and the analyses were not comprehensive. Therefore, the Task Force requested an analysis of 5-year survival rates in T4 lesions in the National Cancer Database from 1998 to 2000. In this analysis of 9,865 cases, significantly different outcomes were observed for each of the T4 categories (T4a = 47%, T4b = 40%, T4c = 28%, T4d = 34%; p<0.0001 all pair-wise comparisons). However, without a comprehensive comparison to tumors of similar size/stage but <T4, the Task Force could not conclude that restricting T4 to T4d was appropriate. The group concluded that the data were insufficient at this time to recommend a change, but that they do warrant further study and future consideration.

Should the term “inflammatory carcinoma” be restricted to cases with typical clinical skin changes AND the presence of histologically confirmed invasive carcinoma involving dermal lymphatics?

The Task Force carefully considered this issue and elected not to recommend changes in the seventh edition. The definition of inflammatory breast cancer will remain clinical and does not require the finding of dermal lymphatic involvement, although it does, of course, require histologic confirmation of cancer either in breast parenchyma or skin. Dermal lymphatic involvement supports the diagnosis of inflammatory breast cancer but is not necessary, nor is it sufficient, in the absence of classical clinical findings, for the diagnosis of inflammatory breast cancer. The Task Force acknowledges that this recommendation is not based so much on new data but rather a perceived need to clarify the definition in the sixth edition, which was considered ambiguous.

Should the size of multiple separate ipsilateral tumors be taken into account when determining T category and Stage?

In prior editions of the Staging Manual, T stage assignment for patients with multiple, concurrent ipsilateral breast cancers has been based only on the largest tumor, and the sum of the sizes has not been used. Although some studies suggest that multiple tumors may have a somewhat worse prognosis than single tumors in the same T category, the data are insufficient to change the current rules for staging.27 However, the presence and sizes of the smaller tumor(s) should be recorded. The Breast Cancer Task Force does express concern about this issue and suggests it warrants further study.
Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

Should the size thresholds for isolated tumor cell clusters and micrometastases be changed from the current limits of 0.2 and 2.0 mm?

The prognostic significance of axillary metastases above a 2.0-mm threshold was confirmed by two studies reported over 3 decades ago. Following the first study, a subcategory for micrometastases was added to the Cancer Staging Manual. The introduction of sentinel lymph node biopsy and widespread use of immunohistochemistry facilitated detection of minimal disease in axillary lymph nodes and the sixth edition of the Staging Manual established a lower limit for micrometastases of >0.2 mm creating a new category of minimal nodal disease. This limit was ten times smaller than the upper limit for micrometastases and had been tested in one retrospective study of occult metastases. It was not a limit based on firm medical evidence and should be periodically reevaluated.

Testing these thresholds is not an easy task. Doing so requires excluding the presence of metastases above the suggested threshold prior to comparing differences in outcome for subgroups with smaller metastases, and then either accepting the confounding effects of systemic therapy or identifying datasets of untreated patients. To date, no study has evaluated differences in disease free or overall survival for metastases above and below a 1.0-mm threshold after excluding all metastases above 2.0 mm. When these data become available, the upper limit of 2.0 mm for micrometastases could be reconsidered.

Evaluating the upper limit for isolated tumor cell clusters is more problematic because it requires excluding all patients with metastases larger than 0.2 mm prior to comparing subgroups with metastases below this threshold. Creating a “true node negative” comparison group is probably not practical with standard histologic techniques. In other words, any “node negative” group will contain some patients with occult metastatic disease. Two limiting principles emerge when evaluating these thresholds; the first is lymph node sectioning strategies and the second is section screening. The possibility of missing a metastasis is proportional to the thickness of unexamined tissue, the number of sections examined, and the capability of the slide screening system to detect disease. For example, if evaluation of serial sections from a lymph node is negative, but if a pathologist leaves 1.0 mm of unexamined tissue in the paraffin lymph node block, one can only conclude that there is no metastasis larger than 1.0 mm; there is no guarantee the node does not contain occult disease. Single cells are routinely detected on histologic sections, but metastases as large as 0.1 mm may be missed by a pathologist screening slides.

It has been theorized that isolated tumor cell clusters should be distinguishable from micrometastases on the basis of metastatic characteristics, such as proliferation or stromal reaction, and indeed this observation was included in the sixth edition. However, in consideration of the seventh edition, the Breast Cancer Task Force perceived that this distinction can be highly subjective and expressed concern that replication among pathologists and among institutions may be difficult. For the seventh edition, the Breast Cancer Task Force continues to define isolated tumor cell clusters as not greater than 0.2 mm in diameter and micrometastases as greater than 0.2 mm and not greater than 2.0 mm in diameter. However, the Task Force has recommended additional stringency to the isolated tumor cell cluster (ITC) category. A 0.2-mm metastasis contains approximately 1,000 tumor cells and a 2.0-mm metastasis contains approximately one million tumor cells. The use of 0.2 mm as a lower limit was selected because it significantly reduces the likelihood that ITCs will be recorded as micrometastases without making it necessary to estimate actual cell number counts in ITCs. However, pathologists have had difficulty applying the size criterion when a large number of nonconfluent tumor cells are present in a lymph node such as may occur in some invasive lobular carcinomas. For this reason, additional guidance has been incorporated in this edition. When more than 200 nonconfluent or nearly confluent tumor cells are present in a single histologic cross section of a lymph node, there is a high probability that more than 1,000 cells are present in the node, that the cumulative volume of these cells exceeds the volume of an ITC, and the node should be classified as containing a micrometastasis. The classification of patients with metastatic tumor deposits no greater than 0.2 mm as pN0 is consistent with the low recurrence rates typically seen in this patient group. The use of 2.0 mm as an upper size limit for micrometastases, originally proposed by Huvos and colleagues in 1971, is consistent with standards already used in the AJCC staging system. These thresholds are meant to be guidelines, and not absolute cutoffs, to help pathologists determine if the tumor burden in a given lymph node is likely to be clinically important or not. The pathologist should use judgment, and not an absolute cutoff of 0.2 mm or exactly 200 cells, in determining the likelihood of whether the cluster of cells is an ITC or a true micrometastasis.

There is significant theoretic overlap in nodal tumor burden at the upper limit of the ITC category and the lower limit of the micrometastasis category that is due to practical and economic constraints in the pathologic evaluation of lymph nodes. After considering these limitations in lymph node examination and the absence of outcome data on clinical significance of isolated tumor cell clusters and micrometastases after systematic exclusion of macrometastases, the Breast Cancer Task Force perceived no compelling reason to change the current thresholds.

Should nodal micrometastases be considered different from nodal macrometastases for purposes of overall stage grouping?

The AJCC Cancer Staging Manual has traditionally grouped breast cancer cases with exclusively nodal micrometastases (pN1mi) as having the same prognostic significance as macrometastases with respect to assigning an overall stage grouping based on T, N, and M categorical classifications. A recent analysis of data in the United States Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) national cancer database has demonstrated that when nodal tumor deposits no larger than 2.0 mm are the only finding in lymph nodes and the primary tumor is less than or equal to 2 cm (pT1) the incremental decrease in survival at 5 and 10 years was only 1% compared
to patients with no nodal metastases detected. Patients with tumors no larger than 2.0 cm (T1) represented 70% of the total population in the analysis, and in this subset calculated 10-year survival decreased from 78% to 77% to 73% for pN0, pN1mi, and pN1a, respectively. This does not justify classifying pN1mi cases with Stage II tumors. This analysis included data from 1992 to 2003 spanning the introduction and widespread adoption of sentinel lymph node biopsy. In this edition of the manual, T1 tumors with nodal micrometastases (pN1mi) will be classified as Stage IB to indicate the better prognosis for the subset of breast cancer patients and to facilitate further investigation.

**How should RT-PCR be classified in the detection of nodal tumor deposits?**

An even finer level of resolution in the detection of isolated tumor cells and micrometastases is available with the use of reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR). This technique was able to identify epithelial markers in a significant percentage of sentinel nodes that were negative for disease by both histologic and immunohistochemical staining. This is not surprising given that RT-PCR is theoretically capable of identifying single cells. However, it seems unlikely that minimal tumor burden would be as significant as clinically detected disease or macrometastases. Furthermore, because lymph node tissue is digested and consumed in preparation for RT-PCR, it is technically challenging to determine the exact size of the original metastatic focus. RT-PCR assays have been offered as an adjunct to standard histological analysis of sentinel lymph node biopsy to assist in intraoperative decision making regarding the performance of completion axillary node dissection. The prognostic or staging significance of such RT-PCR assay results remains unclear. There is evidence that such highly-sensitive tests produce false positive results despite efforts to calibrate RT-PCR results with traditional histologic measurements. Correlation between RT-PCR testing and histology has been performed but there is continued and justified concern that RT-PCR assays do not provide the same data as routine histologic measurement and categorization of nodal metastases. A lymph node that is exclusively positive by molecular assay alone (mol+) may contain isolated tumor cell clusters, micrometastases, macrometastases, or be a false positive result due to sampling, contamination, or features intrinsic to the assay. Presently, there are insufficient data to suggest that RT-PCR assay of lymph nodes should replace or substitute for traditional histologic evaluation of lymph nodes. Staging is further complicated when some nodes or portions of some nodes are evaluated by RT-PCR and other nodes are evaluated by histology.

Pending further developments in this area, this edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual will continue to classify any lesion identified by RT-PCR alone as pN0 for the purposes of staging. In addition, any case that is histologically negative for regional lymph node metastases and in which examination for epithelial markers was made with RT-PCR and the examination was considered positive will have the appended designation (mol+). It is recommended that the first priority in evaluating lymph nodes is histologic identification of macrometastases (metastases larger than 2.0 mm). Thus, it is not recommended to divert portions of nodal tissue for molecular analysis that might contain a macrometastasis. When lymph nodes contain tumor deposits detected by histologic evaluation and molecular techniques, N classification based on histologic findings and measurements is utilized.

**Distant Metastases (M)**

**How should circulating tumor cells or microscopic tumor cells be handled in the absence of overt clinical finding?**

Circulating tumor cells (CTCs) and microscopic tumor cells detected in the bone marrow are collectively designated as DTCs. Several studies have shown a relationship between bone marrow DTCs and recurrence risk and mortality in M0 stage breast cancer. However, the Breast Cancer Task Force concluded that although the presence of positive bone marrow micrometastases has been statistically significantly associated with worse outcomes, the difference in recurrence and mortality rates between patients who have them and those who do not was not sufficiently large to recommend a change in the M staging system. In particular, patients who already have a favorable prognosis (T1, N0) do not appear to have a substantially worse outcome if they have positive bone marrow micrometastases. Although several recent studies have suggested that CTCs are commonly detected in patients with early stage breast cancer and may be prognostic, the Task Force concluded that most of these studies were small with short follow-up and were confounded by the effects of systemic therapy.

In summary, the designation of M1 has generally been used to determine a relative, or even, absolute state of incurability. Thus, many clinicians revert to a philosophy of palliative, rather than curative intent, for patients who are designated M1. There are no data to suggest that detection of DTCs in any tissue (bone marrow, ovary, blood) in the absence of clinical and/or radiographic findings confers incurability. Therefore, the Task Force recommends that in the absence of overt metastases detected by clinical examination or imaging abnormalities, DTCs should not affect M staging.

The Task Force has recommended that, for data collection purposes, the DTC designation should be expanded to include any cluster of malignant cells not greater than 0.2 mm found in any tissue outside of the breast and surrounding regional lymph nodes in the absence of clinical or radiographic signs of metastases. DTC assessment is not required or recommended as part of staging at the current time outside of the investigational setting in patients with clinical M0 disease. However, if DTCs are detected, the staging category should be denoted as M0(i+) and the data should be collected by the registrars.

**Should DTC (bone marrow micrometastases or CTC) be incorporated to subdivide the M1 category?**

The Task Force considered whether the TNM system might be used to further subdivide patients with M1 disease. In patients with overt metastases (M1), the presence and number of CTCs...
at the time of diagnosis have been shown to be prognostic for both disease progression and mortality. Changes in CTCs after treatment are also predictive of response to therapy and prognostic for recurrence and mortality, although the American Society of Clinical Oncology Tumor Marker Guidelines Panel has not recommended routine use of CTC in management of patients with metastatic breast cancer, since the utility of this assay in patient management decisions has not been demonstrated. After careful deliberation, the Task Force decided that the TNM system has not, in the past, dealt with prognosis in those patients with established, clinically or radiographically detectable metastases, and the Task Force elected not to recommend that CTC presence or number be used to further subclassify M1 staging.

Pathologic (Postneoadjuvant) Systemic Therapy

Why add a postneoadjuvant systemic therapy staging system?

Neoadjuvant therapy, also designated preoperative, presurgical, or primary adjuvant systemic therapy, has been increasingly studied and applied for patients with operable, as well as traditionally inoperable breast cancer. While most commonly considered for chemotherapy, neo- or preoperative adjuvant endocrine therapy has also been studied extensively. The increasing importance of this strategy mandates that the staging system provide the information necessary to assess prognosis in this diverse group of patients. Clearly, outcomes after neoadjuvant systemic therapy differ among patients, so that a staging system should reflect potential prognosis. Thus, the Breast Cancer Task Force has included a staging system to be applied for patients treated in this manner, which will be designated with the prefix y, y pathologic or yp, in accordance with AJCC policy in other disease sites.

What is the proper definition of complete response after neoadjuvant systemic therapy?

The prognostic importance of a histologic complete response (CR) to neoadjuvant chemotherapy was first documented in patients with locally advanced breast cancer. This observation was subsequently confirmed in randomized trials involving patients with operable disease. In several studies, a variety of different definitions of CR have been employed, making a comparison of the outcomes of different treatment regimens difficult. For this reason, the Task Force proposed a standard set of response definitions to be included with the posttreatment stage.

Although an international expert panel proposed that a CR be defined as the absence of invasive and noninvasive tumor in the breast, the Task Force recommends that the AJCC definition of CR should be the absence of invasive carcinoma in the breast and the axillary nodes, since the presence of noninvasive cancer, while important in the selection of local therapy, is not a determinant of survival. A retrospective review from the MD Anderson Cancer Center compared the outcome of 78 patients with a pathologic CR and no residual tumor of any kind to that of 199 patients with residual DCIS only and 2,025 patients with residual invasive cancer. The 5 and 10 year disease-free and overall survival rates for patients with a pathologic CR with and without DCIS did not differ significantly, but were significantly better than the survival rates of patients with invasive cancer. Similar findings were reported by Jones et al. in a study of 435 patients.

What is the optimal method of determining T after neoadjuvant systemic therapy?

An unresolved problem in defining the yp posttreatment stage is how to determine the best method for measuring tumor size after neoadjuvant/preoperative chemotherapy. In the absence of a CR, the assessment of the extent of response in the tumor and the measurement of tumor size remain problematic. Partial response in the NSABP protocol B18 and in the grading system proposed by Chevillard et al. is identified by nests of tumor in a desmoplastic or fibrotic stroma. In contrast, the Miller–Payne grading system and a system used at the M.D. Anderson Cancer Center rely upon loss of cellularity to describe the degree of response. No single method of assessing response has been shown to be a superior predictor of outcome, and concerns about reproducibility exist for all these measures. The combination of tumor size and an assessment of changes in cellularity are useful in documenting pathologic evidence of response. However, pretreatment biopsies are not always available to the pathologist assessing the posttreatment specimen. For this reason, the Breast Cancer Task Force has defined the pathologic T size by the largest contiguous tumor focus, with a suffix to alert the clinician when multiple scattered tumor foci are observed. When nests of tumor cells in fibrotic stroma are observed posttreatment, the T should be determined based on the largest contiguous area of invasive carcinoma, excluding surrounding areas of fibrosis. This method of T determination has been shown to correlate with survival in the study of Carey et al. Additional information that is important for planning local therapy such as the distance over which the tumor extends (when scattered foci are present) or the number of slides/blocks in which tumor is seen should be included in the pathology report, but is not part of TNM.

How should isolated tumor cells be considered after neoadjuvant therapy?

In patients who have not received neoadjuvant therapy, nodes with ITCs are classified pN0, reflecting uncertainty about their prognostic significance. After neoadjuvant therapy, ITCs could represent the presence of minimal nodal disease pre-treatment which did not respond to therapy or the remnants of macroscopic nodal disease which has had a partial response. Until further data are available to address the prognostic significance of ITCs post-treatment, the presence of ITC precludes classifying the patient as having a complete response to therapy. However, these patients will be classified as ypN0(i+) to maintain standard definitions throughout the TNM system.

Should the same considerations be used for preoperative endocrine (anti-estrogen) or other targeted therapy?

The overwhelming majority of the available information regarding the prognostic significance of CR comes from
patients treated with chemotherapy. Limited information is available about the prognostic significance of the degree of response when targeted therapies directed against ER or HER2 are used. Pathologic CR is rarely seen in patients receiving 3–4 months of neoadjuvant endocrine therapy, and its absence should not be considered evidence of endocrine resistance or poor prognosis. Complete response in patients overexpressing HER2 and treated with trastuzumab plus chemotherapy was associated with a significant survival improvement compared with that in women who did not have pathologic CR. Additional information regarding the relationship between response and survival is needed for the newer targeted therapies, and therefore the Breast Cancer Task Force recommends collection of postneoadjuvant therapy TNM data by the registrars.

**What are the difficulties in evaluating partial response?**
The Breast Cancer Task Force recognizes that the definition of partial response (PR), requiring a decrease in the T or N category, may fail to capture some patients with a reduction in tumor volume. However, modalities such as physical examination, mammography, ultrasound, and MRI, which may be used to determine the clinical (pretreatment) tumor size, have been demonstrated to significantly overestimate and underestimate the extent of tumor when compared with pathologic examination, making definitions of response based on small changes in the clinically determined pretreatment tumor size compared to the y pathologic posttreatment tumor size potentially inaccurate. In this regard, the most accurate predictor of outcome after neoadjuvant chemotherapy is pathologic complete response. However, a rough estimate of response should be determined comparing posttreatment clinical, radiographic, and pathologic assessments with those made prior to initiation of systemic therapy, and this should be recorded.

**Should TNM stage prior to neoadjuvant systemic (clinical stage) be considered in y pathologic posttreatment staging?**
An increasing body of data suggests that prognosis after neoadjuvant therapy is determined by the posttreatment pathologic stage, degree of response, and the pretreatment stage. Carey et al. demonstrated that the AJCC TNM posttreatment (yp) stage was a significant predictor of both 3-year disease-free and overall survival. However, even in patients with a pathologic CR, the clinical TNM at presentation provides valuable prognostic information. In a group of 226 patients treated at the MD Anderson Cancer Center and having a valuable prognostic information. In a group of 226 patients

**REFERENCES**

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRIMARY TUMOR (T)</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis (DCIS)</td>
<td>Tis (DCIS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis (LCIS)</td>
<td>Tis (LCIS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis (Paget’s)</td>
<td>Tis (Paget’s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1mi</td>
<td>T1mi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>T1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>T1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1c</td>
<td>T1c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>T4a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>T4b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4c</td>
<td>T4c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4d</td>
<td>T4d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>NX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pNX*</td>
<td>pNX*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0</td>
<td>pN0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0(i-)</td>
<td>pN0(i-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0(i+)</td>
<td>pN0(i+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0(mol-)</td>
<td>pN0(mol-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0(mol+)</td>
<td>pN0(mol+)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BREAST STAGING FORM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>TUMOR SIZE:</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>LATERALITY:</td>
<td>○ left ○ right ○ bilateral</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tumor Size:

- T0: No evidence of primary tumor
- Tis: Carcinoma in situ
- Tis (DCIS): Ductal carcinoma in situ
- Tis (LCIS): Lobular carcinoma in situ
- Tis (Paget’s): Paget’s disease of the nipple

Tumor Size:

- Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- Tumor 20 mm in greatest dimension
- Tumor 1 mm in greatest dimension
- Tumor 1 mm but 5 mm in greatest dimension
- Tumor 5 mm but 10 mm in greatest dimension
- Tumor 10 mm but 20 mm in greatest dimension
- Tumor 20 mm but 50 mm in greatest dimension
- Tumor 50 mm in greatest dimension
- Tumor of any size with direct extension to the chest wall and/or to the skin (ulceration or skin nodules)*
- Extension to the chest wall, not including only pectoralis muscle adherence/invasion
- Ulceration and/or ipsilateral satellite nodules and/or edema (including peau d’orange) of the skin which do not meet the criteria for inflammatory carcinoma
- Both T4a and T4b
- Inflammatory carcinoma**

*Note: Invasion of the dermis alone does not qualify as T4.

**Note: Inflammatory carcinoma is restricted to cases with typical skin changes involving a third or more of the skin of the breast. While the histologic presence of invasive carcinoma invading dermal lymphatics is supportive of the diagnosis, it is not required, nor is dermal lymphatic invasion without typical clinical findings sufficient for a diagnosis of inflammatory breast cancer.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N1</th>
<th>N1</th>
<th>Metastases to movable ipsilateral level I, II axillary lymph node(s)</th>
<th>pN1mi</th>
<th>Metastases (greater than 0.2 mm and/or more than 200 cells, but none greater than 2.0 mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pN1</td>
<td>pN1mi</td>
<td>Micrometastases or metastases in 1 to 3 axillary lymph nodes; and/or in internal mammary nodes with metastases detected by sentinel lymph node biopsy but not clinically detected**</td>
<td>pN1a</td>
<td>Metastases in 1 to 3 axillary lymph nodes, at least one metastasis greater than 2.0 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN1b</td>
<td>pN1a</td>
<td>Metastases in internal mammary nodes with micrometastases or macrometastases detected by sentinel lymph node biopsy but not clinically detected**</td>
<td>pN1c</td>
<td>Metastases in 1 to 3 axillary lymph nodes and in internal mammary lymph nodes with micrometastases or macrometastases detected by sentinel lymph node biopsy but not clinically detected**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN2</td>
<td>pN2</td>
<td>Metastases in ipsilateral level I, II axillary lymph nodes that are clinically fixed or matted; or in clinically detected ipsilateral internal mammary nodes in the absence of clinically evident axillary lymph node metastases</td>
<td>pN2a</td>
<td>Metastases in ipsilateral axillary lymph nodes fixed to one another (matted) or to other structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN2b</td>
<td>pN2a</td>
<td>Metastases in 4 to 9 axillary lymph nodes; or in clinically detected internal mammary lymph nodes in the absence of axillary lymph node metastases</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Metastases to movable ipsilateral level I, II axillary lymph node(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Micrometastases or metastases in 1 to 3 axillary lymph nodes; and/or in internal mammary nodes with metastases detected by sentinel lymph node biopsy but not clinically detected**</td>
<td>pN3</td>
<td>Metastases in 10 or more axillary lymph nodes; or in infraclavicular (level III axillary) lymph nodes; or in clinically detected ipsilateral internal mammary lymph nodes in the presence of 1 or more positive level I, II axillary lymph nodes; or in more than 3 axillary lymph nodes and in internal mammary lymph nodes with micrometastases or macrometastases detected by sentinel lymph node biopsy but not clinically detected**; or in ipsilateral suprACLavicular lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
<td>N3a</td>
<td>Metastases in ipsilateral infraclavicular lymph node(s)</td>
<td>N3a</td>
<td>Metastases in ipsilateral infraclavicular lymph node(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3a</td>
<td>N3a</td>
<td>Metastases in ipsilateral infraclavicular lymph node(s)</td>
<td>N3b</td>
<td>Metastases in ipsilateral internal mammary lymph node(s) and axillary lymph node(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3b</td>
<td>N3b</td>
<td>Metastases in clinically detected ipsilateral internal mammary lymph node(s) and axillary lymph node(s) in the presence of 1 or more positive axillary lymph nodes; or in more than 3 axillary lymph nodes and in internal mammary lymph nodes with micrometastases or macrometastases detected by sentinel lymph node biopsy but not clinically detected**</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3c</td>
<td>N3c</td>
<td>Metastases in ipsilateral suprACLavicular lymph node(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Metastases in ipsilateral supraclavicular lymph nodes

*Classification is based on axillary lymph node dissection with or without sentinel lymph node biopsy. Classification based solely on sentinel lymph node biopsy without subsequent axillary lymph node dissection is designated (sn) for “sentinel node,” for example, pN0(sn).

**Note:** Not clinically detected is defined as not detected by imaging studies (excluding lymphoscintigraphy) or not detected by clinical examination.

***Note:** Clinically detected is defined as detected by imaging studies (excluding lymphoscintigraphy) or by clinical examination and having characteristics highly suspicious for malignancy or a presumed pathologic macrometastasis based on fine needle aspiration biopsy with cytopathologic examination. Confirmation of clinically detected metastatic disease by fine needle aspiration without excision biopsy is designated with an (f) suffix, for example, pN3af). Excisional biopsy of a lymph node or biopsy of a sentinel node, in the absence of assignment of a pT, is classified as a clinical N, for example, cN1. Information regarding the confirmation of the nodal status will be designated in sitespecific factors as clinical, fine needle aspiration, core biopsy, or sentinel lymph node biopsy. Pathologic classification (pN) is used for excision or sentinel lymph node biopsy only in conjunction with a pathologic T assignment.

*Note:* Isolated tumor cell clusters (ITC) are defined as small clusters of cells not greater than 0.2 mm, or single tumor cells, or a cluster of fewer than 200 cells in a single histologic cross-section. ITCs may be detected by routine histology or by immunohistochemical (IHC) methods. Nodes containing only ITCs are excluded from the total positive node count for purposes of N classification but should be included in the total number of nodes evaluated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M0</th>
<th>No clinical or radiographic evidence of distant metastases (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cM0(i+)</td>
<td>No clinical or radiographic evidence of distant metastases, but deposits of molecularly or microscopically detected tumor cells in circulating blood, bone marrow or other non-regional nodal tissue that are no larger than 0.2 mm in a patient without symptoms or signs of metastases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distinct detectable metastases as determined by classic clinical and radiographic means and/or histologically proven larger than 0.2 mm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| pN3c | Metastases in ipsilateral supraclavicular lymph nodes |

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Breast Staging Form

#### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1*</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T0</td>
<td>N1mi</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T0</td>
<td>N1**</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T0</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1*</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* T1 includes T1mi
** T0 and T1 tumors with nodal micrometastases only are excluded from Stage IIA and are classified Stage IB.

#### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Clinical Significance:** Paget's disease: ___________________________________________________________ Tumor grade (Scarff-Bloom-Richardson system): ______________________________________________________ Estrogen receptor and test method (IHC, RT-PCR, other): ___________________________________________________________ Progesterone receptor and test method (IHC, RT-PCR, other): ___________________________________________________________ HER2 status and test method (IHC, FISH, CISH, RT-PCR, other): ___________________________________________________________ Method of lymph node assessment (e.g., clinical, fine needle aspiration; core biopsy; sentinel lymph node biopsy): __________________________ Molecular studies of regional lymph nodes: __________________________ Distant metastases method of detection (clinical, radiographic, biopsy): __________________________ Circulating Tumor Cells (CTC) and method of detection (RT-PCR, immunomagnetic separation, other): __________________________ Disseminated Tumor Cells (DTC; bone marrow micrometastases) and method of detection (RT-PCR, immunohistochemical, other): __________________________ Multi-gene signature score: __________________________

Response to neoadjuvant therapy will be collected in the registry but does not affect the post-neoadjuvant stage: _____________________________________________

#### General Notes:

- For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.
- The m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- The y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- The r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- The a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

#### Hospital Name/Address

(continued from previous page)
**Residual Tumor (R)**
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**Additional Descriptors**
Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologist (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grading system</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**General Notes (continued):**
- **surgical margins** is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.
- **neoadjuvant treatment** is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
PART VIII
Gynecologic Sites

Cervix uteri, corpus uteri, ovary, vagina, vulva, fallopian tube, and gestational trophoblastic tumors are the sites included in this section. Cervix uteri and corpus uteri were among the first sites to be classified by the TNM system. The League of Nations stages for carcinoma of the cervix were first introduced more than 70 years ago, and since 1937 the Fédération Internationale de Gynécologie et d’Obstétrique (FIGO) has continued to modify these staging systems and collect outcomes data from throughout the world. The TNM categories have therefore been defined to correspond to the FIGO stages. Some amendments have been made in collaboration with FIGO, and the classifications now published have the approval of FIGO, the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC), and all other national TNM committees of the International Union Against Cancer (UICC).
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Vulva

(Mucosal malignant melanoma is not included)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- The definition of TNM and the Stage Grouping for this chapter have changed from the Sixth Edition and reflect new staging adopted by the International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) (2008)

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N1a, N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N2a, N2b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N2c</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C51.0 Labium majus
- C51.1 Labium minus
- C51.2 Clitoris
- C51.8 Overlapping lesion of vulva
- C51.9 Vulva, NOS

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

- 8000–8246, 8248–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The vulva is the anatomic area immediately external to the vagina. It includes the labia and the perineum. The tumor may extend to involve the vagina, urethra, or anus. It may be fixed to the pubic bone. Changes to the staging classification reflect a belief that tumor size independent of other factors (spread to adjacent structures, nodal metastases) is less important in predicting survival.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The femoral and inguinal nodes are the sites of regional spread. For pN, histologic examination of regional lymphadenectomy specimens will ordinarily include six or more lymph nodes. For TNM staging, cases with fewer than six resected nodes should be classified using the TNM pathologic classification according to the status of those nodes (e.g., pN0; pN1) as per the general rules of TNM. The number of resected and positive nodes should be recorded (note that FIGO classifies cases with less than six nodes resected as pNX). The concept of sentinel lymph node mapping where only one or two key nodes are removed is currently being investigated. In most cases, a surgical assessment of regional lymph nodes (inguinal-femoral lymphadenectomy) is performed. Rarely, assessment of lymph nodes will be made by radiologic guided fine-needle aspiration or use of imaging techniques [computerized tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), or positron emission tomography (PET)]. The current revisions to staging adopted reflect a recognition that the number and size of lymph node metastases more accurately reflect prognosis.
Metastatic Sites. The metastatic sites include any site beyond the area of the regional lymph nodes. Tumor involvement of pelvic lymph nodes, including internal iliac, external iliac, and common iliac lymph nodes, is considered distant metastasis.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. Cases should be classified as carcinoma of the vulva when the primary site of the growth is in the vulva. Tumors present on the vulva as secondary growths from either a genital or an extragenital site should be excluded. This classification does not apply to mucosal malignant melanoma. There should be histologic confirmation of the tumor.

Pathologic Staging. FIGO uses surgical/pathologic staging for vulvar cancer. Stage should be assigned at the time of definitive surgical treatment or prior to radiation or chemotherapy if either of these is the initial mode of therapy. The stage cannot be changed on the basis of disease progression or recurrence or on the basis of response to initial radiation or chemotherapy that precedes primary tumor resection.

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

Vulvar cancer is a surgically staged malignancy. Surgical-pathologic staging provides specific information about primary tumor size and lymph node status, which are the most important prognostic factors in vulvar cancer. Other commonly evaluated items, such as histologic type, differentiation, DNA ploidy, and S-phase fraction analysis, as well as age, are not uniformly identified as important prognostic factors in vulvar cancer.

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

The definitions of the T categories correspond to the stages accepted by the Fédération Internationale de Gynécologie et d’Obstétrique (FIGO). Both systems are included for comparison.

Primary Tumor (T)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM</th>
<th>FIGO</th>
<th>Categories</th>
<th>Stages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td></td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td></td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ (preinvasive carcinoma)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Lesions 2 cm or less in size, confined to the vulva or perineum and with stromal invasion 1.0 mm or less**</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>IB</td>
<td>Lesions more than 2 cm in size or any size with stromal invasion more than 1.0 mm, confined to the vulva or perineum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

T2*** | II | Tumor of any size with extension to adjacent perineal structures (lower/distal 1/3 urethra, lower/distal 1/3 vagina, anal involvement) |

T3**** | IVA | Tumor of any size with extension to any of the following: upper/proximal 2/3 of urethra, upper/proximal 2/3 vagina, bladder mucosa, rectal mucosa, or fixed to pelvic bone |

*Note: FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).

** Note: The depth of invasion is defined as the measurement of the tumor from the epithelial–stromal junction of the adjacent most superficial dermal papilla to the deepest point of invasion.

***FIGO uses the classification T2/T3. This is defined as T2 in TNM.

****FIGO uses the classification T4. This is defined as T3 in TNM.

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM</th>
<th>FIGO</th>
<th>Categories</th>
<th>Stages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td></td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td></td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td></td>
<td>One or two regional lymph nodes with the following features</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>One or two lymph node metastases each less than 5 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>One lymph node metastasis 5 mm or greater</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis with the following features</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2a</td>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>Three or more lymph node metastases each less than 5 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2b</td>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>Two or more lymph node metastases 5 mm or greater</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2c</td>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>Lymph node metastasis with extracapsular spread</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>Fixed or ulcerated regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An effort should be made to describe the site and laterality of lymph node metastases.

Distant Metastasis (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM</th>
<th>FIGO</th>
<th>Categories</th>
<th>Stages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Distant metastasis (including pelvic lymph node metastasis)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N1a, N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N2a, N2b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N2c</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).*

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

Squamous cell carcinoma is the most frequent form of cancer of the vulva. This staging classification does not apply to malignant melanoma.

The common histopathologic types are as follows:

- Squamous cell carcinoma
- Verrucous carcinoma
- Paget’s disease of vulva
- Adenocarcinoma, NOS
- Basal cell carcinoma, NOS
- Bartholin’s gland carcinoma

The presence or absence of lymphovascular space invasion should be noted in the pathology report.

**BIBLIOGRAPHY**


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Vulva Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extent of disease before any treatment</th>
<th>Clinical Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Extent of disease during and from surgery</th>
<th>Pathologic Stage Category Definitions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumor Size: ________________________</td>
<td>Primary Tumor (T)</td>
<td>Tumor Size: ________________________</td>
<td>Primary Tumor (T)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Tumor Size: ______________________</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Tumor Size: ________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right</td>
<td>Tumor Size: ______________________</td>
<td>Right</td>
<td>Tumor Size: ________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilateral</td>
<td>Tumor Size: ______________________</td>
<td>Bilateral</td>
<td>Tumor Size: ________________________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **TX**: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- **T0**: No evidence of primary tumor
- **Tis**: Carcinoma in situ (preinvasive carcinoma)
- **T1a IA**: Lesions <2 cm in size, confined to the vulva or perineum and with stromal invasion ≤1.0 mm
- **T1b IB**: Lesions >2 cm in size or any size with stromal invasion >1.0 mm, confined to the vulva or perineum
- **T2 II**: Tumor of any size with extension to adjacent perineal structures (Lower/distal 1/3 urethra, lower/distal 1/3 vagina, anal involvement)
- **T3 IVA**: Tumor of any size with extension to any of the following: upper/proximal 2/3 of urethra, upper/proximal 2/3 vagina, bladder mucosa, rectal mucosa, or fixed to pelvic bone.

* FIGO staging no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).

** The depth of invasion is defined as the measurement of the tumor from the epithelial-stromal junction of the adjacent most superficial dermal papilla to the deepest point of invasion.

*** FIGO uses the classification T2/T3. This is defined as T2 in TNM.

**** FIGO uses the classification T4. This is defined as T3 in TNM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regional Lymph Nodes (N)</th>
<th>Tumor Size: ______________________</th>
<th>Regional Lymph Nodes (N)</th>
<th>Tumor Size: ______________________</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>One regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>One regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>One or two lymph nodes each less than 5 mm</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>One or two lymph nodes each less than 5 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1a IIIA</td>
<td>One lymph node metastases 5 mm or greater</td>
<td>N1a IIIA</td>
<td>One lymph node metastases 5 mm or greater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2 a IIIIB</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis with the following features:</td>
<td>N2 a IIIIB</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis with the following features:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2a IIIIB</td>
<td>Three or more lymph nodes each less than 5 mm</td>
<td>N2a IIIIB</td>
<td>Three or more lymph nodes each less than 5 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2b IIIIB</td>
<td>Two or more lymph node metastases 5 mm or greater</td>
<td>N2b IIIIB</td>
<td>Two or more lymph node metastases 5 mm or greater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2c IIIC</td>
<td>Lymph node metastasis with extracapsular spread</td>
<td>N2c IIIC</td>
<td>Lymph node metastasis with extracapsular spread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3 IVA</td>
<td>Fixed or ulcerated regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td>N3 IVA</td>
<td>Fixed or ulcerated regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An effort should be made to describe the site and laterality of lymph node metastases.

- **N0**: No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1**: One or two regional lymph node with the following features
- **N1a IIIA**: One or two lymph nodes each less than 5 mm
- **N2a IIIIB**: Three or more lymph nodes each less than 5 mm
- **N2b IIIIB**: Two or more lymph node metastases 5 mm or greater
- **N2c IIIC**: Lymph node metastasis with extracapsular spread
- **N3 IVA**: Fixed or ulcerated regional lymph node metastasis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distant Metastasis (M)</th>
<th>Tumor Size: ______________________</th>
<th>Distant Metastasis (M)</th>
<th>Tumor Size: ______________________</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1 IVB</td>
<td>Distant metastasis (including pelvic lymph node metastasis)</td>
<td>M1 IVB</td>
<td>Distant metastasis (including pelvic lymph node metastasis)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hospital Name/Address</th>
<th>Patient Name/Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(continued on next page)
### Vulva Staging Form

#### Anatomic Stage - Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0*</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N1a, N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N2a, N2b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N2c</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathologic Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0*</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N1a, N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N2a, N2b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N2c</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T1, T2</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).

#### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Required for Staging:** None

**Clinically Significant:**

- FIGO Stage: _______
- Pelvic nodal status and method of assessment: _________________________
- Femoral-Inguinal nodal status and method of assessment: ______________

**Histologic Grade (G)** (also known as overall grade)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grading System</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Additional Descriptors**

- Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**General Notes:**

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- **m** suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- **y** prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- **r** prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- **a** prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

#### Hospital Name/Address

#### Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

General Notes (continued):
surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): 

National guidelines were used in treatment planning

Other (describe):

Physician signature

Date/Time

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

(continued on next page)
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
34

Vagina

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

• The definition of TNM and the Stage Grouping for this chapter have not changed from the Sixth Edition

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T1–T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

C52.9 Vagina, NOS

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8000–8576, 8800–8801, 8940–8950, 8980–8981

*Note: FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The vagina extends from the vulva upward to the uterine cervix. It is lined by squamous epithelium with only rare glandular structures. The vagina is drained by lymphatics toward the pelvic nodes in its upper two-thirds and toward the inguinal nodes in its lower third.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The upper two-thirds of the vagina is drained by lymphatics to the pelvic nodes, including the following:

- Obturator
- Internal iliac (hypogastric)
- External iliac
- Pelvic, NOS

The lower third of the vagina is drained to the groin nodes, including the following:

- Inguinal
- Femoral

Metastatic Sites. The most common sites of distant spread include the aortic lymph nodes, lungs, and skeleton.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

There should be histologic verification of the disease. The classification applies to primary carcinoma only. Cases should be classified as carcinoma of the vagina when the primary site of the growth is in the vagina. Tumors present in the vagina as secondary growths from either genital or extragenital sites should not be included. A growth that involves the cervix, including the external os, should always be assigned to carcinoma of the cervix. A growth limited to the urethra should be classified as carcinoma of the urethra. Tumor involving the vulva and extending to the vagina should be classified as carcinoma of the vulva.

Clinical Staging. FIGO uses clinical staging for cancer of the vagina. All data available prior to first definitive treatment should be used. The results of biopsy or fine-needle aspiration of inguinal/femoral or other nodes may be included in
the clinical staging. The rules of staging are similar to those for carcinoma of the cervix.

**Pathologic Staging.** In addition to data used for clinical staging, information available from examination of the resected specimen, including pelvic and retroperitoneal lymph nodes, is to be used. The pT, pN, and pM categories correspond to the T, N, and M categories.

### PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

The most significant prognostic factor is anatomic staging, which reflects the extent of invasion into the surrounding tissue or of metastatic spread.

### DEFINITIONS OF TNM

The definitions of the T categories correspond to the stages accepted by the Fédération Internationale de Gynécologie et d’Obstétrique (FIGO). Both systems are included for comparison.

#### Primary Tumor (T)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO* Stages</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis*</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ (preinvasive carcinoma)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor confined to vagina</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor invades paravaginal tissues but not to pelvic wall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor extends to pelvic wall**</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor invades mucosa of the bladder or rectum and/or extends beyond the true pelvis (bullous edema is not sufficient evidence to classify a tumor as T4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).

**Note: Pelvic wall is defined as muscle, fascia, neurovascular structures, or skeletal portions of the bony pelvis. On rectal examination, there is no cancer-free space between the tumor and pelvic wall.

#### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Stages</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Pelvic or inguinal lymph node metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Distant Metastasis (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Stages</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>FIGO Stages</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis, N0, M0</td>
<td>Stage 0*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1, N0, M0</td>
<td>Stage I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2, N0, M0</td>
<td>Stage II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1–T3, N1, M0</td>
<td>Stage III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0, M0</td>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV A</td>
<td>T4, Any N, M0</td>
<td>Stage IV A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T, Any N, M1</td>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).

### PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

**Required for staging**

- FIGO Stage

**Clinically significant**

- Pelvic nodal status and method of assessment
- Para-aortic nodal status and method of assessment
- Distant (mediastinal, scalene) nodal status and method of assessment

### HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

- GX: Grade cannot be assessed
- G1: Well differentiated
- G2: Moderately differentiated
- G3: Poorly differentiated
- G4: Undifferentiated

### HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

Squamous cell carcinoma is the most common type of cancer occurring in the vagina. Approximately 10% of vaginal cancers are adenocarcinoma; melanoma and sarcoma occur rarely.
OUTCOMES RESULTS

Overall survival data from large series are not available because of the rarity of this malignancy. However, FIGO 5-year survival data by clinical stage in patients managed with a variety of modalities are shown in Figure 34.1.

BIBLIOGRAPHY


FIGURE 34.1. Observed survival rates for 4,114 cases with carcinoma of the vagina. Data from the National Cancer Data Base (Commission on Cancer of the American College of Surgeons and the American Cancer Society) diagnosed in years 1998–2002. Stage 0 includes 1,458 patients; Stage I, 883; Stage II, 901; Stage III, 459; Stage IVA, 203; and Stage IVB, 210.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
# Vagina Staging Form

## Clinical Extent of Disease Before Any Treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM FIGO CATEGORY</th>
<th>STAGE</th>
<th>TUMOR SIZE</th>
<th>LATERALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>T0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>IVA</td>
<td></td>
<td>bilateral</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Primary Tumor (T)**
- Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- No evidence of primary tumor
- Carcinoma in situ
- Tumor confined to vagina
- Tumor invades paravaginal tissues but not to pelvic wall
- Tumor extends to pelvic wall**
- Tumor invades mucosa of the bladder or rectum and/or extends beyond the true pelvis (bullous edema is not sufficient evidence to classify a tumor as T4)

*FIGO staging no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).
**Pelvic wall is defined as muscle, fascia, neurovascular structures, or skeletal portions of the bony pelvis.

## Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM FIGO CATEGORY</th>
<th>STAGE</th>
<th>REGIONAL LYMPH NODES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pelvic or inguinal lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Distant Metastasis (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM FIGO CATEGORY</th>
<th>STAGE</th>
<th>DISTANT METASTASIS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis). Stage unknown

## Anatomic Stage - Prognostic Group

### Clinical

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1-T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pathologic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1-T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis). Stage unknown

## Hospital Name/Address

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Patient Name/Information</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pathologic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
# Vagina Staging Form

## Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

### Required for Staging: None

### Clinically Significant:

- FIGO Stage: 
- Pelvic nodal status and method of assessment: 
- Para-aortic nodal status and method of assessment: 
- Distant (mediastinal, scalene) nodal status and method of assessment: 

## Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grading system</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Additional Descriptors

- Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

## Residual Tumor (R)

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local or regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

### General Notes:

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix.
- The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: TNM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.
- Surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

**Neoadjuvant treatment** is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

### Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): 

### National guidelines were used in treatment planning

Select NCCN or Other (describe): 

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued from previous page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

Vagina
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### 35

**Cervix Uteri**

### At-A-Glance

#### SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- The definition of TNM and the Stage Grouping for this chapter have changed from the Sixth Edition and reflect new staging adopted by the International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) (2008).

#### ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIGO 2008</th>
<th>Stage 0*</th>
<th>Stage I</th>
<th>Stage IA</th>
<th>Stage IA1</th>
<th>Stage IA2</th>
<th>Stage IB</th>
<th>Stage IB1</th>
<th>Stage IB2</th>
<th>Stage II</th>
<th>Stage IIA</th>
<th>Stage IIA1</th>
<th>Stage IIA2</th>
<th>Stage IIB</th>
<th>Stage III</th>
<th>Stage IIIA</th>
<th>Stage IIIB</th>
<th>Stage IVA</th>
<th>Stage IVB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>T1a1</td>
<td>T1a2</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>T1b1</td>
<td>T1b2</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>T2a1</td>
<td>T2a2</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>T1-3</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>Any N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: FIGO no longer includes Stage 0* (Tis).

#### ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C53.0 Endocervix
- C53.1 Exocervix
- C53.8 Overlapping lesion of cervix uteri
- C53.9 Cervix uteri

#### ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

- 8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981

### ANATOMY

**Primary Site.** The cervix is the lower third of the uterus. It is roughly cylindrical in shape and projects into the upper vagina. The endocervical canal, which is the passageway connecting the vagina with the uterine cavity, runs through the cervix. The vaginal portion of the cervix, known as the exocervix, is covered by squamous epithelium. The squamo-columnar junction is usually located at the external cervical os.
os, where the endocervical canal begins. Cancer of the cervix may originate from the squamous epithelium of the exocervix or the glandular epithelium of the canal.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The cervix is drained by parametrial, cardinal, and uterosacral ligament routes into the following regional lymph nodes:

- Parametral
- Obturator
- Internal iliac (hypogastric)
- External iliac
- Common iliac
- Sacral
- Presacral

For pN, histologic examination of regional lymphadenectomy specimens will ordinarily include six or more lymph nodes. For TNM staging, cases with fewer than six resected nodes should be classified using the TNM pathologic classification according to the status of those nodes (e.g., pN0, pN1) as per the general rules of TNM. The number of resected and positive nodes should be recorded (note that FIGO classifies cases with less than six nodes resected as pNX).

Metastatic Sites. The most common sites of distant spread include the paraaortic and mediastinal nodes, lungs, peritoneal cavity, and skeleton. Mediastinal or supraclavicular node involvement is considered distant metastasis and is coded M1.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

The classification applies only to carcinoma. There should be histologic confirmation of the disease.

Clinical Staging. Because many patients with cervical cancer are treated by radiation and never undergo surgical-pathologic staging, clinical staging of all patients provides uniformity and is therefore preferred. FIGO staging of cervical cancer is clinical.

The clinical stage should be determined prior to the start of definitive therapy. The clinical stage must not be changed because of subsequent findings once treatment has started. When there is doubt about to which stage a particular cancer should be allocated, the lesser stage should be utilized. Careful clinical examination should be performed in all cases, preferably by an experienced examiner and with the patient under anesthesia. A description of the cervical tumor size is important, especially for stage I–II cancers where tumor size has shown prognostic utility. The 2008 FIGO staging classification has adopted T subclassifications based on tumor size ≤4 cm (T1a1) and >4 cm (T1a2) for cervical carcinoma spreading beyond the cervix but not to the pelvic side wall or lower one-third of the vagina (T2 lesions). The following examinations are recommended for staging purposes: palpation, inspection, colposcopy, endocervical curettage, hysteroscopy, cystoscopy, proctoscopy, intravenous urography, and X-ray examination of the lungs and skeleton. Suspected involvement of the bladder mucosa or rectal mucosa must be confirmed by biopsy and histology. Lymph node status may be assessed by surgical means (laparoscopic or extraperitoneal biopsy, or lymphadenectomy) or by imagining technologies [computed tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), positron emission tomography (PET), or lymphangiography]. The results of these additional examinations or procedures may not be used to determine clinical staging because these techniques are not universally available. They may, however, be used to develop a treatment plan and may provide prognostic information. When nodal metastases are identified it is important to identify the extent of nodal involvement (pelvic lymph nodes and/or para-aortic lymph nodes) and the methodology by which the diagnosis was established (pathologic or radiologic).

Pathologic Staging. In cases treated by surgical procedures, the pathologist’s findings in the removed tissues can be the basis for extremely accurate statements on the extent of disease. These findings should not be allowed to change the clinical staging but should be recorded in the manner described for the pathologic staging of disease. The pTNM nomenclature is appropriate for this purpose and corresponds to the T, N, and M categories. Infrequently, hysterectomy is carried out in the presence of unsuspected invasive cervical carcinoma. Such cases cannot be clinically staged or included in therapeutic statistics; they should be reported separately.

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

Current data suggest that more than 90% of squamous cervical cancer contains human papilloma virus (HPV) DNA, most frequently types 16 and 18. In addition to extent or stage of disease, prognostic factors include histology and tumor differentiation. Small cell, neuroendocrine, and clear cell lesions have a worse prognosis, as do poorly differentiated cancers. Women with cervical cancer who are infected with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) are defined as having autoimmune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), and they have a very poor prognosis, often with rapidly progressive cancer.

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

The definitions of the T categories correspond to the stages accepted by the Fédération Internationale de Gynécologie et d’Obstétrique (FIGO). Both systems are included for comparison.
### Primary Tumor (T)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Stages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis*</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ (preinvasive carcinoma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Cervical carcinoma confined to uterus (extension to corpus should be disregarded)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a**</td>
<td>Invasive carcinoma diagnosed only by microscopy. Stromal invasion with a maximum depth of 5.0 mm measured from the base of the epithelium and a horizontal spread of 7.0 mm or less. Vascular space involvement, venous or lymphatic, does not affect classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a1</td>
<td>IA1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a2</td>
<td>IA2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b1</td>
<td>IB1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b2</td>
<td>IB2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a1</td>
<td>IIA1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a2</td>
<td>IIA2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>IIIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>IVA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).

**Note: All macroscopically visible lesions – even with superficial invasion – are T1b/IB.

### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Stages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>IIIB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Distant Metastasis (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Stages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>IVB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS (FIGO 2008)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>FIGO</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0*</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA1</td>
<td>T1a1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA2</td>
<td>T1a2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB1</td>
<td>T1b1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB2</td>
<td>T1b2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA1</td>
<td>T2a1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA2</td>
<td>T2a2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).
PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)  
(Recommended for Collection)

Required None
for staging

Clinically significant FIGO Stage
Pelvic nodal status and method of assessment
Distant (paraaortic) nodal status and method of assessment
Distant (mediastinal, scalene) nodal status and method of assessment

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)
GX Grade cannot be assessed
G1 Well differentiated
G2 Moderately differentiated
G3 Poorly differentiated
G4 Undifferentiated

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

Cases should be classified as carcinoma of the cervix if the primary growth is in the cervix. All carcinomas should be included. Grading is encouraged but is not a basis for modifying the stage groupings. When surgery is the primary treatment, the histologic findings permit the case to have pathologic staging, and the pTNM nomenclature is to be used. The histopathologic types are as follows:

Cervical intraepithelial neoplasia, grade III
Squamous cell carcinoma in situ
Squamous cell carcinoma
Invasive
Keratinizing
Nonkeratinizing
Verrucous
Adenocarcinoma in situ
Adenocarcinoma, invasive
Endometrioid adenocarcinoma
Clear cell adenocarcinoma
Adenosquamous carcinoma
Adenoid cystic carcinoma
Adenoid basal cell carcinoma
Small cell carcinoma
Neuroendocrine
Undifferentiated carcinoma

OUTCOMES RESULTS

The overall survival by stage of more than 15,070 patients treated from 2000 to 2002 is shown in Figure 35.1.

FIGURE 35.1. Observed survival rates for 15,070 cases with carcinoma of the cervix uterus. Data from the National Cancer Data Base (Commission on Cancer of the American College of Surgeons and the American Cancer Society) diagnosed in years 2000–2002. Stage 0 includes 7,119 patients; Stage IA, 1,530; Stage IB, 2,249; Stage IIA, 433; Stage IIB, 1,518; Stage IIIA, 191; Stage IIIB, 1,009; Stage IVA, 213; and Stage IVC, 788.

BIBLIOGRAPHY


### Cervix Uteri Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Tumor Size:</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laterality:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>☐ left</td>
<td>☐ right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td></td>
<td>☐ y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PRIMARY TUMOR (T)

- **T0**: No evidence of primary tumor
- **Tis**: Carcinoma in situ (preinvasive carcinoma)
- **T1**: Cervical carcinoma confined to uterus (extension to corpus should be disregarded)
  - **T1a**: Invasive carcinoma diagnosed only by microscopy. Stromal invasion with a maximum depth of 5.0 mm measured from the base of the epithelium and a horizontal spread of 7.0 mm or less. Vascular space involvement, venous or lymphatic, does not affect classification
  - **T1a1**: Measured stromal invasion 3.0 mm or less in depth and 7.0 mm or less in horizontal spread
  - **T1a2**: Measured stromal invasion more than 3.0 mm and not more than 5.0 mm with a horizontal spread 7.0 mm or less
  - **T1b**: Clinically visible lesion confined to the cervix or microscopic lesion greater than T1a/A2
  - **T1b1**: Clinically visible lesion 4.0 cm or less in greatest dimension
  - **T1b2**: Clinically visible lesion more than 4.0 cm in greatest dimension
- **T2**: Cervical carcinoma invades beyond uterus but not to pelvic wall or to lower third of vagina
  - **T2a**: Tumor without parametrial invasion
  - **T2a1**: Clinically visible lesion 4.0 cm or less in greatest dimension
  - **T2a2**: Clinically visible lesion more than 4.0 cm in greatest dimension
  - **T2b**: Tumor with parametrial invasion
  - **T3**: Tumor involves lower third of vagina, no extension to pelvic wall
  - **T3a**: Tumor extends to pelvic wall and/or causes hydronephrosis or non-functioning kidney
  - **T3b**: Tumor extends to pelvic wall and/or causes hydronephrosis or non-functioning kidney
  - **T3a**: Tumor extends to pelvic wall and/or causes hydronephrosis or non-functioning kidney
  - **T3b**: Tumor involves lower third of vagina, no extension to pelvic wall
- **T4**: Tumor invades mucosa of bladder or rectum, and/or extends beyond true pelvis (bullous edema is not sufficient to classify a tumor as T4)
  - **T4a**: Tumor without parametrial invasion
  - **T4b**: Tumor with parametrial invasion
  - **T4c**: Tumor involves lower third of vagina, no extension to pelvic wall
  - **T4d**: Tumor extends to pelvic wall and/or causes hydronephrosis or non-functioning kidney
  - **T4e**: Tumor invades mucosa of bladder or rectum, and/or extends beyond true pelvis (bullous edema is not sufficient to classify a tumor as T4)

#### REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)

- **NX**: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0**: No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1**: Regional lymph node metastasis

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued on next page)
### CERVIX UTERI STAGING FORM

#### TNM FIGO CATEGORY STAGE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M0</th>
<th>M1</th>
<th>IVB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### DISTANT METASTASIS (M)

- No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- Distant metastasis (including peritoneal spread, involvement of supraclavicular, mediastinal, or paraaortic lymph nodes, lung, liver, or bone)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M1</th>
<th>IVB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### ANATOMIC STAGE • PROGNOSTIC GROUPS (FIGO 2008)

#### CLINICAL GROUP T N M

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage 0*</th>
<th>T1S</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA1</td>
<td>T1a1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA2</td>
<td>T1a2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB1</td>
<td>T1b1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB2</td>
<td>T1b2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II1</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II1A</td>
<td>T2a1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II2</td>
<td>T2a2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II2</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>T1-3</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PATHOLOGIC GROUP T N M

- Stage 0* | T1S | N0 | M0 |
- Stage I  | T1  | N0 | M0 |
- Stage IA | T1a | N0 | M0 |
- Stage IA1| T1a1| N0 | M0 |
- Stage IA2| T1a2| N0 | M0 |
- Stage IB | T1b | N0 | M0 |
- Stage IB1| T1b1| N0 | M0 |
- Stage IB2| T1b2| N0 | M0 |
- Stage II  | T2  | N0 | M0 |
- Stage II1| T2a | N0 | M0 |
- Stage II1A| T2a1| N0 | M0 |
- Stage II1A| T2a1| N0 | M0 |
- Stage II2 | T2b | N0 | M0 |
- Stage II2 | T2b | N0 | M0 |
- Stage III | T3  | N0 | M0 |
- Stage IIIA| T3a | N0 | M0 |
- Stage IIIB| T3b | Any| N  | M0 |
|           |     | T1-3| N1 | M0 |
| Stage IVA | T4  | Any| N  | M0 |
| Stage IVB | Any | Any| N  | M1 |

*FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis)

#### PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)

**REQUIRED FOR STAGING:** None

**CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:**

- FIGO Stage:
- Pelvic nodal status and method of assessment:
- Paraortic nodal status and method of assessment:
- Distant (mediastinal, scalene) nodal status and method of assessment:

**Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)**

- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

**Grade**

- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

#### General Notes:

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the “m” suffix and “y,” “r,” and “a” prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- **m** suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- **y** prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a “y” prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The “y” categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

### Hospital Name/Address

### Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
CERVIX UTERI STAGING FORM

ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS
Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

General Notes (continued):
r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.
surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.
neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): __________________________________________________________________________
- National guidelines were used in treatment planning  □ NCCN  □ Other (describe): __________________________________________________________

Physician signature __________________________ Date/Time __________________________

HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS

PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION

(continued on next page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
Corpus Uteri

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- The definition of TNM and the Stage Grouping for this chapter have changed from the Sixth Edition and reflect new staging adopted by the International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) (2008).
- A separate staging schema adopted by FIGO for uterine sarcoma has been added.

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

Carcinomas*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0**</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC1</td>
<td>T1-T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC2</td>
<td>T1-T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Carcinosarcomas should be staged as carcinoma.

**Note: FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C54.0 Isthmus uteri
- C54.1 Endometrium
- C54.2 Myometrium
- C54.3 Fundus uteri
- C54.8 Overlapping lesion of corpus uteri
- C54.9 Corpus uteri
- C55.9 Uterus, NOS
American Joint Committee on Cancer • 2010

INTRODUCTION

The classification for uterine cancers has been subdivided for the seventh edition of TNM in accordance with changes adopted by the International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) to have separate systems for endometrial adenocarcinomas and uterine sarcomas. The new schemas for sarcomas are fully described in publications by FIGO.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The upper two-thirds of the uterus above the level of the internal cervical os is referred to as the uterine corpus. The oviducts (fallopian tubes) and the round ligaments enter the uterus at the upper and outer corners (cornu) of the pear-shaped organ. The portion of the uterus that is above a line connecting the tubo-uterine orifices is referred to as the uterine fundus. The lower third of the uterus is called the cervix and lower uterine segment. Tumor involvement of the cervical stroma is prognostically important and affects staging (T2). The new staging system no longer distinguishes endocervical mucosal/glandular involvement (formerly stage IIA). The location of the tumor must be carefully evaluated and recorded by the pathologist. The depth of tumor invasion into the myometrium is also of prognostic significance and should be included in the pathology report. Involvement of the ovaries by direct extension or metastases, or penetration of tumor to the uterine serosa is important to identify and classify the tumor as T3a.

Malignant cells in peritoneal cytology samples have been documented in approximately 10% of cases of presumed uterine confined endometrial cancer cases. The prognostic importance of positive cytology has been debated. Depth of myometrial invasion, tumor grade, and presence of extraperitoneal disease are felt to be more prognostically significant, and as such the 2008 FIGO staging system will no longer use peritoneal cytology for the purposes of staging (formerly T3a, FIGO stage IIIA). T3b lesions reflect regional extension of disease and include extension of the tumor through the myometrial wall of the uterus into the parametrium and/or extension/metastatic involvement of the vagina.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The regional lymph nodes are paired and each of the paired sites should be examined. The regional nodes are as follows:

- Obturator
- Internal iliac (hypogastric)
- External iliac
- Common iliac
- Para-aortic
- Presacral
- Parametrial

For adequate evaluation of the regional lymph nodes, a representative evaluation of bilateral para-aortic and pelvic lymph nodes (including external iliac, internal iliac, and obturator nodes) should be documented in the operative and surgical pathology reports. Parametral nodes are not commonly detected unless a radical hysterectomy is performed for cases with gross cervical stromal invasion.

For pN, histologic examination of regional lymphadenectomy specimens will ordinarily include six or more lymph nodes. For TNM staging, cases with fewer than six resected lymph nodes are to be classified as having no regional lymph node involvement (pN0).

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS (CONTINUED)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sarcomas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IC**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Stage IA and IB differ from those applied for leiomyosarcoma and endometrial stromal sarcoma.

**Note: Stage IC does not apply for leiomyosarcoma and endometrial stromal sarcoma.

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

- Carcinoma: 8000–8790, 8950–8951, 8980–8981

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
nodes should be classified using the TNM pathologic classification according to the status of those nodes (e.g., pN0; pN1) as per the general rules of TNM. The number of resected and positive nodes should be recorded (note that FIGO classifies cases with less than six nodes resected as pNX).

Metastatic Sites. The vagina and lung are the common metastatic sites. Intra-abdominal metastases to peritoneal surfaces or the omentum are seen particularly with serous and clear cell tumors.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

The classification applies only to carcinoma and malignant mixed mesodermal tumors. There should be histologic verification and grading of the tumor.

Clinical Staging. If the surgeon feels that systematic regional lymph node sampling imposes an unfavorable risk-to-benefit ratio, clinical assessment of the pertinent node groups (obturator, para-aortic groups, internal iliac, common iliac, and external iliac) should be performed and specifically annotated in the operative report and recorded as cN.

Pathologic Staging. FIGO uses surgical/pathologic staging for corpus uteri cancer. Stage should be assigned at the time of definitive surgical treatment or prior to radiation or chemotherapy if those are the initial modes of therapy. The stage should not be changed on the basis of disease progression or recurrence or on the basis of response to initial radiation or chemotherapy that precedes primary tumor resections. Ideally, the depth of myometrial invasion (in millimeters) should be recorded, along with the thickness of the myometrium at that level (recorded as a percentage of myometrial invasion).

The presence of carcinoma in the regional lymph nodes is a clinically critical prognostic variable. Multiple studies have confirmed the inaccuracy of clinical assessment of regional nodal metastasis in many anatomic sites. For this reason, surgical/pathologic assessment of the regional lymph nodes is strongly advocated for all patients with corpus uteri cancer. This is also the recommendation of FIGO. The therapeutic effect of nodal dissection has not been demonstrated in two randomized controlled clinical trials (ASTEC, CONSORT); however, routine nodal dissection increased the frequency of which patients with node involved disease were identified.

Fractional curettage is not adequate to establish cervical involvement or to distinguish between Stages I and II. That distinction can best be made by histologic verification of clinically suspicious cervical involvement or histopathologic examination of the removed uterus.

The pT, pN, and pM categories correspond to the T, N, and M categories and are used to designate cases where adequate pathologic specimens are available for accurate stage groupings. When there are insufficient surgical-pathologic findings, the clinical cT, cN, cM categories should be used on the basis of clinical evaluation.

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

The presence or absence of metastatic disease in the regional lymph nodes is the most important prognostic factor in carcinomas clinically confined to the uterus. The AJCC strongly advocates the use of surgical/pathologic assessment of nodal status whenever possible. Palpation of regional nodes is well recognized to be much less accurate than pathologic evaluation of the nodes.

Historically, the factors of grade of the tumor and depth of myometrial invasion have been recognized as important prognostic factors. In surgically staged patients, using multivariate analysis, these factors are surrogates for the probability of nodal metastasis. Preoperative endometrial biopsy does not accurately correlate with tumor grade and depth of myometrial invasion.

The presence or absence of lymphovascular space involvement of the myometrium is important in most, but not all, series. When present, lymphovascular space involvement increases the probability of metastatic involvement of the regional lymph nodes. The presence or absence of lymphovascular space involvement should be recorded in the pathology report.

The importance of tumor cells in peritoneal “washings” and the presence of metastatic foci in adnexal structures may have an adverse impact on prognosis, but they remain controversial and require further study. The newly adopted staging system (FIGO 2008) no longer utilizes positive cytology to alter stage. When collected, cytology results should be recorded.

Serous papillary and clear cell adenocarcinomas have a higher incidence of extraterine disease at detection than endometrioid adenocarcinomas. The risk of extraterine disease does not correlate with the depth of myometrial invasion, because nodal or intraperitoneal metastases can be found even when there is no myometrial invasion. For this reason, they are classified as Grade 3 tumors.

In malignancies with squamous elements, the aggressiveness of the tumor seems to be related to the degree of differentiation of the glandular component rather than the squamous element. Clinicopathologic and immunohistochemical studies support classifying malignant mixed mesodermal tumors as high-grade (G3) malignancies of epithelial origin rather than as sarcomas with mixed epithelial and mesenchymal differentiation, as in earlier classification systems.

The data regarding the impact of DNA ploidy, estrogen and progesterone receptor status, and tumor suppressor gene and oncogene expression are not sufficiently mature to incorporate into the stage grouping at this time.
DEFINITIONS OF TNM

The definitions of the T categories correspond to the stages accepted by FIGO.

Uterine Carcinomas

Carcinosarcomas should be staged as carcinoma. FIGO stages are further subdivided by histologic grade of tumor – for example, Stage IC G2. Both systems are included for comparison.

Primary Tumor (T) (Surgical-Pathologic Findings)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Categories</th>
<th>Surgical-Pathologic Findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis*</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ (preinvasive carcinoma)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor confined to corpus uteri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>Tumor limited to endometrium or invades less than one-half of the myometrium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>Tumor invades one-half or more of the myometrium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor invades stromal connective tissue of the cervix but does not extend beyond uterus**</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>Tumor involves serosa and/or adnexa (direct extension or metastasis)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>Vaginal involvement (direct extension or metastasis) or parametrical involvement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor invades bladder mucosa and/or bowel mucosa (bulla edema is not sufficient to classify a tumor as T4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).

**Endocervical glandular involvement only should be considered as Stage I and not as Stage II.

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Categories</th>
<th>Surgical-Pathologic Findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis to pelvic lymph nodes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis to para-aortic lymph nodes, with or without positive pelvic lymph nodes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Distant Metastasis (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Categories</th>
<th>Surgical-Pathologic Findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Stage 0**</td>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Stage 1</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage 1A</td>
<td>T1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage 1B</td>
<td>T1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage 2</td>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage 3</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage 3A</td>
<td>T3a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage 3B</td>
<td>T3b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage 3C1</td>
<td>T1-T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage 3C2</td>
<td>T1-T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage 4</td>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

Carcinomas*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIGO Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 1A</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 1B</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 3A</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 3B</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 3C1</td>
<td>T1-T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 3C2</td>
<td>T1-T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Carcinosarcomas should be staged as carcinoma.

** Note: FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)

(Recommended for Collection for Carcinomas and Sarcomas)

Required for staging: None

Clinically significant:
- FIGO Stage
- Peritoneal cytology results
- Pelvic nodal dissection with number of nodes positive/examined
- Para-aortic nodal dissection with number of nodes positive/examined
- Percentage of nonendometrioid cell type in mixed histology tumors
- Omentectomy performed

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GX</td>
<td>Grade cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G1</td>
<td>Well differentiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G2</td>
<td>Moderately differentiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G3–4</td>
<td>Poorly differentiated or undifferentiated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Histopathology: Degree of Differentiation.** Cases of carcinoma of the corpus uteri should be grouped according to the degree of differentiation of the adenocarcinoma as follows:

- **G1** 5% or less of a nonsquamous or nonmorular solid growth pattern
- **G2** 6–50% of a nonsquamous or nonmorular solid growth pattern
- **G3** More than 50% of a nonsquamous or nonmorular solid growth pattern

**Notes on Pathologic Grading**

1. Notable nuclear atypia, which exceeds that which is routinely expected for the architectural grade, increases the tumor grade by 1.
2. Serous, clear cell, and mixed mesodermal tumors are high risk and considered Grade 3.
3. Adenocarcinomas with benign squamous elements (squamous metaplasia) are graded according to the nuclear grade of the glandular component.

**Uterine Sarcomas.** (Includes Leiomyosarcoma, Endometrial Stromal Sarcoma, Adenosarcoma)

**Leiomyosarcoma and Endometrial Stromal Sarcoma**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Tumor (T)</th>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Stages</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor limited to the uterus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>Tumor 5 cm or less in greatest dimension</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>Tumor more than 5 cm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor extends beyond the uterus, within the pelvis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>Tumor involves adnexa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>Tumor involves other pelvic tissues</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor infiltrates abdominal tissues</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>One site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>More than one site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor invades bladder or rectum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regional Lymph Nodes (N)</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Distant Metastasis (M)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distant Metastasis (M)</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis (excluding adnexa, pelvic and abdominal tissues)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Adenosarcoma**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Tumor (T)</th>
<th>TNM FIGO Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor limited to the endometrium/endocervix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>Tumor invades less than half of the myometrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>Tumor invades more than half of the myometrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor involves adnexa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>Tumor involves other pelvic tissues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor involves abdominal tissues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>One site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>More than one site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor invades bladder or rectum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Simultaneous tumors of the uterine corpus and ovary/pelvis in association with ovarian/pelvic endometriosis should be classified as independent primary tumors.

*In this stage lesions must infiltrate abdominal tissues and not just protrude into the abdominal cavity.

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regional Lymph Nodes (N)</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Distant Metastasis (M)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distant Metastasis (M)</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis (excluding adnexa, pelvic and abdominal tissues)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Uterine Sarcomas**

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA*</td>
<td>T1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB*</td>
<td>T1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IC**</td>
<td>T1c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.

---

*Corpus Uteri*
### ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS (CONTINUED)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>T1, T2, T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Stage IA and IB differ from those applied for leiomyosarcoma and endometrial stromal sarcoma.

**Note: Stage IC does not apply for leiomyosarcoma and endometrial stromal sarcoma.

### HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

- Endometrioid carcinomas
- Villoglandular adenocarcinoma
- Adenocarcinoma with benign squamous elements, squamous metaplasia, or squamous differentiation (adenocanthoma)
- Adenosquamous carcinoma (mixed adenocarcinoma and squamous cell carcinoma)
- Mucinous adenocarcinoma
- Serous adenocarcinoma (papillary serous)
- Clear cell adenocarcinoma
- Squamous cell carcinoma
- Undifferentiated carcinoma
- Malignant mixed mesodermal tumors
- Sarcomas: leiomyosarcomas, endometrial stromal sarcomas, adenosarcomas, carcinosarcomas.

### OUTCOMES RESULTS

The significance of clinical compared with surgical/pathologic staging is shown in Figure 36.1. The prognosis for patients with clinical Stage I disease is similar to that for women with surgical Stage III, and those with clinical Stage III cancers have the same prognosis as patients with surgical Stage IV lesions. These findings also emphasize the importance of clearly separating patients who are staged clinically from those who have more accurate surgical/pathologic staging recommended by AJCC and FIGO.

### BIBLIOGRAPHY


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Corpus Uteri Carcinoma Staging Form

(Carcinosarcomas should be staged as carcinomas)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>Tumor Size: □ left □ right □ bilateral</td>
<td>□ y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Primary Tumor (T)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Category</th>
<th>FIGO Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td></td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td></td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ (preinvasive carcinoma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Tumor confined to corpus uteri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>Tumor limited to endometrium or invades less than one-half of the myometrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>IB</td>
<td>Tumor invades one-half or more of the myometrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>Tumor invades stromal connective tissue of the cervix but does not extend beyond uterus**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>Tumor involves serosa and/or adnexa (direct extension or metastasis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>Vaginal involvement (direct extension or metastasis) or parametrial involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>Tumor invades bladder mucosa and/or bowel mucosa (bullous edema is not sufficient to classify a tumor as T4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>* FIGO staging no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>** Endocervical glandular involvement only should be considered as stage I and not Stage II.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Category</th>
<th>FIGO Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td></td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td></td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>IIIC1</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis to pelvic lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>IIIC2</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis to para-aortic lymph nodes, with or without positive pelvic lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Distant Metastasis (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Category</th>
<th>FIGO Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
<td>No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Distant metastasis (includes metastasis to inguinal lymph nodes intraperitoneal disease, or lung, liver, or bone. It excludes metastasis to para-aortic lymph nodes, vagina, pelvic serosa, or adnexa)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hospital Name/Address

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Name/Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(continued on next page)
# Clinical Stage \ Prognostic Groups

## Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0&quot;</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC1</td>
<td>T1-T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC2</td>
<td>T1-T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis)
Carcinosarcomas should be staged as carcinoma.

## Pathologic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0&quot;</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC1</td>
<td>T1-T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC2</td>
<td>T1-T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis)
Carcinosarcomas should be staged as carcinoma.

## Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Required for Staging**: None

**Clinically Significant**:
- FIGO Stage: _______
- Peritoneal cytology results: ________________
- Pelvic nodal dissection with number of nodes positive/examined: ____________________
- Para-aortic nodal dissection with number of nodes positive/examined: ________________
- Percentage of non-endometrioid cell type in mixed histology tumors: _________________
- Omentectomy performed: ________________

**Histologic Grade (G)** (also known as overall grade)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grading system</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Endometrioid adenocarcinomas should be graded according to the degree of differentiation of the adenocarcinoma as follows:

- G1: 5% or less of a non-squamous or non-morular solid growth pattern
- G2: 6% to 50% of a non-squamous or non-morular solid growth pattern
- G3: More than 50% of a non-squamous or non-morular solid growth pattern

**Notes on Pathologic Grading**

1. Notable nuclear atypia, inappropriate for the architectural grade, raises the grade by one.
2. Serous, clear cell, and mixed mesodermal tumors are Grade 3.

**General Notes**:
- For identification of special cases of TINM or pTINM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.
- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTINM or pTINM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTINM or ypTINM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTINM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTINM.

**Surgical margins** is a data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

## Hospital Name/Address \ Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
**ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS**

*Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)* have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning

**General Notes (continued):**

*neoadjuvant treatment* is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

**HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS** | **PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION**
---|---

(continued on next page)
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

(Carcinosarcomas should be staged as carcinomas)
**Corpus Uteri Sarcoma Staging Form**
(Carcinosarcomas should be staged as carcinomas)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Tumor Size:</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>LATERALITY:</td>
<td>☐ left ☐ right ☐ bilateral</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM FIGO Category</th>
<th>STAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>T1a IA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b IB</td>
<td>T2 II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a IIA</td>
<td>T2b IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b IIB</td>
<td>T3 III*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a IIIA</td>
<td>T3b IIIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4 IVA</td>
<td>T4 IVA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Primary Tumor (T)**

*Leiomyosarcoma, Endometrial Stromal Sarcoma*

- Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- No evidence of primary tumor
- Tumor limited to the uterus
- Tumor 5 cm or less in greatest dimension
- Tumor more than 5 cm
- Tumor extends beyond the uterus, within the pelvis
- Tumor involves adnexa
- Tumor involves other pelvic tissues
- Tumor infiltrates abdominal tissues
- One site
- More than one site
- Tumor invades bladder or rectum

**Adenosarcoma**

- Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- No evidence of primary tumor
- Tumor limited to the uterus
- Tumor limited to the endometrium/endocervix
- Tumor invades to less than half of the myometrium
- Tumor invades more than half of the myometrium
- Tumor extends beyond the uterus, within the pelvis
- Tumor involves adnexa
- Tumor involves other pelvic tissues
- Tumor involves abdominal tissues
- One site
- More than one site
- Tumor invades bladder or rectum

*Note: Simultaneous tumors of the uterine corpus and ovary/pelvis in association with ovarian/pelvic endometriosis should be classified as independent primary tumors.

* In this stage, lesions must infiltrate abdominal tissues and not just protrude into the abdominal cavity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM FIGO Category</th>
<th>STAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N1 IIIC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

- Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- No regional lymph node metastasis
- Regional lymph node metastasis

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued on next page)
### Corpus Uteri Sarcoma Staging Form

(Carcinosarcomas should be staged as carcinomas)

**TNM FIGO CATEGORY STAGE**
- M0
- M1 IVB

**DISTANT METASTASIS (M)**
- No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- Distant metastasis (excluding adnexal, pelvic, and abdominal tissue)

**TNM FIGO CATEGORY STAGE**
- M1 IVB

---

### Anatomic Stage - Prognostic Groups

**GROUP** | **CLINICAL** | **PATHOLOGIC**
---|---|---
I | T1 N0 M0 | I | T1 N0 M0
IA* | T1a N0 M0 | IA* | T1a N0 M0
IB* | T1b N0 M0 | IB* | T1b N0 M0
IC** | T1c N0 M0 | IC** | T1c N0 M0
II | T2 N0 M0 | II | T2 N0 M0
III A | T3a N0 M0 | IIIA | T3a N0 M0
III B | T3b N0 M0 | IIIB | T3b N0 M0
III C | T1-3 N1 M0 | IIIC | T1-3 N1 M0
IVA | T4 Any N M0 | IVA | T4 Any N M0
IVB | Any T Any N M1 | IVB | Any T Any N M1

*Note: Stages IA and IB differ from those applied for leiomyosarcoma and endometrial stromal sarcoma.

** Note: Stage IC does not apply for leiomyosarcoma and endometrial stromal sarcoma.

** Stage unknown

### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**REQUIRED FOR STAGING:** None

**CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:**
- FIGO Stage: _______
- Peritoneal cytology results: ________________
- Pelvic nodal dissection with number of nodes positive/examined: ________________
- Para-aortic nodal dissection with number of nodes positive/examined: ________________
- Percentage of non-endometrioid cell type in mixed histology tumors: ________________
- Omentectomy performed: _____________

### Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

Grading system
- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

Grade
- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

**General Notes:**
- For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.
- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

---

### Hospital Name/Address

### Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
**Corpus Uteri Sarcoma Staging Form**

(Carcinosarcomas should be staged as carcinomas)

Endometrioid adenocarcinomas should be graded according to the degree of differentiation of the adenocarcinoma as follows:

- **G1** 5% or less of a non-squamous or non-morular solid growth pattern
- **G2** 6% to 50% of a non-squamous or non-morular solid growth pattern
- **G3** More than 50% of a non-squamous or non-morular solid growth pattern

### Additional Descriptors

**Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)** have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

### Residual Tumor (R)

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- **RX** Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- **R0** No residual tumor
- **R1** Microscopic residual tumor
- **R2** Macroscopic residual tumor

### General Notes (continued):

- **r** prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- **a** prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

### Surgical Margins

Surgical margins is a data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

### Neoadjuvant Treatment

Neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

---

Notes on Pathologic Grading:

1. Notable nuclear atypia, inappropriate for the architectural grade, raises the grade by one.
2. Serous, clear cell, and mixed mesodermal tumors are Grade 3.

### Hospital Name/Address

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hospital Name/Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Patient Name/Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Name/Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(continued on next page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
Ovary and Primary Peritoneal Carcinoma

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- The definition of TNM and the Stage Grouping for this chapter have not changed from the Sixth Edition
- Primary peritoneal carcinoma has been included in this chapter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS</th>
<th>ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I  T1  N0  M0</td>
<td>C56.9  Ovary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA T1a  N0  M0</td>
<td>C48.1  Specified parts of peritoneum (female only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB T1b  N0  M0</td>
<td>C48.2  Peritoneum (female only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IC T1c  N0  M0</td>
<td>C48.8  Overlapping lesion of retroperitoneum and peritoneum (female only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II T2  N0  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA T2a  N0  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB T2b  N0  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC T2c  N0  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III T3  N0  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA T3a  N0  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB T3b  N0  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC T3c  N0  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV Any T  Any N  M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8000–8576, 8590–8671, 8930–9110 (C56.9 only)
8000–8576, 8590–8671, 8930–8934, 8940–9110 (C48.1–C48.8 only)

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The ovaries are a pair of solid, flattened ovoids 2–4 cm in diameter that are connected by a peritoneal fold to the broad ligament and by the infundibulopelvic ligament to the lateral wall of the pelvis. They are attached medially to the uterus by the utero-ovarian ligament.

In some cases, an adenocarcinoma is primary in the peritoneum. The ovaries are not involved or are only involved with minimal surface implants. The clinical presentation, surgical therapy, chemotherapy, and prognosis of these peritoneal tumors mirror those of papillary serous carcinoma of the ovary. Patients who undergo prophylactic oophorectomy for a familial history of ovarian cancer appear to retain a 1–2% chance of developing peritoneal adenocarcinoma, which is histopathologically and clinically similar to primary ovarian cancer.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The lymphatic drainage occurs by the infundibulopelvic and round ligament trunks and an external iliac accessory route into the following regional nodes:

- External iliac
- Internal iliac (hypogastric)
- Obturator
- Common iliac
- Para-aortic
Inguinal
Pelvic, NOS
Retroperitoneal, NOS

For pN0, histologic examination should include both pelvic and para-aortic lymph nodes.

**Metastatic Sites.** The peritoneum, including the omentum and the pelvic and abdominal visceral and parietal peritoneum, comprises common sites for seeding. Diaphragmatic and liver surface involvement are also common. However, to be consistent with FIGO staging, these implants within the abdominal cavity (T3) are not considered distant metastases. Extraperitoneal sites, including parenchymal liver, lung, skeletal metastases, and supravacular and axillary nodes, are M1.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

Ovarian cancer is surgically/pathologically staged. There should be histologic confirmation of the ovarian disease. Laparotomy or operative laparoscopy with resection of the ovarian mass, as well as hysterectomy, form the basis for staging. Biopsies of all frequently involved sites, such as omentum, mesentery, diaphragm, peritoneal surfaces, pelvic nodes, and para-aortic nodes, are required for ideal staging of early disease. For example, in order to stage a patient confidently as Stage IA (T1 N0 M0), negative biopsies of all of the above sites should be obtained to exclude microscopic metastases. On the other hand, a single biopsy from an omental mass 2 cm or greater showing metastatic adenocarcinoma is adequate to classify a patient as Stage IIIIC, thus making other biopsies unnecessary from a staging standpoint. The final histologic and cytologic findings after surgery are to be considered in the staging. Operative findings prior to tumor debulking determine stage, which may be modified by histopathologic as well as clinical or radiologic evaluation (palpable supraclavicular node or pulmonary metastases on chest X-ray, for example).

**Clinical Staging.** Although clinical studies similar to those for other sites may be used, surgical-pathologic evaluation of the abdomen and pelvis is necessary to establish a definitive diagnosis of ovarian cancer and rule out other primary malignancies (such as bowel, uterus, and pancreatic cancers or occasionally lymphoma) that may present with similar preoperative findings. A laparotomy is the most widely accepted procedure used for surgical-pathologic staging, but occasionally laparoscopy can be used. Occasionally, patients with advanced disease and/or women who are medically unsuitable candidates for surgery may be presumed to have ovarian cancer on the basis of cytology of ascites or pleural effusion showing typical adenocarcinoma, combined with imaging studies demonstrating enlarged ovaries. Such patients are usually considered as unstaged (TX), although positive cytology of a pleural effusion or supraclavicular lymph node occasionally allows designation of M1 or FIGO Stage IV disease. The presence of ascites does not affect staging unless malignant cells are present.

Imaging studies are often done in conjunction with definitive abdominal-pelvic surgery, and chest X-ray, bone scans, computerized scanning (CT), or positron emission tomography (PET) may identify lung, bone, or brain metastases that should be considered in the final stage. Pleural effusions should be evaluated with cytology.

As with all gynecologic cancers, the final stage should be established at the time of initial treatment. It should not be modified or changed on the basis of subsequent findings.

Second-look laparotomies and laparoscopy after initial chemotherapy are occasionally utilized because of the limitation of routine examinations in detecting early recurrence. Findings related to these procedures do not change the patient’s original stage.

**Pathologic Staging.** Surgery and biopsy of all suspected sites of involvement provide the basis for staging. Histologic and cytologic data are required. This is the preferred method of staging for ovarian cancer. The operative note and/or the pathology report should describe the location and size of metastatic lesions and the primary tumors for optimal staging. In addition, the determination of tumor size outside of the pelvis must be noted and documented in the operative report. This is reported in centimeters and represents the largest implant, whether resected or not at the time of surgical exploration.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

Histology and grade are important prognostic factors. Women with borderline tumors (low malignant potential) have an excellent prognosis, even when extraovarian disease is found. In patients with invasive ovarian cancer, well-differentiated lesions have a better prognosis than poorly differentiated tumors, stage for stage. Histologic type is also extremely important, because some stromal tumors (theca cell, granulosa) have an excellent prognosis, whereas epithelial tumors in general have a less favorable outcome. For this reason, epithelial cell types are generally reported together, and sex-cord stromal tumors and germ cell tumors are reported separately. Tumor cell type also helps to guide the type of chemotherapy that is recommended.

In advanced disease, the most important prognostic factor is the residual disease after the initial surgical management. Even with advanced stage, patients with no gross residual after the surgical debulking have a considerably better prognosis than those with minimal or extensive residual. Not only is the size of the residual important, but the number of sites of residual tumor also appears to be important (tumor volume).

The tumor marker CA-125 is useful for following the response to therapy in patients with epithelial ovarian cancer who have elevated levels of this marker. The rate of regression during chemotherapy treatment may have prognostic significance. Women with germ cell tumors may also have elevated serum tumor markers – alpha fetoprotein (AFP) or human chorionic gonadotropin (β-hCG). Other factors, such as growth factors and oncogene amplification, are currently under investigation.
DEFINITIONS OF TNM

The definitions of the T categories correspond to the stages accepted by the Fédération Internationale de Gynécologie et d’Obstétrique (FIGO). Both systems are included for comparison.

### Primary Tumor (T)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Categories</th>
<th>Stages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>Tumor limited to ovaries (one or both)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor limited to one ovary; capsule intact, no tumor on ovarian surface. No malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>Tumor limited to one ovary; capsule intact, no tumor on ovarian surface. No malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>IB</td>
<td>Tumor limited to both ovaries; capsules intact, no tumor on ovarian surface. No malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1c</td>
<td>IC</td>
<td>Tumor limited to one or both ovaries with any of the following: capsule ruptured, tumor on ovarian surface, malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>Tumor involves one or both ovaries with pelvic extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>Extension and/or implants on uterus and/or tube(s). No malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>Extension to and/or implants on other pelvic tissues. No malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2c</td>
<td>IIC</td>
<td>Pelvic extension and/or implants (T2a or T2b) with malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>Tumor involves one or both ovaries with microscopically confirmed peritoneal metastasis outside the pelvis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>Microscopic peritoneal metastasis beyond pelvis (no macroscopic tumor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>Macroscopic peritoneal metastasis beyond pelvis 2 cm or less in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3c</td>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>Peritoneal metastasis beyond pelvis more than 2 cm in greatest dimension and/or regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Liver capsule metastasis T3/Stage III; liver parenchymal metastasis M1/Stage IV. Pleural effusion must have positive cytology for M1/Stage IV.

### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Categories</th>
<th>Stages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Distant Metastasis (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Categories</th>
<th>Stages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis (excludes peritoneal metastasis)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pTNM Pathologic Classification. The pT, pN, and pM categories correspond to the T, N, and M categories.

### ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IC</td>
<td>T1c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>T3c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)

(Recommended for Collection)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required for staging</th>
<th>Clinically significant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>FIGO Stage Preoperative CA 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gross residual tumor after primary cyto-reductive surgery (present, absent, unknown, “y” meaning patient received chemotherapy prior to surgery)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Residual tumor volume after primary cyto-reductive surgery (no gross, \( \leq 1 \text{cm} \), \( > 1 \text{cm} \), unknown, “y” meaning patient received chemotherapy prior to surgery)
Residual tumor location following primary cyto-reductive surgery (“y” indicates patient received chemotherapy prior to surgery)
Malignant ascites volume

**HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)**

GX Grade cannot be assessed
GB Borderline malignancy
G1 Well differentiated
G2 Moderately differentiated
G3–4 Poorly differentiated or undifferentiated

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

The American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) endorses the histologic typing of malignant ovarian tumors as endorsed by the World Health Organization (WHO) and recommends that all ovarian epithelial tumors be subdivided according to a simplified version of this classification. The three main histologic types, which include nearly all ovarian cancers, are epithelial tumors, sex-cord stromal tumors, and germ cell tumors. Ovarian epithelial tumors include nearly all ovarian cancers. They are usually staged using this classification but should be reported separately.

I. Epithelial tumors
   a. Serous tumors
      1. Benign serous cystadenoma
      2. Of borderline malignancy: Serous cystadenoma with proliferating activity of the epithelial cells and nuclear abnormalities, but with no infiltrative destructive growth (carcinomas of low potential malignancy)
      3. Serous cystadenocarcinoma
   b. Mucinous tumors
      1. Benign mucinous cystadenoma
      2. Of borderline malignancy: Mucinous cystadenoma with proliferating activity of the epithelial cells and nuclear abnormalities, but with no infiltrative destructive growth (carcinomas of low potential malignancy)
      3. Mucinous cystadenocarcinoma
   c. Endometrioid tumors
      1. Benign endometrioid cystadenoma
      2. Endometrioid tumors with proliferating activity of the epithelial cells and nuclear abnormalities, but with no infiltrative destructive growth (carcinomas of low potential malignancy)
      3. Endometrioid adenocarcinoma
   d. Clear cell tumors
      1. Benign clear cell tumors
      2. Clear cell tumors with proliferating activity of the epithelial cells and nuclear abnormalities, but with no infiltrative destructive growth (low potential malignancy)
      3. Clear cell cystadenocarcinoma
   e. Brenner (transitional cell tumors)
      1. Benign Brenner
      2. Borderline malignancy
      3. Malignant
      4. Transitional cell
   f. Squamous cell tumor
   g. Undifferentiated carcinoma
      1. A malignant tumor of epithelial structure that is too poorly differentiated to be placed in any other group
   h. Mixed epithelial tumor
      1. Tumors composed of two or more of the five major cell types of common epithelial tumors (types should be specified)

Cases with intraperitoneal carcinoma in which the ovaries appear to be incidentally involved and not the primary origin should be labeled as extraovarian peritoneal carcinoma. They are usually staged with the ovarian staging classification. Because the peritoneum is essentially always

![Observed survival rates for 11,738 cases with primary ovarian epithelial cancer. Data from the National Cancer Data Base (Commission on Cancer of the American College of Surgeons and the American Cancer Society) diagnosed in years 1998–2002. Stage 0 includes 60 patients; Stage IA, 1,415; Stage IB, 160; Stage IC, 878; Stage IIA 211; Stage IIB, 304; Stage IIC, 473; Stage IIIA, 284; Stage IIIB, 425; Stage IIV, 3,815; and Stage IV, 3,773.](image)
involved throughout the abdomen, the peritoneal tumors are usually within the Stage III (T3) or Stage IV (M1) categories.

OUTCOMES RESULTS

Epithelial carcinoma accounts for approximately 80% of all patients with cancer of the ovary. Because of the difficulty of diagnosing this cancer at an early stage, the overall prognosis of women with epithelial ovarian cancer is poor, despite the fact that patients with early stage disease have a favorable outlook. The prognostic significance of stage is shown in Figure 37.1.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
## Ovary Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Tumor Size:**
- **Laterality:** left, right, bilateral

### Primary Tumor (T)
- **TX**
- **T0**
- **T1**
  - **T1a**: I
  - **T1b**: IB
  - **T1c**: IC
- **T2**
  - **T2a**: IIA
  - **T2b**: IIB
  - **T2c**: IIC
- **T3**
  - **T3a**: IIIA
  - **T3b**: IIIB
  - **T3c**: IIIC

### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)
- **NX**
- **N0**
- **N1** IIC

### Distant Metastasis (M)
- **M0**
- **M1** IV

### Definitions
- **T0**: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- **T1**: No evidence of primary tumor
- **T1a**: Tumor limited to ovaries (one or both)
- **T1b**: Tumor limited to ovaries (one or both); capsule intact; no tumor on ovarian surface. No malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings
- **T1c**: Tumor limited to ovaries (one or both) with any of the following: capsule ruptured, tumor on ovarian surface, malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings
- **T2**: Tumor involves one or both ovaries with pelvic extension and/or implants
- **T2a**: Extension and/or implants on uterus and/or tube(s). No malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings
- **T2b**: Extension to and/or implants on other pelvic tissues. No malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings
- **T2c**: Pelvic extension and/or implants (T2a or T2b) with malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings
- **T3**: Tumor involves one or both ovaries with microscopically confirmed peritoneal metastasis outside the pelvis
- **T3a**: Microscopic peritoneal metastasis beyond pelvis (no macroscopic tumor)
- **T3b**: Macroscopic peritoneal metastasis beyond pelvis 2 cm or less in greatest dimension
- **T3c**: Peritoneal metastasis beyond pelvis more than 2 cm in greatest dimension and/or regional lymph node metastasis

- **N0**: No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1**: Regional lymph node metastasis

### Notes
- Liver capsule metastasis: T3/Stage III; liver parenchymal metastasis: M1/Stage IV.
- Pleural effusion must have positive cytology for M1/Stage IV.

---

Ovary and Primary Peritoneal Carcinoma

425
## Clinical Stage - Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC</td>
<td>T1c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIC</td>
<td>T2c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>T3c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pathologic Stage - Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC</td>
<td>T1c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIC</td>
<td>T2c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>T3c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

### Required for Staging:
- FIGO stage: ________
- Gross residual tumor after primary cytoreductive surgery: ________ (present, absent, unknown, “y” meaning patient received chemotherapy prior to surgery)
- Residual tumor volume after primary cytoreductive surgery: ________ (no gross, \( \leq 1 \) cm, >1 cm, unknown, “y” meaning patient received chemotherapy prior to surgery)
- Residual tumor location following primary cytoreductive surgery: ________
- Malignant ascites volume: ________

### Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade system</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional Descriptors

- Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lymph-Vascular Invasion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Not Present (absent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not Identified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown/Indeterminate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### General Notes:
- For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the “m” suffix and “y,” “r,” and “a” prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.
- “m” suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- “y” prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a “y” prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The “y” categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- “r” prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval and is identified by the “r” prefix: cTNM.
- “a” prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.
Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

General Notes (continued): Surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

Neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

National guidelines were used in treatment planning

NCCN

Other (describe):

HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS

PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION

(continued on next page)
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
Fallopian Tube

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- The definition of TNM and the Stage Grouping for this chapter have not changed from the Sixth Edition

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IC</td>
<td>T1c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIC</td>
<td>T2c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>T3c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

C57.0 Fallopian tube

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The fallopian tube extends from the posterior superior aspect of the uterine fundus laterally and anteriorly to the ovary. Its length is approximately 10 cm. The medial end arises in the cornual portion of the uterine cavity, and the lateral end opens to the peritoneal cavity.

Carcinoma of the fallopian tube is almost always an adenocarcinoma arising from an in situ lesion of the tubal mucosa. It invades locally into the muscular wall of the tube and then into the peritubal soft tissue or adjacent organs such as the uterus or ovary, or through the serosa of the tube into the peritoneal cavity. Metastatic tumor implants can be found throughout the peritoneal cavity. The tumor may obstruct the tubal lumen and present as a ruptured or unruptured hydrosalpinx or hematosalpinx.

Regional Nodes. Carcinoma of the fallopian tube can also metastasize to the regional lymph nodes, which include the following:

- Common iliac
- External iliac
- Internal iliac (hypogastric)
- Obturator
- Paraaortic
- Inguinal
- Pelvic lymph nodes, NOS

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Adequate evaluation of the regional lymph nodes usually includes aortic and pelvic nodes.

**Distant Metastases.** Surface implants within the pelvic cavity and the abdominal cavity are common, but these are classified as T2 and T3 disease, respectively. Parenchymal liver metastases and extraperitoneal sites, including lung and skeletal metastases, are M1.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

There should be histologic confirmation of primary disease with complete evaluation of the abdomen and pelvis as outlined in the staging of ovarian malignancy (see Chap. 37). In many patients, the diagnosis may be unsuspected until the fallopian tube is examined histopathologically. Tumors may involve one or both fallopian tubes, and complete assessment of both adnexal areas affects the staging of the disease.

**Clinical Staging.** Perioperative imaging studies, including chest X-ray, computerized tomography scans, and magnetic resonance imaging, may identify distant metastases. Staging may be modified by imaging studies or clinical findings obtained prior to the initiation of treatment.

**Pathologic Staging.** Laparotomy or laparoscopy with resection of tubal masses, usually including hysterectomy and bilateral oophorectomy, form the basis for the operative management of fallopian tube carcinoma. Widespread intraabdominal disease is common; therefore, adequate evaluation of potentially early stage lesions requires multiple biopsies of commonly involved sites, such as omentum, pelvic peritoneum, mesentery, bowel serosa, diaphragm, and regional nodes, in order to rule out microscopic metastases to any of these sites.

Cytologic studies of ascites (if present) or of pelvic and abdominal peritoneal washings (if no ascites are present) should be included in the staging. The surgical-pathologic findings form the basis for staging. Staging is based on the findings at the time the abdomen is opened, not on the residual disease after debulking.

It may be preferable to classify a patient as TX (primary tumor cannot be assessed) if inadequate staging biopsies and/or a lack of peritoneal cytology make it inaccurate to classify the patient with confidence as early stage (Stage T3a/IIIA has not been excluded by adequate staging biopsies).

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

The surgical-pathologic stage is the most significant prognostic characteristic. Tumor differentiation is an important prognostic characteristic in all stages of disease. In patients with localized tumors, depth of invasion into the tubal musculature and rupture of the tube have prognostic importance. With advanced disease, the volume of residual tumor after surgical debulking appears to be related to prognosis.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Tumor (T)</th>
<th>FIGO Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Stages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis*</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ (limited to tubal mucosa)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor limited to the fallopian tube(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1c</td>
<td>IB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor involves one or both fallopian tubes with pelvic extension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>II</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>IIA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2c</td>
<td>IIB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>IIA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>IIB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3c</td>
<td>IIC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).*

*Note: Liver capsule metastasis is T3/Stage III; liver parenchymal metastasis is M1/Stage IV. Pleural effusion must have positive cytology for M1/Stage IV.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regional Lymph Nodes (N)</th>
<th>FIGO Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Stages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>IIC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
**Distant Metastasis (M)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Stages</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Distant metastasis (excludes metastasis within the peritoneal cavity)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tumor Extent</th>
<th>Node Status</th>
<th>Metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0*</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC</td>
<td>T1c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIC</td>
<td>T2c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>T3c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis).*

**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)**

(Recommended for Collection)

- Required for staging: None
- Clinically significant: FIGO Stage
  - Tumor location, involvement of fimbria
  - Pelvic nodal status and method of assessment

**HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)**

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

- GX: Grade cannot be assessed
- G1: Well differentiated
- G2: Moderately differentiated
- G3: Poorly differentiated
- G4: Undifferentiated

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPES**

Adenocarcinoma is the most frequently seen histology.

**OUTCOMES RESULTS**

This is a very uncommon tumor. It is usually treated with surgery followed by chemotherapy. The 5-year survival in early disease is approximately 70%, but surgical staging is often inadequate. At 5 years, the overall survival for patients with advanced disease is about 20% (Figure 38.1).

**BIBLIOGRAPHY**


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Fallopian Tube Staging Form

#### Clinical
- Extent of disease before any treatment

#### Stage Category Definitions
- **Tumor Size:**
- **Laterality:**
  - ☐ left
  - ☐ right
  - ☐ bilateral

#### Pathologic
- Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery

#### TNM FIGO

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>FIGO STAGE</th>
<th>PRIMARY TUMOR (T)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>Tumor limited to the fallopian tube(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>IB</td>
<td>Tumor limited to both tubes, without penetrating the serosal surface; no ascites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1c</td>
<td>IC</td>
<td>Tumor limited to one or both tubes with extension onto or through the tubal serosa, or with malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>Tumor involves one or both fallopian tubes with pelvic extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>Extension and/or metastasis to the uterus and/or ovaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>Extension to other pelvic structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2c</td>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>Pelvic extension with malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>Tumor involves one or both fallopian tubes, with peritoneal implants outside the pelvis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>Microscopic peritoneal metastasis outside the pelvis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>Macroscopic peritoneal metastasis outside the pelvis 2 cm or less in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3c</td>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>Peritoneal metastasis outside the pelvis and more than 2 cm in diameter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis)

**Note:** Liver capsule metastasis is T3/Stage III; liver parenchymal metastasis M1/Stage IV. Pleural effusion must have positive cytology for M1/Stage IV.

#### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>FIGO STAGE</th>
<th>REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td></td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td></td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Distant Metastasis (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>FIGO STAGE</th>
<th>DISTANT METASTASIS (M)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
<td>No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Distant metastasis (excludes metastasis within the peritoneal cavity)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued on next page)
**Fallopian Tube Staging Form**

### Clinical Stage - Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0*</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T3c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis)

- Stage unknown

### Pathologic Stage - Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0*</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T3c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*FIGO no longer includes Stage 0 (Tis)

- Stage unknown

### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

#### Required for Staging: None

#### Clinically Significant:

- FIGO Stage: ______________
- Tumor location: ______________ (fimbria, isthmus, unknown)
- Pelvic and paraaortic nodal status: Pelvic ______________ Paraaortic ______________

#### Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

**Grading system**
- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

**Grade**
- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

### Additional Descriptors

#### Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

### General Notes:

- For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.
- **m** suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- **y** prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- **r** prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- **a** prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.
Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or
with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of
incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

National guidelines were used in treatment planning [ ] NCCN [ ] Other (describe):

Physician signature

Date/Time

General Notes (continued): surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS

PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION

(continued on next page)
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
INTRODUCTION

Gestational trophoblastic tumors are uncommon (1 in 1,000 pregnancies) malignancies that arise from the placenta. Usually as a result of a genetic accident in the developing egg, the maternal chromosomes are lost, and the paternal chromosomes duplicate (46xx). The resulting tumor is known as a complete hydatidiform mole; there are no fetal parts; the tumor is composed of dilated, avascular, “grape-like” vesicles that may grow as large as, or larger than, the normal pregnancy that it replaces. There is obviously no heartbeat detected, and the patient may have vaginal bleeding similar to a miscarriage. Many times, the diagnosis is not made until a dilatation and curettage is done and the tissue is examined pathologically. In some patients, fetal parts will be found in association with mild proliferative trophoblastic (placental) tissue. Such patients have a partial hydatidiform mole, which has a 69xxx or 69xxy chromosomal complement resulting from twice the normal number of paternal chromosomes. Both of these tumors usually follow a benign course, resolving completely after evacuation by dilatation and suction or curettage, but approximately 20% of complete moles and 5% of partial moles persist locally or metastasize and thus require chemotherapy.

Much less frequently (about 1 in 20,000 pregnancies in the USA), a highly malignant, rapidly growing metastatic form of gestational trophoblastic disease called choriocarcinoma is encountered. This solid, anaplastic, vascular, and aggressively proliferative tumor is easily recognized microscopically and may present with symptoms of vaginal bleeding (as with a hydatidiform mole). However, metastatic lesions may be the first sign of this lesion, which can follow any pregnancy event, including an incomplete abortion or a full-term pregnancy.
The trophoblastic tissue that makes up these tumors produces a serum tumor marker, beta-human chorionic gonadotropin (β-hCG), which is very helpful in the diagnosis and monitoring of therapy in these patients. Gestational trophoblastic tumors are very responsive to chemotherapy, with cure rates approaching 100%.

**ANATOMY**

Because of the responsiveness of this tumor to treatment and the accuracy of the serum tumor marker hCG in reflecting the status of disease, the traditional anatomic staging system used in most solid tumors has little prognostic significance. Trophoblastic tumors not associated with pregnancy (ovarian teratomas) are not included in this classification.

**Primary Site.** By definition, gestational trophoblastic tumors arise from placental tissue in the uterus. Although most of these tumors are noninvasive and are removed by dilatation and suction evacuation, local invasion of the myometrium can occur. When this is diagnosed on a hysterectomy specimen (rarely done these days), it may be reported as an invasive hydatidiform mole.

**Regional Lymph Nodes.** Nodal involvement in gestational trophoblastic tumors is rare but has a very poor prognosis when diagnosed. There is no regional nodal designation in the staging of these tumors. Nodal metastases should be classified as metastatic (M1) disease.

**Metastatic Sites.** This is a highly vascular tumor that results in frequent, widespread metastases when these lesions become malignant. The cervix and vagina are common pelvic sites of metastases (T2), and the lungs are often involved by distant metastases (M1a). Other, less frequently encountered metastatic sites include kidney, gastrointestinal tract, and spleen (M1b). The liver and brain are occasionally involved and may harbor metastatic sites that are difficult to treat with chemotherapy.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

Gestational trophoblastic tumors have a very high cure rate, and as a result, the ultimate goal of staging is to identify patients who are likely to respond to less intensive chemotherapeutic protocols and distinguish these individuals from patients who will require more intensive chemotherapy in order to achieve remission. In 1991, the International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) added nonanatomic risk factors to the traditional staging system. Further modifications have been made in an attempt to merge several prognostic classification systems. The current staging classification is still evolving.

**Indications for Treatment.** The following criteria are suggested for the diagnosis of trophoblastic tumors requiring chemotherapy:

- Three or more values of hCG showing no significant change (a plateau) over 4 weeks, or
- Rise of hCG of 10% or greater for 2 values over 3 weeks or longer, or
- Persistence of elevated hCG 6 months after evacuation of molar pregnancy, or
- Histologic diagnosis of choriocarcinoma

**Diagnosis of Metastasis**

- For the diagnosis of lung metastasis, chest X-ray is appropriate and should be used to count metastases for risk scoring. Lung CT scan may be used.
- For the diagnosis of intra-abdominal metastasis, CT scanning is preferred, although many institutions still use ultrasound to detect liver metastasis.
- For the diagnosis of brain metastasis, MRI is superior to CT scan, even with 1-cm cuts.

**Prognostic Index Scores.** The score on the Prognostic Scoring Index is used to substage patients (Table 39.1). Each stage is anatomically defined, but substage A (low risk) and B (high risk) are assigned on the basis of a nonanatomic risk

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prognostic factor</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>&lt;40</td>
<td>≥40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antecedent pregnancy</td>
<td>Hydatidiform mole</td>
<td>Abortion</td>
<td>Term pregnancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval months from index pregnancy</td>
<td>&lt;4</td>
<td>4–6</td>
<td>7–12</td>
<td>&gt;12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pretreatment hCG (IU/ml)</td>
<td>&lt;10⁰</td>
<td>10⁰ to &lt;10¹</td>
<td>10¹ to &lt;10²</td>
<td>≥10²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Largest tumor size, including uterus</td>
<td>&lt;3 cm</td>
<td>3–5 cm</td>
<td>&gt;5 cm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site of metastases</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>Spleen, kidney</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal tract</td>
<td>Brain, liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of metastases identified</td>
<td>1–4</td>
<td>5–8</td>
<td>&gt;8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous failed chemotherapy</td>
<td>Single drug</td>
<td>Two or more drugs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total Score

Low risk is a score of 6 or less. High risk is a score of 7 or greater.
factor scoring system. The prognostic scores are 0, 1, 2, and 4 for the individual risk factors. The current prognostic scoring system eliminates the ABO blood group risk factors that were featured in the WHO scoring system and upgrades the risk factor for liver metastasis from 2 to 4, the highest category. Low risk is a score of 6 or less, and high risk is a score of 7 or greater.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

**Outcomes Results.** Gestational trophoblastic tumors may require only uterine evacuation for treatment, but even when chemotherapy is required, cure rates approach 100%. Prognostic factors are listed in the Prognostic Scoring Index. Patients with low-risk disease are usually treated with single-agent chemotherapy, whereas combined, multiple-agent chemotherapy usually results in a cure for high-risk patients.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

**Primary Tumor (T)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Stages</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td></td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>Tumor confined to uterus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor extends to other genital structures (ovary, tube, vagina, broad ligaments) by metastasis or direct extension</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Distant Metastasis (M)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Categories</th>
<th>FIGO Stages</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Lung metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1b</td>
<td></td>
<td>All other distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Risk Factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II A</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II B</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)**

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

GX  Grade cannot be assessed
G1  Well differentiated
G2  Moderately differentiated
G3  Poorly differentiated
G4  Undifferentiated

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

- Hydatidiform mole
  - Complete
  - Partial
- Invasive hydatidiform mole
- Choriocarcinoma
- Placental site trophoblastic tumors

**BIBLIOGRAPHY**

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
**Gestational Trophoblastic Tumors Staging Form**

### Clinical Extent of Disease before any treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Category</th>
<th>FIGO Stage</th>
<th>Tumor Size:</th>
<th>Laterality:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Tumor extends to other genital structures (ovary, tube, vagina, broad ligaments) by metastasis or direct extension</td>
<td>bilateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pathologic Extent of Disease through completion of definitive surgery

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Category</th>
<th>FIGO Stage</th>
<th>STAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>High risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

- There is no regional nodal designation in the staging of these tumors. Nodal metastases should be classified as metastatic (M1) disease.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Category</th>
<th>FIGO Stage</th>
<th>STAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>High risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Distant Metastasis (M)

- No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- Distant metastasis
- Lung metastasis
- All other distant metastasis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM Category</th>
<th>FIGO Stage</th>
<th>STAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>High risk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Anatomic Stage - Prognostic Groups

#### Clinical

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Risk Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II A</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II B</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III A</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III B</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>High risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV A</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV B</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>High risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pathologic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Risk Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II A</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II B</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>High risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III A</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III B</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>High risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV A</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV B</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>High risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hospital Name/Address

### Patient Name/Information

(continued on next page)
### Gestational Trophoblastic Tumors Staging Form

#### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Required for Staging:** Prognostic Risk Scoring Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prognostic Factor</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>&lt;40</td>
<td>≥40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antecedent pregnancy</td>
<td>Hydatidiform mole</td>
<td>Abortion</td>
<td>Term pregnancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval months from index pregnancy</td>
<td>&lt;4</td>
<td>4–6</td>
<td>7–12</td>
<td>&gt;12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pretreatment hCG (IU/ml)</td>
<td>&lt;10³</td>
<td>10³–10⁴</td>
<td>10⁴–10⁵</td>
<td>&gt;10⁵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Largest tumor size, including uterus</td>
<td>&lt;3 cm</td>
<td>3–5 cm</td>
<td>&gt;5 cm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site of metastases</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>Spleen, kidney</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal tract</td>
<td>Brain, liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of metastases identified</td>
<td>1–4</td>
<td>5–8</td>
<td>&gt;8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous failed chemotherapy</td>
<td>Single drug</td>
<td>Two or more drugs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Risk Score**
- Low risk is a score of 6 or less. High risk is a score of 7 or greater.

#### Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

#### Additional Descriptors

- **Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)** have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

  - Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
  - Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
  - Not Applicable
  - Unknown/Indeterminate

#### Residual Tumor (R)

- The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

  - RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
  - R0 No residual tumor
  - R1 Microscopic residual tumor
  - R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

#### General Notes:

- For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.
- "m" suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- "y" prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- "r" prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- "a" prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.
- Surgical margins is a data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.
- Neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotheraphy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued from previous page)
Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): ________________________________

National guidelines were used in treatment planning  □ NCCN  □ Other (describe): ________________

Physician signature

Date/Time
Gestational Trophoblastic Tumors Staging Form

Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
PART IX

Genitourinary Sites
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Penis

(Primary urethral carcinomas and melanomas are not included)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

The following changes in the definition of TNM and the Stage Grouping for this chapter have been made since the Sixth Edition:

- T1 has been subdivided into T1a and T1b based on the presence or absence of lympho-vascular invasion or poorly differentiated cancers.
- T3 category is limited to urethral invasion and prostatic invasion is now considered T4.
- Nodal staging is divided into both clinical and pathologic categories.
- The distinction between superficial and deep inguinal lymph nodes has been eliminated.
- Stage II grouping includes T1b N0M0 as well as T2-3 N0M0.

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T1-3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T1-3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C60.0 Prepuce
- C60.1 Glans penis
- C60.2 Body of penis
- C60.8 Overlapping lesion of penis
- C60.9 Penis, NOS

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

- 8000–8246, 8248–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981

INTRODUCTION

Incidence and Histology. Cancers of the penis are rare in the USA, although the incidence varies in different countries of the world. Most are squamous cell carcinomas that arise in the skin of the penile shaft or on the glans penis. Prognosis is favorable provided that the regional lymph nodes are not involved. Melanomas can also occur. The staging classification, however, applies to carcinomas. Melanoma staging is discussed in Chap. 31. Sarcomas of the penis have also been reported but are quite rare and staged according to Soft Tissue Sarcoma criteria in Chap. 28. Some squamous cancers of the penis may be described as distinct clinicopathologic entities such as verrucous carcinoma, which is well differentiated, has an expansile border, and is essentially nonmetastatic. In contrast, basaloid tumors are recognized as a poorly differentiated subtype of squamous carcinoma that is infiltrative and frequently metastasizes to the inguinal lymph nodes. These are included under this classification. An in situ lesion is also included and by definition should be coded as an in situ carcinoma of the penis.
ANATOMY

**Primary Site.** The penis is composed of three cylindrical masses of cavernous tissue bound together by fibrous tissue. Two masses are lateral and are known as the corpora cavernosa penis. The corpus spongiosum penis is a median mass and contains the greater part of the urethra. The distal expansion of the corpus spongiosum forms the glans penis. The penis is attached to the front and the sides of the pubic arch. The skin covering the penis is thin and loosely connected with the deeper parts of the organ. This skin at the root of the penis is continuous with that over the scrotum and perineum. Distally, the skin becomes folded upon itself to form the prepuce, or foreskin. Circumcision has been associated with a decreased incidence of cancer of the penis.

**Regional Lymph Nodes.** The regional lymph nodes are as follows:

- Superficial and deep inguinal (femoral)
- External iliac
- Internal iliac (hypogastric)
- Pelvic nodes, NOS

**Metastatic Sites.** Lung, liver, and bone are most often involved.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

The anatomic extent of the primary tumor plays an important role in clinical decision making with respect to management of the primary tumor and the likelihood of inguinal lymph node metastasis. Superficial tumors including stages Tis, Ta, and T1 are often managed using organ preserving strategies whereas stage T2–T4 tumors often require amputative approaches. However, T1 tumor substratification has been adopted based on the impact of lymphovascular invasion and its associated increased risk of lymph node metastasis that should prompt more aggressive care. Patients with direct extension into the prostate from the penile shaft have extensive tumors involving an adjacent organ (i.e., stage T4) with an accompanying poor prognosis. Thus, prostatic involvement is now appropriately staged as T4. Beyond management of the primary tumor clinicians must decide if the inguinal region is at risk for metastases from the primary tumor as the incidence and extent of metastases are the most important factors determining survival.

There is general consensus that in patients with palpable adenopathy there is a higher likelihood of finding metastasis, a lower survival, and thus lymphadenectomy is justified. There is also evolving consensus in the literature that among patients without palpable inguinal adenopathy with stage T2–3 tumors as well as those exhibiting lymphovascular invasion (LVI) or poorly differentiated tumors (without invasion of the corpora cavernosum or spongiosum) should still also undergo inguinal staging procedures.

However, there is also significant agreement that in patients with stage Tis, Ta, and T1 tumors without LVI, without poorly differentiated disease and with the absence of palpable adenopathy that careful surveillance without immediate lymphadenectomy is a rational strategy as the incidence of metastasis is less than 10% under these conditions. Patients identified with pathologic extranodal extension of cancer, clinically bulky inguinal masses, or pelvic adenopathy have an ominous prognosis with a 5-15% survival when treated with surgery alone. Patients with minimal nodal metastases exhibit the best disease free survival. In contrast, those with extranodal extension of cancer and pelvic lymph node metastases are rarely cured with surgery alone. Patients with multiple unilateral or bilateral nodes that do not exhibit extranodal extension or pelvic disease form an intermediate prognosis group (N2). Thus, clinical and pathologic staging information not only determines prognosis but forms the basis of integrating systemic chemotherapy or radiation into the treatment regimen for select patients with more advanced disease.

Lymphatic invasion and vascular embolism have been shown to be independent predictors of node involvement (Table 40.1).

The multiple variables in addition to anatomic stage that have been proposed as prognostic in penile carcinoma have been recently evaluated using an outcomes prediction nomogram tool to define lymph node involvement by Ficarra et al. Their group has proposed the prediction tool shown in Table 40.1 and which was designed and validated in 175 patients from 11 centers in Italy. This tool may serve as a clinically useful adjunct to standard anatomic staging enabling physicians to counsel patients regarding the selection of therapeutic interventions based on risk of clinical recurrence. This model will need to be validated in larger groups of patients prior to widespread implementation.

**TABLE 40.1** Lymphatic and vascular embolizations are independent predictive variables of inguinal lymph node involvement in patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the penis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>HR</th>
<th>95% CI</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumor thickness (5 mm vs. &gt;5 mm)</td>
<td>1.435</td>
<td>0.538–3.833</td>
<td>0.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pathologic tumor classification</td>
<td>2.288</td>
<td>1.118–4.684</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(pT1 vs. pT2 vs. pT2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histologic grade (Grade 1 vs. Grade 2–3)</td>
<td>4.268</td>
<td>1.278–14.364</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venous embolization (absent vs. present)</td>
<td>5.240</td>
<td>1.139–24.101</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphatic embolization (absent vs. present)</td>
<td>6.941</td>
<td>1.967–24.498</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HR hazard ratio; 95% CI 95% confidence interval.


According to the 1997 classification TNM system.
Clinical Staging

Primary Tumor. Clinical examination by palpation should be performed. Penile imaging studies may occasionally be useful. Histologic confirmation provided by an adequate excisional-incisional biopsy to determine the extent of anatomic invasion, tumor grade, and the presence of lymphovascular invasion is required.

Regional Lymph Nodes. Clinical examination by palpation of the inguinal region is required. Computed tomography is a useful adjunct to palpation in patients with palpable inguinal adenopathy or those in whom palpation is unreliable (i.e., obese, prior inguinal surgery)

Distant Metastasis. Clinical examination along with cross-sectional imaging and chest radiography should be performed as appropriate.

Pathologic Staging. Complete resection of the primary site with appropriate margins is required. Lymphadenectomy is performed in those patients felt to be at significant risk for metastasis by virtue of palpable adenopathy or histopathologic features of the primary tumor. Pathologic confirmation can also be achieved via lymph node biopsy of clinically suspicious lymph nodes. The definitions of primary tumor (T) for Ta, T1, T2, T3, and T4 are illustrated in Figures 40.1–40.5.

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

Primary Tumor (T)

TX Primary tumor cannot be assessed
T0 No evidence of primary tumor
Tis Carcinoma in situ
Ta Noninvasive verrucous carcinoma*
T1a Tumor invades subepithelial connective tissue without lymph vascular invasion and is not poorly differentiated (i.e., grade 3–4)
T1b Tumor invades subepithelial connective tissue with lymph vascular invasion or is poorly differentiated
T2 Tumor invades corpus spongiosum or cavernosum
T3 Tumor invades urethra
T4 Tumor invades other adjacent structures including prostate.

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
*Note: Broad pushing penetration (invasion) is permitted; destructive invasion is against this diagnosis.

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

*Clinical Stage Definition*
- cNX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- cN0: No palpable or visibly enlarged inguinal lymph nodes
- cN1: Palpable mobile unilateral inguinal lymph node
- cN2: Palpable mobile multiple or bilateral inguinal lymph nodes
- cN3: Palpable fixed inguinal nodal mass or pelvic lymphadenopathy unilateral or bilateral

*Note: Clinical stage definition based on palpation, imaging.

*Pathologic Stage Definition*
- pNX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- pN0: No regional lymph node metastasis
- pN1: Metastasis in a single inguinal lymph node
- pN2: Metastasis in multiple or bilateral inguinal lymph nodes
- pN3: Extranodal extension of lymph node metastasis or pelvic lymph node(s) unilateral or bilateral

*Note: Pathologic stage definition based on biopsy or surgical excision.

**Distant Metastasis (M)**
- M0: No distant metastasis
- M1: Distant metastasis

*Note: Lymph node metastasis outside of the true pelvis in addition to visceral or bone sites.

**Additional Descriptor.** The m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors and is recorded in parentheses – e.g., pTa (m) N0M0.

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T1-3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T1-3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)**

(Recommended for Collection)

- Required for staging: None
- Clinically significant:
  - Involvement of corpus spongiosum
  - Involvement of corpus cavernosum
  - Percent of tumor that is poorly differentiated
  - Verrucous carcinoma depth of invasion
  - Size of largest lymph node metastasis
  - Extranodal/extracapsular extension
  - HPV status

**HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)**

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value.
A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used.
If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

GX: Grade cannot be assessed
G1: Well differentiated
G2: Moderately differentiated
G3: Poorly differentiated
G4: Undifferentiated

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

Cell types are limited to carcinomas.
- Squamous cell carcinoma, not otherwise specified
- Verrucous carcinoma
- Papillary squamous carcinoma
- Warty squamous carcinoma
- Basaloid carcinoma

**BIBLIOGRAPHY**


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
## Penis Staging Form

### Clinical Extent of disease before any treatment

- Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- No evidence of primary tumor
- Carcinoma in situ
- Noninvasive verrucous carcinoma*
- Tumor invades subepithelial connective tissue without lymph vascular invasion and is not poorly differentiated (i.e., grade 3-4)
- Tumor invades subepithelial connective tissue with LVI or is poorly differentiated
- Tumor invades corpus spongiosum or cavernosum
- Tumor invades urethra
- Tumor invades other adjacent structures

*Note: Broad pushing penetration (invasion) is permitted - destructive invasion is against this diagnosis

### Pathologic Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery

- TX
- T0
- T1a
- T1b
- T2
- T3
- T4

### Pathological Staging

#### Primary Tumor (T)

- T0
- Tis
- Ta
- T1a
- T1b
- T2
- T3
- T4

#### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

- NX
- N0
- N1
- N2
- N3
- pNX
- pN0
- pN1
- pN2
- pN3

*Based upon palpation, imaging

**Based upon biopsy, or surgical excision

#### Distant Metastasis (M)

- M0
- M1

*No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)

*Note: Lymph node metastasis outside of the true pelvis in addition to visceral or bone sites.

---

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued on next page)
### Penis Staging Form

#### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GROUP</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

- **Required for Staging:** None

**Clinically Significant:**
- Involvement of corpus spongiosum
- Involvement of corpus cavernosum
- Percent of tumor that is poorly differentiated
- Verrucous carcinoma depth of invasion
- Size of largest lymph node metastasis
- Extranodal/extracapsular extension
- HPV Status

**Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)**

- **Grading system**
  - 2 grade system
  - 3 grade system
  - 4 grade system
  - No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

- **Grade**
  - Grade I or 1
  - Grade II or 2
  - Grade III or 3
  - Grade IV or 4

#### Additional Descriptors

**Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)** have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

#### General Notes:

- For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the “m” suffix and “y,” “r,” and “a” prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- **m** suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.

- **y** prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a “y” prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The “y” categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

- **r** prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the “r” prefix: rTNM.

- **a** prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

- **surgical margins** is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

#### Hospital Name/Address

#### Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

General Notes (continued):
neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): ________________________________

National guidelines were used in treatment planning
- NCCN
- Other (describe): ________________________________

Physician signature ________________________________ Date/Time ________________________________
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Prostate

(Sarcomas and transitional cell carcinomas are not included)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- Extraprostatic invasion with microscopic bladder neck invasion (T4) is included with T3a
- Gleason Score now recognized as the preferred grading system
- Prognostic factors have been incorporated in the Anatomic Stage/Prognostic Groups
  - Gleason Score
  - Preoperative prostate-specific antigen (PSA)

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>PSA</th>
<th>Gleason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1a-c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 10</td>
<td>≤6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 10</td>
<td>≤6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1-2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T1a-c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 20</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1a-c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA ≥10 &lt; 20</td>
<td>≤6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA ≥10 &lt; 20</td>
<td>≤6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 20</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 20</td>
<td>≤7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1-2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA ≥20</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1-2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Gleason ≥8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3a-b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* When either PSA or Gleason is not available, grouping should be determined by T stage and/or either PSA or Gleason as available.

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES
C61.9  Prostate gland

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES
8000–8110, 8140–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981

INTRODUCTION

Prostate cancer is the most common noncutaneous cancer in men, with increasing incidence in older age groups. Prostate cancer has a tendency to metastasize to bone. Earlier detection is possible with a blood test, prostate-specific antigen (PSA), and the diagnosis is generally made using transrectal ultrasound (TRUS) guided biopsy.

The incidence of both clinical and latent carcinoma increases with age. However, this cancer is rarely diagnosed clinically in men under 40 years of age. There are substantial limitations in the ability of both digital rectal examination (DRE) and TRUS to precisely define the size or local extent of disease; DRE is currently the most common modality used to define the local stage. Heterogeneity within the T1c category resulting from inherent limitations of either DRE or imaging to quantify the cancer may be balanced by the inclusion of other prognostic factors, such as histologic grade, PSA level, and possibly extent of cancer on needle biopsies that contain cancer. Diagnosis of clinically suspicious areas of the prostate can be confirmed histologically by needle biopsy. Less commonly, prostate cancer may be diagnosed by inspection of the
resected tissue from a transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) for obstructive voiding symptoms.

In the seventh edition of AJCC staging for prostate cancer, a few major changes have been made. The stage classification of true bladder neck invasion in prostate cancer has been an issue of controversy due to its uncommon occurrence and less well-defined clinical course. In the sixth edition (2002) of AJCC staging it was assigned to stage pT4. Several recent studies have demonstrated that bladder neck invasion is not an independent prognostic factor and that clinical outcome is likely to be better than in cases with seminal vesicle invasion, thus underscoring the necessity of classifying bladder neck invasion as pT3a disease rather than pT4 disease.

In the sixth edition of AJCC staging, the subclassification of pT2 was reverted to the scheme utilized in the fourth edition. Several recent studies including very large cohorts of patients have failed to demonstrate a significant prognostic difference between substages of pT2a vs. pT2b; some studies also show conflicting data on the prognostic significance of pT2c disease. For the seventh edition we have opted to retain the same schemata as the sixth edition to allow for accumulation of more data to address this issue. For the cT2 staging there are limited data in radiation-treated patients that justify maintaining the stratification as proposed currently.

TNM staging, particularly for organ-confined prostate cancers, had limitations. The sixth edition Stage Groups encompassed a wide variety of patients in this heterogeneous disease process. Several prognostic parameters including preoperative PSA levels, tumor volume (number of positive biopsy cores and length or percentage of cancer), and Gleason score have been incorporated into predictive nomograms and integrated algorithms. These tables and tools play an important role in patient counseling and attempt to individualize patient prognosis based on a number of data points. For this seventh edition of AJCC staging, we have maintained the core paradigm of TNM staging and have modified prognostic grouping categories based on clinical tumor stage, pretreatment serum PSA, and Gleason score. Major professional groups already employ PSA and Gleason score to define treatment for patients with T1 and T2, organ-confined disease, as evidenced by the treatment guidelines of the National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN) and the American Urological Association (AUA).

ANATOMY

Primary Site. Adenocarcinoma of the prostate most commonly arises within the peripheral zone of the gland, where it may be amenable to detection by DRE. A less common site of origin is the anteromedial prostate, the transition zone, which is remote from the rectal surface and is the site of origin of benign nodular hyperplasia. The central zone, which makes up most of the base of the prostate, seldom is the source of cancer but is often invaded by the spread of larger cancers. Pathologically, cancers of the prostate are often multifocal; 80–85% arise from peripheral zone, 10–15% from transitional zone, and 5–10% from central zone.

The histologic grade of the prostate cancer is important for prognosis. The histopathologic grading of these tumors can be complex because of the morphologic heterogeneity of prostate cancer and its inherent tendency to be multifocal. There have been many grading schemes proposed for prostate cancer. However, the scoring system for assessing this histologic pattern or prostate cancer with the highest reproducibility and best validation in relation to outcome is the Gleason score. This is now considered the grading scheme of choice and should be utilized in assessing all cases of prostate cancer.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The regional lymph nodes are the nodes of the true pelvis, which essentially are the pelvic nodes below the bifurcation of the common iliac arteries. They include the following groups:

- Pelvic, NOS
- Hypogastric
- Obturator
- Iliac (internal, external, or NOS)
- Sacral (lateral, presacral, promontory [Gerota’s], or NOS)

Laterality does not affect the N classification.

Distant Lymph Nodes. Distant lymph nodes lie outside the confines of the true pelvis. They can be imaged using ultrasound, computed tomography, magnetic resonance imaging, or lymphangiography. Although enlarged lymph nodes can occasionally be visualized on radiographic imaging, fewer patients are initially discovered with clinically evident metastatic disease. In lower risk patients, imaging tests have proven unhelpful. In lieu of imaging, risk tables are many times used to determine individual patient risk of nodal involvement prior to therapy. Involvement of distant lymph nodes is classified as M1a. The distant lymph nodes include the following:

- Aortic (para-aortic lumbar)
- Common iliac
- Inguinal, deep
- Superficial inguinal (femoral)
- Supraclavicular
- Cervical
- Scalene
- Retroperitoneal, NOS

Metastatic Sites. Osteoblastic metastases are the most common nonnodal site of prostate cancer metastasis. In addition, this tumor can spread to distant lymph nodes. Lung and liver metastases are usually identified late in the course of the disease.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. Primary tumor assessment includes digital rectal examination of the prostate and histologic or cytologic confirmation of prostate carcinoma. All information available
before the first definitive treatment may be used for clinical staging. Imaging techniques may be valuable in some cases; TRUS is the most commonly used imaging tool, but it has a poor ability to identify tumor location and extent. Tumor that is found in one or both lobes by needle biopsy, but is not palpable or visible by imaging, is classified as T1c. Considerable uncertainty exists about the ability of imaging to define the extent of a nonpalpable lesion (see the definition of T1c below). For research purposes, investigators should specify whether clinical staging into the T1c category is based on DRE only or on DRE plus TRUS. In general, most patients diagnosed in an environment of ubiquitous PSA screening will be at a low risk of positive nodes or metastases, and the risk of false-positive imaging studies in asymptomatic patients has exceeded the frequency of true-positive or true-negative studies in several reports. For this reason, in patients with Gleason scores less than 7 and PSA values <20 ng/mL, imaging studies will oftentimes not be helpful in staging and should not be routinely performed.

If either the DRE or PSA test suggests neoplasm, a transrectal ultrasound-guided needle biopsy of the prostate gland is usually performed in healthy men suspected of having prostate cancer. Alternatively, prostate cancer may be found in the tissue obtained during a transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP), although this procedure is becoming less common. Recent studies, however, support the notion that there are few clinical differences in outcome for patients with T1c compared to T2a. The major value of maintaining the category defined as T1c appears to be that it helps to define the clinical circumstances that resulted in a diagnosis being made (i.e., screening) and the lack of palpable disease. The distinction between T1c by palpation and T2a based on imaging is problematic however, because of (1) inconsistent use of imaging as a clinical staging tool, (2) interobserver variability of imaging modalities, and (3) the lack of sensitivity and specificity of imaging technologies.

The digital rectal examination (DRE) is still considered the “gold standard” for staging although it is insensitive for detecting extracapsular tumor extension. Although imaging could one day potentially improve clinical staging accuracy, interobserver reproducibility, problems with patient selection and contradictory results have limited the utility of imaging in clinical staging, and imaging alone cannot replace the DRE as the clinical staging standard. Transrectal ultrasound (TRUS) has not been proven to be satisfactory for predicting extracapsular extension. Color Doppler and power Doppler identify increased vascularity but have not yet been shown to improve staging accuracy. Similarly, contrast-enhanced and 3D US has not yet been tested or shown to improve the delineation of the cancer and prostate capsule. Endorectal coil magnetic resonance imaging MRI (erMRI) provides high spatial resolution. Three major techniques that have been used to stage prostate cancer with MRI are T2 weighted MRI, MR spectroscopic imaging (MRSI), and dynamic contrast-enhanced MRI (DCE-MRI). None of these approaches have been proven to be consistently helpful in staging attempts. Since the significant weight of the clinical data utilizes DRE, it remains the critical component of clinical staging.

Pathologic Staging. Documenting and reporting pathologic staging parameters in radical prostatectomy specimens is a key component in providing optimal management for patients. In general, total prostatectomy including regional lymph node dissection with full histologic evaluation is required for complete pathologic classification. However, under certain circumstances, pathologic T classification can be determined with other means. For example, (1) positive biopsy of the rectum permits a pT4 classification without prostatectomy, and (2) a biopsy revealing carcinoma in extraprostatic soft tissue permits a pT3 classification, as does a biopsy revealing adenocarcinoma infiltrating the seminal vesicles. There is no pT1 category because there is insufficient tissue to assess the highest pT category.

In addition to pathologic stage, independent prognostic factors for survival have been identified for prostate cancer. These include number of positive biopsy cores, comorbid illnesses, Gleason score, serum PSA, and surgical margin status.

It is of relevance to review studies assessing the practicality and prognostic significance of previous versions of the AJCC system with respect to prostate cancer particularly in terms of the clinical and pathological sub staging of pT2, pT3, and pT4 subgroups.

pT2. The sixth edition of the AJCC TNM staging system subdivides pT2 disease into three categories pT2a, pT2b, and pT2c as determined by involvement of one half of one side, more than one half of one side, and involvement of both sides of the prostate gland. This system has been relied upon as a broad surrogate to describe cancer volume, which can be correlated to risk of clinical relapse. Several retrospective outcome data analyses have challenged the utility of this subdivision and these data sets were reviewed during the creation of the seventh edition of the AJCC pathologic staging system. Insufficient evidence was found to justify collapsing pT2a and pT2b stages into a single stage, and in fact conflicting results exist in the currently available literature. No data exist to allow correlation of PT2 stage subgroups with survival in localized prostate cancer due to the indolent and prolonged clinical course of the disease. Continued follow-up and analysis of large multi-institutional data sets and central cancer registry data is encouraged to allow resolution of this question in future versions of the TNM system.

pT3. The sixth edition of the AJCC TNM staging system subdivides pT3 disease into two categories pT3a and pT3b as determined by the presence of extracapsular invasion in any location and presence of seminal vesicle invasion with or without extracapsular invasion. The 1992 version of the AJCC TNM system (fifth edition) subdivided patients with extracapsular extension into either unilateral or bilateral and separated seminal vesicle involvement. Several retrospective outcome data analyses have challenged the utility of eliminating this subdivision in the subsequent sixth edition.
A thorough review of these analyses has revealed conflicting evidence regarding the correlation of subdividing unilateral and bilateral extracapsular extension and biochemical recurrence rates following surgery. Again, definitive data do not exist to allow correlation of particular pT3 stage subgroupings with survival in localized prostate cancer, and a reversion to the previous subdividing classification was not made. Data continue to be accumulated in the NCDB and other institutional databases to help determine the pT3 staging system.

pT4. In the sixth edition of the AJCC TNM system pathologic T4 substage included patients with microscopic finding of bladder invasion. Four large retrospective analyses have addressed this issue, and each series has revealed that microscopic involvement of the bladder neck tissue by prostate cancer does not independently predict a significantly worse prognosis than extracapsular extension in general. Therefore, microscopic bladder neck invasion will now be considered within the category of pT3a.

Surgical Margin Status. Perhaps one of the more extensively debated aspects of pathologic staging and risk stratification is one that is technically not an element of the current AJCC TNM staging system, namely the status of surgical resection margins in radical prostatectomy specimens. There is controversy regarding the "parameters or elements" to be reported in the case of identifying positive surgical margins in resected glands. While most agree that the pT3 stage regardless of the margin status needs to be documented, there is no consensus on what aspects of surgical margin involvement are important to report. Although the status of surgical margins per se is not an element, the prognostic importance of the phenomenon including its potential impact for further postsurgical treatment and outcome is an important prognostic factor. In reporting pathologic results of prostatectomy specimens pT3 stage should be reported along with margin status and a positive surgical margin should be indicated by an R1 descriptor (residual microscopic disease) as is currently the case.

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

An increasing number of proposed molecular markers (such as ploidy, p53, and bcl-2) as well as other clinical features have been identified that may predict stage at diagnosis and outcomes following therapy. A number of algorithms have been published that enable the merging of these data to predict local stage, risk of positive nodes, or risk of treatment failure. Each of these predictive tools employ common as well as unique variables and vary in their evaluation technique. Within the confines of the TNM staging, the clinical predictors of serum prostate-specific antigen, Gleason score, and tumor stage all have a clear, recognized, and significant impact on prognosis.

Recent studies have demonstrated that Gleason score provides extremely important information about prognosis. In an analysis, conducted by the Radiation Therapy Oncology Group (RTOG), of nearly 1,500 men treated on prospective randomized trials, Gleason score was the single most important predictor of death from prostate cancer. Combined with the AJCC stage, investigators demonstrated that four prognostic subgroups could be identified that allowed disease-specific survival to be predicted at 5, 10, and 15 years. Additional studies conducted by the RTOG also demonstrated that a pretreatment PSA > 20 ng/ml predicts a greater likelihood of distant failure and a greater need for hormonal therapy. A recent validation study confirmed that a PSA > 20 ng/ml was associated with a greater risk of prostate cancer death.

Thus, in addition to the AJCC clinical stage, pretreatment PSA and Gleason score provide important prognostic information that might affect decisions regarding therapy. In an attempt to better stratify these patients compared to the previous stage groups and avoid the large number of patients previously placed in stage group 1, the seventh edition includes a new prognostic staging for clinically localized (T1 and T2) disease that include these clinically based variables. Any type of grouping scheme such as this will not apply equally well to every individual patient situation, and this grouping still is primarily based on anatomic clinical T staging, the crux of the TNM staging historically. Other clinical features as well as pathologic features postprostatectomy, such as the number/percentage of positive biopsies and surgical margin status, likely provide additional prognostic information, and other prognostic tools that go well beyond the TNM structure may be more accurate for an individual patient. As a result, data continue to be collected in the National Cancer Database by registrars to provide long-term confirmatory data on the independent impact of multiple variables on prognosis.

OUTCOMES BY STAGE, GRADE, AND PSA

A number of endpoints are useful in assessing disease outcomes following therapy. Because the vast majority of patients diagnosed with prostate cancer are diagnosed with clinically localized disease, similar to pretreatment tools, multiple predictive models for clinical outcome have been proposed posttherapy. Biochemical (or PSA)-free recurrence indicates the likelihood that a patient treated for prostate cancer remains free of recurrent disease as manifested by a rising PSA. Prostate cancer-specific survival and overall survival are key endpoints that many studies do not evaluate due to the length of follow-up required. Biochemical failure can be a useful surrogate endpoint to predict risk of death from prostate cancer in patients with a prolonged expected survival; however, the natural history of biochemical failure progressing to clinical disease recurrence is highly variable and may depend on multiple variables including TNM characteristics as well as PSA and PSA kinetics, Gleason sum, treatment modality, and timing of biochemical recurrence. Studies continue to evaluate predictors of ultimate outcome for patients following different therapies.
DEFINITIONS OF TNM

Primary Tumor (T)

Clinical
TX Primary tumor cannot be assessed
T0 No evidence of primary tumor
T1 Clinically inapparent tumor neither palpable nor visible by imaging
T1a Tumor incidental histologic finding in 5% or less of tissue resected
T1b Tumor incidental histologic finding in more than 5% of tissue resected
T1c Tumor identified by needle biopsy (e.g., because of elevated PSA)
T2 Tumor confined within prostate*
T2a Tumor involves one-half of one lobe or less
T2b Tumor involves more than one-half of one lobe but not both lobes
T2c Tumor involves both lobes
T3 Tumor extends through the prostate capsule**
T3a Extracapsular extension (unilateral or bilateral)
T3b Tumor invades seminal vesicle(s)
T4 Tumor is fixed or invades adjacent structures other than seminal vesicles such as external sphincter, rectum, bladder, levator muscles, and/or pelvic wall (Figure 41.1)

Pathologic (pT)*
pT2 Organ confined
pT2a Unilateral, one-half of one side or less
pT2b Unilateral, involving more than one-half of side but not both sides
pT2c Bilateral disease
pT3 Extraprostatic extension or microscopic invasion of bladder neck**
pT3b Seminal vesicle invasion
pT4 Invasion of rectum, levator muscles, and/or pelvic wall

*Note: Tumor found in one or both lobes by needle biopsy, but not palpable or reliably visible by imaging, is classified as T1c.

**Note: Invasion into the prostatic apex or into (but not beyond) the prostatic capsule is classified not as T3 but as T2.

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

Clinical
NX Regional lymph nodes were not assessed
N0 No regional lymph node metastasis
N1 Metastasis in regional lymph node(s)

Pathologic
pNX Regional nodes not sampled
pN0 No positive regional nodes
pN1 Metastases in regional node(s)

Distant Metastasis (M)*
M0 No distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis
M1a Nonregional lymph node(s)
M1b Bone(s)
M1c Other site(s) with or without bone disease

*Note: When more than one site of metastasis is present, the most advanced category is used. pM1c is most advanced.

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>PSA</th>
<th>Gleason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1a-c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 10</td>
<td>Gleason ≤ 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 10</td>
<td>Gleason ≤ 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1-2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA X</td>
<td>Gleason X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II A</td>
<td>T1a-c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 10</td>
<td>Gleason 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a-c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 10</td>
<td>Gleason ≤ 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 20</td>
<td>Gleason 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 20</td>
<td>Gleason ≤ 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA X</td>
<td>Gleason X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PROSTATE

FIGURE 41.1. T4 tumor invading adjacent structures other than seminal vesicles, such as bladder, rectum, levator muscles, and/or pelvic wall.
**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

*CONTINUED*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>PSA</th>
<th>Gleason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 – 2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA ≥ 20</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 – 2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Gleason ≥ 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3a – b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*When either PSA or Gleason is not available, grouping should be determined by T stage and/or either PSA or Gleason as available.*

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

This classification applies to adenocarcinomas and squamous carcinomas, but not to sarcoma or transitional cell (urothelial) carcinoma of the prostate. Adjectives used to describe histologic variants of adenocarcinomas of prostate include mucinous, signet ring cell, ductal, and neuroendocrine including small cell carcinoma. Transitional cell (urothelial) carcinoma of the prostate is classified as a urethral tumor (see Chap. 46). There should be histologic confirmation of the disease.

**BIBLIOGRAPHY**


Catalona WJ, Hudson MA, Scardino PT, et al. Selection of opti-

Chodak GW, Thisted RA, Gerber GS, et al. Results of conserva-

Chuang AY, et al. The significance of positive surgical margin in areas of capsular incision in otherwise organ confined dis-


Epstein JI, Pizov G, Walsh PC. Correlation of pathologic find-

Epstein JI, Partin AW, Sauvageot J, Walsh PC. Prediction of pro-


Ferguson JK, Bostwick DG, Suman V, et al. Prostate-specific anti-


Freedland SJ, Partin AW, Epstein JI, Walsh PC. Biochemical failure after radical prostatectomy in men with pathologic organ-


Henson DE, Hutter RV, Farrow G. Practice protocol for the exam-

Humphrey PA, Frazier HA, Vollmer RT, et al. Stratification of pathologic features in radical prostatectomy specimens that are predictive of elevated initial postoperative serum pros-

Iyer RV, Hanlon AL, Pinover WH, Hanks GE. Outcome eval-


McNeal JE, Villers AA, Redwine EA, et al. Histologic differen-


Optenberg SA, Clark JY, Brawer MK, Thompson IM, Stein CR, Friedrichs P. Development of a decision-making tool to pre-

Partin AW, Oesterling JE. The clinical usefulness of prostate-spe-


Poulos CK, et al. Bladder neck invasion is an independent pre-


**Prostate Staging Form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

☐ y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery

- Tumor Size: __________________
- Laterality: □ left □ right □ bilateral

☐ y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery

### PRIMARY TUMOR (T)

- TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- T0: No evidence of primary tumor
- T1: Clinically apparent tumor neither palpable nor visible by imaging
- T1a: Tumor incidental histologic finding in 5% or less of tissue resected
- T1b: Tumor incidental histologic finding in more than 5% of tissue resected
- T1c: Tumor identified by needle biopsy (e.g., because of elevated PSA)
- T2: Tumor confined within prostate*
  - pT2: Organ confined
  - pT2a: Tumor involves one-half of one lobe or less
  - pT2b: Tumor involves more than one-half of one lobe but not both lobes
  - pT2b: Tumor involves more than one-half of side but not both sides
  - pT2c: Tumor involves both lobes
- T3: Tumor extends through the prostate capsule**
  - pT3: Extraprostatic extension
  - pT3a: Extracapsular extension (unilateral or bilateral)
  - pT3a: Extraprostatic extension or microscopic invasion of bladder neck ***
- T3b: Tumor invades seminal vesicle(s)
  - pT3b: Seminal vesicle invasion
- T4: Tumor invades adjacent structures other than seminal vesicles: such as external sphincter, rectum, bladder, levator muscles, and/or pelvic wall
  - pT4: Invasion of rectum, levator muscles and/or pelvic wall

*Note: There is no pathologic T1 classification.

**Note: Invasion into the prostatic apex or into (but not beyond) the prostatic capsule is classified not as T3 but as T2.

***Note: Positive surgical margin should be indicated by an R1 descriptor (residual microscopic disease).

### REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)

- NX: Regional lymph nodes were not assessed
- pNX: Regional nodes not sampled
- N0: No regional lymph node metastasis
- pN0: No positive regional nodes
- N1: Metastasis in regional lymph node(s)
- pN1: Metastases in regional node(s)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS</th>
<th>PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(continued on next page)
### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

#### Clinical

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>PSA</th>
<th>Gleason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1–c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt;10</td>
<td>Gleason ≤ 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt;10</td>
<td>Gleason ≤ 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1–2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA X</td>
<td>Gleason X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T1a–c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 20</td>
<td>Gleason 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA ≥10 &lt; 20</td>
<td>Gleason ≤ 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 20</td>
<td>Gleason 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 20</td>
<td>Gleason 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA X</td>
<td>Gleason X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1–2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA ≥ 20</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1–2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3a–b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pathologic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>PSA</th>
<th>Gleason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1a–c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt;10</td>
<td>Gleason ≤ 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt;10</td>
<td>Gleason ≤ 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1–2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA X</td>
<td>Gleason X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T1a–c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 20</td>
<td>Gleason 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1a–c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA ≥ 10 &lt; 20</td>
<td>Gleason ≤ 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA ≥ 10 &lt; 20</td>
<td>Gleason ≤ 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 20</td>
<td>Gleason 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA &lt; 20</td>
<td>Gleason 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA X</td>
<td>Gleason X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1–2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>PSA ≥ 20</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1–2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3a–b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Any PSA</td>
<td>Any Gleason</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*When either PSA or Gleason is not available, grouping should be determined by T stage and/or either PSA or Gleason as available.

### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Required for Staging:** Prostate Specific Antigen: _______________

**Gleason score:** _______________

**Clinically Significant:**

- Gleason primary and secondary patterns: _______________
- Gleason Tertiary Pattern: _______________
- Clinical Staging procedures performed: _______________
- Number of biopsy cores examined: _______________
- Number of biopsy cores positive for cancer: _______________

**General Notes:**

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

The m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
Histologic Grade (G)

Grading system
- Gleason X  Gleason score cannot be processed
- Gleason ≤ 6  Well differentiated (slight anaplasia)
- Gleason 7  Moderately differentiated (moderate anaplasia)
- Gleason 8-10  Poorly differentiated/undifferentiated (marked anaplasia)

ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS
Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX  Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0  No residual tumor
- R1  Microscopic residual tumor
- R2  Macroscopic residual tumor

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

National guidelines were used in treatment planning  NCCN  Other (describe):

Physician signature  Date/Time

HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS  PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION

(continued on next page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
### Testis

#### At-A-Glance

**SUMMARY OF CHANGES**

- The definition of TNM and the Stage Grouping for this chapter have not changed from the Sixth Edition

#### ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>S (Serum Tumor Markers)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
<td>pTis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>pT1–4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>SX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>pT1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>pT2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pT3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pT4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IS</td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S1–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N1–3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>SX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIC</td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>SX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>S1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N1–3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>S2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N1–3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>S3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>Any S</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C62.0 Undescended testis
- C62.1 Descended testis
- C62.9 Testis, NOS

#### ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

INTRODUCTION

Cancers of the testis are usually found in young adults and account for less than 1% of all malignancies in males. However, during the twentieth century, the incidence has more than doubled. Cryptorchidism is a predisposing condition, and other associations include atypical germ cells and multiple atypical nevi. Germ cell tumors of the testis are categorized into two main histologic types: seminomas and nonseminomas. The latter group is composed of either individual or combinations of histologic subtypes, including embryonal carcinoma, teratoma, choriocarcinoma, and yolk sac tumor. The presence of elevation in serum tumor markers, including alpha-fetoprotein (AFP), human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), and lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), is frequent in this disease. Staging and prognostication are based on determination of the extent of disease and assessment of serum tumor markers. The TNM staging system for male germ cell tumors incorporates serum tumor marker elevation as a separate category of staging information. Cancer of the testis is highly curable, even in cases with advanced, metastatic disease.

Since the sixth edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, there are no changes in anatomic or tumor marker staging that require a change in the AJCC staging for testis cancer.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The testes are composed of convoluted seminiferous tubules with a stroma containing functional endocrine interstitial cells. Both are encased in a dense capsule, the tunica albuginea, with fibrous septa extending into the testis and separating them into lobules. The tubules converge and exit at the mediastinum of the testis into the rete testis and efferent ducts, which join a single duct. This duct—the epididymis—coils outside the upper and lower poles of the testicle and then joins the vas deferens, a muscular conduit that accompanies the vessels and lymphatic channels of the spermatic cord. The major route for local extension of cancer is through the lymphatic channels. The tumor emerges from the mediastinum of the testis and courses through the spermatocord. The major route for local extension of cancer is through the lymphatic channels. The tumor emerges from the mediastinum of the testis and courses through the spermatocord. Occasionally, the epididymis is invaded early, and then the external iliac nodes may become involved. If there has been previous scrotal or inguinal surgery prior to the presentation of the testis tumor, inguinal nodes are considered regional only after scrotal or inguinal surgery prior to the presentation of the testis tumor. All nodes outside the regional nodes are distant. Nodes along the spermatic vein are considered regional.

Metastatic Sites. Distant spread of testicular tumors occurs most commonly to the lymph nodes, followed by metastases to the lung, liver, bone, and other visceral sites. Stage is dependent on the extent of disease and on the determination of serum tumor markers. Extent of disease includes assessment for involvement and size of regional lymph nodes, evidence of disease in nonregional lymph nodes, and metastases to pulmonary and nonpulmonary visceral sites. The stage is subdivided on the basis of the presence and degree of elevation of serum tumor markers. Serum tumor markers are measured immediately after orchiectomy and, if elevated, should be measured serially after orchiectomy to determine whether normal decay curves are followed. The physiological half-life of AFP is 5–7 days, and the half-life of HCG is 24–48 h. The presence of prolonged half-life times implies the presence of residual disease after orchiectomy. It should be noted that in some cases, tumor marker release may occur (e.g., in response to chemotherapy or handling of a primary tumor intraoperatively) and may cause artificial elevation of circulating tumor marker levels. The serum level of LDH has prognostic value in patients with metastatic disease and is included for staging.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. Staging of testis tumors includes determination of the T, N, M, and S categories. Clinical examination and histologic assessment are required for clinical staging. Radiographic assessment of the chest, abdomen, and pelvis is necessary to determine the N and M status of disease. Serum tumor markers, including AFP, hCG, and LDH, should be obtained prior to orchiectomy, but levels after orchiectomy are used to complete the status of the serum tumor markers (S), taking into account the half life of AFP and hCG. Stage grouping classification of Stage IS requires persistent elevation of serum tumor markers following orchiectomy.

Pathologic Staging. Histologic evaluation of the radical orchiectomy specimen must be used for the pT classification. The gross size of the tumor should be recorded. Careful gross examination should determine whether
the tumor is intra- or extratesticular. If intratesticular, it should be determined whether the tumor extends through the tunica albuginea and whether it invades the epididymis and/or spermatic cord. Tissue sections should document these findings. The tumor should be sampled extensively, including all grossly diverse areas (hemorrhagic, mucoid, solid, cystic, etc.). The junction of tumor and nonneoplastic testis and at least one section remote from the tumor should be obtained to determine whether intratubular germ cell neoplasia (carcinoma in situ) is present. These sections will allow assessment of either the presence or absence of vascular invasion. If possible, most tissue sections should include overlying tunica albuginea. Small tumors (2 cm or less) may be submitted in toto. In larger tumors, a sufficient amount of tissue should be sampled, perhaps one section for each 1 or 2 cm of maximum tumor diameter.

The specimens from a defined node-bearing area (such as retroperitoneal lymph node dissection) must be used for the pN classification. Retroperitoneal lymph node dissection should be oriented by the surgeon. All lymph nodes should be dissected, and the diameters of the largest nodes should be recorded, along with the number of lymph nodes involved by tumor. Extraneal soft tissue extension of disease should be noted, if present. It is important to examine carefully and liberally sample the specimen, including cystic, fibrotic, hemorrhagic, necrotic, and solid areas. Laterality does not affect the N classification. In posttreatment specimens, it may be difficult to distinguish individual lymph nodes. The definitions for primary tumor (T) for pT2 and pT3 are illustrated in Figures 42.1 and 42.2.

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

**Primary Tumor (T)**

The extent of primary tumor is usually classified after radical orchiectomy, and for this reason, a pathologic stage is assigned.

- **pTX** Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- **pT0** No evidence of primary tumor (e.g., histologic scar in testis)
- **pTis** Intratubular germ cell neoplasia (carcinoma in situ)
- **pT1** Tumor limited to the testis and epididymis without vascular/lymphatic invasion; tumor may invade into the tunica albuginea but not the tunica vaginalis
- **pT2** Tumor limited to the testis and epididymis with vascular/lymphatic invasion, or tumor extending through the tunica albuginea with involvement of the tunica vaginalis
- **pT3** Tumor invades the spermatic cord with or without vascular/lymphatic invasion
- **pT4** Tumor invades the scrotum with or without vascular/lymphatic invasion

*Note: Except for pTis and pT4, extent of primary tumor is classified by radical orchiectomy. TX may be used for other categories in the absence of radical orchiectomy.*

FIGURE 42.1. pT2 Tumor extending through the tunica albuginea with involvement of the tunica vaginalis.

FIGURE 42.2. pT3 Tumor invades the spermatic cord.
Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

Clinical
NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
N0 No regional lymph node metastasis
N1 Metastasis with a lymph node mass 2 cm or less in greatest dimension; or multiple lymph nodes, none more than 2 cm in greatest dimension
N2 Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension; or multiple lymph nodes, any one mass greater than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension
N3 Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 5 cm in greatest dimension

Pathologic (pN)
pNX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
pN0 No regional lymph node metastasis
pN1 Metastasis with a lymph node mass 2 cm or less in greatest dimension and less than or equal to five nodes positive, none more than 2 cm in greatest dimension
pN2 Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension; or more than five nodes positive, none more than 5 cm; or evidence of extranodal extension of tumor
pN3 Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 5 cm in greatest dimension

Distant Metastasis (M)
M0 No distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis
M1a Nonregional nodal or pulmonary metastasis
M1b Distant metastasis other than to nonregional lymph nodes and lung

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>S (Serum Tumor Markers)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
<td>pTis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>pT1–4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>SX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>pT1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>Any pT1/Tx</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIC</td>
<td>Any pT1/Tx</td>
<td>N1–3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>Any pT1/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>SX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>Any pT1/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>S0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>Any pT1/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>S1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>Any pT1/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>S2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)
(Recommended for Collection)

Required for staging
SX Marker studies not available or not performed
S0 Marker study levels within normal limits
S1 LDH < 1.5 × N * and hCG (mlu/ml) < 5,000 and AFP (ng/ml) < 1,000
S2 LDH 1.5–10 × N or hCG (mlu/ml) 5,000–50,000 or AFP (ng/ml) 1,000–10,000
S3 LDH > 10 × N or hCG (mlu/ml) > 50,000 or AFP (ng/ml) > 10,000

* N indicates the upper limit of normal for the LDH assay.

Serum tumor marker levels should be measured prior to orchiectomy, but levels after orchiectomy are used for assignment of S category, taking into account the half life of AFP and hCG. Stage grouping classification of Stage IS require persistent elevation of serum tumor markers following orchiectomy.

The Serum Tumor Markers (S) category comprises the following:

- Alpha fetoprotein (AFP) – half life 5–7 days
- Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) – half life 1–3 days
- Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH)

Clinically significant Size of largest metastases in lymph nodes

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

Following the guidelines of the World Health Organization Histological Classification of Tumours, germ cell tumors may be either seminomatous or nonseminomatous. Seminomas may be classic type or with syncytiotrophoblasts. A distinct variant is spermatocytic seminoma, which is characteristically found in older patients, is often associated with intratumoral calcification, and tends not to metastasize. The presence of an elevated AFP level in a patient with pure seminoma found at orchiectomy should be classified as having nonseminomatous germ cell tumor. Nonseminomatous germ cell tumors may be pure (embryonal carcinoma, yolk sac tumor, teratoma, choriocarcinoma) or mixed. Mixtures of these types (including seminoma) should be noted, starting with the most prevalent component and ending with the least represented. Similarly, gonadal stromal tumors should be classified according to the World Health Organization Histological Classification of Tumours.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
## Clinical Extent of Disease Before Any Treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extent of Disease Before Any Treatment</th>
<th>Tumor Size: ____________________</th>
<th>Laterality: □ left □ right □ bilateral</th>
<th>Extent of Disease Through Completion of Definitive Surgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□ y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>□ y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Primary Tumor (T)

- **pTX**: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- **pT0**: No evidence of primary tumor (e.g., histologic scar in testis)
- **pTis**: Intratubular germ cell neoplasia (carcinoma in situ)
- **pT1**: Tumor limited to the testis and epididymis without vascular/lymphatic invasion; tumor may invade into the tunica albuginea but not the tunica vaginalis
- **pT2**: Tumor limited to the testis and epididymis with vascular/lymphatic invasion, or tumor extending through the tunica albuginea with involvement of the tunica vaginalis
- **pT3**: Tumor invades the spermatic cord with or without vascular/lymphatic invasion
- **pT4**: Tumor invades the scrotum with or without vascular/lymphatic invasion

*Except for pTis and pT4, extent of primary tumor is classified by radical orchiectomy. TX may be used for other categories in the absence of radical orchiectomy.

### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

- **NX**: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0**: No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1**: Metastasis with a lymph node mass 2 cm or less in greatest dimension; or multiple lymph nodes, none more than 2 cm in greatest dimension
- **pN1**: Metastasis with a lymph node mass 2 cm or less in greatest dimension and less than or equal to 5 nodes positive, none more than 2 cm in greatest dimension
- **N2**: Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension; or multiple lymph nodes, any one mass greater than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension
- **pN2**: Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension; or more than 5 nodes positive, none more than 5 cm; or evidence of extranodal extension of tumor
- **N3**: Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 5 cm in greatest dimension
- **pN3**: Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 5 cm in greatest dimension

### Distant Metastasis (M)

- **M0**: No distant metastasis
- **M1**: Distant metastasis
- **M1a**: Nonregional nodal or pulmonary metastasis
- **M1b**: Distant metastasis other than to non-regional lymph nodes and lung

---

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued on next page)
## Testis Staging Form

### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLINICAL GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>S (serum tumor markers)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 pTis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I pT1–4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA pT1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB pT2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB pT3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB pT4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IS Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S1–3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N1–3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>SX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIC Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>SX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N1–3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N1–3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>S3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>Any S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PATHOLOGIC GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>S (serum tumor markers)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 pTis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I pT1–4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>SX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA pT1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB pT2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB pT3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB pT4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IS Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S1–3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N1–3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>SX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIC Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td>S1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>SX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>S0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>S2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>S2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any pT/Tx</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>Any S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**REQUIRED FOR STAGING:** Serum Tumor Markers (S)

- SX: Marker studies not available or not performed
- S0: Marker study levels within normal limits
- S1: LDH < 1.5 X N AND hCG (mIU/ml) < 5000 AND AFP (ng/ml) < 1000
- S2: LDH 1.5–10 X N OR hCG (mIU/ml) 5000–50,000 OR AFP (ng/ml) 1000–10,000
- S3: LDH > 10 X N OR hCG (mIU/ml) > 50,000 OR AFP (ng/ml) > 10,000

*N indicates the upper limit of normal for the LDH assay.

Serum tumor marker levels should be measured prior to orchietomy, but levels after orchietomy are used for assignment of S category, taking into account the half life of AFP and hCG. Stage grouping classification of Stage IS requires persistent elevation of serum tumor markers following orchietomy.

The Serum Tumor Markers (S) category is comprised of the following:
- Alpha Fetoprotein (AFP) — half life 5–7 days
- Human Chorionic Gonadotropin (hCG) — half life 1–3 days
- Lactate Dehydrogenase (LDH)

**Clinically Significant:**
- Size of Largest Metastases in Lymph Nodes:
- Radical Orchietomy Performed

### General Notes:

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

The Serum Tumor Markers (S) category is comprised of the following:
- Alpha Fetoprotein (AFP) — half life 5–7 days
- Human Chorionic Gonadotropin (hCG) — half life 1–3 days
- Lactate Dehydrogenase (LDH)

**Clinically Significant:**
- Size of Largest Metastases in Lymph Nodes:
- Radical Orchietomy Performed

---

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**
**Histologic Grade (G)** (also known as overall grade)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grading system</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS**

Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

General Notes (continued):

- \(y\) prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The \(cTNM\) or \(pTNM\) category is identified by a ‘\(y\)’ prefix. The \(y\)\(cTNM\) or \(y\)\(pTNM\) categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The ‘\(y\)’ categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

- \(r\) prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the ‘\(r\)’ prefix: \(rTNM\).

- \(a\) prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: \(aTNM\).

- Surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

- Neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning

Physician signature ___________________________ Date/Time ___________________________

HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS

PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION

(continued on next page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
## At-A-Glance

### SUMMARY OF CHANGES

The following changes in the definition of TNM and the Stage Grouping for this chapter have been made since the Sixth Edition:

- **T2** lesions have been divided into **T2a** (>7 cm but less than or equal to 10 cm) and **T2b** (>10 cm).
- Ipsilateral adrenal involvement is reclassified as **T4** if contiguous invasion and **M1** if not contiguous.
- Renal vein involvement is reclassified as **T3a**.
- Nodal involvement is simplified to **N0** vs. **N1**.

### ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1 or T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0 or N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C64.9 Kidney, NOS

### ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

- 8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981

## INTRODUCTION

Cancers of the kidney account for 3% of all malignancies and are amongst the most lethal of the urologic cancers. Nearly all malignant tumors are carcinomas arising from the renal tubular epithelium or, less frequently, from the renal pelvis (see Chap. 44). These tumors are more common in males by a 3/2 ratio. Most are sporadic, but 2–3% are hereditary. Pain and hematuria are potential presenting signs and 3–5% of patients may present with evidence of vascular tumor thrombus. The majority of kidney tumors are now being detected incidentally in asymptomatic individuals. Common sites of metastasis include the lungs, lymph nodes, liver, bone, and brain. Staging depends on the size of the primary tumor, invasion of adjacent structures, and vascular extension.

Since publication of the sixth edition of the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* compelling evidence has accumulated that supports division of T2 tumors and reclassification of the T3a and N categories. The rationale for division of T2 into T2a (>7 cm but not more than 10 cm) and T2b (>10 cm) is based on large retrospective cohort studies with extended follow-up that demonstrate substantially different outcomes for these subgroups. These differences in outcomes were also observed in the National Cancer Data Base as outcomes were examined for renal cell carcinoma (RCC) (Figure 43.1). The National Cancer Data Base (NCDB) findings were confirmed regarding impact of size on T2 category on cancer-specific and observed survival (Table 43.1).

Multiple studies have documented a poor prognosis for patients with ipsilateral adrenal involvement similar to patients with T4 or M1 disease, and these tumors are now reclassified to reflect current concepts about likely mechanisms of spread.

In contrast, tumors with isolated renal vein thrombus are known to have a relatively favorable prognosis and are now...
staged as T3a rather than T3b. Finally, nodal involvement is now consolidated as N1 since most studies suggest a relatively poor prognosis with any extent of nodal involvement.

Recent data also demonstrate that multiple adverse features can act in a collaborative manner to further worsen the prognosis and emerging algorithms are incorporating all of these parameters. These adverse features include perirenal fat invasion, tumor size as a continuous variable, size of the largest involved lymph node, and extranodal extension. In addition, there are a number of potential molecular prognostic factors including genetic variables, proliferative markers, angiogenic parameters, growth factors and receptor, and adhesion molecules. Most have not been formally validated and are best still considered experimental. Ideally future staging protocols would capture this information to facilitate individualized counseling and foster further progress in this field. Specific factors to be examined include degree of invasion, the presence/level of venous involvement, the presence and type of adrenal gland involvement, the type of grading system employed and grade determined, the presence/absence of sarcomatoid features, the presence/absence of lymphovascular invasion, and the presence/absence of necrosis.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. Encased by a fibrous capsule and surrounded by perirenal fat, the kidney consists of the cortex (glomeruli, convoluted tubules) and the medulla (Henle’s loops, collecting ducts, and pyramids of converging tubules). Each papilla opens in the minor calices; these in turn unite in the major calices and drain into the renal pelvis. At the hilus are the pelvis, ureter, and renal artery and vein. Gerota’s fascia overlies the psoas and quadratus lumborum muscles. The anatomic sites and subsites of the kidney are illustrated in Figure 43.2.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The regional lymph nodes, illustrated in Figure 43.3, are as follows:

- Renal hilar
- Caval (paracaval, precaval, and retrocaval)
- Interaortocaval
- Aortic (paraaortic, preaortic, and retroaortic)

The primary landing zone for right sided tumors is the interaortocaval zone and for left sided tumors the aortic region. The more extended landing zones for RCC are analogous to those for right and left testicular tumors, respectively, although patterns of spread are somewhat more unpredictable. Lymph nodes outside of these templates should be considered distal (metastatic) rather than regional.

Metastatic Sites. Common metastatic sites include the bone, liver, lung, brain, and distant lymph nodes.

---

**TABLE 43.1.** The National Cancer Data Base findings regarding impact of size on T2 category on all-cause mortality and observed survival

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size (cm)</th>
<th>Dx</th>
<th>1 Year</th>
<th>2 Years</th>
<th>3 Years</th>
<th>4 Years</th>
<th>5 Years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>≤4.0</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>93.7</td>
<td>88.8</td>
<td>84.5</td>
<td>79.8</td>
<td>75.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95% CI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>74.6–76.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1–7.0</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>90.6</td>
<td>83.6</td>
<td>77.6</td>
<td>72.5</td>
<td>67.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95% CI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>67.0–68.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1–10.0</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>84.9</td>
<td>75.0</td>
<td>68.1</td>
<td>62.5</td>
<td>57.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95% CI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>55.9–58.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;10.0</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>78.7</td>
<td>66.3</td>
<td>58.8</td>
<td>52.5</td>
<td>47.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95% CI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>46.1–48.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Data from the National Cancer Data Base (http://www.facs.org/cancer/ncdb/index.html).

---

**FIGURE 43.1.** Observed survival rates for 37,166 patients with kidney cancer classified by the current AJCC staging classification. Data taken from the National Cancer Data Base (Commission on Cancer of the American College of Surgeons and the American Cancer Society) for the years 2001–2002. Stage I includes 18,912 patients; Stage II, 4,443; Stage III, 5,952; and Stage IV, 7,859.

**FIGURE 43.2.** Anatomic sites and subsites of the kidney.
RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

This classification applies only to renal cell carcinomas. Adenoma is excluded. There should be histologic confirmation of disease.

Clinical Staging. Clinical examination, abdominal computed tomography scanning, and other appropriate imaging techniques are required for assessment of the primary tumor and its extensions, both local and distant. Evaluation for distant metastasis should be done by laboratory biochemical studies, chest radiographs, and if clinically indicated, additional studies.

Pathologic Staging. Histologic examination and confirmation of extent required. Resection of the primary tumor, overlying Gerota’s fascia, and overlying perinephric fat is recommended. Careful assessment of the adrenal gland and regional lymph nodes is recommended with resection on a selective basis. Partial nephrectomy is an acceptable treatment for localized tumors amenable to this approach and is the preferred form of management when preservation of renal function is at issue. For staging purposes, pathologic tumor size is preferred.

Specimen Handling. The pathologic specimen should be processed in such a fashion as to allow for full pathologic assessment. Perinephric and perisinus fat should be left intact and sectioned in such a manner that allows for careful evaluation of these regions and they should be defined independently. Recent studies suggest a worse prognosis with perisinus fat invasion that may be related to increased access to lymphatic and vascular structures. For specimens for partial nephrectomy, the margins should be evaluated from at least two sections and should include the renal sinus for central tumors. For patients with familial RCC or for whom multiple tumors are suspected, thin sections will be needed (0.3–1.0 cm).

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES AND INTEGRATED ALGORITHMS

Established prognostic factors for various subgroups of patients with RCC include tumor-related factors, patient-related factors, and laboratory biochemical tests. Integrated algorithms that incorporate these factors have been validated and have been shown to improve prognostication over anatomic tumor stage alone. The use of these instruments for estimating prognosis and patient counseling can aid in decision-making.

Prognostic Features for RCC

- Tumor related: Stage, tumor size, tumor grade, histologic type, histologic tumor necrosis, sarcomatoid transformation
- Patient related: Asymptomatic vs. local symptoms vs. systemic symptoms, performance status, substantial weight loss, presence of well-defined paraneoplastic syndrome, metastasis free interval, history of prior nephrectomy
- Laboratory biochemical tests: Elevated LDH levels, hypercalcemia, anemia, thrombocytosis, elevated ESR or CRP

These prognostic and predictive algorithms may be useful in guiding patient counseling and therapy (Table 43.2). However, caution should be exercised if used for this purpose as the extent to which the utility of each algorithm has been validated varies. Each used different data sets for development, and the specifics of the data elements used in their application must be precise. In addition, new factors and predictors continue to be discovered and studied. To promote broader use, transparency, and applicability, we hope that future algorithms will utilize the core anatomic elements as specified in the AJCC Staging System.
DEFINITIONS OF TNM

**Primary Tumor (T)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor 7 cm or less in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>Tumor 4 cm or less in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney (Figure 43.4A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>Tumor more than 4 cm but not more than 7 cm in greatest dimension limited to the kidney (Figure 43.4B)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor more than 7 cm in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney (Figure 43.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>Tumor more than 7 cm but less than or equal to 10 cm in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>Tumor more than 10 cm, limited to the kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor extends into major veins or perinephric tissues but not into the ipsilateral adrenal gland and not beyond Gerota's fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>Tumor grossly extends into the renal vein or its segmental (muscle containing) branches, or tumor invades perirenal and/or renal sinus fat but not beyond Gerota's fascia (Figure 43.6A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>Tumor grossly extends into the vena cava below the diaphragm (Figure 43.6B)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3c</td>
<td>Tumor grossly extends into the vena cava above the diaphragm or invades the wall of the vena cava (Figure 43.6C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor invades beyond Gerota's fascia (Figure 43.6A) (including contiguous extension into the ipsilateral adrenal gland) (Figure 43.6B)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Metastasis in regional lymph node(s) (Figure 43.7)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Distant Metastasis (M)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**TABLE 43.2. Predictive algorithms for renal cell carcinoma**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Institution</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Extent of disease</th>
<th>Tumor subtype</th>
<th>Prognostic indicators</th>
<th>Prognostic information</th>
<th>Presentation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preoperative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleveland Clinic</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>Localized</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Tumor size, symptoms, age, gender, smoking history</td>
<td>Pathology</td>
<td>Nomogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Many Institutions</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>Localized</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Tumor size, symptoms, performance status, age, gender, comorbidity, radiographic lymphadenopathy, necrosis</td>
<td>Recurrence</td>
<td>Nomogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postoperative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSKCC</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Localized</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Anemia, corrected calcium level, performance status</td>
<td>Survival</td>
<td>Algorithm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSKCC</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>Metastatic</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>TNM stage, tumor size, nuclear grade, histological necrosis, microvascular invasion, symptoms</td>
<td>Recurrence</td>
<td>Nomogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSKCC</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Localized</td>
<td>Clear cell</td>
<td>TNM stage, tumor size, nuclear grade, histological necrosis, microvascular invasion, symptoms</td>
<td>Recurrence</td>
<td>Nomogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCLA</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Localized</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>TNM stage, nuclear grade, performance status</td>
<td>Survival</td>
<td>Algorithm, decision boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCLA</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Localized, metastatic</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>TNM stage, nuclear grade, performance status, metastasis</td>
<td>Survival</td>
<td>Algorithm, decision boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCLA</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Metastatic</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Lymph node status, constitutional symptoms, metastasis location, histology, TSH level</td>
<td>Survival</td>
<td>Algorithm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mayo Clinic</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Localized, metastatic</td>
<td>Clear cell</td>
<td>TNM stage, tumor size, nuclear grade, histological necrosis</td>
<td>Survival</td>
<td>Algorithm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mayo Clinic</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Metastatic</td>
<td>Clear cell</td>
<td>Symptoms; location, number of sites and complete resection of metastases; IVC thrombus level; nuclear grade; histological necrosis</td>
<td>Survival</td>
<td>Algorithm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FIGURE 43.4. (A) T1a: Tumor 4 cm or less in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney. (B) T1b: Tumor more than 4 cm but not more than 7 cm in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney.

FIGURE 43.5. (A) T2a: Tumor more than 7 cm in greatest dimension but less than or equal to 10 cm, limited to the kidney. (B) T2b tumors are greater than 10 cm.
**FIGURE 43.6.** (A) (Left) T3a: Invasion into perirenal and/or renal sinus fat but not beyond Gerota's fascia. (Right) T3a: In addition to perirenal and/or renal sinus fat, tumor grossly invades into the renal vein. (B) T3b: Tumor grossly extends into the vena cava below the diaphragm. (C) T3c: Tumor grossly extends into vena cava above diaphragm or invades the wall of the vena cava.

**FIGURE 43.7.** (A) T4: Invasion beyond Gerota's fascia. (B) T4: Invasion into ipsilateral adrenal gland.
## ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>1 or 2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0 or N1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

- **Required for staging**: None
- **Clinically significant**: Invasion beyond capsule into fat or peri-sinus tissues, Venous involvement, Adrenal extension, Fuhrman grade, Sarcomatoid features, Histologic tumor necrosis, Extranodal extension, Size of metastasis in lymph nodes

## HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

- Clear cell (conventional) renal carcinoma
- Papillary renal cell carcinoma
- Chromophobe renal cell carcinoma
- Collecting duct carcinoma and renal medullary carcinoma
- Unclassified renal cell carcinoma
- Others

## HISTOLOGIC GRADE

- **GX**: Grade cannot be assessed
- **G1**: Well differentiated
- **G2**: Moderately differentiated
- **G3**: Poorly differentiated
- **G4**: Undifferentiated

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

### Kidney Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>CLINICAL</strong></th>
<th><strong>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</strong></th>
<th><strong>PATHOLOGIC</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td><strong>TUMOR SIZE:</strong></td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>☐ left ☐ right ☐ bilateral</td>
<td>☐ y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PRIMARY TUMOR (T)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor 7 cm or less in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>Tumor 4 cm or less in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>Tumor more than 4 cm but not more than 7 cm in greatest dimension limited to the kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor more than 7 cm in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>Tumor more than 7 cm but less than or equal to 10 cm in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>Tumor more than 10 cm, limited to the kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor extends into major veins or perinephric tissues but not into the ipsilateral adrenal gland and not beyond Gerota’s fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>Tumor grossly extends into the renal vein or its segmental (muscle containing) branches, or tumor invades perirenal and/or renal sinus fat but not beyond Gerota’s fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>Tumor grossly extends into the vena cava below the diaphragm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3c</td>
<td>Tumor grossly extends into the vena cava above the diaphragm or invades the wall of the vena cava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor invades beyond Gerota’s fascia (including contiguous extension into the ipsilateral adrenal gland)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### DISTANT METASTASIS (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### CLINICAL GROUP T N M

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1 or T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0 or N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PATHOLOGIC GROUP T N M

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1 or T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0 or N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1 N0 M0</td>
<td>T1 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2 N0 M0</td>
<td>T2 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1 or T2 N1 M0</td>
<td>T1 or T2 N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T3 N0 or N1 M0</td>
<td>T3 N0 or N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4 Any N M0</td>
<td>T4 Any N M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T Any N M1</td>
<td>Any T Any N M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hospital Name/Address

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Name/Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(continued on next page)
PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)

REQUIRED FOR STAGING: None

CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:
Invasion beyond capsule into fat or perisinus tissues:
Venous involvement:
Adrenal Extension:
Fuhrman Grade:
Sarcomatoid features:
Histologic tumor necrosis:
Extranodal extension:
Size of metastasis in lymph nodes:

Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

Grading system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>2 grade system</th>
<th>3 grade system</th>
<th>4 grade system</th>
<th>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS

Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):
- National guidelines were used in treatment planning
- NCCN
- Other (describe):

Physician signature

Date/Time

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

General Notes:
For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

- Surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

- Neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Renal Pelvis and Ureter

At-A-Glance

**SUMMARY OF CHANGES**

- The definition of TNM and the Stage Grouping for this chapter have not changed from the Sixth Edition
- Grading: a low- and high-grade designation will replace previous four-grade system to match current World Health Organization/International Society of Urologic Pathology (WHO/ISUP) recommended grading system

### ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage 0a</th>
<th>Ta</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0is</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C65.9 Renal pelvis
- C66.9 Ureter

### ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

- 8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981

---

**INTRODUCTION**

Urothelial (transitional cell) carcinoma may occur at any site within the upper urinary collecting system from the renal calyx to the ureterovesical junction. The tumors occur most commonly in adults and are rare before 40 years of age. There is a two- to threefold increase in incidence in men than in women. The lesions are often multiple and are more common in patients with a history of urothelial carcinoma of the bladder. In addition to cigarette smoking a number of analgesics (such as phenacetin) have also been associated with this disease. Local staging depends on the depth of invasion. A common staging system is used regardless of tumor location within the upper urinary collecting system, except for category T3, which differs between the pelvis or calyceal system and the ureter.

**ANATOMY**

**Primary Site.** The renal pelvis and ureter form a single unit that is continuous with the collecting ducts of the renal pyramids and comprises the minor and major calyces, which are continuous with the renal pelvis. The ureteropelvic junction is variable in position and location but serves as a “landmark” that separates the renal pelvis and the ureter, which continues caudal and traverses the wall of the urinary bladder as the intramural ureter opening in the trigone of the bladder at the ureteral orifice. The renal pelvis and ureter are composed of the following layers: epithelium, subepithelial connective tissue, and muscularis, which is continuous with a connective tissue adventitial layer. It is in this outer layer that the major blood supply and lymphatics are found.
The intrarenal portion of the renal pelvis is surrounded by renal parenchyma; the extrarenal pelvis, by perihilar fat. The ureter courses through the retroperitoneum adjacent to the parietal peritoneum and rests on the retroperitoneal musculature above the pelvic vessels. As it crosses the vessels and enters the deep pelvis, the ureter is surrounded by pelvic fat until it traverses the bladder wall.

**Regional Lymph Nodes.** The regional lymph nodes for the renal pelvis are as follows:

- Renal hilar
- Paracaval
- Aortic
- Retroperitoneal, NOS

The regional lymph nodes for the ureter are as follows:

- Renal hilar
- Iliac (common, internal [hypogastric], external)
- Paracaval
- Periureteral
- Pelvic, NOS

Any amount of regional lymph node metastasis is a poor prognostic finding, and outcome is minimally influenced by the number, size, or location of the regional nodes that are involved.

**Metastatic Sites.** Distant spread is most commonly to lung, lymph nodes, bone, or liver.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

**Clinical Staging.** Primary tumor assessment includes radiographic imaging, usually by intravenous and/or retrograde pyelography. Computerized tomography scanning can be used to assess regional nodes. Ureteroscopic visualization of the tumor is desirable, and tissue biopsy through the ureteroscope may be performed if feasible. Urine cytology may help determine tumor grade if tissue is not available. Staging of tumors of the renal pelvis and ureter is not influenced by the presence of any concomitant bladder tumors that may be identified, although it may not be possible to identify the true source of the primary tumor in the presence of metastases if both upper- and lower-tract tumors are present. In that situation, the tumor of highest grade and/or stage is most likely to have contributed to the nodal or metastatic spread.

**Pathologic Staging.** Pathologic staging depends on histologic determination of the extent of invasion by the primary tumor. Treatment frequently requires resection of the entire kidney, ureter, and a cuff of bladder surrounding the ureteral orifice. Appropriate regional nodes may be sampled. A more conservative surgical resection may be performed, especially with distal ureteral tumors or in the presence of compromised renal function.

Endoscopic resection through a ureteroscope or a percutaneous approach may be used in some circumstances. Submitted tissue may be insufficient for accurate histologic examination and will often be insufficient for adequate pathologic staging. Laser or electrocautery coagulation or vaporization of the tumor may be performed, especially if the visible appearance is consistent with a low-grade and low-stage tumor. Under these circumstances, there may be no material available for histologic review. Figures 44.1 and 44.2 illustrate the primary tumor (T) definition for Ta, T1, T2, and T3.

**FIGURE 44.1.** Depth of invasion of Ta–T2 tumors.

**FIGURE 44.2.** T3 (for renal pelvis only, top of diagram): tumor invades beyond muscularis into peripelvic fat or the renal parenchyma. T3 (for ureter only, bottom of diagram): tumor invades beyond muscularis into periureteric fat.
DEFINITIONS OF TNM

**Primary Tumor (T)**
- **TX** Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- **T0** No evidence of primary tumor
- **Ta** Papillary noninvasive carcinoma
- **Tis** Carcinoma in situ
- **T1** Tumor invades subepithelial connective tissue
- **T2** Tumor invades the muscularis
- **T3** (For renal pelvis only) Tumor invades beyond muscularis into peripelvic fat or the renal parenchyma T3. (For ureter only) Tumor invades beyond muscularis into periureteric fat
- **T4** Tumor invades adjacent organs, or through the kidney into the perinephric fat

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**
- **NX** Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0** No regional lymph node metastasis
- **N1** Metastasis in a single lymph node, 2 cm or less in greatest dimension
- **N2** Metastasis in a single lymph node, more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension; or multiple lymph nodes, none more than 5 cm in greatest dimension
- **N3** Metastasis in a lymph node, more than 5 cm in greatest dimension

*Note: Laterality does not affect the N classification.*

**Distant Metastasis (M)**
- **M0** No distant metastasis
- **M1** Distant metastasis

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

| Stage 0a | T0 | N0 | M0 |
| Stage 0is | Tis | N0 | M0 |
| Stage I | T1 | N0 | M0 |
| Stage II | T2 | N0 | M0 |
| Stage III | T3 | N0 | M0 |
| Stage IV | T4 | N0 | M0 |
| Any T | N1 | M0 |
| Any T | N2 | M0 |
| Any T | N3 | M0 |
| Any T | Any N | M1 |

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

| Required | None |
| Clinically significant | Renal parenchymal invasion World Health Organization/International Society of Urologic Pathology (WHO/ISUP) grade |

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. For urothelial histologies, a low- and high-grade designation is used to match the current World Health Organization/International Society of Urologic Pathology (WHO/ISUP) recommended grading system:

- **LG** Low grade
- **HG** High grade

If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

- **GX** Grade cannot be assessed
- **G1** Well differentiated
- **G2** Moderately differentiated
- **G3** Poorly differentiated
- **G4** Undifferentiated

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

The histologic types are as follows:

- Urothelial (transitional cell) carcinoma
  - In situ
    - Papillary
    - Flat
    - With squamous differentiation
    - With glandular differentiation
    - With squamous and glandular differentiation
  - Squamous cell carcinoma
  - Adenocarcinoma
  - Undifferentiated carcinoma

The predominant cancer is urothelial (transitional cell) carcinoma. Histologic variants include micropapillary and nested subtypes.

OUTCOMES RESULTS

Observed survival rates for 6,174 patients with renal pelvis and ureter cancer classified by the current AJCC staging classification from 2000 to 2002 are shown in Figure 44.3.


FIGURE 44.3. Observed overall survival rates for 6,174 patients with renal pelvis and ureter cancer classified by the current AJCC staging classification. Data taken from the National Cancer Data Base (Commission on Cancer of the American College of Surgeons and the American Cancer Society) for the years 2000 to 2002. Stage 0a includes 1,434 patients; Stage 0is, 263; Stage I, 1,472; Stage II, 669; Stage III, 1,198; Stage IV, 1,138.
# Renal Pelvis and Ureter Staging Form

**CLINICAL**
**Extent of disease before any treatment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TUMOR SIZE:</th>
<th>LATERALITY:</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>TX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td>right</td>
<td>T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papillary noninvasive carcinoma</td>
<td>bilateral</td>
<td>Ta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades subepithelial connective tissue</td>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades the muscularis</td>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(For renal pelvis only) Tumor invades beyond muscularis into peripelvic fat or the renal parenchyma T3. (For ureter only) Tumor invades beyond muscularis into periureteric fat</td>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades adjacent organs, or through the kidney into the perinephric fat</td>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRIMARY TUMOR (T)**

- TX
- T0
- Ta
- Tis
- T1
- T2
- T3
- T4

**REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)**

- NX
- N0
- N1
- N2
- N3

- Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- No regional lymph node metastasis
- Metastasis in a single lymph node, 2 cm or less in greatest dimension
- Metastasis in a single lymph node, more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension; or multiple lymph nodes, none more than 5 cm in greatest dimension
- Metastasis in a lymph node, more than 5 cm in greatest dimension

- N0
- N1
- N2
- N3

**DISTANT METASTASIS (M)**

- M0
- M1

- No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- Distant metastasis

**ANATOMIC STAGE • PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

**CLINICAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0a</td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0is</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PATHOLOGIC**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0a</td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0is</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Stage unknown**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS</th>
<th>PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(continued on next page)
### Renal Pelvis and Ureter Staging Form

#### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Required for Staging:** None  
**Clinically Significant:**  
Renal parenchymal invasion: ____________________________  
World Health Organization/International Society of Urologic Pathology (WHO/ISUP) grade: ____________________________

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Additional Descriptors

Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**  
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**General Notes:**  
For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

**Surgical margins** is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

**Neoadjuvant treatment** is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): ____________________________
- National guidelines were used in treatment planning  
  - NCCN  
  - Other (describe): ____________________________

**Hospital Name/Address**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Name/Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>________________________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued from previous page)
Urinary Bladder

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- Primary staging: T4 disease defined as including prostatic stromal invasion directly from bladder cancer. Subepithelial invasion of prostatic urethra will not constitute T4 staging status.
- Grading: a low and high grade designation will replace previous 4 grade system to match current World Health Organization/International Society of Urologic Pathology (WHO/ISUP) recommended grading system.
- Nodal classification:
  - Common iliac nodes defined as secondary drainage region as regional nodes and not as metastatic disease.
  - N staging system change:
    - N1: single positive node in primary drainage regions
    - N2: multiple positive nodes in primary drainage regions
    - N3: common iliac node involvement.

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0a</td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0is</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1-3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C67.0 Trigone of bladder
- C67.1 Dome of bladder
- C67.2 Lateral wall of bladder
- C67.3 Anterior wall of bladder
- C67.4 Posterior wall of bladder
- C67.5 Bladder neck
- C67.6 Ureteric orifice
- C67.7 Urachus
- C67.8 Overlapping lesion of bladder
- C67.9 Bladder, NOS

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

- 8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981
INTRODUCTION

Bladder cancer is one of the most common malignancies in Western society, and it occurs more commonly in males. Predisposing factors include smoking, exposure to chemicals such as phenacetin and dyes, and schistosomiasis. It has also been suggested that the incidence of this disease correlates inversely with fluid intake. Hematuria is the most common presenting feature. Bladder cancer can present as a low or high-grade papillary lesion, as a high-grade in situ lesion that can occupy large areas of the mucosal surface, or as an infiltrative cancer that invades the bladder wall and progresses into the perivesical tissues, regional lymph nodes and can thereafter metastasize. Noninvasive papillary lesions have a relatively low risk for progression to invasive disease; however, this risk is dependent on the grade of the lesion (i.e., high vs. low grade). High-grade papillary and in situ lesions may be associated with a malignant course, including invasion of the bladder wall and the subsequent development of regional and/or distant metastases. The most common histologic variant is urothelial (transitional cell) carcinoma, although this may exhibit features of glandular or squamous differentiation. In less than 10% of cases, pure adenocarcinoma or squamous carcinoma of the bladder may occur, and less frequently, sarcoma, lymphoma, small cell anaplastic carcinoma, pheochromocytoma, or choriocarcinoma. Squamous carcinoma is associated with schistosomiasis, inflammation, and smoking.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The urinary bladder consists of three layers: the epithelium and the subepithelial connective tissue (also referred to as lamina propria), the muscularis propria, and the perivesical fat (peritoneum covering the superior surface and upper part). In the male, the bladder adjoins the rectum and seminal vesicle posteriorly, the prostate inferiorly, and the pubis and peritoneum anteriorly. In the female, the vagina is located posteriorly and the uterus superiorly. The bladder is located extraperitoneally.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The regional lymph nodes draining the bladder include primary and secondary nodal drainage regions. Primary lymph nodes include the external iliac, hypogastric and obturator basins. The presacral nodes are classified as a primary drainage region; however, mapping studies have found this area to be a less frequent site of primary regional metastases. Primary nodal regions drain into the common iliac nodes, which constitute a secondary drainage region. Regional lymph node staging is of significant prognostic importance given the negative impact on recurrence after treatment and long-term survival. The relevant information from regional lymph node staging is obtained from the extent of disease within the nodes (number of positive nodes, extranodal extension) not in whether metastases are unilateral or contralateral. Overall 5-year survival in node positive bladder cancer following definitive local therapy is approximately 33%; however, patients with a greater node burden may be expected to do significantly worse.

Regional nodes include the following:

- **Primary Drainage**
  - Hypogastric
  - Obturator
  - Iliac (internal, external, NOS)
  - Perivesical Pelvic, NOS
  - Sacral (lateral, sacral promontory [Gerota’s])
  - Presacral
- **Secondary Drainage**
  - Common iliac

The common iliac nodes are considered sites of secondary regionally lymphatic involvement.

Metastatic Sites. Distant spread is most commonly to retroperitoneal lymph nodes, lung, bone, and liver.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. Primary tumor assessment includes bimanual examination under anesthesia before and after endoscopic surgery (biopsy or transurethral resection) and histologic verification of the presence or absence of tumor when indicated. Bimanual examination following endoscopic surgery is an indicator of clinical stage. The finding of bladder wall thickening, a mobile mass, or a fixed mass suggests the presence of T3 and/or T4 disease, respectively. The suffix “m” is added to denote multiple tumors. The suffix “is” is added to any T to indicate associated carcinoma in situ. Appropriate imaging techniques for extravesical extension of the primary tumor and lymph node evaluation should be incorporated into clinical staging. Care should be taken when interpreting postbiopsy scans as biopsy-induced inflammatory changes may lead to overstaging. When indicated, evaluation for distant metastases includes imaging of the chest, biochemical studies, and isotopic studies to detect common metastatic sites. Computed tomography, MRI, or other modalities may be used to supply information concerning minimal requirements for staging. As yet, the role of positron emission tomography (PET) scanning using current standard isotopes (FDG-glucose) in the staging and management of bladder cancer has not been defined. The primary tumor may be noninvasive or invasive and can be partially or totally resected with sufficient tissue from the tumor base for evaluation of full depth of tumor invasion. Repeat resection of early invasive tumors (T1) can provide optimal staging information, and multiple biopsies can be taken from other suspicious sites to rule out a field effect; urinary cytology and upper tract imaging are important. It should be recalled that bladder cancer may occur in association with malignancies of the ureters, renal pelvis, or urethra. The definitions for Primary Tumor (T) are illustrated in Figure 45.1.
Urinary Bladder

Pathologic Staging. Pathologic staging is based on the histologic review of the radical or partial cystectomy specimen. Microscopic examination and confirmation of extent are required. Total cystectomy and lymph node dissection generally are required for this staging; however, a pathologic staging classification should be given for partial cystectomy specimens. Laterality does not affect the N classification. Pathologic staging should include the findings of the cystectomy specimen following surgery and should be assigned independent of previous clinical or biopsy information that is used for clinical stage assignment.

Adequate nodal staging requires removal of the primary lymph node regions that include the left and right external iliac, hypogastric and obturator nodes. Skip metastases to secondary drainage sites (common iliac nodes) are uncommon. Based on contemporary mapping studies in which standard techniques were used to evaluate the pathologic specimen, excision of the primary nodal regions should result in an average of >12 lymph nodes. Evaluation of the National Cancer Database revealed a significant difference in survival in those patients who had fewer than four lymph nodes removed compared with those who had more than four lymph nodes removed, even in patients with node negative (N0) disease. This should serve as a guide for the number of lymph nodes to be evaluated for optimized staging after radical cystectomy. However, the lymph nodes examined may vary dependent on previous patient treatment, body habitus, and pathologic technique.

The number of lymph nodes examined from the operative specimen and the number of positive lymph nodes have been reported to be associated with survival. In addition, the size of the largest tumor deposit and presence of extranodal extension may independently impact survival. A pN status should be assessed regardless of the number of nodes examined. If no lymph nodes are evaluated pNX status should be assigned.

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

Prognostic features for bladder cancer include a variety of pathologic, clinical, and molecular characteristics. Primary tumor stage and grade are important independent predictors of tumor progression and outcome. More recently morphologic prognostic features including lymphovascular invasion and variants of the pattern of tumor growth, such as micropapillary and nested variants, have been found to portend an adverse outcome. Lymph node status has a profound effect on the risk of tumor recurrence and patient survival. Various
lymph node parameters demonstrating prognostic significance include the total number of excised lymph nodes, the number of positive lymph nodes, extranodal tumor extension, and the ratio of number of positive lymph nodes to total number of lymph nodes evaluated.

Several molecular factors with prognostic importance have been identified for bladder cancer. These markers are involved in the regulation of the cell cycle, programmed cell death, growth factor signaling, and angiogenesis. Two distinct molecular pathways for bladder tumor progression have been established. Noninvasive tumors appear to progress through a pathway that involves the frequent alteration to chromosome 9, specifically 9q deletions. In contrast, high-grade tumors are associated with a loss of heterozygosity of chromosome 17p, 14q, 5q, 3p. Alterations to the TP53 and RB pathways play a central role in the progression of high-grade bladder cancer. Additional regulatory proteins including p21/WAF1, p16, p14ARF, and MDM2 have also been implicated in the dysregulation of cell growth via both TP53/RB-dependent and -independent pathways. Overexpression of tyrosine-kinase receptors that effect signaling of many growth factors including epidermal growth factor (EGF), vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), and HER2/neu have been identified as prognostically relevant alterations in bladder cancer.

Ploidy has been investigated as a prognostic factor. In superficial disease, an aneuploid DNA content is associated with shorter disease-free survival and with an increased chance of progression to a higher stage; however, in invasive and metastatic disease, the majority of cases are aneuploid, thus reducing the role of aneuploid DNA content as a discriminant of outcome. In the setting of advanced disease, patient performance status, the presence of visceral metastases, and elevated levels of alkaline phosphatase are important predictors of response to systemic therapy and patient survival.

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

**Primary Tumor (T)**

| TX | Primary tumor cannot be assessed |
| T0 | No evidence of primary tumor |
| Ta | Noninvasive papillary carcinoma |
| Tis | Carcinoma in situ: “flat tumor” |
| T1 | Tumor invades subepithelial connective tissue |
| T2 | Tumor invades muscularis propria |
| pT2a | Tumor invades superficial muscularis propria (inner half) |
| pT2b | Tumor invades deep muscularis propria (outer half) |
| T3 | Tumor invades perivesical tissue |
| pT3a | Microscopically |
| pT3b | Macroscopically (extravesical mass) |
| T4 | Tumor invades any of the following: prostatic stroma, seminal vesicles, uterus, vagina, pelvic wall, abdominal wall |
| T4a | Tumor invades prostatic stroma, uterus, vagina |
| T4b | Tumor invades pelvic wall, abdominal wall |

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**

Regional lymph nodes include both primary and secondary drainage regions. All other nodes above the aortic bifurcation are considered distant lymph nodes.

- **NX**: Lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0**: No lymph node metastasis
- **N1**: Single regional lymph node metastasis in the true pelvis (hypogastric, obturator, external iliac, or presacral lymph node)
- **N2**: Multiple regional lymph node metastasis in the true pelvis (hypogastric, obturator, external iliac, or presacral lymph node metastasis)
- **N3**: Lymph node metastasis to the common iliac lymph nodes

**Distant Metastasis (M)**

- **M0**: No distant metastasis
- **M1**: Distant metastasis

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS**

| Stage 0a | Ta | N0 | M0 |
| Stage 0is | Tis | N0 | M0 |
| Stage I | T1 | N0 | M0 |
| Stage II | T2a | N0 | M0 |
| T2b | N0 | M0 |
| Stage III | T3a | N0 | M0 |
| T3b | N0 | M0 |
| T4a | N0 | M0 |
| T4b | N0 | M0 |
| Stage IV | Any T | N1-3 | M0 |
| Any T | Any N | M1 |

**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)**

(Recommended for Collection)

- **Required for staging**: None
- **Clinically significant**: Presence or absence of extranodal extension

**HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)**

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. For urothelial histologies, a low- and high-grade designation is used to match the current World Health Organization/
International Society of Urologic Pathology (WHO/ISUP) recommended grading system:

LG    Low grade
HG    High grade

If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

GX    Grade cannot be assessed
G1    Well differentiated
G2    Moderately differentiated
G3    Poorly differentiated
G4    Undifferentiated

**HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE**

The histologic types are as follows:

- Urothelial (transitional cell) carcinoma
  - In situ
  - Papillary
  - Flat
  - With squamous differentiation
  - With glandular differentiation
  - With squamous and glandular differentiation

- Squamous cell carcinoma
- Adenocarcinoma
- Undifferentiated carcinoma

The predominant cancer is urothelial (transitional cell) carcinoma. Histologic variants include micropapillary and nested subtypes.

**BIBLIOGRAPHY**


### Urinary Bladder Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Tumor Size:</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☑ y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>Laterality:</td>
<td>☑ y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>☐ left ☐ right ☐ bilateral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>TX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td>T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Non-invasive papillary carcinoma</td>
<td>Ta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ: “flat tumor”</td>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor invades subepithelial connective tissue</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor invades muscularis propria</td>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor invades superficial muscularis propria (inner half)</td>
<td>pT2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor invades deep muscularis propria (outer half)</td>
<td>pT2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor invades perivesical tissue</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>microscopically</td>
<td>pT3a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>macroscopically (extravesical mass)</td>
<td>pT3b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor invades any of the following: prostatic stroma, seminal vesicles, uterus, vagina, pelvic wall, abdominal wall</td>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor invades prostatic stroma, uterus, vagina</td>
<td>T4a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumor invades pelvic wall, abdominal wall</td>
<td>T4b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

- Lymph nodes cannot be assessed: NX
- No lymph node metastasis: N0
- Single regional lymph node metastasis in the true pelvis (hypogastric, obturator, external iliac or presacral lymph node): N1
- Multiple regional lymph node metastasis in the true pelvis (hypogastric, obturator, external iliac or presacral lymph node metastasis): N2
- Lymph node metastasis to the common iliac lymph nodes: N3

### Distant Metastasis (M)

- No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group): M0
- Distant metastasis: M1

### Anatomic Stage + Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0a</td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0is</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1-3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0a</td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0is</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1-3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hospital Name/Address

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Name/Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(continued on next page)
**PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)**

**REQUIRED FOR STAGING:** None

**CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:**

Presence or absence of extranodal extension: ________________________________

Size of the largest tumor deposit in the lymph nodes: ________________________

World Health Organization/International Society of Urologic Pathology (WHO/ISUP) grade : __________

**General Notes:**

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

**Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade system</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS**

Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

Residual Tumor (R)

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**m suffix** indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.

**y prefix** indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

**r prefix** indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.

**a prefix** designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

**surgical margins** is a data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

**neoadjuvant treatment** is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

**Clinical stage** was used in treatment planning (describe): __________________________

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning
- NCCN
- Other (describe):

________________________________________

________________________________________

Physician signature Date/Time

**HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS**

**PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION**

(continued from previous page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

![Diagram of Urinary Bladder Staging Form]

**AW** Anterior wall
**TR** Trigone
**D** Dome
**N** Neck
**PU** Prostatic urethra
**PS** Prostatic substance

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

---

*In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.*
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Urethra

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

● For urothelial (transitional cell) carcinoma of the prostate, T1 category is defined as tumors invading subepithelial connective tissue

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage 0a</th>
<th>Ta</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0is</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tis pu</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tis pd</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

C68.0 Urethra

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981

INTRODUCTION

Cancer of the urethra is a rare neoplasia that is found in both sexes but more common in females. The cancer may be associated in males with chronic stricture disease and in females with urethral diverticula. Tumors of the urethra may be of primary origin from the urethral epithelium or ducts, or they may be associated with multifocal urothelial neoplasia. Histologically, these tumors may represent the spectrum of epithelial neoplasms, including squamous, glandular (adenocarcinoma), or urothelial (transitional cell) carcinoma. Prostatic urethral neoplasms arising from the prostatic urethral epithelium or from the periurethral portion of the prostatic ducts are considered urethral neoplasms as distinct from those arising elsewhere in the prostate (see Chap. 41). These tumors will be staged in conjunction with bladder staging for urothelial neoplasms to differentiate them from primary urethral cancers.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The male penile urethra consists of mucosa, submucosal stroma, and the surrounding corpus spongiosum. Histologically, the meatal and parameatal urethra are lined with squamous epithelium; the penile and bulbomembranous urethra with pseudostratified or stratified columnar epithelium, and the prostatic urethra with urothelium (transitional epithelium). There are scattered islands of stratified squamous epithelium and glands of Lilleté liberally situated throughout the entire urethra distal to the prostate portion.

The epithelium of the female urethra is supported on subepithelial connective tissue. The periurethral glands of Skene are concentrated near the meatus but extend along the entire urethra. The urethra is surrounded by a longitudinal layer of smooth muscle continuous with the bladder. The urethra is contiguous to the vaginal wall. The distal two-thirds of the urethra is lined with squamous epithelium, the proximal one-third
with urothelium (transitional epithelium). The periurethral glands are lined with pseudostratified and stratified columnar epithelium.

**Regional Lymph Nodes.** The regional lymph nodes are as follows:

- Inguinal (superficial or deep)
- Iliac (common, internal [hypogastric], obturator, external)
- Presacral
- Sacral, NOS
- Pelvic, NOS

The significance of regional lymph node metastasis in staging urethral cancer lies in the number and size, not in whether unilateral or bilateral.

**Metastatic Sites.** Distant spread is most commonly to lung, liver, or bone.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

**Clinical Staging.** Radiographic imaging, cystourethroscopy, palpation, and biopsy or cytology of the tumor prior to definitive treatment are desirable. The site of origin should be confirmed to exclude metastatic disease.

**Pathologic Staging.** The assignment of stage for nonprostatic urethral tumors is based on depth of invasion. Prostatic urethral tumor may arise from the prostatic epithelium or from the distal portions of the prostatic ducts and will be classified as prostatic urethral neoplasms. Other prostatic malignancies will be classified under prostate.

Figures 46.1 and 46.2 illustrate Primary Tumor (T) definitions for urethral malignancies and urothelial (transitional cell) carcinoma of the prostate.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Primary Tumor (T)</strong> (Male and Female)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Urothelial (Transitional Cell) Carcinoma of the Prostate**

| Tis pu | Carcinoma in situ, involvement of the prostatic urethra |
| Tis pd | Carcinoma in situ, involvement of the prostatic ducts |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Regional Lymph Nodes (N)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FIGURE 46.1.** Definition of primary tumor (T) for Ta, T1, and T2 with depth of invasion ranging from the epithelium to the urogenital diaphragm.
Distant Metastasis (M)
M0 No distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0a</td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0is</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tis pu</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tis pd</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. For urothelial histologies, a low- and high-grade designation is used to match the current World Health Organization/International Society of Urologic Pathology (WHO/ISUP) recommended grading system:

- LG Low grade
- HG High grade

If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

- GX Grade cannot be assessed
- G1 Well differentiated
- G2 Moderately differentiated
- G3 Poorly differentiated
- G4 Undifferentiated

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

The classification applies to urothelial (transitional cell), squamous, and glandular carcinomas of the urethra and to urothelial (transitional cell) carcinomas of the prostate and prostatic urethra. There should be histologic or cytologic confirmation of the disease.

BIBLIOGRAPHY


**Urethra Staging Form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRIMARY TUMOR (T)</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>TX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-invasive papillary, polypoid, or verrucous carcinoma</td>
<td>T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
<td>Ta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades subepithelial connective tissue</td>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades any of the following: corpus spongiosum, prostate, periurethral muscle</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades any of the following: corpus cavernosum, beyond prostatic capsule, anterior vagina, bladder neck</td>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades any of the following: corpus cavernosum, beyond prostatic capsule, periurethral muscle</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades other adjacent organs</td>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urothelial (Transitional Cell) Carcinoma of the Prostate</td>
<td>Tis pu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma in situ, involvement of the prostatic urethra</td>
<td>Tis pd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades urethral subepithelial connective tissue</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades any of the following: prostatic stroma, corpus spongiosum, periurethral muscle</td>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades any of the following: corpus cavernosum, beyond prostatic capsule, bladder neck (extraprostatic extension)</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor invades other adjacent organs (invasion of the bladder)</td>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastasis in a single lymph node 2 cm or less in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastasis in a single node more than 2 cm in greatest dimension, or in multiple nodes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DISTANT METASTASIS (M)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hospital Name/Address</th>
<th>Patient Name/Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued on next page)
# Urethra Staging Form

## Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0a</td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0is</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis pu</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis pd</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Stage unknown

## Pathologic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0a</td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0is</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis pu</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis pd</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Stage unknown

## Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Required for Staging:** None

**Clinically Significant:**
World Health Organization/International Society of Urologic Pathology (WHO/ISUP) grade __________

**Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grading system</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade system</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade system</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade system</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Additional Descriptors**

*Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)* have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

## General Notes:

- For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

  - **m** suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.

  - **y** prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

  - **r** prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or
with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of
incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX  Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0  No residual tumor
- R1  Microscopic residual tumor
- R2  Macroscopic residual tumor

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

National guidelines were used in treatment planning  NCCN  Other (describe):

Physician signature

Date/Time

General Notes (continued):
A prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.
Surgical margins is data field
recorded by registrars describing the
surgical margins of the resected
primary site specimen as determined
only by the pathology report.
Neoadjuvant treatment is radiation
therapy or systemic therapy
(consisting of chemotherapy,
hormone therapy, or immunotherapy)
administered prior to a definitive
surgical procedure. If the surgical
procedure is not performed, the
administered therapy no longer meets
the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS

PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION

Urethra

513
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Adrenal

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- The definition of TNM and the Stage Grouping for this chapter has been created for the first time for the Seventh Edition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS</th>
<th>ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I  T1  N0  M0</td>
<td>C74.0  Cortex of adrenal gland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II T2  N0  M0</td>
<td>C74.9  Adrenal gland, NOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III T1  N1  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2  N1  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3  N0  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV T3  N1  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4  N0  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4  N1  M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T  Any N  M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INTRODUCTION

The adrenal gland can be thought of as two distinct organs embryologically and functionally: the adrenal cortex, which produces the steroid hormones – aldosterone, cortisol, and testosterone – and the adrenal medulla, which produces catecholamines. Tumors of the adrenal gland are relatively uncommon, with a dearth of information available for staging purposes. A staging system for adrenal cortical cancers has not previously been promoted by the AJCC. This new staging system is limited to the adrenal cortex and only addresses adrenal cortical carcinoma. This staging system does not include tumors of the adrenal medullary compartment such as pheochromocytoma or other unusual tumors such as neuroblastic tumors of the adrenal gland, which are primarily tumors of the pediatric population. The staging system is based on information and data primarily from adult populations. The currently proposed staging system uses the anatomic known prognostic features such as size of the primary tumor, local invasion, and the presence or absence of invasion into adjacent organs. In the future vascular invasion may be incorporated into the staging system. However, currently there are insufficient outcome data to establish staging based on this putative factor. The presence or absence of vascular invasion will be collected as an investigational site-specific factor so that such outcome data may be collected. Additionally, with more advanced imaging techniques adrenal cortical neoplasms are being discovered at much smaller limits, and often are incidentally discovered. As more information becomes available on these incidentally detected tumors the staging system may need to be modified. Because of the rarity of adrenal cortical carcinoma validation and publication of additional results from multi-institutional collaborative efforts and population registries is encouraged.

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The adrenal glands sit in a supra renal location (retroperitoneal) surrounded by connective tissue and a layer of adipose tissue. They are intimately associated with the kidneys and are enclosed within the renal fascia (Gerota’s). Each gland has an outer cortex, which is lipid rich and on gross examination appears bright yellow surrounding an inner “gray-white” medullary compartment composed of chromaffin cells. There is a rich vascular supply derived from the aorta, inferior phrenic arteries, and renal arteries. Veins emerge from the hilus of the glands. The shorter right central vein opens into the inferior vena cava and the left central vein opens into the renal vein.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The regional lymph nodes are as follows:

- Aortic (para-aortic, peri-aortic)
- Retroperitoneal, NOS
Metastatic Sites. Common metastatic sites include liver, lung, and retroperitoneum. Metastases to brain and skin are uncommon although cutaneous involvement of the scalp can simulate angiosarcoma.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

The classification applies only to adrenal cortical carcinoma. Adenoma is excluded as well as pheochromocytoma and neuroblastic tumors. The currently proposed staging system is based on information from studies of adult adrenal cortical carcinoma. Adrenal cortical carcinoma in the pediatric population appears to have a better prognosis overall than pathologically identical tumors in the adult population. The staging system for pediatric adrenal cortical carcinoma used by most pediatric oncology groups, however, is based on the same data, and the stage of disease appears to be the most relevant prognostic factor in this group of patients. A separate staging system based on tumor weight (less than or greater than 200 g) has also been proposed.

Clinical Staging. Clinical examination and radiographic imaging are required to assess the size of the primary tumor and the extent of disease, both local and distant. Biochemical studies should be performed to evaluate the functional status of the tumor.

Pathologic Staging. Resection of the primary tumor and examination for lymph node involvement and extent of disease (including vascular invasion) should be performed. Tumor size and weight should be recorded accurately in every case. Histologic examination and confirmation of extent of disease are required. Disease free and overall survival rates appear to correlate strongly with stage of adrenal cortical carcinoma.

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

Primary Tumor (T)
- TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- T0: No evidence of primary tumor
- T1: Tumor 5 cm or less in greatest dimension, no extra-adrenal invasion (Figure 47.1)
- T2: Tumor greater than 5 cm, no extra-adrenal invasion (Figure 47.2)
- T3: Tumor of any size with local invasion, but not invading adjacent organs* (Figure 47.3)
- T4: Tumor of any size with invasion of adjacent organs* (Figure 47.4)

*Note: Adjacent organs include kidney, diaphragm, great vessels, pancreas, spleen, and liver.

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)
- NX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- N0: No regional lymph node metastasis
- N1: Metastasis in regional lymph node(s)

Distant Metastasis (M)
- M0: No distance metastasis
- M1: Distance metastasis

FIGURE 47.1. T1: Tumor 5 cm or less in greatest dimension, no extra-adrenal invasion.

FIGURE 47.2. T2: Tumor greater than 5 cm, no extra-adrenal invasion.
### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Recommended for Collection**

- **Required**
  - None

- **Clinically significant**
  - Tumor weight in grams
  - Vascular invasion

### Bibliography


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Adrenal Gland Staging Form

#### Clinical

**Extent of disease before any treatment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumor Size</th>
<th>Laterality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>left, right, bilateral</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Primary Tumor (T)**
  - TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
  - T0: No evidence of primary tumor
  - T1: Tumor 5 cm or less in greatest dimension, no extra-adrenal invasion
  - T2: Tumor greater than 5 cm, no extra-adrenal invasion
  - T3: Tumor of any size with local invasion, but not invading adjacent organs*
  - T4: Tumor of any size with invasion of adjacent organs*

*Adjacent organs include kidney, diaphragm, great vessels, pancreas, spleen, and liver.

- **Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**
  - NX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
  - N0: No regional lymph node metastasis
  - N1: Metastasis in regional lymph node(s)

- **Distant Metastasis (M)**
  - M0: No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
  - M1: Distant metastasis

#### Pathologic

**Extent of disease during and from surgery**

- **Primary Tumor (T)**
  - TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
  - T0: No evidence of primary tumor
  - T1: Tumor 5 cm or less in greatest dimension, no extra-adrenal invasion
  - T2: Tumor greater than 5 cm, no extra-adrenal invasion
  - T3: Tumor of any size with local invasion, but not invading adjacent organs*
  - T4: Tumor of any size with invasion of adjacent organs*

#### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

**Clinical**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pathologic**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Stage unknown

#### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Required for Staging:** None

**Clinically Significant:**

- Tumor weight in grams: __________
- Vascular invasion: ______________

**General Notes:**

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued on next page)
**ADRENAL GLAND STAGING FORM**

**Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)**

- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

**Grading system**

- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

**Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)** have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**General Notes (continued):**

- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.
- Surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.
- Neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

**Additional Descriptors**

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning
  - NCCN
  - Other (describe):

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued from previous page)
PART X
Ophthalmic Sites
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Carcinoma of the Eyelid

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- A section on Lymph Node Staging was added
- T3 was redefined, and the lesions have been divided into T3a and T3b
- T4 has been redefined
- N0 was redefined and divided into cN0 (no regional lymph node metastasis, based upon clinical evaluation or imaging) and pN0 (no regional lymph node metastasis, based upon lymph node biopsy)
- Stage Groupings have been defined and added

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IC</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

C:44.1 Eyelid

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981

INTRODUCTION

The tumor biology of primary eyelid carcinoma encompasses a broad spectrum of behaviors, from indolent low-grade nodular tumors to highly aggressive sebaceous and Merkel cell carcinomas. Primary carcinoma of the eyelid can be categorized into four staging groups: (1) localized eyelid disease, (2) resectable adjacent structure infiltration, (3) regional lymph node infiltration, enucleation, exenteration, or nonresectable tumor, and (4) metastatic spread.

The staging system presented here is to be used for eyelid tumors of all histologic types. During the development of this edition of the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, both the Ophthalmic and the non-Melanoma Skin Cancer Task Forces proposed staging systems for eyelid squamous cell carcinomas. The Editorial Board made the decision to assign eyelid SCC to the Ophthalmic staging system. However, it was also decided to recommend collection of the prognostic and site specific factors recommended for all cutaneous squamous cell carcinomas by the nonmelanoma skin cancer task force (see Chap. 29).

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The eyelid is composed of anterior and posterior lamellae, which divide along the mucocutaneous lid margin. From anterior to posterior, the eyelid is composed of skin, orbicularis muscle, tarsus and conjunctiva. The levator aponeurosis and Müller’s muscle are attached at the superior aspect of the tarsus, with similar retractors of the lower eyelid. There is a rich supply of sebaceous, eccrine, apocrine, and...
and neuroendocrine glandular elements diffused within the eyelid, caruncle and periorbital tissues. Sebaceous glands are concentrated in the tarsus, the eyelash margin, and within smaller pilo-sebaceous units that cover the eyelid and caruncle. Glandular elements and skin are the precursor cell-types for carcinoma of the eyelid.

**Local Invasion.** Carcinoma of the eyelid may extend directly into adjacent structures through mechanisms of direct infiltration, perineural or perivascular spread, and mucosal invasion. Sites of local invasion include orbital soft tissue and bone, the globe, face, nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses, orbital apex, base of the skull, and the central nervous system.

**Regional Lymph Nodes.** The eyelids and ocular adnexa are supplied with lymphatics that drain into the pre-auricular, parotid, and infra-auricular (cervical, submandibular, and supraclavicular lymph node basins).

**Lymph Node Staging.** With exception of a rare infiltrative basal cell carcinoma, the remaining eyelid carcinomas have progressive capacity for lymph node metastasis. The risk benefit ratio for lymph node surgical evaluation is based upon tumor size, histopathologic type, and tumor grade.

We have gained considerable understanding of lymph node staging in eyelid carcinoma, through the tumor experience of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma (HNSCC), Merkel cell and sebaceous carcinoma. In HNSCC lymph node metastasis is a vital independent prognostic factor. A clinically positive N1 lymph node should be biopsied for confirmation and patient care planning. Clinical and imaging assessment can fail to detect lymph node metastasis in up to 25% of cases of HNSCC and 32% of head and neck Merkel cell carcinomas. However, complete lymph node dissection carries its own morbidity and surgical risk.

Technetium (Tc-99m) sentinel lymph node (SLN) biopsy has emerged as a useful tool that allows for sampling first order lymph nodes draining the tumor bed, with less morbidity than a full lymph node dissection. A positive SLN provides critical staging information and can help select patients who may benefit from additional treatments.

Tc-99m lymphoscintigraphy with SLN biopsy requires modest adaptation for eyelid carcinoma. The volume of radioactive isotope is reduced, to match the reduced thickness of the eyelid tissues. Step serial sectioning with immunohistochemical staining improves the sensitivity of this sampling technique. As with any patient care or surgical tool, the decision to perform sentinel lymph node biopsy is weighed as a risk benefit ratio for each patient. The decision is highly dependent upon the tumor biology aggressiveness of the underlying carcinoma.

**Metastatic Sites.** Metastatic potential is highly dependent upon histopathologic type and grade. It is widely believed that eyelid carcinomas metastasize via the cascade of lymphatic channels and less frequently hematogenous spread. Distant sites include lung, liver, other viscera, and brain.

**RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION**

**Clinical Staging.** Staging of eyelid carcinoma begins with a comprehensive ophthalmic, orbital, and periorbital clinical examination. This approach includes a slit lamp or equivalent biomicroscopy evaluation, neuro-ophthalmic examination for evidence of perineural invasion, and regional assessment of the head and neck to include lymphatic drainage basins. Preoperative photography of the extent of disease is recommended. The requirement for imaging modalities including computed tomography, magnetic resonance imaging, and ultrasonography is highly dependent upon the histopathology type and clinical findings.

**Pathologic Staging.** The surgical nature of the histopathology specimen should be noted including incisonal biopsy, excisional biopsy, wide local excision, radical excision including exenteration. The specimen should be carefully oriented and inked for margin evaluation. Pathologic classification is based on the specific tumor type, its differentiation (grade), and the extent of removal. In excisional specimens, greatest tumor dimension and evaluation of the surgical specimen margins are mandatory.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

The following definitions apply to clinical and pathologic staging.

**Primary Tumor (T)**

- **TX** Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- **T0** No evidence of primary tumor
- **Tis** Carcinoma in situ
- **T1** Tumor 5 mm or less in greatest dimension
- **T1a** Not invading the tarsal plate or eyelid margin
- **T1b** Tumor more than 5 mm, but not more than 10 mm in greatest dimension
- **T1c** Tumor more than 10 mm, but not more than 20 mm in greatest dimension
- **T2** Tumor more than 20 mm in greatest dimension
- **T2a** Tumor more than 20 mm, but not more than 40 mm in greatest dimension
- **T2b** Tumor involves full thickness eyelid margin
- **T3** Tumor involves full thickness eyelid
- **T3a** Tumor more than 40 mm in greatest dimension
- **T3b** Complete tumor resection requires enucleation, exenteration, or bone resection
- **T4** Tumor is not resectable due to extensive invasion of ocular, orbital, craniofacial structures, or brain
### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tumor Status</th>
<th>N Status</th>
<th>M Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cN0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis, based upon clinical evaluation or imaging</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis, based upon lymph node biopsy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Distant Metastasis (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tumor Status</th>
<th>N Status</th>
<th>M Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Anatonic Stage/Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tumor Status</th>
<th>N Status</th>
<th>M Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**Required for staging**
- None

**Clinically significant**
- Sentinel lymph node biopsy (SLNB) results
- Regional nodes identified on clinical or radiographic examination
- Perineural invasion
- Tumor necrosis
- Pagetoid spread
- More than 3 Mohs micrographic surgical layers required
- Immunosuppression – patient has HIV
- Immunosuppression – history of solid organ transplant or leukemia
- Prior radiation to the tumor field
- Excluding skin cancer, patient has history of two or more carcinomas
- Patient has Muir-Torre syndrome
- Patient has Xeroderma pigmentosa

For eyelid cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma only (see “Cutaneous Squamous Cell Carcinoma,” Chap. 29):

### Histologic Grade (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

- **GX** Grade cannot be assessed
- **G1** Well differentiated
- **G2** Moderately differentiated
- **G3** Poorly differentiated
- **G4** Undifferentiated

### Histopathologic Type

The primary eyelid carcinoma tumors include the following group and list of histologies:

- Basal cell carcinoma
- Squamous cell carcinoma
- Mucoepidermoid carcinoma
- Sebaceous carcinoma
- Primary eccrine adenocarcinoma
- Primary apocrine adenocarcinoma
- Adenoid cystic carcinoma
- Merkel cell carcinoma

### Bibliography


Carcinoma of the Eyelid Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Tumor Size:</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>LATERALITY:</td>
<td>Y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td></td>
<td>T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td></td>
<td>T2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td></td>
<td>T2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td></td>
<td>T3a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td></td>
<td>T3b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Primary Tumor (T)**
- Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- No evidence of primary tumor
- Carcinoma in situ
- Tumor 5 mm or less in greatest dimension.
  - Not invading the tarsal plate or eyelid margin.
- Tumor more than 5 mm, but not more than 10 mm in greatest dimension.
  - Or, any tumor that invades the tarsal plate or eyelid margin.
- Tumor more than 10 mm, but not more than 20 mm in greatest dimension.
  - Or, involves full thickness eyelid.
- Tumor more than 20 mm in greatest dimension.
  - Or, any tumor that invades adjacent ocular, or orbital structures.
  - Any T with perineural tumor invasion.
- Tumor complete resection requires enucleation, exenteration or bone resection.
- Tumor is not resectable due to extensive invasion of ocular, orbital, craniofacial structures or brain.

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**
- Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed.
- No regional lymph node metastasis, based upon clinical evaluation or imaging.
- No regional lymph node metastasis, based upon lymph node biopsy.
- Regional lymph node metastasis.

**Distant Metastasis (M)**
- No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- Distant metastasis

**Anatomic Stage + Prognostic Groups**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GROUP</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC</td>
<td>T2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T3a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T3b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>Any T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIC</td>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued on next page)
Carcinoma of the Eyelid Staging Form

**Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)**

**Required for Staging:** None

**Clinically Significant:**
- Sentinel Lymph Node Biopsy (SLNB) results:
- Regional nodes identified on clinical or radiographic examination:
- Perineural invasion:
- Tumor necrosis:
- Pagetoid spread:
- More than 3 Mohs micrographic surgical layers required:
- Immunosuppression – patient has HIV:
- Immunosuppression – history of solid organ transplant or leukemia:
- Prior radiation to the tumor field:
- Excluding skin cancer, patient has history of two or more carcinomas:
- Patient has Muir-Torre syndrome:
- Patient has xeroderma pigmentosa:

For Eyelid Cutaneous Squamous Cell Carcinoma only (see cSCC, Chapter 29):

**Required for Staging:** Tumor thickness (in mm):
- Clark’s Level:
- Presence / absence of perineural invasion:
- Primary site location on ear or non-glabrous lip:
- Histologic grade:
- Size of largest lymph node metastasis:

### Histologic Grade (G)

(Also known as overall grade)
- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

### Additional Descriptors

**Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)** have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.
- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**Hospital Name/Address** | **Patient Name/Information**
--- | ---

---

(continued from previous page)
Carcinoma of the Eyelid Staging Form

☐ Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

☐ National guidelines were used in treatment planning ☐ NCCN ☐ Other (describe):

________________________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________________________

Physician signature

Date/Time

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

(continued on next page)
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
Carcinoma of the Conjunctiva

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- A listing of site-specific categories is included in T3
- Sebaceous gland carcinoma with pagetoid conjunctival spread was added under histopathologic type

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

No stage grouping is presently recommended

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

C69.0 Conjunctiva

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981

INTRODUCTION

This classification only applies to carcinoma of the conjunctiva. Other tumors of the conjunctiva are not classified using this schema. The differential diagnoses include nonpigmented primary conjunctival tumors and pseudotumors (e.g., leukemia infiltrates, ligneous conjunctivitis, myxoma, non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma) as well as secondary conjunctival tumors (e.g., intraocular tumors extending through the sclera into the conjunctiva such as nonpigmented uveal melanoma or uveal non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma and orbital tumors extending into the conjunctiva such as rhabdomyosarcoma).

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The conjunctiva consists of stratified epithelium that contains mucus-secreting goblet cells; these cells are most numerous in the fornices. Palpebral conjunctiva lines the eyelid; bulbar conjunctiva covers the eyeball. Conjunctival epithelium merges with that of the cornea at the limbus. It is at this exposed site, particularly at the temporal limbus, that carcinoma is most likely to arise. Conjunctival intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN) embraces all forms of intraepithelial dysplasia, including in situ squamous cell carcinoma.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The regional lymph nodes are as follows:

- Preauricular (parotid)
- Submandibular
- Cervical

For pN, histologic examination of a regional lymphadenectomy specimen, if performed, will include one or more regional lymph nodes.

Metastatic Sites. Tumors of the conjunctiva, in addition to spreading by way of regional lymphatics, may also metastasize hematogenously. Additionally, these tumors may directly invade the eyelid, the eye, orbit, adjacent paranasal sinus structures, and brain.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. The assessment of cancer is based on inspection, slit-lamp examination, and palpation of the regional lymph nodes. All conjunctival surfaces are inspected and photographed with eversion of the upper eyelid. High-frequency ultrasound (UBM) imaging should be performed.
when the tumor is found to be affixed to the globe and when intraocular invasion is suspected. Low-frequency ultrasound may also be used to evaluate the sclera, eye, and orbit. Radiologic examinations (computed axial tomography, magnetic resonance imaging, and PET/CT imaging) can be used to examine regional lymph nodes, paranasal sinuses, the orbit, brain, and chest. There are ongoing studies to clarify the role of sentinel lymph node involvement and sentinel lymph node biopsy.

Conjunctival carcinoma has been particularly associated with AIDS, neurodermatitis (atopic keratoconjunctivitis), other forms of immunosuppression (including iatrogenic), UV radiation, and human papillomavirus (HPV 16 and 18).

Pathologic Staging. Complete resection of the primary site is indicated (if possible). Cryotherapy and/or topical chemotherapy (mitomycin, 5-fluoruracil, and/or interferon alpha-2b) may be considered as adjunctive therapies. Extensive tumor involvement of orbital soft tissues may require exenteration with or without adjuvant external beam radiation therapy.

The specimen should be thoroughly sampled for histologic study of surgical margins, type of tumor, and grade of malignancy.

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

These definitions apply to both clinical and pathologic staging.

**Primary Tumor (T)**
- TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- T0: No evidence of primary tumor
- Tis: Carcinoma in situ
- T1: Tumor 5 mm or less in greatest dimension*
- T2: Tumor more than 5 mm in greatest dimension, without invasion of adjacent structures**
- T3: Tumor invades adjacent structures** (excluding the orbit)
- T4: Tumor invades the orbit with or without further extension
- T4a: Tumor invades orbital soft tissues, without bone invasion
- T4b: Tumor invades bone
- T4c: Tumor invades adjacent paranasal sinuses
- T4d: Tumor invades brain

*Note: Tumors occur most commonly in the bulbar limbal conjunctiva.

**Note: Adjacent structures include the cornea (3, 6, 9, or 12 clock hours), intraocular compartments, fornical conjunctiva (lower and/or upper), palpebral conjunctiva (lower and/or upper), tarsal conjunctiva (lower and/or upper), lacrimal punctum and canaliculi (lower and/or upper), plica, caruncle, posterior eyelid lamella, anterior eyelid lamella, and/or eyelid margin (lower and/or upper).

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**
- NX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- N0: No regional lymph node metastasis
- N1: Regional lymph node metastasis

**Distant Metastasis (M)**
- M0: No distant metastasis
- M1: Distant metastasis

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

No stage grouping is presently recommended.

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

- Required for staging: None
- Clinically significant: Ki-67 growth fraction

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

The classification applies only to carcinoma of the conjunctiva.

- Conjunctival intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN) including in situ squamous cell carcinoma
- Squamous cell carcinoma
- Mucoepidermoid carcinoma
- Spindle cell carcinoma
- Sebaceous gland carcinoma including pagetoid (conjunctival) spread
- Basal cell carcinoma

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

- GX: Grade cannot be assessed
- G1: Well differentiated
- G2: Moderately differentiated
- G3: Poorly differentiated
- G4: Undifferentiated

BIBLIOGRAPHY


Campbell RJ. Tumors of eyelid, conjunctiva and cornea. In: Garner A, Klintworth GK, editors. Pathobiology of ocular
Carcinoma of the Conjunctiva


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Carcinoma of the Conjunctiva Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>CLINICAL</strong> (Extent of disease before any treatment)</th>
<th><strong>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</strong></th>
<th><strong>PATHOLOGIC</strong> (Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✔ y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>TUMOR SIZE: ___________________ LATERALITY: ☐ left ☐ right ☐ bilateral</td>
<td>✔ y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>❑ TX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td>❑ T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Tis</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
<td>❑ Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ T1</td>
<td>Tumor 5 mm or less in greatest dimension</td>
<td>❑ T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ T2</td>
<td>Tumor more than 5 mm in greatest dimension, without invasion of adjacent structures</td>
<td>❑ T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ T3</td>
<td>Tumor invades adjacent structures (excluding the orbit)</td>
<td>❑ T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ T4</td>
<td>Tumor invades the orbit with or without further extension</td>
<td>❑ T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ T4a</td>
<td>Tumor invades orbital soft tissues, without bone invasion</td>
<td>❑ T4a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ T4b</td>
<td>Tumor invades bone</td>
<td>❑ T4b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ T4c</td>
<td>Tumor invades adjacent paranasal sinuses</td>
<td>❑ T4c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ T4d</td>
<td>Tumor invades brain</td>
<td>❑ T4d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| ❑ NX | Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed | ❑ NX |
| ❑ N0 | No regional lymph node metastasis | ❑ N0 |
| ❑ N1 | Regional lymph node metastasis | ❑ N1 |
| ❑ M0 | No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group) | ❑ M1 |

### Anatomic Stage - Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>CLINICAL</strong></th>
<th><strong>PATHOLOGIC</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No stage grouping is presently recommended</td>
<td>No stage grouping is presently recommended</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

**REQUIRED FOR STAGING:** None  
**CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:** Ki-67 growth fraction_________

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Histologic Grade (G)</strong> (also known as overall grade)</th>
<th><strong>Grade</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>❑ 2 grade system</td>
<td>☐ Grade I or 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ 3 grade system</td>
<td>☐ Grade II or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ 4 grade system</td>
<td>☐ Grade III or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available</td>
<td>☐ Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**General Notes:**  
For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.  
*m* suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
General Notes (continued):

- **y** prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

- **r** prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.

- **a** prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

**Residual Tumor (R)**
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- **RX** Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- **R0** No residual tumor
- **R1** Microscopic residual tumor
- **R2** Macroscopic residual tumor

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning

- Physician signature

**Additional Descriptors**

*Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)* have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):**

**National guidelines were used in treatment planning**

**Physician signature**

**Date/Time**
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

Carcinoma of the Conjunctiva Staging Form

Lacrimal glands
Levator muscles
Tarsal plates
Lacrimal sacs
Orbital roof
Choroid
Ciliary body
Iris
Uvea
Upper eyelid
Lower eyelid
Conjunctiva

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

Carcinoma of the Conjunctiva
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Malignant Melanoma of the Conjunctiva

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- Definitions of T classification have changed to describe location (bulbar, noncaruncular, caruncular)
- Definitions of N category have changed to describe whether a biopsy was performed
- Definitions of pT status have changed to describe local invasion and tumor thickness
- Definition of T(is) or melanoma in situ when tumor is limited to the epithelium
- Definitions of "Histologic Grade" were changed to describe cases of synchronous PAM with atypia and conjunctival melanoma (G3 and G4)

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUP

No stage grouping is presently recommended

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

C69.0 Conjunctiva

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8720–8790

ANATOMY

Primary Site. Melanocytes have been known to exist in the basal layer of the conjunctival epithelium. These melanocytes can be the source of acquired melanosis, malignant melanoma, junctional and compound nevi. Melanocytic conjunctival tumors range from melanocytic hypertrophy and melanoma in situ to invasive malignant melanoma. Local clinically relevant classifications divide these tumors by conjunctival location, uni- or multifocality, and tumor thickness. Factors that influence both treatment and prognosis include local invasion, nodal spread, and distant metastasis.

Regional Lymph Nodes. Regional lymph nodes are as follows:

- Preauricular
- Submandibular
- Cervical

The pN histological examination of a regional lymphadenectomy specimen will ordinarily include one or more regional lymph nodes.

Metastatic Sites. In addition to spread by the lymphatics and the bloodstream, direct extension into the eye, eyelids, nasolacrimal system, sinuses, orbit, and central nervous system occurs.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. The classification applies only to conjunctival melanoma and primary acquired melanosis with atypia. In general, there should be a histologic evaluation of the tumor.

The clinical assessment of a melanocytic conjunctival tumor is based on inspection, slit-lamp examination, and palpation of the regional lymph nodes. All conjunctival surfaces should be inspected and photographed (including eversion of the upper eyelid).

Tumor photography should pay particular attention to its margins, evidence of pagetoid spread, and involvement of the punctum. Inspection of the ipsilateral sinuses is indicated (particularly if punctal involvement has been noted). Impression or exfoliative cytology may be obtained in the clinical setting.
Radiological evaluation to stage local disease may include computed tomography, magnetic resonance imaging, and/or ultrasonography of the eye, orbits, and sinuses. Metastatic surveys typically include a physical examination as well as hematology screening and radiological evaluations of the head, chest, and abdomen. Radionuclide-based bone scans may be employed.

**Pathologic Staging.** Complete resection of the primary site is indicated. Cryotherapy, topical chemotherapy (mitomycin, 5-fluorouracil, and interferon), and radiation therapy (both teletherapy and brachytherapy) have been employed when complete resection is not possible or as an adjunctive treatment. Histopathologic evaluation for negative peripheral and deep margins should be performed. To best judge the depth of penetration of the tumor, sections should be made perpendicular to the epithelial surface. Perpendicular sections can be facilitated if the surgeon places the specimen epithelial side superior on a moist filter paper. The role of sentinel node biopsy is presently being investigated.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

**Clinical**

**Primary Tumor (T)**
- TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- T0: No evidence of primary tumor
- T(is): Melanoma confined to the conjunctival epithelium

*Malignant conjunctival melanoma of the bulbar conjunctiva*  
- T1: Less than or equal to 1 quadrant*  
  - T1a: More than 1 but less than or equal to 2 quadrants  
  - T1b: More than 2 but less than or equal to 3 quadrants  
  - T1c: Greater than 3 quadrants

*Malignant conjunctival melanoma of the nonbulbar (palpebral, fornixal, caruncular)*  
- T2: No caruncular, less than or equal to 1 quadrant  
  - T2a: No caruncular, greater than 1 quadrant  
  - T2b: Any caruncular, with less than or equal to 1 quadrant  
  - T2c: Any caruncular, with greater than 1 quadrant

Any malignant conjunctival melanoma with local invasion  
- T3: Globe  
  - T3a: Eyelid  
  - T3b: Orbit  
  - T3c: Sinus  
  - T4: Tumor invades the central nervous system

*Note: Quadrants are defined by clock hour, starting at the limbus (e.g., 6, 9, 12, 3) extending from the central cornea, to and beyond the eyelid margins. This will bisect the caruncle.

**Regional Lymph Node (N)**
- NX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- N0a (biopsied): No regional lymph node metastasis, biopsy performed
- N0b (not biopsied): No regional lymph node metastasis, biopsy not performed
- N1: Regional lymph node metastasis

**Metastasis (M)**
- M0: No distant metastasis
- M1: Distant metastasis

**ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUP**
No stage grouping is presently recommended

**Pathologic**

**Primary Tumor (pT)**
- pTX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- pT0: No evidence of primary tumor
- pT(is): Melanoma of the conjunctiva confined to the epithelium*  
  - pT1a: Melanoma of the bulbar conjunctiva not more than 0.5 mm in thickness with invasion of the substantia propria  
  - pT1b: Melanoma of the bulbar conjunctiva more than 0.5 mm but not more than 1.5 mm in thickness with invasion of the substantia propria  
  - pT1c: Melanoma of the bulbar conjunctiva greater than 1.5 mm in thickness with invasion of the substantia propria  
  - pT2a: Melanoma of the palpebral, fornixal, or caruncular conjunctiva not more than 0.5 mm in thickness with invasion of the substantia propria  
  - pT2b: Melanoma more than 0.5 but not greater than 1.5 mm in thickness with invasion of the substantia propria  
  - pT2c: Melanoma of the palpebral, fornixal, or caruncular conjunctiva greater than 1.5 mm in thickness with invasion of the substantia propria  
  - pT3: Melanoma invades the eye, eyelid, nasolacrimal system, sinuses, or orbit  
  - pT4: Melanoma invades the central nervous system

*Note: pT(is) melanoma in situ (includes the term primary acquired melanosis) with atypia replacing greater than 75% of the normal epithelial thickness, with cytologic features of epithelioid cells, including abundant cytoplasm, vesicular nuclei or prominent nucleoli, and/or presence of intraepithelial nests of atypical cells.

**Regional Lymph Nodes (pN)**
- pNX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- pN0: No regional lymph node metastasis
- pN1: Regional lymph node metastasis present
Distant Metastasis (pM)
- cM0: No distant metastasis
- pM1: Distant metastasis

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUP
No stage grouping is presently recommended

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)
- Required for staging: None
- Clinically significant: Measured thickness (depth)

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE
This categorization applies only to melanoma of the conjunctiva.

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)
Histologic grade represents the origin of the primary tumor.
- GX: Origin cannot be assessed
- G0: Primary acquired melanosis without cellular atypia
- G1: Conjunctival nevus
- G2: Primary acquired melanosis with cellular atypia (epithelial disease only)
- G3: Primary acquired melanosis with epithelial cellular atypia and invasive melanoma
- G4: De novo malignant melanoma

BIBLIOGRAPHY


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
MALIGNANT MELANOMA OF THE CONJUNCTIVA STAGING FORM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Tumor Size:</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>LATERALITY:</td>
<td>☐ y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>☐ left ☐ right ☐ bilateral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRIMARY TUMOR (T)**

- **T0**
  - No evidence of primary tumor
- **Tis**
  - Melanoma confined to the conjunctival epithelium*
- **T1**
  - Malignant conjunctival melanoma of the bulbar conjunctiva
    - T1a
      - Less than or equal to 1 quadrant**
      - Melanoma of the bulbar conjunctiva not more than 0.5 mm in thickness with invasion of the substantia propria
    - T1b
      - More than 1 but less than or equal to 2 quadrants
      - Melanoma of the bulbar conjunctiva more than 0.5 mm but not more than 1.5 mm in thickness with invasion of the substantia propria
    - T1c
      - More than 2 but less than or equal to 3 quadrants
      - Melanoma of the bulbar conjunctiva greater than 1.5 mm in thickness with invasion of the substantia propria
    - T1d
      - Greater than 3 quadrants
      - Malignant conjunctival melanoma of the non-bulbar (palpebral, fornical, caruncular) conjunctiva
- **T2**
  - Non-caruncular, less than or equal to 1 quadrant
    - Melanoma of the palpebral, fornical or caruncular conjunctiva not more than 0.5 mm in thickness with invasion of the substantia propria
  - Non-caruncular, greater than 1 quadrant
    - Melanoma more than 0.5 mm but not greater than 1.5 mm in thickness with invasion of the substantia propria
  - Any caruncular, less than or equal to 1 quadrant
    - Melanoma of the palpebral, fornical or caruncular conjunctiva greater than 1.5 mm in thickness with invasion of the substantia propria.
  - Any caruncular, greater than 1 quadrant
    - Any malignant conjunctival melanoma with local invasion
- **T3**
  - Melanoma invades the eye, eyelid, nasolacrimal system, sinuses or orbit
    - T3a
      - Globe
    - T3b
      - Eyelid
    - T3c
      - Orbit
    - T3d
      - Sinus
  - Tumor invades the central nervous system
    - T4
      - Melanoma invades the central nervous system
      - pT4

* **pT(is) Melanoma in situ (includes the term primary acquired melanosis) with atypia replacing greater than 75% of the normal epithelial thickness, with cytologic features of epithelioid cells, including abundant cytoplasm, vesicular nuclei or prominent nucleoli, and/or presence of intraepithelial nests of atypical cells.

** Quadrants are defined by clock hour, starting at the limbus (e.g., 6,9,12,3) extending from the central cornea, to and beyond the eyelid margins. This will bisect the caruncle.

---

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Malignant Melanoma of the Conjunctiva Staging Form

#### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0a</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis, biopsy performed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0b</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis, biopsy not performed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Distant Metastasis (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Anatomic Stage - Prognostic Grouping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>No stage grouping is presently recommended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>No stage grouping is presently recommended</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required for Staging:** None

**Clinically Significant:** Measured thickness (depth) _________________

### Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

- **Grading system:**
  - 2 grade system
  - 3 grade system
  - 4 grade system
  - No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

- **Grade:**
  - Grade I or 1
  - Grade II or 2
  - Grade III or 3
  - Grade IV or 4

### Additional Descriptors

- Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

### General Notes:

- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a “y” prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The “y” categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the “r” prefix: rTNM.
Residual Tumor (R)
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

National guidelines were used in treatment planning  NCCN  Other (describe):

Physician signature  Date/Time

HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS  PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION

(continued on next page)
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
Malignant Melanoma of the Uvea

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

Iris

- T4 is subdivided according to the size of extrascleral extension

Ciliary Body and Choroid

- The definitions of T1-T4 lesions have been modified
- The definitions of T1a-c, T2a-c, and T3a have been modified, and T1-T3 has been divided into T1a-d, T2a-d, and T3a-d
- T4 has been divided into T4a-e
- T1 through T4 are defined as tumors representing tabulated combinations of largest basal tumor diameter and tumor thickness (height)
- T1a, T2a, T3a, and T4a are defined as tumors without ciliary body involvement and without extrascleral extension
- T1b, T2b, T3b, and T4b are defined as tumors with ciliary body involvement but without extrascleral extension
- T1c, T2c, T3c, and T4c are defined as tumors without ciliary body involvement but with extrascleral extension equal to or less than 5 mm
- T1d, T2d, T3d, and T4d are defined as tumors with ciliary body involvement and with extrascleral extension equal to or less than 5 mm
- T4e is defined as tumor of any size with an extrascleral extension greater than 5 mm in diameter

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T1a</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II A</td>
<td>T1b-d</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II B</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II A</td>
<td>T2c-d</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3b-c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II B</td>
<td>T3d</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4b-c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II C</td>
<td>T4d-e</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a-c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

C69.3 Choroid
C69.4 Ciliary body and iris

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8720–8790
ANATOMY

Primary Site. The uvea (uveal tract) is the middle layer of the eye, situated between the sclera externally and the retina and its analogous neuroepithelial tissues internally. The uveal tract is divided into three regions—the iris, ciliary body, and choroid. It is a highly vascular structure, which comprises blood vessels and intervening stroma. The stroma contains variable numbers of melanocytes of neural crest origin, from which uveal melanomas are believed to arise. Because there are no lymphatic channels within the eye and orbit, uveal melanomas metastasize almost exclusively hematogenously to the liver and other visceral organs. In the rare event that uveal melanomas metastasize to the regional lymph nodes, it is after extracocular spread and invasion of conjunctival or adnexal lymphatics. Many uveal melanomas are slowly growing tumors, so that clinical metastases may appear decades after successful treatment of the primary tumor.

Uveal melanomas arise most commonly in the choroid, less frequently in the ciliary body, and least often in the iris. Choroidal melanomas extend commonly through Bruch’s membrane into the subretinal space, retina and vitreous, less commonly through the sclera into the orbit and to the conjunctiva, and rarely into the optic nerve.

The size of uveal melanoma and the presence of extrascleral extension are strongly associated with a patient’s risk for metastasis. Intraocular location of a uveal melanoma also affects this risk. Tumors confined to the iris carry the most favorable prognosis, followed by those confined in the choroid; ciliary body involvement carries the least favorable prognosis. The size and location of uveal melanoma are interrelated: melanomas of the iris tend to be small and those arising from or extending to the ciliary body typically are large.

Even though it is generally accepted that largest basal tumor diameter is the predominant predictor of prognosis, tumor thickness is an independent clinical prognostic indicator, even when ciliary body involvement and extrascleral extension are simultaneously taken into account.

The large randomized Collaborative Ocular Melanoma Study has shown that clinical diagnosis of medium-sized and large choroidal melanomas is 99% accurate.

It is currently impossible to distinguish clinically between a nevus and a small uveal melanoma. Clinical findings of Tumor thickness greater than 2 mm, subretinal Fluid, visual Symptoms, Orange pigment, and tumor Margin touching the optic disk are more commonly associated with growing than stationary melanocytic tumors and may help to identify small uveal melanomas (mnemonic: To Find Small Ocular Melanomas). Degenerative drusen over a small melanocytic tumor suggest slow or no growth, thus favoring the diagnosis of a nevus. Small uveal melanocytic lesions are frequently observed for growth prior to being clinically defined as uveal melanomas.

Pigmented iris tumors that demonstrate intrinsic vascularity measure greater than 3 clock hours are greater than 1 mm in thickness, are associated with sector cataract, dispersion of melanocytic tumor cells, secondary glaucoma and extrascleral extension, are more likely to be iris melanomas than benign melanocytic proliferations.

Regional Lymph Nodes. This category applies only to uveal melanomas with extrascleral extension and conjunctival invasion. Regional lymphadenectomy will ordinarily include six or more regional lymph nodes. The regional lymph nodes include the following:

- Preauricular (parotid)
- Submandibular
- Cervical

Metastatic Sites. Uveal melanomas may metastasize hematogenously to various visceral organs. The liver is the most common initial site—over 90% of patients—and often the only site of clinically detectable metastasis. It is increasingly common to examine patients one to two times per year with liver imaging (e.g., magnetic resonance imaging, computed radiographic tomography, and ultrasound). Less common sites of metastasis include the lung, subcutaneous tissues, bone, and brain, which usually are involved later in the course of dissemination.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. Up to the 1997 edition of the uveal melanoma staging system, size thresholds for choroidal melanoma were based on definitions in one particular epidemiological study, and ciliary body melanomas were categorized according to the extent of invasion of adjacent ocular tissues. All uveal melanomas with extrascleral extension were assigned to T4.

The 2003 edition introduced for ciliary body and choroidal melanoma common size thresholds, which were modified from the Collaborative Ocular Melanoma Study (COMS). No distinction was made between melanomas confined in the choroid and those involving the ciliary body. The T1 and T2 categories included melanomas with extrascleral extension, but tumors that corresponded to T3 in size were defined as T4 if they had extracocular extension. In these two systems, the largest basal tumor diameter and tumor thickness did not always fit in the same category, in which case the largest basal diameter was used for classification.

For the present edition, T categories were derived empirically from a collaborative database of over 7,000 patients with uveal melanoma. The secondary criterion for T staging is the anatomical extent of the tumor based on involvement of the ciliary body and extrascleral tissues—the two predominant and independent predictors of prognosis of uveal melanoma in addition to tumor size identified both in world literature and in the data set used to model the T categories. Because rectangular T categories based on largest tumor basal diameter and tumor thickness will lead to inclusion in each T category of tumors that appreciably differ in prognosis from the majority of tumors in any particular T category, the category thresholds were defined in a nonrectangular, tabular format (Figure 51.1).

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Ten-year survival rates for the four size categories T1–T4 were 90%, 78%, 58%, and 40%, respectively, among 7,585 uveal melanoma patients.

Enough empirical data to propose major changes to T categories of iris melanomas were not available. T4 was subdivided according to the size of extrascleral extension, analogous with the ciliary body and choroidal melanoma subcategories.

The assessment of the tumor is based on clinical examination, including slit-lamp examination, direct and indirect ophthalmoscopy, and ultrasonography. Additional methods, such as high-frequency ultrasonography, ultrasound biomicroscopy, fundus photography, fluorescein and indocyanine green angiography, positron emission tomography (PET), and magnetic resonance imaging may enhance the accuracy of appraisal, especially in atypical cases.

Systemic metastases are found in only 1–4% of patients at the time of diagnosis of the intraocular tumor. In addition to physical examination, liver imaging and chest radiogram are recommended to exclude both hepatic metastasis and a primary tumor elsewhere. Some centers are using total body PET/CT imaging for initial staging and for follow-up (high-risk patients). Liver enzyme tests may be useful to exclude diffuse hepatic metastasis.

M1 was divided into three subcategories based on the largest diameter of the largest metastasis, a measure that has been shown to correlate strongly with survival after diagnosis of metastases. Divisions were based on a collaborative data set of over 200 patients with metastatic uveal melanoma. Median survival times for the subcategories M1a to M1c were 17 months, 9 months, and 4.5 months, respectively, among 239 uveal melanoma patients.

Stages I–III are confined to uveal melanoma patients who have no evidence of metastases, either at regional or distant sites, based on clinical, radiological, and laboratory evaluation. Stage IV uveal melanoma patients are those with clinical or radiological evidence of regional or systemic metastases. Because of the rarity of regional lymph node metastasis, sentinel lymph node biopsy is not practiced. Because staging of metastatic uveal melanoma is evolving and depends on several factors additional to diameter of the largest metastasis, e.g., liver enzyme levels and performance status, no sub staging is yet proposed.

Ten-year survival rates for the seven stages I, IIA–B, IIIA–C, and IV were 88%, 80%, 68%, 43%, 26%, 21%, and 0%, respectively, among 5,470 uveal melanoma patients with data on ciliary body involvement and extraocular extension in addition to tumor dimensions.

Pathologic Staging. Resection of the primary tumor by iridectomy, iridocyclectomy, local resection, or enucleation is needed for complete pathologic staging. Assessment of the extent of the tumor, measured in clock hours of involvement, basal dimensions, tumor thickness, and margins of resection, is necessary. It is also possible to pursue a needle aspiration biopsy or use a vitreous cutter for biopsy purposes, but a negative report will not exclude the possibility of uveal melanoma because of potential sampling or technical error.

Suspected orbital invasion, regional lymph node involvement, and systemic metastasis are confirmed by needle biopsy or resection.

Uveal melanomas exhibit marked variation in cytological composition. They exhibit a spectrum of cell types ranging from spindle cells through plump spindle cells to epithelioid cells. Many tumors contain some admixture of these different cells. Spindle cells have ovoid nuclei and tend to grow in a compact cohesive fashion. Epithelioid cells are larger, more irregularly contoured, pleomorphic cells with abundant typically acidophilic cytoplasm. Their nuclei and nucleoli are larger and they grow less cohesively than spindle cells. No consensus has been reached regarding which proportion of epithelioid cells qualifies a uveal melanoma as being of mixed and epithelioid type. Some ophthalmic pathologists now record the presence or absence of epithelioid cells and do not classify tumors into mixed and epithelioid type.

Monosomy 3 and defined abnormalities of chromosomes 6 and 8 have consistently been associated with metastatic death in choroidal and ciliary body melanoma. The strongest single predictor of prognosis is loss of heterozygosity detected in chromosome 3; because of the possibility of isochromosome, some of these patients falsely appear to be disomic, e.g., in fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH) analysis. Recent studies suggest that genetic profiling is a more accurate way than karyotyping to differentiate uveal melanoma patients with favorable and adverse prognosis.

In addition to cell type, mitotic count, mean diameter of the ten largest nucleoli (measured, e.g., from silver-stained sections), presence of defined extravascular matrix patterns (e.g., closed loops and networks detected with periodic acid-Schiff staining or clinically with confocal angiography), microvascular density (determined from areas of dense vascularization after staining with antibodies to vascular endothelial cells),
high numbers of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and macrophages, and low level of HLA Class I and high level of insulin-like growth factor 1 receptor expression (detected, e.g., by immunohistochemistry) have been shown to be independent predictors of subsequent survival in more than one study.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

There are a number of key prognostic factors that are important to collect in malignant melanoma of the uvea, even though they are not included in staging algorithms. These include the following:

1. Chromosomal alterations
   a. Chromosome 3 status (loss or no loss; complete or partial)
   b. Chromosome 6p status (gain or no gain)
   c. Chromosome 8q status (gain or no gain)
   Indicate:
      • Technique used for assessing chromosome status (e.g., karyotyping, fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH), comparative genomic hybridization (CGH), loss of heterozygosity using DNA polymorphism analysis (e.g., SNP, microsatellite), or other (describe)).
      • How specimen was obtained (e.g., enucleation, local resection, biopsy, fine needle aspiration biopsy).
      • For needle biopsies, whether cytopathologic evaluation was performed to confirm the presence of tumor cells.

2. Gene expression profile: class 1 or class 2
   Indicate:
      • Technique used for gene expression profiling (e.g., microarray, PCR).
      • How specimen was obtained (e.g., enucleation, local resection, biopsy, fine needle aspiration biopsy).
      • For needle biopsies, whether cytopathologic evaluation was performed to confirm the presence of tumor cells.

1. Clinical
   a. Positron emission tomography/computed tomography (PET/CT)
      • 18-Fluorine-labelled 2-deoxy-2-fluoro-d-glucose standardized uptake values (higher values in primary tumor may be associated with shorter survival)
   b. Confocal indocyanine green angiography
      • Identification of complex monocular patterns (loops, networks, arcs with branching, parallel with cross-linking or a combination thereof may be associated with shorter survival)

2. Histopathologic
   a. Mitotic count
      • Number of mitotic figures per 40 high-power fields (typical field area 0.15–0.19 mm², higher counts are associated with shorter survival)

b. Mean diameter of the ten largest nucleoli (MLN)
   • MLN is measured along a central 5-mm long strip, e.g., after silver staining (larger values are associated with shorter survival)

c. Presence of extravascular matrix patterns
   • Loops
      – Absent
      – Present (shorter survival)
   • Loops forming networks
      – Absent
      – Present (shorter survival)
   • Other complex patterns (arcs with branching, parallel with cross-linking: absent or present)
   The patterns are assessed with light microscopy under a dark green filter after staining with periodic-acid Schiff without counterstain.

d. Microvascular density (MVD)
   • Number of immunopositive elements labeled with markers for vascular endothelial cells (e.g., CD34 epitope, factor VIII-related antigen) in areas of densest vascularization (typical field area 0.31 mm²; higher counts are associated with shorter survival)

e. Insulin-like growth factor 1 receptor (IGF1-R)
   • Percentage of immunopositive tumor cells (high expression is associated with shorter survival)

f. Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes
   • Few (longest survival)
   • Moderate numbers
   • Many (shortest survival)

g. Tumor-infiltrating macrophages
   • Few (longest survival)
   • Moderate numbers
   • Many (shortest survival)

h. HLA Class I expression
   • Percentage of immunopositive tumor cells (low expression is associated with longer survival)

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

These definitions apply to both clinical* and pathologic** staging.

**Primary Tumor**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>All Uveal Melanomas</th>
<th>TX</th>
<th>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Iris***

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T1</th>
<th>Tumor limited to the iris</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>Tumor limited to the iris not more than 3 clock hours in size</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*American Joint Committee on Cancer • 2010*
Malignant Melanoma of the Uvea

T1b  Tumor limited to the iris more than 3 clock hours in size
T1c  Tumor limited to the iris with secondary glaucoma
T2  Tumor confluent with or extending into the ciliary body, choroid, or both
T2a  Tumor confluent with or extending into the ciliary body, choroid, or both, with secondary glaucoma
T3  Tumor confluent with or extending into the ciliary body, choroid, or both, with scleral extension
T3a  Tumor confluent with or extending into the ciliary body, choroid, or both, with scleral extension and secondary glaucoma
T4  Tumor with extrascleral extension
T4a  Tumor with extrascleral extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter
T4b  Tumor with extrascleral extension more than 5 mm in diameter

*Note: In clinical practice, the largest tumor basal diameter may be estimated in optic disc diameters (dd, average: 1 dd = 1.5 mm). Tumor thickness may be estimated in diopters (average: 2.5 diopters = 1 mm). However, techniques such as ultrasonography and fundus photography are used to provide more accurate measurements. Ciliary body involvement can be evaluated by the slit-lamp, ophthalmoscopy, gonioscopy, and transillumination. However, high-frequency ultrasonography (ultrasound biomicroscopy) is used for more accurate assessment. Extension through the sclera is evaluated visually before and during surgery, and with ultrasonography, computed tomography, or magnetic resonance imaging.

**Note: When histopathologic measurements are recorded after fixation, tumor diameter and thickness may be underestimated because of tissue shrinkage.

***Note: Iris melanomas originate from, and are predominantly located in, this region of the uvea. If less than half of the tumor volume is located within the iris, the tumor may have originated in the ciliary body and consideration should be given to classifying it accordingly.

Ciliary Body and Choroid
Primary ciliary body and choroidal melanomas, as defined in Figure 51.1, are classified according to the four tumor size categories below:

T1  Tumor size category 1
T1a  Tumor size category 1 without ciliary body involvement and extrascleral extension
T1b  Tumor size category 1 with ciliary body involvement
T1c  Tumor size category 1 without ciliary body involvement but with extrascleral extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter
T1d  Tumor size category 1 with ciliary body involvement and extrascleral extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter

T2  Tumor size category 2
T2a  Tumor size category 2 without ciliary body involvement and extrascleral extension
T2b  Tumor size category 2 with ciliary body involvement
T2c  Tumor size category 2 without ciliary body involvement but with extrascleral extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter
T2d  Tumor size category 2 with ciliary body involvement and extrascleral extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter
T3  Tumor size category 3
T3a  Tumor size category 3 without ciliary body involvement and extrascleral extension
T3b  Tumor size category 3 with ciliary body involvement
T3c  Tumor size category 3 without ciliary body involvement but with extrascleral extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter
T3d  Tumor size category 3 with ciliary body involvement and extrascleral extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter
T4  Tumor size category 4
T4a  Tumor size category 4 without ciliary body involvement and extrascleral extension
T4b  Tumor size category 4 with ciliary body involvement
T4c  Tumor size category 4 without ciliary body involvement but with extrascleral extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter
T4d  Tumor size category 4 with ciliary body involvement and extrascleral extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter
T4e  Any tumor size category with extrascleral extension more than 5 mm in diameter

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)
NX  Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
N0  No regional lymph node metastasis
N1  Regional lymph node metastasis

Distant Metastasis (M)
M0  No distant metastasis
M1  Distant metastasis
M1a  Largest diameter of the largest metastasis 3 cm or less
M1b  Largest diameter of the largest metastasis 3.1–8.0 cm
M1c  Largest diameter of the largest metastasis 8.1 cm or more
ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T1a</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>T1b-d</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>T2c-d</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3b-c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>T3d</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4b-c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>T4d-e</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a-c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

- Required for staging: Height, Largest tumor diameter
- Clinically significant: Measured thickness (height), Chromosomal alterations, Gene expression profile, Positron emission tomography/computed tomography, Mitotic count per 40 high power fields (HPF), Mean diameter of the ten largest nucleoli (MLN), Presence of extravascular matrix patterns, Microvascular density (MVD)

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

The histopathologic types are as follows:

- Spindle cell melanoma (greater than 90% spindle cells)
- Mixed cell melanoma (>10% epithelioid cells and <90% spindle cells)
- Epithelioid cell melanoma (greater than 90% epithelioid cells)

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)*

- GX: Grade cannot be assessed
- G1: Spindle cell melanoma
- G2: Mixed cell melanoma
- G3: Epithelioid cell melanoma

*Note: Because of general lack of agreement regarding which proportion of epithelioid cells classifies a tumor as mixed and epithelioid in type, some ophthalmic pathologists currently combine grades 2 and 3 (nonspindle, epithelioid cells detected) and contrast them with grade 1 (spindle, no epithelioid cells detected).

BIBLIOGRAPHY


In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
### Malignant Melanoma of the Uvea Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PRIMARY TUMOR (T)

**All Uveal Melanomas**

- Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- No evidence of primary tumor

**Iris**

- Tumor limited to the iris
- Tumor limited to the iris not more than 3 clock hours in size
- Tumor limited to the iris more than 3 clock hours in size
- Tumor limited to the iris with secondary glaucoma
- Tumor confluent with or extending into the ciliary body, choroid or both
- Tumor confluent with or extending into the ciliary body, choroid or both, with secondary glaucoma
- Tumor confluent with or extending into the ciliary body, choroid or both, with scleral extension
- Tumor confluent with or extending into the ciliary body, choroid or both, with scleral extension and secondary glaucoma
- Tumor with extrascleral extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter
- Tumor with extrascleral extension more than 5 mm in diameter

* Iris melanomas originate from, and are predominantly located in, this region of the uvea. If less than half of the tumor volume is located within the iris, the tumor may have originated in the ciliary body and consideration should be given to classifying it accordingly.

**Ciliary Body and Choroid** (see Figure on p. 550)

Primary ciliary body and choroidal melanomas are classified according to the four tumor size categories below:

- Tumor size category 1
- Tumor size category 1 without ciliary body involvement and extraocular extension
- Tumor size category 1 with ciliary body involvement
- Tumor size category 1 with ciliary body involvement but with extraocular extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter
- Tumor size category 1 with ciliary body involvement and extraocular extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter

- Tumor size category 2
- Tumor size category 2 without ciliary body involvement and extraocular extension
- Tumor size category 2 with ciliary body involvement and extraocular extension
- Tumor size category 2 with ciliary body involvement but with extraocular extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter
- Tumor size category 2 with ciliary body involvement and extraocular extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter

- Tumor size category 3
- Tumor size category 3 without ciliary body involvement and extraocular extension
- Tumor size category 3 with ciliary body involvement and extraocular extension
- Tumor size category 3 with ciliary body involvement but with extraocular extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter
- Tumor size category 3 with ciliary body involvement and extraocular extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter

- Tumor size category 4
- Tumor size category 4 without ciliary body involvement and extraocular extension
- Tumor size category 4 with ciliary body involvement and extraocular extension
- Tumor size category 4 with ciliary body involvement but with extraocular extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter
- Tumor size category 4 with ciliary body involvement and extraocular extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter

### Hospital Name/Address

### Patient Name/Information
## Malignant Melanoma of the Uvea Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>Tumor size category 3 with ciliary body involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3c</td>
<td>Tumor size category 3 without ciliary body involvement but with extraocular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3d</td>
<td>Tumor size category 3 with ciliary body involvement and extraocular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor size category 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>Tumor size category 4 without ciliary body involvement and extraocular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Tumor size category 4 without ciliary body involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>but with extraocular extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4c</td>
<td>Tumor size category 4 with ciliary body involvement and extraocular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4d</td>
<td>Tumor size category 4 with ciliary body involvement and extraocular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>extension less than or equal to 5 mm in diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4e</td>
<td>Any tumor size category with extraocular extension more than 5 mm in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>diameter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Clinical*: In clinical practice, the largest tumor basal diameter may be estimated in optic disc diameters (dd, average: 1 dd = 1.5 mm). Tumor thickness may be estimated in diopters (average: 2.5 diopters = 1 mm). However, techniques such as ultrasonography and fundus photography are used to provide more accurate measurements. Ciliary body involvement can be evaluated by the slit-lamp, ophthalmoscopy, gonioscopy and transillumination. However, high frequency ultrasonography (ultrasound biomicroscopy) is used for more accurate assessment. Extension through the sclera is evaluated visually before and during surgery, and with ultrasonography, computed tomography or magnetic resonance imaging.

*Pathologic*: When histopathologic measurements are recorded after fixation, tumor diameter and thickness may be underestimated because of tissue shrinkage.

### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

- NX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- N0: No regional lymph node metastasis
- N1: Regional lymph node metastasis

### Distant Metastasis (M)

- M0: No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- M1: Distant metastasis
  - M1a: Largest diameter of the largest metastasis ≤ 3 cm
  - M1b: Largest diameter of the largest metastasis 3.1-8.0 cm
  - M1c: Largest diameter of the largest metastasis 8.1 cm or more

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thickness (mm)</th>
<th>1 ≤ 3.0</th>
<th>3.1-6.0</th>
<th>6.1-9.0</th>
<th>9.1-12.0</th>
<th>12.1-15.0</th>
<th>&gt;15.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Largest basal diameter (mm)

Classification for ciliary body and choroid uveal melanoma based on thickness and diameter.
### Malignant Melanoma of the Uvea Staging Form

#### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Grouping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T1b-d</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T2c-d</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIIB</td>
<td>T3d</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIIC</td>
<td>T4d-e</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a-c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>T1b-d</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T2c-d</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIIB</td>
<td>T3d</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIIC</td>
<td>T4d-e</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1a-c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)**

**Required for Staging:** Tumor height and largest diameter

**Clinically Significant:**
- Measured thickness (depth)
- Chromosomal alterations
- Gene expression profile
- Positron emission tomography/computed tomography
- Confocal indocyanine green angiography
- Mitotic count per 40 high power fields (HPF)
- Mean diameter of the ten largest nucleoli (MLN)
- Presence of extravascular matrix patterns
- Microvascular density (MVD)
- Insulin-like growth factor 1 receptor (IGF1-R)
- Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes
- Tumor-infiltrating macrophages
- HLA Class I expression

**Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)**

- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

**Grade**

- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

**General Notes:**

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

**m suffix** indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.

**y prefix** indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

**r prefix** indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.

**a prefix** designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

---

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
**MALIGNANT MELANOMA OF THE UVEA STAGING FORM**

**ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS**

*Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)* have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**General Notes (continued):**

- surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.
- neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued from previous page)

---

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information

Malignant Melanoma of the Uvea

559
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Retinoblastoma

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

Clinical Classification
- The definitions of T1–T4 were modified
- The definitions for M1 were modified

Pathologic Classification
- Minor modifications were made to the definitions for pT2–pT4
- Definition of choroidal invasion, focal versus massive
- The definitions for pM1 were modified

Other
- A description of proper processing of the enucleated retinoblastoma globe for pathological examination was added

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS
No stage grouping applies

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY
CODES
C69.2   Retina

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY
CODE RANGE
9510–9514

ANATOMY

Primary Site. The retina is composed of neurons and glial cells. The precursors of the neuronal elements give rise to retinoblastoma, whereas the glial cells give rise to astrocytomas, which are benign and extremely rare in the retina. The retina is limited internally by a membrane that separates it from the vitreous cavity. Externally, it is limited by the retinal pigment epithelium (RPE) and Bruch’s membrane, which separate it from the choroid and act as natural barriers to extension of retinal tumors into the choroid. The continuation of the retina with the optic nerve allows direct extension of retinoblastomas into the optic nerve and then to the subarachnoid space. Because the retina has no lymphatics, spread of retinal tumors is either by direct extension into adjacent structures or by distant metastasis through hematogenous routes.

Regional Lymph Nodes. Because there are no intraocular lymphatics, this category of staging applies only to anterior extrascleral extension. The regional lymph nodes are preauricular (parotid), submandibular, and cervical.

Local Extension. Local extension anteriorly can result in soft tissue involvement of the face or a mass protruding from between the lids. Posterior extension results in retinoblastoma extending into the orbit, paranasal sinuses, and/or brain.

Metastatic Sites. Retinoblastoma can metastasize through hematogenous routes to various sites, most notably the bone marrow, skull, long bones, and brain.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Choroidal Invasion. The presence and the extent (focal vs. massive) of choroidal invasion by tumor should be stated. Differentiation should be made between true choroidal invasion and artifactual invasion due to seeding of fresh tumor.
cells during postenucleation retrieval of tumor tissue and/or gross sectioning.

Artificial invasion is identified when there are groups of tumor cells present in the open spaces between intraocular structures, extraocular tissues, and/or subarachnoid space.

True invasion is defined as one or more solid nests of tumor cells that fills or replaces the choroid and has pushing borders. Note: Invasion of the sub-RPE space, where tumor cells are present under the RPE (but not beyond Bruch’s membrane into the choroid) is not choroidal invasion.

Focal choroidal invasion is defined as a solid nest of tumor that measures less than 3 mm in maximum diameter (width or thickness).

Massive choroidal invasion is defined as a solid tumor nest 3 mm or more in maximum diameter (width or thickness).

Clinical Staging. All suspected cases of retinoblastoma should have a neural imaging scan. If it is possible to obtain only one imaging study, computerized tomography (CT) is recommended because detection of calcium in the eye on CT confirms the clinical suspicion of retinoblastoma. The request should include cuts through the pineal region of the brain. Magnetic resonance imaging is particularly useful if extension into either the extraocular space or the optic nerve is suspected or if there is a concern about the possible presence of a primitive neuroectodermal tumor (PNET) in the pineal region (trilateral retinoblastoma).

A staging examination under anesthesia should include ocular ultrasound and retinal drawings of each eye, with each identifiable tumor measured and numbered. Digital images of the retina may be very helpful. In bilateral cases, each eye must be classified separately. Tumor size or the distance from the tumor to the disc or fovea is recorded in millimeters. These millimeter distances are measured by ultrasound, estimated by comparison with a normalized optic disc (1.5 mm), or deduced from the fact that the field of a 28-diopter condensing lens has a retinal diameter of 13 mm.

Pathologic Staging. If one eye is enucleated, pathologic staging of that eye provides information supplemental to the clinical staging. First, the pathology should provide histologic verification of the disease. All clinical and pathologic data from the resected specimen are to be used.

Processing the Enucleated Retinoblastoma Globe. In certain situations fresh tumor material may be needed from the enucleated globe for research purposes or genetic testing. In these cases the globe should be moved to a sterile area in the Operating Room away from the operative field. After collecting the specimen, the surgeon should change his/her gloves before reentering the operative field.

Processing With Tumor Sampling. To collect the tumor specimen, the optic nerve should be removed before opening the globe to prevent the optic nerve from accidentally becoming contaminated with artificial clumps of tumor cells (so-called floaters). The surgeon should first ink the surgical margin of the optic nerve, then cut the optic nerve stump off from the sclera with a sharp razor about 2 mm behind the globe. The optic nerve stump should be placed into a jar of 10% buffered formaldehyde that will be kept separate from the globe. Then, a sample of tumor should be obtained by opening a small sclero-choroidal window adjacent to the tumor near the equator with a 6–8 mm corneal trephine. Once the opening into the vitreous chamber is established, tumor tissue should be gently removed with forceps and scissors. It is best to leave a hinge on one side of the scleral flap so that it can be closed with one or two suture(s) following the removal of tumor sample. This is done in an attempt to maintain the overall spherical architecture of the specimen during fixation. The globe should be placed in a second jar of formalin (separate from the optic nerve stump) and be allowed to fix for at least 24–48 h.

Processing Without Tumor Sampling. If there is no need for fresh tissue sampling, the enucleated globe should simply be fixed in 10% buffered formaldehyde for at least 24 and preferably 48 h. When the fixed globe is examined by the pathologist, if the optic nerve was not previously amputated in the operative room, that should be performed first as described previously. The surgical margin of the nerve stump should be embedded face down in paraffin for sectioning (i.e., thereby obtaining cross-sections of the nerve, starting at the surgical margin). Then, the eye itself is sectioned. First, a section should be made that extends from pupil through the optic nerve (the “P-O” section), which contains the center of the optic nerve with all the optic nerve structures (optic nerve head, lamina cribrosa, and postlaminal optic nerve). Preferably this plane should bisect the largest dimension of the tumor, previously identified by transillumination and during clinical examination. When possible, the plane should avoid the scleral opening if one was made for fresh tumor sampling. This section is critical for evaluation of the optic nerve for tumor invasion. The P-O section and minor calottes are then embedded in paraffin. The embedded P-O calotte is then sectioned every 100–150 μm (each section being about 5 μm thick), for a total of about 10–20 sections. Additional sections should also be made anterior-posteriorly in a bread loaf fashion through the minor calottes if they contain visible tumor. These segments should be submitted in one cassette per calotte on edge to evaluate the choroid for invasion. Three levels of this block are usually sufficient for examination. In total, four cassettes are submitted: the optic nerve stump, the P-O section, and the two minor calottes (unless one or both of these has no visible tumor).

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

There are a number of key prognostic factors that are important to collect in retinoblastoma even though they are not required for staging algorithms. These include the presence or absence of an RB gene mutation, a family history of retinoblastoma, and whether the primary globe-sparing treatment
failed, and the greatest extent of choroid involved by choroidal tumor invasion.

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

Clinical Classification (cTNM)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Tumor (T)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumors no more than 2/3 the volume of the eye with no vitreous or subretinal seeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>No tumor in either eye is greater than 3 mm in largest dimension or located closer than 1.5 mm to the optic nerve or fovea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>At least one tumor is greater than 3 mm in largest dimension or located closer than 1.5 mm to the optic nerve or fovea. No retinal detachment or subretinal fluid beyond 5 mm from the base of the tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1c</td>
<td>At least one tumor is greater than 3 mm in largest dimension or located closer than 1.5 mm to the optic nerve or fovea, with retinal detachment or subretinal fluid beyond 5 mm from the base of the tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumors no more than 2/3 the volume of the eye with vitreous or subretinal seeding. Can have retinal detachment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>Focal vitreous and/or subretinal seeding of fine aggregates of tumor cells is present, but no large clumps of “snowballs” of tumor cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>Massive vitreous and/or subretinal seeding is present, defined as diffuse clumps or “snowballs” of tumor cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Severe intraocular disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>Tumor fills more than 2/3 of the eye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>One or more complications present, which may include tumor-associated neovascular or angle closure glaucoma, tumor extension into the anterior segment, hyphema, vitreous hemorrhage, or orbital cellulitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Extraocular disease detected by imaging studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>Invasion of optic nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Invasion into the orbit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4c</td>
<td>Intracranial extension not past chiasm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4d</td>
<td>Intracranial extension past chiasm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regional Lymph Nodes (N)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Regional lymph node involvement (preauricular, cervical, submandibular)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Distant lymph node involvement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pathologic Classification (pTNM)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Tumor (pT)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pTX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT1</td>
<td>Tumor confined to eye with no optic nerve or choroidal invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT2</td>
<td>Tumor with minimal optic nerve and/or choroidal invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT2a</td>
<td>Tumor superficially invades optic nerve head but does not extend past lamina cribrosa or tumor exhibits focal choroidal invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT2b</td>
<td>Tumor superficially invades optic nerve head but does not extend past lamina cribrosa and exhibits focal choroidal invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT3</td>
<td>Tumor with significant optic nerve and/or choroidal invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT3a</td>
<td>Tumor invades optic nerve past lamina cribrosa but not to surgical resection line or tumor exhibits massive choroidal invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT3b</td>
<td>Tumor invades optic nerve past lamina cribrosa but not to surgical resection line and exhibits massive choroidal invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT4</td>
<td>Tumor invades optic nerve to resection line or exhibits extra-ocular extension elsewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT4a</td>
<td>Tumor invades optic nerve to resection line but no extra-ocular extension identified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT4b</td>
<td>Tumor invades optic nerve to resection line and extra-ocular extension identified</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regional Lymph Nodes (pN)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regional Lymph Nodes (pN)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pNX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN1</td>
<td>Regional lymph node involvement (preauricular, cervical)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Distant lymph node involvement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Metastasis (pM)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metastasis (pM)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cM0</td>
<td>No metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pM1</td>
<td>Metastasis to sites other than CNS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pM1a</td>
<td>Single lesion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pM1b</td>
<td>Multiple lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pM1c</td>
<td>CNS metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pM1d</td>
<td>Discrete masses without leptomeningeal and/or CSF involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pM1e</td>
<td>Leptomeningeal and/or CSF involvement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

No stage grouping applies

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

Required for staging
None

Clinically significant
Extension evaluated at enucleation
RB gene mutation
Positive family history of retinoblastoma
Primary globe-sparing treatment failure
Greatest linear extent of choroid involved by choroidal tumor invasion

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

GX Grade cannot be assessed
G1 Well differentiated
G2 Moderately differentiated
G3 Poorly differentiated
G4 Undifferentiated

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

This classification applies only to retinoblastoma.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

## Retinoblastoma Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Stage Category Definitions</th>
<th>Pathologic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Tumor Size:</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>LATERALITY:</td>
<td>y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
<td>pTX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
<td>pT0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumors no more than 2/3 the volume of the eye with no vitreous or subretinal seeding.</td>
<td>pT1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT1</td>
<td>Tumor confined to eye with no optic nerve or choroidal invasion.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>No tumor in either eye is greater than 3 mm in largest dimension or located closer than 1.5 mm to the optic nerve or fovea.</td>
<td>pT2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>At least one tumor is greater than 3 mm in largest dimension or located closer than 1.5 mm to the optic nerve or fovea. No retinal detachment or subretinal fluid beyond 5 mm from the base of the tumor.</td>
<td>pT2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1c</td>
<td>At least one tumor is greater than 3 mm in largest dimension or located closer than 1.5 mm to the optic nerve or fovea. With retinal detachment or subretinal fluid beyond 5 mm from the base of the tumor.</td>
<td>pT2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumors no more than 2/3 the volume of the eye with vitreous or subretinal seeding. Can have retinal detachment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT2</td>
<td>Tumor with minimal optic nerve and/or choroidal invasion</td>
<td>pT2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>Focal vitreous and/or subretinal seeding of fine aggregates of tumor cells is present, but no large clumps or “snowballs” of tumor cells.</td>
<td>pT2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT2a</td>
<td>Tumor superficially invades optic nerve head but does not extend past lamina cribrosa or tumor exhibits focal choroidal invasion.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>Massive vitreous and/or subretinal seeding is present, defined as diffuse clumps or “snowballs” of tumor cells.</td>
<td>pT2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT2b</td>
<td>Tumor superficially invades optic nerve head but does not extend past lamina cribrosa and exhibits focal choroidal invasion.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Severe intraocular disease</td>
<td>Tumor invades optic nerve past lamina cribrosa but not to surgical resection line or tumor exhibits massive choroidal invasion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT3</td>
<td>Tumor with significant optic nerve and/or choroidal invasion</td>
<td>pT3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>Tumor fills more than 2/3 of the eye.</td>
<td>pT3a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT3a</td>
<td>Tumor invades optic nerve past lamina cribrosa but not to surgical resection line or tumor exhibits massive choroidal invasion.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>One or more complications present, which may include tumor-associated neovascular or angle closure glaucoma, tumor extension into the anterior segment, hyphaema, vitreous hemorrhage, or orbital cellulitis.</td>
<td>pT3b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT3b</td>
<td>Tumor invades optic nerve past lamina cribrosa but not to surgical resection line and exhibits massive choroidal invasion.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Extraocular disease detected by imaging studies.</td>
<td>Tumor invades optic nerve to resection line or exhibits extraocular extension elsewhere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT4</td>
<td>Tumor invades optic nerve to resection line or exhibits extraocular extension elsewhere.</td>
<td>pT4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>Invasion of optic nerve.</td>
<td>pT4a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT4a</td>
<td>Invasion of optic nerve to resection line but no extraocular extension identified</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Invasion into the orbit.</td>
<td>Tumor invades optic nerve to resection line and extraocular extension identified intracranial extension past chiasm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT4b</td>
<td>Tumor invades optic nerve to resection line and extraocular extension identified intracranial extension past chiasm.</td>
<td>pT4b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hospital Name/Address

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Name/Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(continued on next page)
REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)

- Clinical
  - Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
  - No regional lymph node involvement
  - Regional lymph node involvement (preauricular, cervical, submandibular)
  - Distant lymph node involvement

Distant Metastasis (M)

- Clinical
  - No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
  - Systemic metastasis.
  - Single lesion to sites other than CNS
  - Multiple lesions to sites other than CNS.
  - Prechiasmatic CNS lesion(s).
  - Postchiasmatic CNS lesion(s).
  - Leptomeningeal and/or CSF involvement.

- Pathologic
  - Metastasis to sites other than CNS.
  - Single lesion.
  - Multiple lesions.
  - CNS metastasis.
  - Discrete mass(es) without leptomeningeal and/or CSF involvement.
  - Leptomeningeal and/or CSF involvement.

Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

- Clinical
  - No stage grouping is presently recommended

- Pathologic
  - No stage grouping is presently recommended

Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

- Extension evaluated at enucleation
- RB gene mutation
- Positive family history of retinoblastoma
- Primary globe-sparing treatment failure
- Greatest linear extent of choroid involved by choroidal tumor invasion

Histologic Grade (G)

- Grade system
  - 2 grade system
  - 3 grade system
  - 4 grade system
  - No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

- Grade
  - Grade I or 1
  - Grade II or 2
  - Grade III or 3
  - Grade IV or 4

General Notes:
- For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.
- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination.
**Retinoblastoma Staging Form**

**ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS**

*Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)* have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): ____________________________________________________________
- National guidelines were used in treatment planning  □ NCCN □ Other (describe): __________________________________________

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Physician signature</th>
<th>Date/Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Name/Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued on next page)
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

Illustration

HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS

PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION

(continued from previous page)
Carcinoma of the Lacrimal Gland

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

The staging system for lacrimal gland carcinomas has been made consistent with that for salivary gland carcinomas by:

- Proposing changes in the size cutoffs between T1, T2, and T3
- By subdividing T4
- By expanding the histologic categories to those used for salivary gland malignancies, since all of these have been reported in the lacrimal gland
- Lacrimal sac tumors have been removed from this section

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

No stage grouping is presently recommended

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

C69.5  Lacrimal gland (excluding lacrimal sac)

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8000–8576, 8940–8950, 8980–8981

INTRODUCTION

The retrospective study of 265 epithelial tumors of the lacrimal gland conducted by the Armed Forces Institute of Pathology (AFIP) improved our understanding of the histologic classification and clinical behavior of epithelial tumors of the lacrimal gland. The historic works of Forrest (1954) and Zimmerman (1962) alleviated confusion by applying to epithelial tumors of the lacrimal gland the histopathologic classification of salivary gland tumors. The histologic classification used herein is a modification of the World Health Organization (WHO) classification of salivary gland tumors and is similar to that used in the most recent AFIP fascicle on Tumors of the Eye and Ocular Adnexa (2006).

ANATOMY

Primary Site. In the normal, fully developed orbit, the lacrimal gland is clinically impalpable and is situated in the lacrimal fossa posterior to the superotemporal orbital rim. The gland is not truly encapsulated and is divided into the deep orbital and the superficial palpebral lobes by the levator aponeurosis.

Regional Lymph Nodes. The regional lymph nodes include the following:

- Preauricular (parotid)
- Submandibular
- Cervical

For pN, histologic examination of a regional lymphadenectomy specimen, if performed, will include one or more regional lymph nodes.

Metastatic Sites. The lung is the most common metastatic site, followed by bone and remote viscera.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Clinical Staging. This includes a complete history (with emphasis on duration of symptoms, pain, or dysesthesia)
and physical examination (including globe displacement or distortion, palpation, and sensory and motor examination). Imaging of the orbit should be performed. Computed tomography and/or magnetic resonance imaging can provide critical diagnostic and staging data. Orbital imaging should evaluate size, shape, extent, and invasion of adjacent structures, including the bone, skull base, and periorbital areas. The lateral orbital wall and roof are often involved with adenoid cystic carcinoma of the lacrimal gland; thus, en-bloc excision of these orbital walls may be indicated when the bony walls look either clinically (intraoperatively) or radiographically involved. Evaluation of the cervical lymph nodes, the lungs, and bone should be included to stage disease.

Pathologic Staging. Complete resection of the mass is indicated. The specimen should be thoroughly sampled for evaluation of histologic type and grade of tumor, size, possible presence of a preexistent pleomorphic adenoma, and surgical margins (including the periosteum). Perineural spread, most characteristic of adenoid cystic carcinoma, can result in a clinical underestimation of the true anatomic extent of disease. Any bone removed during surgical treatment should be fully examined pathologically for evidence of involvement by carcinoma.

DEFINITIONS OF TNM

This classification applies to both clinical and pathologic staging of lacrimal gland carcinomas.

Primary Tumor (T)

| TX | Primary tumor cannot be assessed |
| T0 | No evidence of primary tumor |
| T1 | Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension, with or without extraglandular extension into the orbital soft tissue |
| T2 | Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 4 cm in greatest dimension* |
| T3 | Tumor more than 4 cm in greatest dimension* |
| T4 | Tumor invades periosteum or orbital bone or adjacent structures |
| T4a | Tumor invades periosteum |
| T4b | Tumor invades orbital bone |
| T4c | Tumor invades adjacent structures (brain, sinus, pterygoid fossa, temporal fossa) |

*Note: As the maximum size of the lacrimal gland is 2 cm, T2 and greater tumors will usually extend into the orbital soft tissue.

Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

| NX | Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed |
| N0 | No regional lymph node metastasis |
| N1 | Regional lymph node metastasis |

Distant Metastasis (M)

| M0 | No distant metastasis |
| M1 | Distant metastasis |

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

No stage grouping is presently recommended.

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)

(Recommended for Collection)

| Required for staging | None |
| Clinically significant | Ki-67 growth fraction |

Pathology Related

Greatest diameter of the tumor
Regional lymph node involvement present by any modality of evaluation
Perineural invasion present on pathologic examination
Level of invasion for carcinoma ex pleomorphic adenoma
For adenoid cystic carcinoma, basaloid pattern present on pathologic examination
For mucoepidermoid carcinoma, tumor is low or high grade on pathologic examination

Treatment Related

Globe-sparing surgery performed
Exenteration performed
Orbital bone removed
Bone involved by carcinoma
Postoperative radiotherapy
Preoperative chemotherapy
Postoperative chemotherapy

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

In most cases, the histology defines the grade of malignancy in lacrimal gland carcinomas as in salivary gland carcinomas.

| GX | Grade cannot be assessed |
| G1 | Well differentiated |
| G2 | Moderately differentiated: includes adenoid cystic carcinoma without basaloid (solid) pattern |
| G3 | Poorly differentiated: includes adenoid cystic carcinoma with basaloid (solid) pattern |
| G4 | Undifferentiated |
HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

The major malignant primary epithelial tumors include the following:

Low Grade

Carcinoma ex pleomorphic adenoma [where the carcinoma is noninvasive or minimally invasive as defined by the WHO classification (extension ≤1.5 mm beyond the capsule – into surrounding tissue)]
Polymorphous low-grade carcinoma
Mucoepidermoid carcinoma, grades 1 and 2
Epithelial-myoepithelial carcinoma
Cystadenocarcinoma and papillary cystadenocarcinoma
Acinic cell carcinoma
Basal cell adenocarcinoma
Mucinous adenocarcinoma

High Grade

Carcinoma ex pleomorphic adenoma (malignant mixed tumor) that includes adenocarcinoma and adenoid cystic carcinoma arising in a pleomorphic adenoma [where the carcinoma is invasive as defined by the WHO classification (extension >1.5 mm beyond the capsule – into surrounding tissue)]
Adenoid cystic carcinoma, not otherwise specified
Adenocarcinoma, not otherwise specified
Mucoepidermoid carcinoma, grade 3
Ductal adenocarcinoma
Squamous cell carcinoma
Sebaceous adenocarcinoma
Myoepithelial carcinoma
Lymphoepithelial carcinoma

Other Rare and Unclassifiable Carcinomas

BIBLIOGRAPHY

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
# Carcinoma of the Lacrimal Gland Staging Form

## Clinical Extent of Disease before any Treatment

- **Tumor Size:**
  - Primary tumor cannot be assessed
  - No evidence of primary tumor
  - Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension, with or without extraglandular
extension into the orbital soft tissue
  - Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 4 cm in greatest dimension*
  - Tumor more than 4 cm in greatest dimension.*
  - Tumor invades periosteum or orbital bone or adjacent structures
  - Tumor invades periosteum
  - Tumor invades orbital bone
  - Tumor invades adjacent structures (brain, sinus, pterygoid fossa, temporal
fossa)
  
*As the maximum size of the lacrimal gland is 2 cm, T2 and greater tumors will
usually extend into the orbital soft tissue.

## Pathologic Extent of Disease through completion of definitive surgery

- **Primary Tumor (T):**
  - TX
  - T0
  - T1
  - T2
  - T3
  - T4
  - T4a
  - T4b
  - T4c

## Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

- **Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed**
- **Regional lymph node metastasis**

## Distant Metastasis (M)

- **No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)**
- **Distant metastasis**

## Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)

### Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

#### Grading system

- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

#### Grade

- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

---

**General Notes:**

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m"
suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect
the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single
  site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed
during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM
category is identified by a "y" prefix.

---

**Local and Regional**

- N0
- N1

**Distant**

- M0
- M1
### Carcinoma of the Lacrimal Gland Staging Form

**Additional Descriptors**

Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

- Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

- National guidelines were used in treatment planning  Yes  NCCN  Other (describe):

---

**General Notes (continued):**

The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix; rTNM.

- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

- **surgical margins** is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.

- **neoadjuvant treatment** is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

---

**Hospital Name/Address**  **Patient Name/Information**

*(continued from previous page)*
Carcinoma of the Lacrimal Gland

Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

Carcinoma of the Lacrimal Gland

Hospital Name/Address

Patient Name/Information
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Sarcoma of the Orbit

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- A listing of site-specific categories is now included in T4
- The anatomy description was expanded
- Regional lymph nodes were defined

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

No stage grouping is presently recommended

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C69.6 Orbit, NOS
- C69.8 Overlapping lesion of eye and adnexa

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

8800–8936, 8940–9136, 9141–9508, 9520–9582

INTRODUCTION

The commonly encountered primary malignant neoplasms of the orbit include soft tissue sarcomas (rhabdomyosarcoma, osteogenic sarcoma, leiomyosarcoma, etc.), lymphoproliferative tumors (lymphoma, plasma cell tumors, etc.), and melanocytic tumors.

ANATOMY

The orbit is a cone-shaped bony structure with a volume of 30 ml in which the 7-ml globe is positioned centrally and anteriorly. All the support systems of the globe, including the optic nerve and its meninges, lacrimal gland and lymphoid tissue, extraocular muscles, fibroadipose tissue, peripheral nerves, ganglionic tissue, and blood vessels are designed to be confined within approximately 25 ml of space surrounding the eyeball. Many types of tissues are crowded in this limited space and give origin to a variety of primary carcinomatous, sarcomatous, lymphoid and melanocytic tumors. Secondary neoplasia (from adjacent structures such as paranasal sinuses, conjunctiva, globe, etc.) as well as metastatic tumors from distant organs are encountered in the orbit. Also, and because of their immediate proximity, the orbital primary tumors often present invasions into CNS, nasal cavity, and paranasal sinuses. Orbit has two unique histopathological features that may have some influence on tumor dissemination to and from this location. Orbit does not contain a lymphatic vascular network and its venous channels do not have valves.

Primary Site. Orbital sarcomas originate from fat (liposarcoma), striated muscle (rhabdomyosarcoma), smooth muscle (leiomyosarcoma), cartilage (chondrosarcoma), bone (osteogenic sarcoma), fibroconnective tissue (fibrosarcoma, fibrous histiocytoma), vascular tissues (angiosarcoma, hemangiopericytoma), peripheral nerve (Schwannoma, paraganglioma), and optic nerve tissues (glioma, meningioma) as well as from primitive mesenchymal cells within the orbit.

Regional Lymph Nodes. Although there is no organized lymphatic network behind the orbital septum, the drainage of the orbit is into the submandibular, parotid, and cervical lymph nodes through vascular anastomosis. The venous drainage of the orbit is primarily into the cavernous sinus. Preauricular, submandibular, and cervical nodes may receive drainage secondarily from orbit via the lymphatics of conjunctiva and eyelids. For pN, the examination of a regional lymphadenectomy specimen would ordinarily include one or more lymph node(s).
The regional lymph nodes include the following:

- Preauricular (parotid)
- Submandibular
- Cervical

**Local Invasion.** The malignancy of the orbit may directly extend into adjacent structures. Therefore, local tumor invasion (T4) would include extension to involve the eyelid, globe, temporal fossa, nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses, and central nervous system.

**Metastatic Sites.** Metastatic spread occurs by the bloodstream and lymphatics.

### RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

**Clinical Staging.** Clinical classification should be based on the symptoms and signs related to loss of vision and visual field, degree of global displacement and loss of extraocular motility, and degree of compressive optic neuropathy. Diagnostic tests should include perimetry, ultrasonography, computed tomography, magnetic resonance imaging, and other imaging procedures when indicated.

**Pathologic Staging.** The nature of the histopathology specimen (fine-needle aspiration biopsy, excisional biopsy, lumpectomy, or total excision) should be noted. Pathologic classification is based on the specific histopathology of the tumor, its differentiation (grade), and the extent of removal (evaluation of its excisional margins). In total excision specimens, evaluation of the surgical margins is mandatory.

### DEFINITIONS OF TNM

This classification applies to both clinical and pathologic staging of sarcomas of the orbit.

#### Primary Tumor (T)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor 15 mm or less in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor more than 15 mm in greatest dimension without invasion of globe or bony wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor of any size with invasion of orbital tissues and/or bony walls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor invasion of globe or periorbital structure, such as eyelids, temporal fossa, nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses, and/or central nervous system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Distant Metastasis (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

No stage grouping is presently recommended

### PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required for staging</th>
<th>Clinically significant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GX</td>
<td>Grade cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G1</td>
<td>Well differentiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G2</td>
<td>Moderately differentiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G3</td>
<td>Poorly differentiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G4</td>
<td>Undifferentiated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE

Malignancies of the orbit primarily include a broad spectrum of malignant soft tissue tumors.

### BIBLIOGRAPHY


### Sarcoma of the Orbit Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Clinical</strong> Extent of disease before any treatment</th>
<th><strong>Stage Category Definitions</strong></th>
<th><strong>Pathologic</strong> Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>Tumor Size: ________________</td>
<td>y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Primary Tumor (T)
- TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed
- T0: No evidence of primary tumor
- T1: Tumor 15 mm or less in greatest dimension
- T2: Tumor more than 15 mm in greatest dimension without invasion of globe or bony wall
- T3: Tumor of any size with invasion of orbital tissues and/or bony walls
- T4: Tumor invasion of globe or periorbital structure, such as eyelids, temporal fossa, nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses, and/or central nervous system

#### Regional Lymph Nodes (N)
- NX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- N0: No regional lymph node metastasis
- N1: Regional lymph node metastasis

#### Distant Metastasis (M)
- M0: No distant metastasis (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- M1: Distant metastasis

### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

| **Clinical** No stage grouping is presently recommended | **Pathologic** No stage grouping is presently recommended |

#### Prognostic Factors (Site-Specific Factors)
- Required for Staging: None
- Clinically Significant: None

**Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)**

- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

**Grade**
- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

**General Notes:**
For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

**m** suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.

**y** prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

### Hospital Name/Address

### Patient Name/Information

---

(continued on next page)
## Sarcoma of the Orbit Staging Form

### Additional Descriptors

*Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)* have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

### Residual Tumor (R)

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

### General Notes (continued):

- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.
- Surgical margins is data field recorded by registrars describing the surgical margins of the resected primary site specimen as determined only by the pathology report.
- Neoadjuvant treatment is radiation therapy or systemic therapy (consisting of chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy) administered prior to a definitive surgical procedure. If the surgical procedure is not performed, the administered therapy no longer meets the definition of neoadjuvant therapy.

### Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):

### National guidelines were used in treatment planning

### NCCN

### Other (describe):

---

Physician signature

Date/Time

---

### Hospital Name/Address

### Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
Illustration

Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Ocular Adnexal Lymphoma

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- This is an entirely new chapter

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

No stage grouping is presently recommended

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

- C44.1 Eyelid
- C69.0 Conjunctiva
- C69.5 Lacrimal gland
- C69.6 Orbit, NOS

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

- 9590–9699, 9702–9738, 9811–9818, 9820–9837

INTRODUCTION

Ocular adnexal lymphomas (OAL) originate in conjunctiva, eyelids, lacrimal gland, lacrimal drainage apparatus, and other orbital tissues surrounding the eye. Almost all are extranodal non-Hodgkin lymphomas (NHL), typically comprising extranodal marginal zone B-cell lymphoma (EMZL) of MALT type, according to the WHO lymphoma classification. Although rare, T/NK-cell lymphomas also arise in the ocular adnexa.

The Ann Arbor system is widely used for clinical staging of lymphomas but is not ideally suited to extranodal disease. For example, in OALs, eyelid lymphomas have a worse prognosis than conjunctival lymphomas, but both are categorized as Stage I. The following TNM staging system for OALs addresses these limitations. It must be emphasized that this system should not be used for secondary lymphomatous involvement of ocular adnexa or for any intraocular lymphomas.

ANATOMY

Primary Sites

Eyelid. The eyelids consist of 8 layers: skin, subcutaneous connective tissue, orbicularis oculi muscle, orbital septum, levator muscle, tarsal plate, Müller’s muscle, and conjunctiva. Accessory eyelid structures include the plica semilunaris and the caruncle. OAL is defined as involving eyelid if the OAL infiltrates preseptal tissues such as dermis or orbicularis muscle of the anterior eyelid skin.

Conjunctiva. The conjunctiva lines the posterior eyelid surface and the anterior surface of the eye, with these two areas meeting at the fornix. It is a mucous membrane overlying substantia propria, which contains a sparse population of lymphoid cells.

Orbit. The orbit is a bony cavity containing the eye, lacrimal gland, lacrimal sac, nasolacrimal duct, extraocular muscles, fat, arteries, veins, and nerves, but no lymphatics. The orbit is adjacent to the ethmoid sinuses medially, the frontal sinus and cranial cavity superiorly and posteriorly, the maxillary sinus inferiorly, and the temporalis fossa laterally.

Lacrimal Gland. The lacrimal gland is situated immediately posterior to the superotemporal orbital rim. It is an exocrine gland secreting tears containing IgA and other protective agents. Several tiny accessory glands of Krause and Wolfring are located in the region of the fornices. The lacrimal drainage system comprises the upper and lower canaliculi, the lacrimal sac, and the nasolacrimal duct.

The arterial blood supply is provided by branches of the internal and external carotid arteries. Venous drainage from pretarsal tissues is via the angular vein medially and the...
superficial temporal vein laterally. Posttarsal tissue drainage is into the orbital veins and the deeper branches of the anterior facial vein and pterygoid plexus. Lymphatic drainage from medial conjunctival and medial eyelids is to submandibular nodes with lateral areas of these tissues draining to preauricular lymph nodes and then into the deeper cervical nodes.

**Regional Lymph Nodes.** The regional lymph nodes of the ocular adnexa include the submandibular, preauricular, and cervical lymph nodes. Distant nodes include “central” nodes, located in the trunk (e.g., mediastinal and para-aortic nodes) and “peripheral” nodes at other distant sites not draining the ocular adnexa (e.g., popliteal lymph nodes).

**Metastatic Sites.** The most common metastatic sites of OAL are other extranodal tissues that are noncontiguous with the ocular adnexa. These include organs such as the salivary glands, gastrointestinal tract, lung, and the liver.

**Bone Marrow.** Bone marrow infiltration can be micronodular, paratrabecular, or diffuse interstitial.

### RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

#### Clinical Staging.** This includes a complete history and ophthalmic examination including but not limited to exophthalmometry, color vision testing, inspection and palpation of the eyelids and orbit, evaluation of ocular motility, and examination of the entire conjunctiva (with eversion of the upper eyelids). Intraocular pressure measurements and findings on dilated ophthalmoscopy may indicate compressive ocular disease. Ultrasonography can be used in the clinical setting to evaluate the orbit. Systemic physical examination should be performed as well as radiographic imaging of both orbits and sinuses, chest, abdomen, and pelvis. This can be performed using computer tomography (CT) and/or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). Some centers now use whole-body positron emission tomography/computed tomography (PET/CT) for staging patients with OAL.

**Pathologic Staging.** An incisional biopsy should be performed, providing a sufficient specimen for pathological staging and subtyping of the lymphoma on the basis of morphology, immunophenotype and, if possible, the genotype. If feasible, suspected lymph node or extranodal involvement should be confirmed histopathologically [e.g., by fine needle aspiration biopsy (FNAB) or incisional biopsy]. Bone marrow biopsy should be performed for complete staging.

**Descriptors for the Proposed System.** As defined by the AJCC/IUCC,19-21 prefix descriptors “m,” “r,” or “a” can be used, these respectively indicating multiple tumors in one ocular adnexal structure, recurrent disease, and autopsy. For example, mT1a indicates multiple bulbar conjunctival (extralimbal) tumors in one eye. The prefix “b” indicates bilateral lymphomas in ocular adnexal structures: this can be applied at all T stages. For example, bT2b indicates bilateral lacrimal gland involvement.

### PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

The proposed TNM classification of OAL defines the anatomic extent of disease in greater detail. This has been considered of prognostic value in the literature. Similar to nodal lymphomas, the International Prognostic Index (IPI)19 should be applied to subdivide patients with primary diffuse large B-cell lymphomas of the ocular adnexa according to prognosis, thereby enhancing individual patient care. Similarly, the Follicular Lymphoma International Prognostic Index (FLIPI),20 which includes age, Ann Arbor stage, number of nodal sites, serum lactate dehydrogenase level, and hemoglobin level to build a three-category index, should be applied in patients with primary ocular adnexal follicular lymphomas, e.g., see Table 57.2 in Chap. 57 of Lymphoid Neoplasms (Part XII).

**Tumor Cell Growth Fraction (Ki-67, MIB-1).** This should be assessed by counting the number of tumor cells with clear nuclear positivity for Ki-67 per 5×100 tumor cells using the 40× objective. A percentage value is therefore obtained, e.g., a Ki-67 tumor cell growth fraction of 15%. Reactive cells should not be included where possible. For example, the germinal centre in MALT lymphomas should NOT be included in the assessment.

**Serum Lactate Dehydrogenase.** The serum lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) value should be assessed at the time of diagnosis.

### DEFINITIONS OF TNM

This classification applies to both clinical and pathologic staging of ocular adnexal lymphomas.

**Primary Tumor (T).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Lymphoma extent not specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Lymphoma involving the conjunctiva alone without orbital involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>Bulbar conjunctiva only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>Palpebral conjunctiva +/- fornix +/- caruncle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1c</td>
<td>Extensive conjunctival involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Lymphoma with orbital involvement +/- any conjunctival involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>Anterior orbital involvement (+/- conjunctival involvement)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>Anterior orbital involvement (+/- conjunctival involvement + lacrimal involvement)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2c</td>
<td>Posterior orbital involvement (+/- conjunctival involvement +/- anterior involvement and +/- any extraocular muscle involvement)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Ocular Adnexal Lymphoma

T2d Nasolacrimal drainage system involvement (+/− conjunctival involvement but not including nasopharynx)
T3 Lymphoma with preseptal eyelid involvement (defined above) +/− orbital involvement +/− any conjunctival involvement
T4 Orbital adnexal lymphoma extending beyond orbit to adjacent structures such as bone and brain
T4a Involvement of nasopharynx
T4b Osseous involvement (including periosseum)
T4c Involvement of maxillofacial, ethmoidal, and/or frontal sinuses
T4d Intracranial spread

Regional Lymph Node (N)
NX Involvement of lymph nodes not assessed
N0 No evidence of lymph node involvement
N1 Involvement of ipsilateral regional lymph nodes*
N2 Involvement of contra lateral or bilateral regional lymph nodes*
N3 Involvement of peripheral lymph nodes not draining ocular adnexal region
N4 Involvement of central lymph nodes

*Note: The regional lymph nodes include preauricular (parotid), submandibular, and cervical.

Distant Metastasis (M)
M0 No evidence of involvement of other extranodal sites
M1a Noncontiguous involvement of tissues or organs external to the ocular adnexa (e.g., parotid glands, submandibular gland, lung, liver, spleen, kidney, breast, etc.)
M1b Lymphomatous involvement of the bone marrow
M1c Both M1a and M1b involvement

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS
No stage grouping is presently recommended

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

Required for staging None
Clinically significant Tumor cell growth fraction (Ki-67, MIB-1) at diagnosis
Serum lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) at diagnosis
History of rheumatoid arthritis
History of Sjögren’s syndrome
History of connective tissue disease
History of recurrent dry eye syndrome (sicca syndrome)

Any evidence of a viral infection (e.g., hepatitis C or HIV)
Any evidence of a bacterial infection (e.g., Helicobacter pylori)
Any evidence of an infection caused by other micro-organisms (e.g., Chlamydia psittaci)

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)
Grades are given only to follicular lymphomas as described by the 2002 WHO classification for malignant lymphomas as follows:
G1 1–5 centroblasts per 10 high power field
G2 Between 5 and 15 centroblasts per 10 high power fields
G3a More than 15 centroblasts per 10 high power fields but with admixed centrocytes
G3b More than 15 centroblasts per 10 high power fields but without centrocytes

HISTOPATHOLOGIC TYPE
The lymphomas arising as primary tumors in the ocular adnexa are subtyped according to the WHO Lymphoma classification. The main ocular adnexal lymphoma subtypes include the following:
Extranodal marginal zone B-cell lymphoma (MALT lymphoma)
Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma
Follicular lymphoma
Mantle cell lymphoma
Lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma
Plasmacytoma
Burkitt lymphoma
Peripheral T-cell lymphoma, unspecified
Mycosis fungoides
Extranodal NK/T-cell lymphoma, nasal type
Anaplastic large cell lymphoma

REFERENCES
### Ocular Adnexal Lymphoma Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Tumor Size: __________________________</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y clinical – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy but before subsequent surgery</td>
<td>Laterality: □ left □ right □ bilateral</td>
<td>y pathologic – staging completed after neoadjuvant therapy AND subsequent surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRIMARY TUMOR (T)**
- TX: Lymphoma extent not specified
- T0: No evidence of lymphoma
- T1: Lymphoma involving the conjunctiva alone without orbital involvement
  - T1a: Bulbar conjunctiva only
  - T1b: Palpebral conjunctiva +/- fornix +/- caruncle
  - T1c: Extensive conjunctival involvement
- T2: Lymphoma with orbital involvement +/- any conjunctival involvement
  - T2a: Anterior orbital involvement (+/- conjunctival involvement)
  - T2b: Anterior orbital involvement (+/- conjunctival involvement + lacrimal involvement)
  - T2c: Posterior orbital involvement (+/- conjunctival involvement +/- anterior involvement and +/- any extraocular muscle involvement)
  - T2d: Nasolacrimal drainage system involvement (+/- conjunctival involvement but not including nasopharynx)
- T3: Lymphoma with pre-septal eyelid involvement (defined above) +/- orbital involvement +/- any conjunctival involvement
- T4: Orbital adnexal lymphoma extending beyond orbit to adjacent structures such as bone and brain
  - T4a: Involvement of nasopharynx
  - T4b: Osseous involvement (including peristomium)
  - T4c: Involvement of maxillofacial, ethmoidal and/or frontal sinuses
  - T4d: Intracranial spread

**REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)**
- NX: Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- N0: No evidence of lymph node involvement
- N1: Involvement of ipsilateral regional lymph nodes* (parotid, submandibular, and cervical)
- N2: Involvement of contra lateral or bilateral regional lymph nodes *
- N3: Involvement of peripheral lymph nodes not draining ocular adnexal region
- N4: Involvement of central lymph nodes
* The regional lymph nodes included preauricular (parotid), submandibular, and cervical

**DISTANT METASTASIS (M)**
- M0: No evidence of involvement of other extranodal sites (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- M1a: Noncontiguous involvement of tissues or organs external to the ocular adnexa (e.g., parotid glands, submandibular gland, lung, liver, spleen, kidney, breast, etc.)
- M1b: Lymphomatous involvement of the bone marrow
- M1c: Both M1a and M1b involvement

### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No stage grouping is presently recommended.</td>
<td>No stage grouping is presently recommended.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued on next page)
PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)

REQUIRED FOR STAGING: None

CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:
- Tumor cell growth fraction (Ki-67, MIB-1)
- Serum lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) at diagnosis
- History of rheumatoid arthritis
- History of Sjögren's syndrome
- History of connective tissue disease
- History of recurrent dry eye syndrome (sicca syndrome)
- Any evidence of a viral infection (e.g. Hepatitis C or HIV)
- Any evidence of a bacterial infection (e.g. Helicobacter pylori)
- Any evidence of an infection caused by other micro-organisms (e.g. Chlamydia psittaci)

Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

Grading system: 2 grade system
- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

ADDITIONAL DESCRIPTORS

Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

Residual Tumor (R)

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): ________________________________

National guidelines were used in treatment planning  ☐ NCCN  ☐ Other (describe): ________________________________

Physician signature ___________________________ Date/Time ___________________________

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Illustration
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
PART XI

Central Nervous System
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Brain and Spinal Cord

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

- Central nervous system tumors continue to have no TNM designation

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUP
No stage grouping applies

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY CODES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C70.0</td>
<td>Cerebral meninges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C70.1</td>
<td>Spinal meninges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C70.9</td>
<td>Meninges, NOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C71.0</td>
<td>Cerebrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C71.1</td>
<td>Frontal lobe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C71.2</td>
<td>Temporal lobe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C71.3</td>
<td>Parietal lobe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C71.4</td>
<td>Occipital lobe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C71.5</td>
<td>Ventricle NOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C71.6</td>
<td>Cerebellum NOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C71.7</td>
<td>Brain stem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C71.8</td>
<td>Overlapping lesion of brain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C72.0</td>
<td>Spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C72.1</td>
<td>Cauda equina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C72.2</td>
<td>Olfactory nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C72.3</td>
<td>Optic nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C72.4</td>
<td>Acoustic/vestibular nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C72.5</td>
<td>Cranial nerve, NOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C72.6</td>
<td>Overlapping lesion of brain and central nervous system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

- 8000, 8680–9136, 9141–9582

INTRODUCTION

Attempts at developing a TNM-based classification and staging system for tumors of the central nervous system (CNS) have not been successful. Previous editions of this manual had proposed a system that was used with poor compliance and proved not to be particularly useful as a predictor of outcome in clinical trials for the management of patients with primary CNS tumors. The reasons for this are several. (1) Tumor size is significantly less relevant than tumor histology and location of the tumor, so the T classification is less pertinent than the biologic nature of the tumor itself. (2) Because the brain and spinal cord have no lymphatics, the N classification does not apply, as there are no lymph nodes that can be identified in either classification or staging. (3) An M classification is not pertinent to the majority of neoplasms that affect the central nervous system, because of the inherent biology favoring local recurrence, and the fact that most patients with tumors of the central nervous system do not live long enough to develop metastatic disease (except for some pediatric tumors that tend to “seed” through the cerebrospinal fluid spaces).

Many important studies have been done regarding the most common tumors affecting the brain and spinal cord, and a variety of prognostic factors have been identified. Unfortunately, these factors do not easily fall into the usual categories that have traditionally been part of the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) TNM system.

For those reasons, it continues to be the recommendation of the CNS Tumor Task Force that a formal classification and staging system not be attempted. This chapter, however, attempts to highlight what is known about prognostic factors in tumors of the central nervous system (Table 56.1).

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

Tumor Histology. The histology of tumors that affect the brain and spinal cord is by far the most important variable affecting prognosis, and in many cases it determines the treatment modalities that are employed. The latest World Health Organization (WHO) classification system has combined tumor nomenclature with an associated grading system,
TABLE 56.1. Prognostic factors in CNS tumors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prognostic factor</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>Pathologic grade and accuracy of diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Presence and extent of necrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Presence of gemistocytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Proliferative fraction (Ki-67; MIB-1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Presence of oligodendrogial component</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Presence or absence of cells in mitosis, endothelial proliferation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age of patient</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karnofsky Performance status</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptom presentation and duration before diagnosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Presentation with seizure, long duration are favorable prognostic factors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location of tumor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unifocal or multifocal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary or recurrent tumor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extent of resection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biopsy, subtotal, radical removal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastatic spread</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS or extraneural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patterns of enhancement on imaging studies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molecular aspects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 p, 19 q definitions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MGMT methylation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

so that the actual histologic diagnosis directly correlates with the histologic grade of the tumor. This helps to clarify some of the inconsistencies that existed in the past when a number of different grading systems, each slightly different from the others, were used. The most common histologies for brain and spinal cord tumors are given in Tables 56.2 and 56.3, along with the tumor grade for each different diagnostic category. Note: The histologic grade code used for staging purposes is not the same code that is assigned as the differentiation code in the sixth digit of the ICD-O morphology code.

Age of the Patient. Most retrospective outcome studies of brain tumor therapy show that the age of the patient at the time of diagnosis is one of the most powerful predictors of outcome. This fact holds true for the gliomas, which are the most common primary brain tumors, and for most other tumors that affect the adult population, including most metastatic tumors to the brain. There are, however, some childhood tumors that have a very poor prognosis, are inherently high grade, and rapidly progress to a fatal outcome. Some metastatic tumors, such as melanoma, occur in younger patients and also violate this general statement with regard to the specific effect of age on prognosis.

Extent of Tumor Resection. In patients who are treated surgically for tumors of the central nervous system, the extent of resection is often directly correlated with the outcome. This is a less powerful predictor than tumor histology or age, but most retrospective studies confirm that extent of removal is positively correlated with survival. For this reason, documentation of whether a surgical tumor removal is "gross total," "subtotal," or "biopsy only" is useful in determining future therapy and prognosis and ideally is accompanied by MRI-based quantitative assessment. Any staging system to be developed for CNS tumors should take into account, in a systematic and clearly documented fashion, the extent of removal and residual tumor.

Tumor Location. Because of the differential importance of various areas of the brain, the location of a given tumor affecting the brain can have a major impact on the functional outcome, survival, and nature of therapy. The location codes available for tumors affecting the central nervous system in the ICD-O and ICD-10 manuals are generally satisfactory, and they offer the advantage of consistency to the records of patients with CNS tumors.

Functional Neurologic Status. Another important prognostic factor in most retrospective studies of CNS tumors is the functional neurologic status of the patient at the time of diagnosis. This has been estimated traditionally using the Karnofsky Performance Scale, which is reproducible, is well known by most investigators, and is in common use for stratification of patients entering clinical trials for the treatment of brain tumors. The outcome and prognosis of patients correlate fairly well with functional neurologic status, and once again, any staging system should include a validated and reliable measure of this parameter. Other measures of outcome, both cognitive and functional, are increasingly used in studies of CNS tumors.

Metastatic Spread. Tumors affecting the central nervous system rarely develop extraneural metastases, probably because of inherent biologic characteristics of these tumors, and also because the brain does not have a well-developed lymphatic drainage system. In addition, many patients with tumors of the central nervous system have a short life expectancy, which further limits the likelihood of metastatic spread. Certain tumors do spread through cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) pathways, and such spread has a major impact on survival. Dissemination through the CSF pathway is a hallmark of certain childhood tumors, e.g., primitive neuroectodermal tumors, many of which carry a poor prognosis; this phenomenon, however, is rarely seen in adult patients with the more common CNS tumors. Primary lymphomas of the central nervous system may spread along the craniospinal axis and sometimes exhibit intraocular dissemination. Although metastatic spread is of importance in certain instances, its overall impact in staging is relatively minor. The M category, however, should be part of any classification and staging system that is developed in the future for CNS tumors, and it should differentiate between extraneural metastasis and metastasis within the CNS and CSF pathways.
TABLE 56.2. WHO classification of tumors of the central nervous system (2007)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumors of the pineal region</th>
<th>Mesenchymal tumors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pilocytic astrocytoma</td>
<td>Lipoma 8850/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilocytic astrocytoma</td>
<td>Angiolipoma 8861/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subependymal giant cell astrocytoma</td>
<td>Hibemoma 8880/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pleomorphic xanthoastrocytoma</td>
<td>Liposarcoma 8850/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffuse astrocytoma</td>
<td>Solitary fibrous tumor 8815/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibrillary astrocytoma</td>
<td>Fibrosarcoma 8810/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gemistocytic astrocytoma</td>
<td>Malignant fibrous histiocytoma 8830/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protoplasmic astrocytoma</td>
<td>Leiomyoma 8890/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anaplastic astrocytoma</td>
<td>Leiomyosarcoma 8890/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gloioblastoma</td>
<td>Rhabdomyoma 8900/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giant cell glioblastoma</td>
<td>Rhabdomyosarcoma 8900/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gliosarcoma</td>
<td>Chondroma 9220/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gliomatosis cerebri</td>
<td>Chondrosarcoma 9220/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oligodendroglioma</td>
<td>Osteoma 9180/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oligoastrocytic tumors</td>
<td>Osteosarcoma 9180/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ependymal tumors</td>
<td>Osteochondroma 9210/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subependymoma</td>
<td>Hemangioma 9120/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myxopapillary ependymoma</td>
<td>Epithelioid hemangioendothelioma 9133/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ependymoma</td>
<td>Hemangiopericytoma 9150/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellular</td>
<td>Anaplastic hemangiopericytoma 9150/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papillary</td>
<td>Angiosarcoma 9120/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear cell</td>
<td>Kaposi sarcoma 9140/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tanyctic</td>
<td>Ewing sarcoma – PNET 9364/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anaplastic ependymoma</td>
<td>Primary melanocytic lesions 8728/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choroid plexus tumors</td>
<td>Melanocytoma 8728/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choroid plexus papilloma</td>
<td>Malignant melanoma 8720/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atypical choroid plexus papilloma</td>
<td>Meningeal melanomatosis 8728/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choroid plexus carcinoma</td>
<td>Other neoplasms related to the meninges 9161/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other neuroepithelial tumors</td>
<td>Hemangioblastoma 9161/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astroblastoma</td>
<td>Lymphomas and hematopoietic neoplasms 9190/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choroid glioma of the third ventricle</td>
<td>Malignant lymphomas 9590/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angiocentric glioma</td>
<td>Plasmacytoma 9731/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuronal and mixed neuronal-glial tumors</td>
<td>Granulocytic sarcoma 9950/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysplastic gangliocytoma of cerebellum (Lhermitte-Duclos)</td>
<td>Germ cell tumors 9064/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desmoplastic infantile astrocytoma/ ganglioglioma</td>
<td>Germ cell tumors 9070/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysmyeloplastic neuronal epithelial tumor</td>
<td>Yolk sac tumor 9071/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gangliocytoma</td>
<td>Choriocarcinoma 9100/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ganglioglioma</td>
<td>Teratoma 9080/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anaplastic ganglioglioma</td>
<td>Mature 9080/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central neurocytoma</td>
<td>Immature 9080/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extraventricular neurocytoma</td>
<td>Teratoma with malignant transformation 9084/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebellar liponeurocytoma</td>
<td>Mixed germ cell tumor 9085/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papillary glioneuronal tumor</td>
<td>Tumors of the sellar region 9590/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosette-forming glioneuronal tumor of the fourth ventricle</td>
<td>Cranioopharyngioma 9590/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paraganglioma</td>
<td>Adamantinomatous 9351/1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From World Health Organization (http://www.who.int/en/), with permission.

4 Morphology code of the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O) (614A) and the Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine (http://snomed.org). Behavior is coded /0 for benign tumors, /3 for malignant tumors, and /1 for borderline or uncertain behavior.

5 The italicized numbers are provisional codes proposed for the 4th edition of ICD-O. While they are expected to be incorporated into the next ICD-O edition, they currently remain subject to change.
## TABLE 56.3. WHO grades of CNS tumors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Astrocytic tumors</td>
<td>Subependymal giant cell astrocytoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pilocytic astrocytoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pilomyxoid astrocytoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diffuse astrocytoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pleomorphic xanthoastrocytoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anaplastic astrocytoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glioblastoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Giant cell glioblastoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gliosarcoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oligodendroglial tumors</td>
<td>Oligodendroglioma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anaplastic oligodendroglia</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oligoastrocytic tumors</td>
<td>Oligoastrocytoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anaplastic oligoastrocytoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ependymal tumors</td>
<td>Subependymoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Myxopapillary ependymoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ependymoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anaplastic ependymoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choroid plexus tumors</td>
<td>Choroid plexus papilloma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Atypical choroid plexus papilloma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Choroid plexus carcinoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other neuroepithelial tumors</td>
<td>Angiocentric glioma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chordoid glioma of the third ventricle</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuronal and mixed neuronal-glial tumors</td>
<td>Gangliocytoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gangglioglioma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anaplastic ganglioglioma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Desmoplastic infantile astrocytoma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and ganglioglioma</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dysembryoplastic neuroepithelial tumor</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From World Health Organization (http://www.who.int/en/), with permission.

---

## BRAIN TUMOR SURVIVAL DATA

Data are available from the SEER program for current survival statistics for "brain tumors," a category that includes malignant primary brain tumors (gliomas). For this relatively ill-defined group of patients, there were 17,200 new cases estimated for 2001. Five-year survivals are 30% in adults and 64% in children.

Excellent observational insight and patterns of care data for surgically treated malignant gliomas [glioblastomas and malignant (grade 3) gliomas] are available from the Glioma Outcome Project, which evaluated 788 patients accrued from 1997 to 2000. The median survival for glioblastoma multiforme (GBM) was 10.6 months, and the 96-week survival was 10%. For grade 3 gliomas, 70% had survived 96 weeks. Approximately 11% of the patients were enrolled in clinical trials.

For the most common adult primary CNS malignancy, glioblastoma multiforme (GBM), a recent randomized trial of concurrent chemotherapy with temozolomide and radiation followed by 6 months of adjuvant chemotherapy reported that the median survival was about 15 months. This strategy is now considered the standard treatment for newly diagnosed GBM.
PROGNOSTIC BIOGENETIC MARKERS (UNDER CONTINUED INVESTIGATION)

The field of molecular neuropathology has provided us with a number of potential biogenetic markers that may be useful in staging CNS tumors and in making recommendations for therapy. The discovery of the pivotal role of oncogenes and of the loss of tumor suppressor genes in the tumorigenesis of CNS tumors has led to a flurry of activity that may prove quite fruitful in providing valid biologic markers in these difficult tumors. One of the most promising is the codelletion of 1p 19q in anaplastic oligodendroglioma and its prognostic value. In addition to biogenetic markers, signaling pathway abnormalities are being evaluated in primary CNS tumors. Methylation of MGMT, an important DNA repair enzyme, is an important factor in the effectiveness of temozolomide. Table 56.4 provides a glimpse of some of the current markers and techniques under investigation. It is hoped that ways will be found to apply these methods of scientific analysis of tumor growth potential to predict survival more effectively than is possible today.

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS) (Recommended for Collection)

Required for staging

None

Clinically significant

Functional neurologic status (KPS)
Location of tumor
Unifocal or multifocal
Primary or recurrent tumor
Extent of resection
Metastatic spread (CNS or extraneural)
Proliferative fraction (Ki-67, M1B-1)
Gene deletions (1p, 19q)
MGMT methylation

HISTOLOGIC GRADE (G)

Grade is reported in registry systems by the grade value. A two-grade, three-grade, or four-grade system may be used. If a grading system is not specified, generally the following system is used:

GX Grade cannot be assessed
G1 Well differentiated
G2 Moderately differentiated
G3 Poorly differentiated
G4 Undifferentiated

BIBLIOGRAPHY

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
PART XII
Lymphoid Neoplasms

INTRODUCTION

Lymphoid malignancies are a diverse group of disorders. These malignancies share derivation from B-cells, T-cells, and NK-cells, but they have a wide range of presentations, clinical course, and response to therapy. The incidence of lymphoid malignancies is significant and increasing. Non-Hodgkin lymphomas occur in more than 63,000 new individuals each year and have been increasing in incidence over the past several decades. Hodgkin lymphoma occurs in approximately 8,000 new individuals each year in the USA and seems stable in incidence. Approximately 20,000 new cases of multiple myeloma and more than 20,000 new cases of lymphoid leukemias occur annually in the USA (Figure 1).

PATHOLOGY

Lymphoid neoplasms are malignancies of B-cells, T-cells, and NK (natural killer) cells. They include Hodgkin lymphoma (Hodgkin disease), non-Hodgkin lymphoma, multiple myeloma, and lymphoid leukemias. Traditionally, classifications have distinguished between “lymphomas” – i.e., neoplasms that typically present with an obvious tumor or mass of lymph nodes or extranodal sites – and “leukemias” – i.e., neoplasms that typically involve the bone marrow and peripheral blood, without tumor masses. However, we now know that many B- and T/NK-cell neoplasms may have both tissue masses and circulating cells. Thus, it is artificial to call them different diseases, when in fact they are just different presentations of the same disease. For this reason, we now refer to these diseases as lymphoid neoplasms rather than as lymphomas or leukemias, reserving the latter terms for the specific clinical presentation. In the current classification of lymphoid neoplasms, diseases that typically produce tumor masses are called lymphomas, those that typically have only circulating cells are called leukemias, and those that often have both solid and circulating phases are designated lymphoma/leukemia. Finally, plasma cell neoplasms, including multiple myeloma and plasmacytoma, have typically not been considered “lymphomas,” but plasma cells are part of the B-cell lineage, and, thus, these tumors are B-cell neoplasms, which are now included in the classification of lymphoid neoplasms.
Lymphoid neoplasms are malignancies of lymphoid cells. Lymphoid cells include lymphoblasts, lymphocytes, follicle center cells (centrocytes and centroblasts), immunoblasts, and plasma cells. These cells are responsible for immune responses to infections. Immune responses involve recognition by lymphocytes of foreign molecules, followed by proliferation and differentiation to generate either specific cytotoxic cells (T or NK – natural killer – cells) or antibodies (B-cells and plasma cells). Lymphoid cells are normally found in greatest numbers in lymph nodes and in other lymphoid tissues such as Waldeyer’s ring (which includes the palate and lingual tonsils and adenoids), the thymus, Peyer’s patches of the small intestine, the spleen, and the bone marrow (Figure 2). Lymphocytes also circulate in the peripheral blood and are found in small
numbers in almost every organ of the body, where they either wait to encounter antigens or carry out specific immune reactions. Lymphoid neoplasms may occur in any site to which lymphocytes normally travel. Because lymphocytes normally circulate through the blood as well as the lymphatics – in contrast to epithelial cells, for example – it is often impossible to determine the "primary site" of a lymphoid neoplasm or to use a staging scheme that was developed for epithelial cancers, such as the TNM scheme.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Many different classification schemes have been proposed for lymphoid neoplasms, which has led to confusion on the part of both pathologists and oncologists. Between 1982 and 1994, in the USA, a classification called the Working Formulation was used. This scheme had the advantage of being simple, with only ten categories, and it did not require any special studies such as immunophenotyping or genetic studies. In addition, it provided simple clinical groupings for determining the approach to treatment (low, intermediate, and high clinical grades). Since its introduction, advances in understanding of the immune system and lymphoid neoplasms led to the recognition of many new categories of lymphoid neoplasms. The fact that several subtypes were in an incorrect category based on clinical behavior, and the development of better methods for diagnosis and classification – as well as for treatment – have caused the Working Formulation to become obsolete. In 1994 the International Lymphoma Study Group (ILSG) introduced a new classification, called the Revised European American Classification of Lymphoid Neoplasms (REAL), which incorporated not only morphology, but new information such as immunophenotype and genetic features, as well as clinical features, to define over 25 different categories of lymphoid neoplasms, including Hodgkin lymphoma. More recently, the World Health Organization (WHO) updated its Classification of Diseases of the Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Systems and adopted the REAL classification for lymphoid neoplasms with some modifications (the WHO classification also includes myeloid and histiocytic neoplasms). The WHO classification is now the standard for clinical trials in lymphoma (Table 1).

The WHO classification is a list of distinct disease entities, which are defined by a combination of morphology, immunophenotypic, and genetic features and which have distinct clinical features. The relative importance of each of these features varies among diseases, and there is no one gold standard. Morphology remains the first and most basic approach and is sufficient for both diagnosis and classification in many typical cases of lymphoma. Immunophenotyping and – particularly – molecular genetic studies are not needed in all cases, but they are very important in some diseases, are useful in difficult cases, and improve interobserver reproducibility. As mentioned previously, the WHO classification includes all lymphoid neoplasms: Hodgkin lymphoma, non-Hodgkin lymphomas, lymphoid leukemias, and plasma cell neoplasms. Both lymphomas and lymphoid leukemias are included, because both solid and circulating phases are present in many lymphoid neoplasms, and drawing a distinction between them is arbitrary. Thus, B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia and B-cell small lymphocytic lymphoma are simply different manifestations of the same neoplasm, as are lymphoblastic lymphomas and acute lymphoblastic leukemias. In addition, Hodgkin lymphoma and plasma cell myeloma are now recognized as lymphoid neoplasms of B-lineage and, therefore, belong in a compilation of lymphoid neoplasms.

The ability to study patterns of gene expression is providing new insights into these disorders. It is likely to change classification and might eventually supersede staging in the ability to predict outcome and the response to specific therapies.
**TABLE 1. WHO Classification of lymphoid neoplasms, 4th edition**

### B-cell neoplasms

**Precursor B-cell neoplasm**
- B-lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma (B-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia)

**Mature (peripheral) B-cell neoplasms**
- Chronic lymphocytic leukemia/small lymphocytic lymphoma
- B-cell prolymphocytic leukemia
- Lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma
- Splenic marginal zone B-cell lymphoma (with or without villous lymphocytes)
- Hairy cell leukemia
- Splenic lymphoma/leukemia, unclassifiable
- Plasma cell myeloma/plasmacytoma
- Heavy chain diseases
- Extramedullary marginal zone B-cell lymphoma of MALT type
- Nodal marginal zone B-cell lymphoma (with or without monocytoid B cells)
- Follicular lymphoma
- Primary cutaneous follicle center lymphoma
- Mantle cell lymphoma
- Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL)
  - Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, not otherwise specified
  - T-cell/histiocyte rich large B-cell lymphoma
  - DLBCL associated with chronic inflammation
  - EBV positive DLBCL of the elderly
  - Lymphomatoid granulomatosis
  - Primary mediastinal (thymic) large B-cell lymphoma
  - Intravascular large B-cell lymphoma
  - Primary cutaneous DLBCL, leg type
  - ALK positive DLBCL
  - Plasmablastic lymphoma
  - Primary effusion lymphoma
  - Large B-cell lymphoma arising in HHV8-associated multicentric Castleman disease
  - Burkitt lymphoma/Burkitt cell leukemia
  - B-cell lymphoma, unclassifiable, with features intermediate between diffuse large B-cell lymphoma and Burkitt lymphoma
  - B-cell lymphoma, unclassifiable, with features intermediate between diffuse large B-cell lymphoma and classical Hodgkin lymphoma

### T-cell and NK-cell neoplasms

**Precursor T-cell neoplasm**
- T-lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma (T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia)

**Mature (peripheral) T/NK-cell neoplasms**
- T-cell prolymphocytic leukemia
- T-cell large granular lymphocytic leukemia
- Aggressive NK-cell leukemia
- Systemic EBV positive T-cell lymphoproliferative disease of childhood (associated with chronic active EBV infection)
- Hydrat vacciniforme-like lymphoma
- Adult T-cell lymphoma/leukemia (HTLV 1 +)
- Extramedullary NK/T-cell lymphoma, nasal type
- Enteropathy-type T-cell lymphoma
- Hepatosplenic T-cell lymphoma
- Subcutaneous panniculitis-like T-cell lymphoma
- *Mycosis fungoides/Sézary syndrome*
- Primary cutaneous anaplastic large cell lymphoma
- Primary cutaneous aggressive epidermotropic CD8 positive cytotoxic T-cell lymphoma
- Primary cutaneous gamma-delta T-cell lymphoma
- Primary cutaneous small/medium CD4 positive T-cell lymphoma
- Peripheral T-cell lymphoma, not otherwise characterized
- Angioimmunoblastic T-cell lymphoma
- Anaplastic large cell lymphoma, ALK-positive
- Anaplastic large cell lymphoma, ALK-negative

REFERENCES

1. Harris NL, Jaffe ES, Stein H, Banks PM, Chan JK, Cleary ML, et al. A revised Euro-
   pean-American classification of lymphoid neoplasms: a proposal from the Inter-
2. Jaffe E, Harris N, Vardiman J, Stein H. Pathology and genetics: neoplasms of the
   haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues. In: Kleihaus P, Sobin L, editors. World
3. Armitage JO, Weisenburger DD. New approach to classifying non-Hodgkin’s
   lymphomas: clinical features of the major histologic subtypes. Non-Hodgkin’s
4. Carbone PP, Kaplan HS, Musshoff K, Smithers DW, Tubiana M. Report of the Com-
5. Lister TA, Crowther D, Sutcliffe SB, Glatstein E, Canellos GP, Young RC, et al.
   Report of a committee convened to discuss the evaluation and staging of patients
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Lymphoid Neoplasms

A. Hodgkin and Non-Hodgkin Lymphomas
B. Primary Cutaneous Lymphomas
C. Multiple Myeloma and Plasma Cell Disorders
D. Pediatric Lymphoid Malignancy
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Lymphoid Neoplasms

Hodgkin and Non-Hodgkin Lymphomas
(Excludes ocular adnexal lymphoma)

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES
There are no changes to the stage groups for the seventh edition

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

Stage I Involvement of a single lymphatic site (i.e., nodal region, Waldeyer’s ring, thymus, or spleen) (I); or localized involvement of a single extralymphatic organ or site in the absence of any lymph node involvement (IE) (rare in Hodgkin lymphoma).

Stage II Involvement of two or more lymph node regions on the same side of the diaphragm (II); or localized involvement of a single extralymphatic organ or site in association with regional lymph node involvement with or without involvement of other lymph node regions on the same side of the diaphragm (IIE). The number of regions involved may be indicated by a subscript, as in, for example, II3.

Stage III Involvement of lymph node regions on both sides of the diaphragm (III), which also may be accompanied by extralymphatic extension in association with adjacent lymph node involvement (IIIE) or by involvement of the spleen (IIIS) or both (IIIE,S). Splenic involvement is designated by the letter S.

Stage IV Diffuse or disseminated involvement of one or more extralymphatic organs, with or without associated lymph node involvement; or isolated extralymphatic organ involvement in the absence of adjacent regional lymph node involvement, but in conjunction with disease in distant site(s). Stage IV includes any involvement of the liver or bone marrow, lungs (other than by direct extension from another site), or cerebrospinal fluid.

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY RANGES
C00.0–C44.0, C44.2–C68.9, C69.1–C69.4, C69.8–C80.9

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES
9590–9699, 9702–9729, 9735, 9737, 9738
9811–9818, 9837 (all sites)
9823, 9827 (excludes C42.0, C42.1, C42.4)
INTRODUCTION

All newly diagnosed patients with malignant lymphomas should have formal documentation of the anatomic disease extent prior to the initial therapeutic intervention; that is, clinical stage must be assigned and recorded. Patients with recurrent disease generally do not have a new clinical stage assigned at the time of relapse, although recording of the anatomic disease extent at the time of recurrence is recommended.

Ann Arbor Staging System. The current anatomic staging classification for lymphoma, known as the Ann Arbor classification, was originally developed over 30 years ago for Hodgkin lymphoma, as it better determined which patients might be suitable candidates for radiation therapy, and has subsequently been updated. It was subsequently applied to non-Hodgkin lymphoma as well. The pattern of disease spread in Hodgkin lymphoma tends to be more predictable compared to that encountered in non-Hodgkin lymphoma. The Ann Arbor classification has been accepted as the best means of describing the anatomic disease extent and has been found useful as a universal system for a variety of lymphomas. The AJCC and UICC have adopted the Ann Arbor classification as the official system for classifying the anatomic extent of disease in Hodgkin lymphoma and non-Hodgkin lymphoma, with the exception of cutaneous lymphomas (e.g., mycosis fungoides), which are dealt with later in this chapter.

For the purposes of coding and staging, lymph nodes, Waldeyer’s ring, thymus, and spleen are considered nodal or extralymphatic sites. Extralymphatic or extralymphatic sites include the bone marrow, the gastrointestinal tract, skin, bone, central nervous system, lung, gonads, ocular adnexae (conjunctiva, lacrimal glands, and orbital soft tissue), liver, kidneys, uterus, etc. Hodgkin lymphoma rarely presents in an extranodal site alone, but about 25% of non-Hodgkin lymphomas are extranodal at presentation. The frequency of extranodal presentation varies dramatically among different lymphomas, however, with some (mycosis fungoides and MALT lymphomas) being virtually always extranodal, except in advanced stages of the diseases, and some (follicular lymphoma, B-cell small lymphocytic lymphoma) seldom being extranodal, except for bone marrow involvement.

The Ann Arbor staging system also includes an E suffix for lymphomas presenting in extranodal sites. For example, lymphoma presenting in the thyroid gland with cervical lymph node involvement should be staged as stage I, while lymphoma presenting only in unilateral cervical lymph nodes would be stage I. Frequently, extensive lymph node involvement is associated with extranodal extension of disease that may also directly invade other organs. Such extension may be described with an E suffix but should not be recorded as stage IV. For example, mediastinal lymph nodes with adjacent lung extension should be classified as Stage IIE disease. Other examples of Stage IIE diseases include extension into the anterior chest wall and into the pericardium from a large mediastinal mass (two areas of extralymphatic involvement); involvement of the iliac bone in the presence of adjacent iliac lymph node involvement; involvement of a lumbar vertebral body in conjunction with para-aortic lymph node involvement; involvement of the pleura as an extension from adjacent internal mammary nodes. A pleural or pericardial effusion with negative (or unknown) cytology is not an E lesion. There are situations where the distinction between Stage IIE (or IIE) and Stage IV can be problematic and where experts might disagree.

The extent of mediastinal disease is defined by a ratio between the maximum single width of the mediastinal mass on a standing PA chest radiograph and the maximum intrathoracic diameter on the same radiograph. A ratio greater than or equal to 1/3 defines a large (bulky) mediastinal mass. The presence of a large mediastinal mass or any other lesion with a greatest diameter of >10 cm is designated by the subscript letter X.

Definition of Lymph Node Regions. The staging classification for lymphoma uses the term lymph node region. The lymph node regions were defined at the Rye symposium in 1965 and have been used in the Ann Arbor classification. They are not based on any physiological principles but, rather, have been agreed upon by convention. The currently accepted classification of core nodal regions is as follows: right cervical (including cervical, supraclavicular, occipital, and preauricular lymph nodes) nodes and left cervical nodes, right axillary, left axillary, right infraclavicular, and left infraclavicular lymph nodes, mediastinal lymph nodes, right hilar lymph nodes, left hilar lymph nodes, para-aortic lymph nodes, mesenteric lymph nodes, right pelvic lymph nodes, left pelvic lymph nodes, right inguinal lymph nodes, and left inguinal lymph nodes. In addition to these core regions, non-Hodgkin lymphoma may involve epitrochlear lymph nodes, popliteal lymph nodes, internal mammary lymph nodes, occipital lymph nodes, submental lymph nodes, preauricular lymph nodes, and many other small nodal areas. The FLIPI prognostic scoring system has developed its own definition of nodal regions.

A and B Classification (Symptoms). Each stage should be classified as either A or B according to the absence or presence of defined constitutional symptoms. These are as follows:

1. **Fever**. Unexplained fever with temperature above 38°C.
2. **Night sweats**. Drenching sweats (e.g., those that require change of bedclothes).
3. **Weight loss**. Unexplained weight loss of more than 10% of the usual body weight in the 6 months prior to diagnosis.

Other symptoms such as chills, pruritus, alcohol-induced pain or fatigue are recorded but are not included in the A or B designation.

Criteria for Organ Involvement. Lymph node involvement is demonstrated by (a) clinical or imaging enlargement...
of node when alternative pathology may reasonably be ruled out. Suspicious nodes should always be biopsied if treatment decisions are based on their involvement, preferably with an excisional biopsy; fine needle aspirations are strongly discouraged because of their high false-negative rate. Nodes larger than 1.5 cm are considered abnormal.

*Spleen involvement* is suggested by unequivocal palpable splenomegaly and demonstrated by radiologic confirmation (ultrasound or CT), by multiple focal defects that are neither cystic nor vascular (radiologic enlargement alone is inadequate).

 Liver involvement is demonstrated by multiple focal defects that are neither cystic nor vascular. Clinical enlargement alone, or with or without abnormalities of liver function tests, is not adequate. Liver biopsy may be used to confirm the presence of liver involvement in a patient with abnormal liver function tests or when imaging assessment is equivocal if treatment will be altered on the basis of those results.

*Bone involvement* is demonstrated by radiologic evidence of parenchymal involvement in the absence of other likely causes, especially infection. Lung biopsy may be required to clarify equivocal cases.

 Lung involvement is demonstrated by radiologic evidence of parenchymal involvement in the absence of other likely causes, especially infection. Lung biopsy may be required to clarify equivocal cases.

*Bone involvement* is demonstrated by appropriate imaging studies, and a bone biopsy from an involved area of bone may be necessary for a precise diagnosis, if treatment decisions depend on the findings.

*CNS involvement* is demonstrated by (a) a spinal intradural deposit or spinal cord meningeval involvement, which may be diagnosed on the basis of the clinical history and findings supported by plain radiology, CSF examination, myelography, CT, and/or MRI (spinal extradural deposits should be carefully assessed, because they may be the result of soft tissue disease that represents extension from bone metastasis or disseminated disease) and (b) intracranial involvement, which will rarely be diagnosed clinically at presentation. It should be considered on the basis of a space-occupying lesion in the face of disease in additional extranodal sites.

*Bone marrow involvement* is assessed by an aspiration and bone marrow biopsy. Immunohistochemistry and/or flow cytometry may be useful adjuncts to histologic interpretation to determine if a lymphocytic infiltrate is malignant.

### RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

**Clinical Staging.** Clinical staging includes the careful recording of medical history and physical examination; imaging of chest, abdomen, and pelvis; blood chemistry determination; complete blood count; and bone marrow biopsy (Table 57.1 and Figure 57.1).

The basic staging investigation in non-Hodgkin lymphoma includes physical examination, complete blood count, LDH, liver function tests, chest X-ray, and CT scan of the neck, chest, abdomen and pelvis, and bone marrow biopsy. In patients presenting with extranodal lymphoma, imaging of the presenting area with either CT or MRI is required to define local disease extent. 18-Fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography (PET) scans are more sensitive and specific than CT scans; however, they have not yet been routinely incorporated into clinical staging. These studies are of greatest value in restaging and distinguishing lymphoma from scar tissue or fibrosis after treatment. The use of PET scans also varies with lymphoma histology and clinical situation. The use of PET in lymphoma clinical trials has recently been standardized by the International Harmonization Project. In patients at high risk for occult CNS involvement, CSF cytology is performed. Biopsies of any suspicious lesions may also be conducted as part of the initial clinical staging, especially if this would alter stage assignment. Bone marrow biopsy is a standard clinical staging investigation. However, liver biopsy is not required as part of clinical staging, unless abnormal liver function occurs in the presence of otherwise limited stage disease. Clinical staging is repeated at the end of therapy and forms the basis for defining response.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 57.1. Recommendation for the diagnostic evaluation of patients with lymphoma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>A. Mandatory procedures</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Biopsy (preferably excisional), with interpretation by a qualified pathologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. History, with special attention to the presence and duration of fever, night sweats, and unexplained loss of 10% or more of body weight in the previous 6 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Physical examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Laboratory tests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Complete blood cell count and platelet count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Erythrocyte sedimentation rate or CRP (Hodgkin lymphoma patients)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Chemistry panel (electrolytes, BUN, creatinine, calcium, phosphorus, uric acid, SGOT, SGPT, bilirubin, LDH, and alkaline phosphatase)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Radiographic examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Chest X-ray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. CT of neck, chest, abdomen, and pelvis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Metabolic imaging (FDG-PET) in appropriate indications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Bone marrow examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. HIV testing in patients with an aggressive histology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Hepatitis B serology in patients being considered for rituximab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B. Examples of ancillary procedures</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Radioisotopic bone scans, in selected patients with bone pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Gastroscopy and/or GI series in patients with GI presentations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. MRI of the spine in patients with suspected spinal cord involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. MRI of the brain in patients with cranial nerve palsy or suspected primary CNS lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. MRI of bone if nuclear imaging abnormality identified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. CSF cytology in patients with Stage IV disease and bone marrow involvement, tests involvement, or parameningeval involvement and in all children and all adults with lymphoblastic and Burkitt lymphoma. Flow cytometric analysis may be more sensitive than cytologic assessment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>May include unilateral/bilateral bone marrow aspiration and biopsy in adults and children with NHL and unilateral/bilateral biopsies in children with Hodgkin lymphoma who present with B symptoms or advanced stage disease (III/IV).</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lymphoid Neoplasms 609
**Pathologic Staging.** The use of the term *pathologic staging* is reserved for patients who undergo staging laparotomy with an explicit intent to assess the presence of abdominal disease or to define histologic microscopic disease extent in the abdomen. As a result of improved diagnostic imaging, staging laparotomy and pathologic staging have been essentially abandoned as useful procedures.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

**Prognostic Indices Used in Non-Hodgkin and Hodgkin Lymphoma.** *International Prognostic Index (IPI).* The International Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma Prognostic Factors Project used pretreatment prognostic factors in a sample of several thousand patients with aggressive lymphomas treated with doxorubicin-based combination chemotherapy to develop a predictive model of outcome for aggressive non-Hodgkin lymphoma. The specific type of lymphoma and the IPI score are the major factors currently used in treatment decisions. On the basis of factors identified in multivariate analysis of the above data set, the International Prognostic Index (Table 57.2) was proposed. Five pretreatment characteristics were found to be independent statistically significant factors: age in years (≤60 vs. >60); tumor stage I or II (localized) versus III or IV (advanced); number of extranodal sites of involvement (0–1 vs. >1); patient’s performance status (ECOG 0 or 1 vs. ≥2); and serum LDH level (normal vs. abnormal). With the use of these five pretreatment risk factors, patients could be assigned to one of the four risk groups on the basis of the number of presenting risk factors: low (0 or 1), low intermediate (2), high intermediate (3), and high (4 or 5). When patients were analyzed by risk factors, they were found to have very different outcomes with regard to complete response (CR), relapse-free survival (RFS), and overall survival (OS). The outcomes indicated that the low-risk patients had an 87% CR rate and an OS rate of 73% at 5 years in contrast to a 44% CR rate and 26% 5-year survival in patients in the high-risk group. A similar pattern of decreasing survival with a number of adverse factors was observed when younger patients only were considered.
The validity of the IPI is less clear in patients with T-cell lymphomas and other classifications have been proposed but none are yet universally accepted.

The Follicular Lymphoma Prognostic Index (FLIPI). The IPI was less useful in follicular lymphomas, and the FLIPI has been proposed. Factors that are included are the number of nodal sites (≤ 4 vs. >4), serum LDH (normal vs. elevated), age (using 60 years and younger as the cut-off), stage (I–II vs. III–IV), and serum hemoglobin concentration (≥ 12 vs. <12 g/dL). The three risk groups identified were 0–1 adverse factor, 2 factors, or 3 or more factors. Patients with low-risk disease had a 10-year survival of 71%, 51% with intermediate-risk disease, and only 36% for those with high-risk disease.

The International Prognostic Score (IPS). The International Prognostic Score (IPS) has been developed for Hodgkin lymphoma, which predicts outcome based on the following adverse factors: serum albumin < 4 g/dL, hemoglobin < 10.5 g/dL, age ≥ 45 years, male sex, Ann Arbor Stage IV, white blood cell count ≥ 15 × 10⁹/L, and lymphocytopenia < 0.6 × 10⁹/L or <8%.

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Primary Cutaneous Lymphomas

At-A-Glance

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

There are no changes to the stage groups for the seventh edition

ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Peripheral Blood Involvement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>1,2</td>
<td>1,2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0–2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0–2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0–2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0–2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA1</td>
<td>1–4</td>
<td>0–2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA2</td>
<td>1–4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>1–4</td>
<td>0–3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0–2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICD-O-3 TOPOGRAPHY RANGES

- C44.0–C44.9  Skin
- C51.0–C51.9  Vulva
- C60.0–C60.9  Penis
- C63.2  Scrotum

ICD-O-3 HISTOLOGY CODE RANGES

9700–9701

Primary cutaneous T- and B-cell lymphomas are a heterogeneous group of malignancies with varied clinical presentation and prognosis. The application of molecular, histological, and clinical criteria have allowed for a better characterization of defined entities with distinct features. The World Health Organization and European Organization of Research and Treatment of Cancer (WHO-EORTC) classification for cutaneous lymphomas provides a consensus categorization that allows for more uniform diagnosis and treatment of these disorders. Approximately 80% of the cutaneous lymphomas are of T cell origin. Mycosis fungoides and Sézary syndrome have a formal staging system proposed by the International Society for Cutaneous Lymphomas and EORTC.1 The other cutaneous non-Hodgkin lymphomas are staged using the same system, described previously, for lymphomas presenting in other anatomic locations.

Mycosis Fungoides. Mycosis fungoides and its variants represent the most common form of cutaneous T cell lymphoma (CTCL). The malignant cell is derived from a post thymic T cell that typically bears a CD4+ helper/memory antigen profile. The disease is characterized by erythematous patches (usually in sun-protected areas) that progress to plaques or tumors. Initial evaluation should include delineation of skin involvement with photographs; skin biopsy (histopathology, immunophenotyping, and T-cell receptor (TCR) gene analysis); CBC with differential, Sézary cell count (peripheral blood); chemistry panel with LDH; and in select instances peripheral blood flow cytometric analysis of T-cell subsets (CD4/CD8 ratio); TCR gene analysis on peripheral blood; lymph node biopsy and bone marrow biopsies (histopathology, immunophenotyping and TCR gene analysis); CT/PET scans; and serologic tests (HTLV-1 and HIV). Skin directed and systemic therapies are determined by the patient’s stage and symptoms. Prognosis is stage dependent.

Sézary Syndrome. Sézary syndrome is the aggressive leukemic, and erythrodermic form of CTCL, which is characterized by circulating atypical, malignant T lymphocytes
with cerebriform nuclei (Sézary cells), and lymphadenopathy. The Sézary cells also have a mature memory T-cell phenotype (CD3+, CD4+) with loss of CD7 and CD26.

**DEFINITIONS OF TNM**

**ISCL/EORTC Revision to the Classification of Mycosis fungoides and Sézary Syndrome**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skin</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Limited patches,* papules, and/or plaques** covering less than 10% of the skin surface. May further stratify into T1a (patch only) vs. T1b (plaque ± patch)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Patches, papules or plaques covering 10% or more of the skin surface. May further stratify into T2a (patch only) vs. T2b (plaque ± patch)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>One or more tumors*** (≥1-cm diameter)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Confluence of erythema covering 80% or more of body surface area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Node</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No clinically abnormal peripheral lymph nodes****; biopsy not required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Clinically abnormal peripheral lymph nodes; histopathology Dutch grade 1 or NCI LN0-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>Clone negative******</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>Clone positive******</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Clinically abnormal peripheral lymph nodes; histopathology Dutch grade 2 or NCI LN3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2a</td>
<td>Clone negative******</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2b</td>
<td>Clone positive******</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
<td>Clinically abnormal peripheral lymph nodes; histopathology Dutch grades 3–4 or NCI LN4; clone positive or negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nx</td>
<td>Clinically abnormal peripheral lymph nodes; no histologic confirmation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Visceral**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M0</th>
<th>No visceral organ involvement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Visceral involvement (must have pathology confirmation* and organ involved should be specified)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Peripheral Blood Involvement**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B0</th>
<th>Absence of significant blood involvement: 5% or less of peripheral blood lymphocytes are atypical (Sézary) cells^^</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B0a</td>
<td>Clone negative******</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B0b</td>
<td>Clone positive******</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B1</td>
<td>Low blood tumor burden: more than 5% of peripheral blood lymphocytes are atypical (Sézary) cells but does not meet the criteria of B2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B1a</td>
<td>Clone negative******</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B1b</td>
<td>Clone positive******</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B2</td>
<td>High blood tumor burden: 1000/µL Sézary cells^^ or more with positive clone*****</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


*For skin, patch indicates any size skin lesion without significant elevation or induration. Presence/absence of hypopigmentation, scale, crusting, and/or poikiloderma should be noted.

**For skin, plaque indicates any size skin lesion that is elevated or indurated. Presence or absence of scale, crusting, and/or poikiloderma should be noted. Histologic features such as folliculotropism or large-cell transformation (>25% large cells), CD30+ or CD30–, and clinical features such as ulceration are important to document.

***For skin, tumor indicates at least one 1-cm diameter solid or nodular lesion with evidence of depth and/or vertical growth. Note total number of lesions, total volume of lesions, largest size lesion, and region of body involved. Also note if histologic evidence of large-cell transformation has occurred. Phenotyping for CD30 is encouraged.

****For node, abnormal peripheral lymph node(s) indicates any palpable peripheral node that on physical examination is firm, irregular, clustered, fixed or 1.5 cm or larger in diameter. Node groups examined on physical examination include cervical, supraclavicular, epitrochlear, axillary, and inguinal. Central nodes, which are not generally amenable to pathologic assessment, are not currently considered in the nodal classification unless used to establish N3 histopathologically.

*****A T-cell clone is defined by PCR or Southern blot analysis of the T-cell receptor gene.

^For viscera, spleen and liver may be diagnosed by imaging criteria.

^^For blood, Sézary cells are defined as lymphocytes with hyperconvoluted cerebriform nuclei. If Sézary cells are not able to be used to determine tumor burden for B2, then one of the following modified ISCL criteria along with a positive clonal rearrangement of the TCR may be used instead: (1) expanded CD4+ or CD3+ cells with CD4/CD8 ratio of 10 or more, (2) expanded CD4+ cells with abnormal immunophenotype including loss of CD7 or CD26.
Histopathologic Staging of Lymph Nodes in Mycosis fungoides and Sézary Syndrome

Updated ISCL/EORTC classification

| N1 | Grade 1: dermatopathic lymphadenopathy (DL) | LN0: no atypical lymphocytes
|    |    | LN1: occasional and isolated atypical lymphocytes (not arranged in clusters) |
|    |    | LN2: many atypical lymphocytes or in 3–6 cell clusters |

| N2 | Grade 2: DL; early involvement by MF (presence of cerebriform nuclei > 7.5 µm) | LN3: aggregates of atypical lymphocytes; nodal architecture preserved |

| N3 | Grade 3: partial effacement of LN architecture; many atypical cerebriform mononuclear cells (CMCs) |
|    | Grade 4: complete effacement |


ANATOMIC STAGE/PROGNOSTIC GROUPS

ISCL/EORTC Revision to the Staging of Mycosis fungoides and Sézary Syndrome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Peripheral Blood Involvement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0–2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0–2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0–2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0–2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA1</td>
<td>1–4</td>
<td>0–2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA2</td>
<td>1–4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>1–4</td>
<td>0–3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)
(Recommended for Collection)

For Mycosis fungoides and Sézary Syndrome only

Required Peripheral blood involvement for staging

Clinically None significant

Primary Cutaneous CD30+ Lymphoproliferative Disorders. Primary cutaneous CD30+ lymphoproliferative disorders are the second most common group of CTCL. This spectrum of diseases includes lymphomatoid papulosis, anaplastic large cell lymphoma and borderline cases. The distinction between these entities can be challenging and is often determined by clinical behavior. Lymphomatoid papulosis represents a benign, chronic recurrent, self-healing, papulonodular, and papulonecrotic CD4+, CD30+ skin eruption. Primary cutaneous anaplastic large cell lymphoma typically presents with solitary or localized nodules.

Follicle Center Cell Lymphoma. Follicle center cell lymphoma is the most common cutaneous B cell lymphoma (CBCL). Erythematous nodules or plaques are comprised of a proliferation of centrocytes (small to large cleaved cells) and centroblasts (large round cells with prominent nuclei). The clinical course is usually indolent even when the infiltrate is composed of predominately large cells.

Marginal Zone Lymphoma. Marginal zone lymphoma is an indolent CBCL. It has the histologic appearance of a MALT lymphoma and shows a nodular or diffuse dermal infiltrate with a heterogeneous cellular infiltrate of small lymphocytes, lymphoplasmacytoid cells, plasma cells, intranuclear inclusions (Dutcher bodies), and reactive germinal centers that may be infiltrated by neoplastic cells. They are often localized and usually follow an indolent course.

Large B-Cell Lymphoma of the Leg. Large B-cell lymphoma of the leg is an aggressive lymphoma most commonly seen in elderly women. Patients present with tumors that may ulcerate. The histologic evaluation shows a diffuse dermal infiltrate comprised of predominantly centroblasts often with multilobulated nuclei. The staging form for Primary Cutaneous Lymphoma appears on pp. 625–628.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Multiple Myeloma and Plasma Cell Disorders

INTRODUCTION

Multiple myeloma is a neoplastic disorder characterized by the proliferation of a single clone of plasma cells derived from B cells. This clone of plasma cells grows in the bone marrow and frequently invades the adjacent bone, producing skeletal destruction that results in bone pain and fractures. Other common findings include anemia, hypercalcemia, and renal insufficiency. Recurrent bacterial infections and bleeding can occur, but the hyperviscosity syndrome is rare. The clone of plasma cells produces monoclonal (M-protein) of IgG or IgA and rarely IgD or IgE or free monoclonal light chains (kappa or lambda) (Bence Jones protein). The diagnosis depends on identification of monoclonal plasma cells in the bone marrow, M-protein in the serum or urine, osteolytic lesions, and a clinical picture consistent with multiple myeloma.

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

Diagnosis. Criteria for the diagnosis of multiple myeloma include the presence of clonal bone marrow plasma cells or plasmacytoma, presence of an M-protein in serum and/or urine, and the presence of related organ or tissue impairment (CRAB: hypercalcemia, renal insufficiency, anemia, or bony lesions) related to the underlying plasma cell disorder. Metastatic carcinoma, lymphoma, leukemia, and connective tissue disorders must be excluded. In addition, monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance (MGUS) and smoldering multiple myeloma (SMM) must be excluded. MGUS is characterized by an M-protein <3 g/dL, fewer than 10% plasma cells in the bone marrow, and no end-organ involvement. The plasma cell labeling index (PCLI) is helpful in differentiating MGUS and SMM from multiple myeloma. An elevated PCLI is a strong indicator of active multiple myeloma. However, 40% of patients with symptomatic multiple myeloma have a normal PCLI. Monoclonal plasma cells of the same isotype can be detected in the peripheral blood of 80% of patients with active multiple myeloma. Circulating plasma cells either are absent or are present in only small numbers in MGUS and SMM.

PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

The median duration of survival in multiple myeloma is approximately three to four years, but there is a great deal of variability from one patient to another. Cytogenetic abnormalities are an important prognostic feature, but are present in only 35% of patients. The deletion of chromosome 13 by cytogenetics or the presence of t(4;14), t(14;16), or -17p13 by FISH are all predictors of poor outcome. Hypodiploidy is an adverse prognostic feature. An elevated plasma cell labeling index, plasmablastic morphology, or circulating plasma cells in the peripheral blood are all associated with more aggressive disease. Age, levels of creatinine and calcium, and immunoglobulin class also have prognostic value. Novel agents such as lenalidamide and bortezomib show promise at overcoming these adverse prognostic factors for conventional and high dose therapies.

Staging. The Durie-Salmon staging system has been utilized for over 30 years. Stage I requires hemoglobin >10.0 g/dL, serum calcium ≤12 mg/dL, normal bone x-rays or a solitary bone lesion, IgG <5 g/dL, IgA <3 g/dL, and urine M-protein <4 g/24 h. Stage III includes one or more of the following: hemoglobin <8.5 g/dL, serum calcium >12 mg/dL, advanced lytic bone lesions, IgG >7 g/dL, IgA >5 g/dL, or urine M-protein >12 g/24 h. Stage II patients fit neither Stage I nor Stage III. Patients are further subclassed as (A) serum creatinine < 2.0 mg/dL and (B) serum creatinine ≥ 2.0 mg/dL. The median survival is approximately 5 years for those with Stage 1A disease and is 15 months for those with Stage IIIB disease. This system primarily measures tumor cell burden and has major limitations. An international staging system (ISS) consisting of serum albumin and β-2 microglobulin is a useful measure of survival. Patients with a serum albumin >3.5 g/dL and serum β-2 microglobulin >3.5 mcg/mL had a median survival of 62 months, while those with a serum β-2 microglobulin ≥5.5 mcg/mL had a median survival of 29 months (Table 57.3).

Monoclonal Gammopathy of Undetermined Significance. The prevalence of monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance (MGUS) is 3% in persons 50 years or older, 5% in those over 70 years of age, and is higher in men than women. The rate of progression is approximately 1% per year. [The level of monoclonal protein and the subtype (i.e., IgA and IgM are at greater risk) along with the serum free light chain (FLC) level are important prognostic features.] Patients must continue to be observed throughout their life because the risk of progression persists.
Smoldering Multiple Myeloma. Smoldering multiple myeloma (SMM) is characterized by the presence of an M-protein ≥ 3 g/dL and/or ≥ 10% plasma cells in the bone marrow but no end-organ damage. The risk of progression to multiple myeloma or AL amyloidosis is 10% per year for the first 5 years, approximately 3% per year for the next 5 years, and then 1% per year for the following 10 years.

Waldenström's Macroglobulinemia. This malignant lymphoplasmacytic cell proliferative disorder produces a high concentration of immunoglobulin M (IgM) paraprotein. Waldenström's macroglobulinemia (WM) cells express CD19, CD20, CD24, and only one light chain (kappa in about 75% of cases). Approximately 10% express CD5. The most common chromosomal abnormality is deletion of 6q21. In contrast to multiple myeloma, no translocations are found. Diagnostic criteria include an IgM paraprotein regardless of its size and bone marrow infiltration by small lymphocytes that exhibit plasmacytoid or plasma cell differentiation. Median survival is approximately 6 years. (Gender, age, hemoglobin, neutrophil, and platelet levels, serum albumin and β-2 microglobulin are all prognostic features.)

Solitary Plasmacytoma (Solitary Myeloma) of Bone. The diagnosis depends on histologic proof of a plasma cell tumor but no evidence of multiple myeloma. Complete skeletal radiographs, bone marrow aspiration and biopsy, and immunofixation of serum and urine should reveal no evidence of multiple myeloma.

A small monoclonal protein may be found in the serum or urine but it usually disappears after radiation of a solitary lesion. The persistence of a serum monoclonal protein ≥ 0.5 g/dL 1–2 years after diagnosis and an abnormal free light chain ratio at the time of diagnosis are indicative of disease progression. More than 50% of patients develop multiple myeloma.

Extramedullary Plasmacytoma. This is a plasma cell tumor that arises outside the bone marrow. The upper respiratory tract is involved in approximately 80% of cases. Approximately 15–20% of patients develop multiple myeloma.

There is no staging form for Multiple Myeloma and Plasma Cell Disorders.

### TABLE 57.3. The international staging system for multiple myeloma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Median survival (months)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Serum β-2-microglobulin &lt; 3.5 mg/L</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Serum albumin ≥ 3.5 g/dL.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Not stage I or III*</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Serum β-2-microglobulin ≥ 6.6 mg/L</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


*There are two categories for stage II: serum β-2-microglobulin < 3.5 mg/L but serum albumin < 3.5 g/dL, or serum β-2-microglobulin 3.5 to < 5.5 mg/L irrespective of the serum albumin level.

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Pediatric Lymphoid Malignancy

**DIAGNOSIS**

Children with NHL usually have Burkitt lymphoma, lymphoblastic lymphoma, diffuse large B-cell lymphoma or anaplastic large cell lymphoma. The diagnosis of NHL is most readily established by examination of tissue obtained by open biopsy of the involved area. Histologic, immunophenotypic, cytogenetic, and molecular studies are all helpful in confirming the diagnosis. In cases in which the patient is too unstable for general anesthesia, as in the case of a child with a large anterior mediastinal mass, a parasternal fine-needle core biopsy of the mass may be sufficient to establish the diagnosis. In children with either pleural effusion or ascites, the diagnosis is often made by cytologic examination of fluid obtained by thoracentesis or paracentesis. Bone marrow and cerebrospinal fluid examination should be performed early in the workup of a child with suspected NHL because they may be diagnostic and may preclude the need for more invasive procedures. Children with Hodgkin lymphoma are staged using the same system as adults.

**WORKUP**

The workup of a child with newly diagnosed NHL should include a history and physical examination, a complete blood count, and a chemistry panel. Diagnostic imaging studies should include CT scans of chest, abdomen and pelvis and nuclear imaging (PET or gallium scanning). MRI of the base of the skull should be considered in children with a cranial nerve palsy. Examination of the cerebrospinal fluid and bone marrow should be performed in all patients.

**PROGNOSTIC FEATURES**

The degree of tumor burden, as reflected in both disease stage and serum lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), is the most important prognostic factor. Among certain histologic subtypes, disease site also influences outcome. For example, central nervous system involvement is associated with a poorer outcome among children with Burkitt lymphoma, and involvement of mediastinum, viscera or skin is associated with a poorer outcome among those with anaplastic large cell lymphoma.

**STAGING**

Upon completion of the foregoing workup, the child is usually assigned a disease stage according to the St. Jude system described by Murphy (Table 57.4), which was designed to accommodate the noncontiguous nature of disease spread, predominant extranodal involvement and involvement of the central nervous system and bone marrow that characterize the pediatric NHLs. Stages I and II are considered to represent limited stage disease whereas Stages III and IV are considered advanced stages.

There is no staging form for Pediatric Lymphoid Malignancy.

**TABLE 57.4. St. Jude staging system**

| Stage I | A single tumor (extranodal) or single anatomic area (nodal), with the exclusion of mediastinum or abdomen |
| Stage II | A single tumor (extranodal) with regional node involvement |
| Two or more nodal areas on the same side of the diaphragm |
| Two single (extranodal) tumors with or without regional node involvement on the same side of the diaphragm |
| A primary gastrointestinal tract tumor, usually in the ileocecal area, with or without involvement of associated mesenteric nodes only |
| Stage III |
| Two single tumors (extranodal) on opposite sides of the diaphragm |
| Two or more nodal areas above and below the diaphragm |
| All primary intrathoracic tumors (mediastinal, pleural, thymic) |
| All extensive primary intra-abdominal disease |
| All paraspinal or epidural tumors, regardless of other tumor site(s) |
| Stage IV |
| Any of the above with initial CNS and/or bone marrow involvement |


* A distinction is made between apparently localized GI tract lymphoma and more extensive intra-abdominal disease because of their quite different patterns of survival after appropriate therapy. Stage II disease typically is limited to one segment of the gut plus or minus the associated mesenteric nodes only and the primary tumor can be completely removed grossly by segmental excision. Stage III disease typically exhibits spread to para-aortic and retroperitoneal areas by implants and plaques in mesentery or peritoneum, or by direct infiltration of structures adjacent to the primary tumor. Ascites may be present, and complete resection of all gross tumor is not possible.

* If the marrow involvement is present initially, the number of abnormal cells must be 25% or less in an otherwise normal marrow aspirate with a normal peripheral blood picture.
REFERENCES

### Hodgkin and Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma Staging Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Involvement of a single lymphatic site (i.e. nodal region, Waldeyer’s ring, thymus or spleen) (I); or localized involvement of a single extralymphatic organ or site in the absence of any lymph node involvement (IE) (rare in Hodgkin lymphoma).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Involvement of two or more lymph node regions on the same side of the diaphragm (II); or localized involvement of a single extralymphatic organ or site in association with regional lymph node involvement with or without involvement of other lymph node regions on the same side of the diaphragm (IIE). The number of regions involved may be indicated by a subscript, as in, for example, II3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Involvement of lymph node regions on both sides of the diaphragm (III), which also may be accompanied by extralymphatic extension in association with adjacent lymph node involvement (IIIE) or by involvement of the spleen (III S) or both (IIIE, S). Splenic involvement is designated by the letter S.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Diffuse or disseminated involvement of one or more extralymphatic organs, with or without associated lymph node involvement; or isolated extralymphatic organ involvement in the absence of adjacent regional lymph node involvement, but in conjunction with disease in distant site(s). Stage IV includes any involvement of the liver or bone marrow, lungs (other than by direct extension from another site), or cerebrospinal fluid.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modifiers for Group:
- E Extranodal
- S Spleen

A & B Classification (Symptoms)
- A Asymptomatic
- B Symptoms: fevers, night sweats, weight loss
- Stage unknown

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Involvement of a single lymphatic site (i.e. nodal region, Waldeyer’s ring, thymus or spleen) (I); or localized involvement of a single extralymphatic organ or site in the absence of any lymph node involvement (IE) (rare in Hodgkin lymphoma).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Involvement of two or more lymph node regions on the same side of the diaphragm (II); or localized involvement of a single extralymphatic organ or site in association with regional lymph node involvement with or without involvement of other lymph node regions on the same side of the diaphragm (IIE). The number of regions involved may be indicated by a subscript, as in, for example, II3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Involvement of lymph node regions on both sides of the diaphragm (III), which also may be accompanied by extralymphatic extension in association with adjacent lymph node involvement (IIIE) or by involvement of the spleen (III S) or both (IIIE, S). Splenic involvement is designated by the letter S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Diffuse or disseminated involvement of one or more extralymphatic organs, with or without associated lymph node involvement; or isolated extralymphatic organ involvement in the absence of adjacent regional lymph node involvement, but in conjunction with disease in distant site(s). Stage IV includes any involvement of the liver or bone marrow, lungs (other than by direct extension from another site), or cerebrospinal fluid.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modifiers for Group:
- E Extranodal
- S Spleen

A & B Classification (Symptoms)
- A Asymptomatic
- B Symptoms: fevers, night sweats, weight loss
- Stage unknown

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)

REQUIRED FOR STAGING: None

CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:
- Associated with HIV/AIDS
- Symptoms at diagnosis (B symptoms)
- International Prognostic Index (IPI) score
- Follicular Lymphoma Prognostic Index (FLIPI) score
- International Prognostic Score (IPS)

Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Grade I or 1</th>
<th>Grade II or 2</th>
<th>Grade III or 3</th>
<th>Grade IV or 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 grade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 grade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 grade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 2, 3, or 4 grade system available</td>
<td>Grade I or 1</td>
<td>Grade II or 2</td>
<td>Grade III or 3</td>
<td>Grade IV or 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional Descriptors

Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V) have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists' (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

Residual Tumor (R)

The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

General Notes:
For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

- m suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
- y prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a "y" prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The "y" categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.
- r prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the "r" prefix: rTNM.
- a prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe): __________________________________________________________________________

National guidelines were used in treatment planning  ☑ NCCN ☐ Other (describe): __________________________________________________________________________

__________________________________________________________________________________________

Physician signature __________________________ Date/Time ____________

Hospital Name/Address __________________________ Patient Name/Information __________________________

(continued from previous page)
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

**Hodgkin and Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma Staging Form**

**Illustration**
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

**Lymph nodes above the diaphragm**
1. Waldeyer’s ring
2. Cervical, supraclavicular, occipital, and pre-auricular
3. Infracravicular
4. Axillary and pectoral
5. Mediastinal
6. Hilar
7. Epitrochlear and brachial

**Lymph nodes below the diaphragm**
8. Spleen
9. Mesenteric
10. Paraaortic
11. Iliac
12. Inguinal and femoral
13. Popliteal

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

Lymphoid Neoplasms 623

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
## PRIMARY CUTANEOUS LYMPHOMA STAGING FORM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLINICAL</th>
<th>STAGE CATEGORY DEFINITIONS</th>
<th>PATHOLOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extent of disease before any treatment</td>
<td>Extent of disease through completion of definitive surgery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PRIMARY TUMOR (T) SKIN

- **Primary tumor cannot be assessed**
- **T1**
  - Limited patches*, papules, and/or plaques**covering <10% of the skin surface.**
  - May further stratify into T1a (patch only) vs T1b (plaque ± patch).
- **T2**
  - Patches, papules or plaques covering ≥ 10% of the skin surface. May further stratify into T2a (patch only) vs T2b (plaque ± patch).
- **T3**
  - One or more tumors***(≥ 1-cm diameter)
- **T4**
  - Confluence of erythema covering ≥ 80% body surface area

### REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)

- **NX**
  - Clinically abnormal peripheral lymph nodes; no histologic confirmation
- **N0**
  - No clinically abnormal peripheral lymph nodes; biopsy not required
- **N1**
  - Clinically abnormal peripheral lymph nodes; histopathology Dutch grade 1 or NCI LN0-2
- **N1a**
  - Clone negative^#
- **N1b**
  - Clone positive^#
- **N2**
  - Clinically abnormal peripheral lymph nodes; histopathology Dutch grade 2 or NCI LN3
- **N2a**
  - Clone negative^#
- **N2b**
  - Clone positive^#
- **N3**
  - Clinically abnormal peripheral lymph nodes; histopathology Dutch grades 3-4 or NCI LN4; clone positive or negative

### DISTANT METASTASIS (M) VISCERAL

- **M0**
  - No visceral organ involvement (no pathologic M0; use clinical M to complete stage group)
- **M1**
  - Visceral involvement (must have pathology confirmation^^ and organ involved should be specified)

### PERIPHERAL BLOOD INVOLVEMENT (B)

- **B0**
  - Absence of significant blood involvement: ≤ 5% of peripheral blood lymphocytes are atypical (Sézary) cells^#
- **B0a**
  - Clone negative^#
- **B0b**
  - Clone positive^#
- **B1**
  - Low blood tumor burden: > 5% of peripheral blood lymphocytes are atypical (Sézary) cells but does not meet the criteria of B2
- **B1a**
  - Clone negative^#
- **B1b**
  - Clone positive^#
- **B2**
  - High blood tumor burden: ≥ 1000/µL Sézary cells^^^ with positive clone^#

### NOTES

- * For skin, patch indicates any size skin lesion without significant elevation or induration. Presence/absence of hypo- or hyperpigmentation, scale, crusting, and/or poikiloderma should be noted.
- ** For skin, plaque indicates any size skin lesion that is elevated or indurated. Presence or absence of scale, crusting, and/or poikiloderma should be noted. Histologic features such as folliculotropism or large-cell transformation (> 25% large cells), CD30+ or CD30-, and clinical features such as ulceration are important to document.
- *** For skin, tumor indicates at least one 1-cm diameter solid or nodular lesion

### HOSPITAL NAME/ADDRESS

### PATIENT NAME/INFORMATION

(continued on next page)
with evidence of depth and/or vertical growth. Note total number of lesions, total volume of lesions, largest size lesion, and region of body involved. Also note if histologic evidence of large-cell transformation has occurred. Phenotyping for CD30 is encouraged.

For node, abnormal peripheral lymph node(s) indicates any palpable peripheral node that on physical examination is firm, irregular, clustered, fixed or 1.5 cm or larger in diameter. Node groups examined on physical examination include cervical, supraclavicular, epitrochlear, axillary, and inguinal. Central nodes, which are not generally amenable to pathologic assessment, are not currently considered in the nodal classification unless used to establish N3 histopathologically.

For blood, Sézary cells are defined as lymphocytes with hyperconvoluted cerebriform nuclei. If Sézary cells are not able to be used to determine tumor burden for B2, then one of the following modified ISCL criteria along with a positive clonal rearrangement of the TCR may be used instead: (1) expanded CD4+ or CD8+ cells with CD4/CD8 ratio of 10 or more, (2) expanded CD4+ cells with abnormal immunophenotype including loss of CD7 or CD26.

A T-cell clone is defined by PCR or Southern blot analysis of the T-cell receptor gene.

### Anatomic Stage • Prognostic Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>1,2</td>
<td>1,2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0-2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0-2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0-2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0-2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA1</td>
<td>1-4</td>
<td>0-2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA2</td>
<td>1-4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>1-4</td>
<td>0-3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PROGNOSTIC FACTORS (SITE-SPECIFIC FACTORS)

**Mycosis Fungoides and Sézary only**

**REQUIRED FOR STAGING:** Peripheral blood involvement: _________________

**CLINICALLY SIGNIFICANT:** None

### General Notes:

For identification of special cases of TNM or pTNM classifications, the "m" suffix and "y," "r," and "a" prefixes are used. Although they do not affect the stage grouping, they indicate cases needing separate analysis.

The "m" suffix indicates the presence of multiple primary tumors in a single site and is recorded in parentheses: pT(m)NM.
**Histologic Grade (G) (also known as overall grade)**

**Grading system**
- 2 grade system
- 3 grade system
- 4 grade system
- No 2, 3, or 4 grade system is available

**Grade**
- Grade I or 1
- Grade II or 2
- Grade III or 3
- Grade IV or 4

**Additional Descriptors**

**Lymphatic Vessel Invasion (L) and Venous Invasion (V)** have been combined into Lymph-Vascular Invasion (LVI) for collection by cancer registrars. The College of American Pathologists’ (CAP) Checklist should be used as the primary source. Other sources may be used in the absence of a Checklist. Priority is given to positive results.

- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Not Present (absent)/Not Identified
- Lymph-Vascular Invasion Present/Identified
- Not Applicable
- Unknown/Indeterminate

**Residual Tumor (R)**
The absence or presence of residual tumor after treatment. In some cases treated with surgery and/or with neoadjuvant therapy there will be residual tumor at the primary site after treatment because of incomplete resection or local and regional disease that extends beyond the limit of ability of resection.

- RX Presence of residual tumor cannot be assessed
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

**General Notes (continued):**

- \( y \) prefix indicates those cases in which classification is performed during or following initial multimodality therapy. The cTNM or pTNM category is identified by a \( y \) prefix. The ycTNM or ypTNM categorizes the extent of tumor actually present at the time of that examination. The \( y \) categorization is not an estimate of tumor prior to multimodality therapy.

- \( r \) prefix indicates a recurrent tumor when staged after a disease-free interval, and is identified by the \( r \) prefix: rTNM.

- \( a \) prefix designates the stage determined at autopsy: aTNM.

**Clinical stage was used in treatment planning (describe):** 

**National guidelines were used in treatment planning**

**NCCN**

**Other (describe):** 

**Hospital Name/Address**

**Patient Name/Information**

(continued on next page)
Indicate on diagram primary tumor and regional nodes involved.

**Primary Cutaneous Lymphoma Staging Form**

**Lymph nodes above the diaphragm**
1. Waldeyer’s ring
2. Cervical, supraclavicular, occipital, and pre-auricular
3. Infraclavicular
4. Axillary and pectoral
5. Mediastinal
6. Hilar
7. Epitrochlear and brachial

**Lymph nodes below the diaphragm**
8. Spleen
9. Mesenteric
10. Paraaortic
11. Iliac
12. Inguinal and femoral
13. Popliteal

 Hospital Name/Address

 Patient Name/Information

(continued from previous page)
PART XIII
Personnel
and Contributors
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
AJCC Member Organizations

FOUNDING ORGANIZATIONS
American Cancer Society
American College of Physicians
American College of Radiology
American College of Surgeons
College of American Pathologists
National Cancer Institute

SPONSORING ORGANIZATIONS
American Cancer Society
American College of Surgeons
American Society of Clinical Oncology
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Cancer Institute

LIAISON ORGANIZATIONS
American Head and Neck Society
American Society of Colon and Rectal Surgeons
American Society for Therapeutic Radiology
American Urological Association
National Cancer Institute of Canada
National Cancer Registrars Association
National Comprehensive Cancer Network
North American Association of Central Cancer Registries
Society of Gynecologic Oncologists
Society of Surgical Oncology
Society of Urologic Oncology

EXECUTIVE OFFICE
American Joint Committee on Cancer
633 North Saint Clair Street
Chicago, IL 60611-3211
PHONE: 312/202-5313
FAX: 312/202-5009
www.cancerstaging.org
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Seventh Edition Site Task Forces

BONE
Jeffrey S. Kneisl, M.D., Chair
Carolinas Medical Center
Charlotte, North Carolina
Lee J. Helman, M.D.
National Cancer Institute
Bethesda, Maryland
Mark Krailo, Ph.D.
University of Southern California
Arcadia, California
Thomas Krausz, M.D.
University of Chicago
Chicago, Illinois
Ying Lu, Ph.D.
University of California
San Francisco, California
Brian O’Sullivan, M.D.
Princess Margaret Hospital
Toronto, Canada
Shreyaskumar Patel, M.D.
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas
Theola K. Rarick, C.T.R.
University of Iowa Hospital and Clinics
Iowa City, Iowa
Andrew Rosenberg, M.D.
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts
Murali Sundaram, M.D.
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio

BREAST
Daniel F. Hayes, M.D., Chair
University of Michigan
Ann Arbor, Michigan
Craig Allred, M.D.
Washington University
Saint Louis, Missouri
Benjamin O. Anderson, M.D.
University of Washington
Seattle, Washington
Pandora Ashley, C.T.R.
Scott and White Memorial Hospital
Temple, Texas
William Barlow, Ph.D.
Cancer Research and Biostatistics
Seattle, Washington
Donald Berry, Ph.D.
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas
Robert W. Carlson, M.D.
Stanford University
Stanford, California
Rebecca Gelman, Ph.D.
Dana-Farber Cancer Institute
Boston, Massachusetts
Susan Hilsenbeck, Ph.D.
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas
Giuseppe Viale, M.D.
University of Milan
Milan, Italy

American Joint Committee on Cancer • 2010

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Donald L. Weaver, M.D.
University of Vermont
Burlington, Vermont

Tim Whelan, B.M. B.Ch., M.Sc.
Juravinski Cancer Centre
Hamilton, Canada

Central Nervous System
Edward R. Laws, Jr., M.D., Chair
Brigham & Women’s Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

James Brierley, M.B., M.S.
University of Toronto
Toronto, Canada

Susan M. Chang, M.D.
University of California
San Francisco, California

James E. Herndon II, Ph.D.
Duke University
Durham, North Carolina

M. Beatriz S. Lopes, M.D.
University of Virginia
Charlottesville, Virginia

Minesh Mehta, M.D.
University of Wisconsin
Madison, Wisconsin

Eileen J. Morgan, M.P.A., C.T.R.
Duke University
Durham, North Carolina

Angel Morris, R.N., B.S.N.
Psychiatric Alliance of the Blue Ridge
Charlottesville, Virginia

Joseph E. Parisi, M.D.
Mayo Clinic
Rochester, Minnesota

Foregut
Mary Kay Washington, M.D., Ph.D., Chair
Vanderbilt University
Nashville, Tennessee

Ross A. Abrams, M.D.
Rush University
Chicago, Illinois

Jacqueline Benedetti, Ph.D.
University of Washington
Seattle, Washington

Karl Bilimoria, M.D.
Northwestern University
Chicago, Illinois

Chuslap Charumsangavej, M.D.
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Daniel G. Coit, M.D.
Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center
New York, New York

Joseph P. Costantino, D.P.H.
University of Pittsburgh
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

Brian Czito, M.D.
Duke University
Durham, North Carolina

Deborah Etheridge, C.T.R.
American College of Surgeons Commission on Cancer
Chicago, Illinois

Douglas B. Evans, M.D.
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

John P. Hoffman, M.D.
Temple University
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

David Kelsen, M.D.
Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center
New York, New York

Markku Miettinen, M.D., Ph.D.
Armed Forces Institute of Pathology
Washington, DC

Irvin Modlin, M.D., Ph.D., D.Sc.
Yale University
New Haven, Connecticut

Eileen M. O'Reilly, M.D.
Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center
New York, New York

Tyvin Rich, M.D.
University of Virginia
Charlottesville, Virginia

Leslie H. Sobin, M.D.
Armed Forces Institute of Pathology
Washington, DC

Charles A. Staley, M.D.
Emory University
Atlanta, Georgia

Mark Talamonti, M.D.
NorthShore University Health System
Evanston, Illinois

Huamin Wang, M.D., Ph.D.
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Christian Wittekind, M.D.
Institut fur Pathologie der Universitat
Leipzig, Germany

Genitourinary
Sam S. Chang, M.D., Chair
Vanderbilt University Medical Center
Nashville, Tennessee

James M. McKiernan, M.D., Vice-Chair
Herbert Irving Comprehensive Cancer Center
New York, New York

Mahul Amin, M.D.
Cedars-Sinai Medical Center
Los Angeles, California

Bernard H. Bochner, M.D.
Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center
New York, New York

Steven Campbell, M.D., Ph.D.
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio

Mary K. Gospodarowicz, M.D.
University of Toronto
Toronto, Ontario

Patti A. Groome, Ph.D.
Queen’s University
Kingston, Ontario

Celestia Higano, M.D.
University of Washington
Seattle, Washington

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Peter A. Humphrey, m.d., Ph.D.
Washington University
Saint Louis, Missouri

Michael Kattan, Ph.D., M.B.A.
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio

Bradley Leibovich, m.d.
Mayo Clinic
Rochester, Minnesota

Alan Pollack, M.D., Ph.D.
University of Miami
Miami, Florida

Mack Roach III, M.D.
University of California
San Francisco, California

Wayne State University
Detroit, Michigan

Judith N. Shelby, R.H.I.T., C.T.R.
Vanderbilt University
Nashville, Tennessee

Walter M. Stadler, M.D.
University of Chicago
Chicago, Illinois

Valerie Vesich, R.H.I.T., C.T.R.
St. Joseph’s Hospital and Medical Center
Phoenix, Arizona

Jacqueline Wienek, M.D.
Armed Forces Institute of Pathology
Washington, DC

David P. Wood, M.D.
University of Michigan
Ann Arbor, Michigan

Russell Broaddus, M.D., Ph.D.
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Dennis Chi, M.D.
Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center
New York, New York

Larry Copeland, M.D.
Ohio State University
Columbus, Ohio

Phyllis A. Gimotty, Ph.D.
University of Pennsylvania
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Perry W. Grigsby, M.D.
Washington University
Saint Louis, Missouri

Lisa Landvogt, C.T.R.
American College of Surgeons
Commission on Cancer
Chicago, Illinois

Karen H. Lu, M.D.
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Hextan Y. S. Ngan, M.D.
University of Hong Kong
Hong Kong, China

Esther Oliva, M.D.
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

Edward E. Partridge, M.D.
University of Alabama
Birmingham, Alabama

Matthew A. Powell, M.D.
Washington University
Saint Louis, Missouri

William H. Rodgers, M.D., Ph.D.
University of Maryland
Baltimore, Maryland

Gustavo C. Rodriguez, M.D.
NorthShore University Health System
Evanston, Illinois

Charles W. Whitney, M.D.
Christiana Care
Newark, Delaware

Jatin P. Shah, M.D., Chair
Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center
New York, New York

Robert J. Baatenburg De Jong, M.D.
Erasmus Medical Center
Rotterdam, The Netherlands

Carol Bradford, M.D.
University of Michigan
Ann Arbor, Michigan

James Brierley, M.B., M.S.
University of Toronto
Toronto, Ontario

Joseph Califano, III, M.D.
Johns Hopkins University
Baltimore, Maryland

Amy Y. Chen, M.D., M.P.H.
Emory Healthcare
Atlanta, Georgia

Arlene A. Forastiere, M.D.
Johns Hopkins University
Baltimore, Maryland

J. Jack Lee, Ph.D., D.D.S.
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Nancy Lee, M.D.
Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center
New York, New York

William Lydiatt, M.D.
University of Nebraska
Omaha, Nebraska

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Affiliation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matthew S. Mayo, Ph.D., M.B.A.</td>
<td>University of Kansas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bryan McIver, M.D.</td>
<td>Mayo Clinic Rochester, Minnesota</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jesus Medina, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Oklahoma Oklahoma City, Oklahoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suresh Mukherji, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Michigan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brian O'Sullivan, M.B. B.Ch. B.A.O.</td>
<td>University of Toronto Toronto, Ontario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snehal Patel, M.D.</td>
<td>Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center New York, New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John A. Ridge, M.D., Ph.D.</td>
<td>Fox Chase Cancer Center Philadelphia, Pennsylvania</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Randal Weber, M.D.</td>
<td>M.D. Anderson Cancer Center Houston, Texas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bruce M. Wenig, M.D.</td>
<td>Beth Israel Medical Center New York, New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bevan Yueh, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Washington Seattle, Washington</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J. Nicolas Vauthey, M.D., Chair</td>
<td>M.D. Anderson Cancer Center Houston, Texas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timothy M. Pawlik, M.D., M.P.H., Vice-Chair</td>
<td>Johns Hopkins University Baltimore, Maryland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eddie K. Abdalla, M.D.</td>
<td>M.D. Anderson Cancer Center Houston, Texas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thomas A. Aloia, M.D.</td>
<td>The Methodist Hospital Houston, Texas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cynthia S. Boudreaux, L.P.N., C.T.R.</td>
<td>CB Professional Abstracting &amp; Consulting Services Raceland, Louisiana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yun Shin Chun, M.D.</td>
<td>M.D. Anderson Cancer Center Houston, Texas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elijah Dixon, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Calgary Calgary, Alberta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuman Fong, M.D.</td>
<td>Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center New York, New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David Kooby, M.D.</td>
<td>Emory University Atlanta, Georgia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gregory Y. Lauwers, M.D.</td>
<td>Massachusetts General Hospital Boston, Massachusetts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew S. Mayo, Ph.D., M.B.A.</td>
<td>University of Kansas Kansas City, Kansas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David M. Nagorney, M.D.</td>
<td>Mayo Clinic Rochester, Minnesota</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaye Reid Lombardo, M.D.</td>
<td>Mayo Clinic Rochester, Minnesota</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bachir Taouli, M.D.</td>
<td>New York University New York, New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mary Kay Washington, M.D., Ph.D.</td>
<td>Vanderbilt University Nashville, Tennessee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christian Wittekind, M.D.</td>
<td>Institut fur Pathologie der Universitat Leipzig, Germany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsung-Teh Wu, M.D., Ph.D.</td>
<td>Mayo Clinic Rochester, Minnesota</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrew Zhu, M.D., Ph.D.</td>
<td>Massachusetts General Hospital Boston, Massachusetts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J. Milburn Jessup, M.D., Chair</td>
<td>National Cancer Institute Bethesda, Maryland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leonard Gunderson, M.D., Vice-Chair</td>
<td>Mayo Clinic Scottsdale, Arizona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jaffer Ajani, M.D.</td>
<td>M.D. Anderson Cancer Center Houston, Texas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robert W. Beart, Jr, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Southern California Los Angeles, California</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al B. Benson III, M.D.</td>
<td>Northwestern University Chicago, Illinois</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James Brierley, M.B., M.S.</td>
<td>University of Toronto Toronto, Ontario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John M. Carethers, M.D.</td>
<td>University of California San Diego, California</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul Catalano, S.C.D.</td>
<td>Dana-Farber Cancer Institute Boston, Massachusetts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>George J. Chang, M.D.</td>
<td>M.D. Anderson Cancer Center Houston, Texas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Julio Garcia-Aguilar, M.D., Ph.D.</td>
<td>City of Hope Duarte, California</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Richard M. Goldberg, M.D.</td>
<td>University of North Carolina Chapel Hill, North Carolina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel G. Haller, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Pennsylvania Philadelphia, Pennsylvania</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stanley R. Hamilton, M.D.</td>
<td>M.D. Anderson Cancer Center Houston, Texas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Institution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donald E. Henson, M.D.</td>
<td>George Washington University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vencine Kelly, C.T.R.</td>
<td>Stony Brook University Medical Center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bruce D. Minsky, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Chicago, Chicago, Illinois</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heidi Nelson, M.D.</td>
<td>Mayo Clinic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel J. Sargent, Ph.D.</td>
<td>Mayo Clinic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leslie H. Sobin, M.D.</td>
<td>Armed Forces Institute of Pathology, Washington, DC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martin Weiser, M.D.</td>
<td>Sloan-Kettering Institute for Cancer Research, New York, New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark Lane Welton, M.D.</td>
<td>Stanford University, Stanford, California</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LUNG AND ESOPHAGUS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Institution</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Valerie W. Rusch, M.D., Chair</td>
<td>Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center, New York, New York</td>
<td>New York, New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henry D. Appelman, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Michigan</td>
<td>Ann Arbor, Michigan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eugene Blackstone, M.D.</td>
<td>Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, Ohio</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kelly J. Butnor, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Vermont, Burlington, Vermont</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LYMPHOMA**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Institution</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>James O. Armitage, M.D., Chair</td>
<td>University of Nebraska, Omaha, Nebraska</td>
<td>Omaha, Nebraska</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bruce D. Cheson, M.D., Co-Chair</td>
<td>Georgetown University, Washington, DC</td>
<td>Washington, DC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenneth C. Anderson, M.D.</td>
<td>Dana-Farber Cancer Institute, Boston, Massachusetts</td>
<td>Boston, Massachusetts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irene Ghobrial, M.D.</td>
<td>Dana-Farber Cancer Institute, Boston, Massachusetts</td>
<td>Boston, Massachusetts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mary Gospodarowicz, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Toronto, Toronto, Canada</td>
<td>Toronto, Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nancy Lee Harris, M.D.</td>
<td>Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, Massachusetts</td>
<td>Boston, Massachusetts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
Robert A. Kyle, M.D.
Mayo Clinic
Rochester, Minnesota

Michael LeBlanc, Ph.D.
Fred Hutchinson Cancer Research Center
Seattle, Washington

Andrew Lister, M.D.
St. Bartholomew's Hospital
London, England

Sharon Murphy, M.D.
University of Texas
San Antonio, Texas

Steven T. Rosen, M.D.
Northwestern University
Chicago, Illinois

John Sandlund, M.D.
St. Jude Children's Research Hospital
Memphis, Tennessee

Krystyna Tybinkowski, B.A., C.T.R.
Princess Margaret Hospital
Toronto, Ontario

Charles M. Balch, M.D., F.A.C.S., Chair
Johns Hopkins University
Baltimore, Maryland

Jeffrey E. Gershenwald, M.D., Vice-Chair
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Michael B. Atkins, M.D.
Beth Israel Deaconess Medical Center
Boston, Massachusetts

Antonio C. Buzaid, M.D.
Hospital Sirio Libanes
Sao Paulo, Brazil

Natale Casinelli, M.D.
Istituto Nazionale dei Tumori
Milan, Italy

Alistair J. Cochran, M.D.
University of California
Los Angeles, California

Daniel G. Coit, M.D.
Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center
New York, New York

Matthew Dickerson, B.S.
University of Alabama at Birmingham
Birmingham, Alabama

Shouliuan Ding, Ph.D.
University of Alabama at Birmingham
Birmingham, Alabama

Rush Elliott, B.S.
University of Alabama at Birmingham
Birmingham, Alabama

Alexander M. M. Eggermont, M.D., Ph.D.
Erasmus University Medical Center
Rotterdam, The Netherlands

Keith T. Flaherty, M.D.
University of Pennsylvania
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

David Frishberg, M.D.
Cedars Sinai Medical Center
Los Angeles, California

Phyllis A. Gimotty, Ph.D.
University of Pennsylvania
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Allan C. Halpern, M.D., M.S.
Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center
New York, New York

Alan N. Houghton, M.D.
Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center
New York, New York

Marcella M. Johnson, M.S.
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

John M. Kirkwood, M.D.
University of Pittsburgh
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

Marcelle M. Johnson, M.S.
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

John F. Thompson, M.D.
University of Sydney
Sydney, Australia

Carla Warneke
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Arthur Sober, M.D., Chair
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

Seng-Jaw Soong, Ph.D.
University of Alabama at Birmingham
Birmingham, Alabama

Carla Warneke
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Arthur Sober, M.D.
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

Vernon Sondak, M.D.
H. Lee Moffitt Cancer Center
Tampa, Florida

Martin C. Mihm, Jr., M.D.
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

Donald L. Morton, M.D.
John Wayne Cancer Institute
Santa Monica, California

Omgo E. Nieweg, M.D.
Netherlands Cancer Institute
Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Connie Pitts
University of Alabama at Birmingham
Birmingham, Alabama

Merrick I. Ross, M.D.
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Arthur Sober, M.D.
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

John M. Kirkwood, M.D.
University of Pittsburgh
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

David Frishberg, M.D.
Cedars Sinai Medical Center
Los Angeles, California

John F. Thompson, M.D.
University of Sydney
Sydney, Australia

Carla Warneke
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Institution</th>
<th>City, State</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allan C. Halpern, M.D., M.S.</td>
<td>Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center</td>
<td>New York, New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timothy M. Johnson, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Michigan</td>
<td>Ann Arbor, Michigan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bianca D. Lemos, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Washington</td>
<td>Seattle, Washington</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nanette J. Liegeois, M.D., Ph.D.</td>
<td>Johns Hopkins University</td>
<td>Baltimore, Maryland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martin C. Mihm, Jr., M.D.</td>
<td>Massachusetts General Hospital</td>
<td>Boston, Massachusetts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victor A. Neel, M.D., Ph.D.</td>
<td>Massachusetts General Hospital</td>
<td>Boston, Massachusetts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kishwer S. Nehal, M.D.</td>
<td>Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center</td>
<td>New York, New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul Nghiem, M.D., Ph.D.</td>
<td>University of Washington</td>
<td>Seattle, Washington</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clark Otley, M.D.</td>
<td>Mayo Clinic</td>
<td>Rochester, Minnesota</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Louise Schuman, M.A., C.T.R.</td>
<td>Clinical Data Systems</td>
<td>Fountain Valley, California</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seng-Jaw Soong, Ph.D.</td>
<td>University of Alabama at Birmingham</td>
<td>Birmingham, Alabama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark R. Wick, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Virginia</td>
<td>Charlottesville, Virginia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siegrid Yu, M.D.</td>
<td>University of California</td>
<td>San Francisco, California</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel Albert, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Wisconsin</td>
<td>Madison, Wisconsin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darryl Ainbinder, M.D.</td>
<td>Madigan Army Medical Center</td>
<td>Tacoma, Washington</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robert Augsburger, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Cincinnati</td>
<td>Cincinnati, Ohio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nikolas E. Bechrakis, M.D.</td>
<td>Universitätsklinik Fur Augenheilkunde und Optometrie</td>
<td>Innsbruck, Austria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maj. John H. Boden, M.D.</td>
<td>Madigan Army Medical Center</td>
<td>Tacoma, Washington</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patricia Chevez-Barrios, M.D.</td>
<td>The Methodist Hospital</td>
<td>Houston, Texas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarah E. Coupland, M.B.B.S., Ph.D., F.R.C.Path</td>
<td>Royal Liverpool Hospital</td>
<td>Liverpool, England</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bertil Damato, M.D.</td>
<td>Royal Liverpool University Hospital</td>
<td>Liverpool, England</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laurence Desjardins, M.D.</td>
<td>Institut Curie</td>
<td>Paris, France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Didi de Wolff-Rouendaal, M.D., Ph.D.</td>
<td>Leiden University</td>
<td>Leiden, The Netherlands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ralph C. Eagle, M.D.</td>
<td>Wills Eye Hospital</td>
<td>Philadelphia, Pennsylvania</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deepak P. Edward, M.D.</td>
<td>Northeastern Ohio Universities College of Medicine</td>
<td>Akron, Ohio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bita Esmaeli, M.D.</td>
<td>M.D. Anderson Cancer Center</td>
<td>Houston, Texas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James C. Fleming, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Tennessee</td>
<td>Memphis, Tennessee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brenda L. Gallie, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Toronto</td>
<td>Toronto, Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dan S. Gombos, M.D.</td>
<td>M.D. Anderson Cancer Center</td>
<td>Houston, Texas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jean-Daniel Grange, M.D.</td>
<td>Croix-Rousse Hospital</td>
<td>Lyon, France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hans Grossniklaus, M.D., M.B.A.</td>
<td>Emory University</td>
<td>Atlanta, Georgia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barrett Haik, M.D.</td>
<td>The University of Tennessee</td>
<td>Memphis, Tennessee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Col. John B. Halligan, M.D.</td>
<td>Madigan Army Medical Center</td>
<td>Tacoma, Washington</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J. William Harbour, M.D.</td>
<td>Washington University</td>
<td>St. Louis, Missouri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>George J. Harocopos, M.D.</td>
<td>Washington University</td>
<td>St. Louis, Missouri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leonard M. Holbach, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Erlangen--Nuremberg</td>
<td>Erlangen, Germany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John L. Hungerford, M.D.</td>
<td>St. Bartholomew Hospital</td>
<td>London, England</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martine J. Jager, M.D., Ph.D.</td>
<td>Academisch Ziekenhuis Leiden</td>
<td>Afdeling Oogheekunde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zeynel A. Karcıoğlu, M.D.</td>
<td>University of Tennessee</td>
<td>Memphis, Tennessee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tero Kivela, M.D.</td>
<td>Helsinki University Central Hospital</td>
<td>Helsinki, Finland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emma Kujala, M.D.</td>
<td>Helsinki University Central Hospital</td>
<td>Helsinki, Finland</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**OPHTHALMIC**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Institution</th>
<th>City, State</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Paul T. Finger, M.D., Chair</td>
<td>The New York Eye Cancer Center</td>
<td>New York, New York</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.*
Guopei Yu, M.D., M.P.H.
The New York Eye and Ear Infirmary
New York, New York

R. Lor Randall, M.D.
University of Utah
Salt Lake City, Utah

Chandrajit P. Raut, M.D., M.S.C.
Brigham and Women's Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

Raphael E. Pollock, M.D., Ph.D., Chair
MD Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Laurence H. Baker, D.O.
University of Michigan
Ann Arbor, Michigan

Murray F. Brennan, M.D.
Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center
New York, New York

SOFT TISSUE SARCOMA

Kevin Coombes, Ph.D.
MD Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Stefan Seregard, M.D.
St. Erik's Eye Hospital
Stockholm, Sweden

Thomas Krausz, M.D.
University of Chicago
Chicago, Illinois

E. Rand Simpson, M.D.
Princess Margaret Hospital
Toronto, Ontario

Alexander Lazar, M.D., Ph.D.
MD Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Dina Chelouche Lev, M.D.
MD Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Brian O'Sullivan, M.D.
Princess Margaret Hospital
Toronto, Ontario

David Panicek, M.D.
Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center
New York, New York

Peter W. T. Pisters, M.D.
MD Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Patti A. Groome, Ph.D.
Queen's University
Kingston, ON Canada

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
American Joint Committee on Cancer • 2010
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
# Index

## A

- Abdomen, 291. See also specific organs
- Abdominal esophagus, 103–115
- Acoustic/vestibular nerve, 593
- Adenoma, 577
- Adrenal gland, 515
- Alpha-fetoprotein, 194, 420, 470, 472
- Alveolar ridges, 30
- American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) classification, 4–5
- Ampulla of Vater, 235–240
- Anal canal, 165–167, 169, 170
- Anaplastic astrocytoma, 595, 596
- Anaplastic carcinoma of the thyroid gland, 90, 91
- Anaplastic large T-cell lymphoma, 602
- Anatomic stage/prognostic grouping rules, 12
- Angiosarcoma, 284
- Ann Arbor staging system, 608, 611
- Anorectal lymph nodes, 166
- Anterior floor of mouth, 29
- Anterior (lingual) surface of epiglottis, 57
- Anterior mediastinum, 291
- Anterior two-thirds of tongue, 29, 30
- Anterior wall of bladder, 497
- Anterior wall of nasopharynx, 42
- Anus, 165–173
- Aortic lymph nodes, 255, 458, 480, 492
- Aortopulmonary lymph nodes, 106
- Appendix, 133–141
- Armed Forces Institute of Pathology, 7
- Articular cartilage, 281
- Aryepiglottic folds, 42, 58
- Arytenoids, 58
- Ascending colon, 144–146, 152
- Atlas of Tumor Pathology, 7
- Autonomic nervous system, 291
- Autopsy classification, 12
- Axillary lymph nodes, 352, 359

## B

- Basal cell carcinomas, 302–303
- Base of tongue, 41
- B-cell lymphocytic leukemia/small lymphocytic lymphoma (B-cell CLL/SL), 601–602
- B-cell neoplasms, 602
- Beta-2 microglobulin, 617
- Bile ducts, extrahepatic, 202, 219–221, 227–229
- Bile ducts, intrahepatic, 201–209
- Biliary tract, 212
- Bladder, 497
- Bladder, urinary, 497
- Bladder, urinier, 497–505
- Body of pancreas, 241
- Body of penis, 447
- Body of stomach (other than proximal 5 cm), 117, 118
- Body of stomach, proximal 5 cm only, 103
- Bone, 281–290
- Bone of limb, 281
- Bones of skull and face, 281
- Branchial cleft, 41
- Breast cancer, 347–376
- Cancer outcomes, 357–358
- SEER data, 17
- Survival rates, 357–358, 363, 366
- Bronchus, main, 253
- Buccal mucosa, 30
- Buccinator lymph nodes, 22

## C

- CA-125, 420
- Carcinomas
  - anal canal, 170
  - cervical, 396
  - conjunctival, 531–537
  - eyelid, 523–530
- hepatocellular, 193
- laryngeal, 569–575
- ovarian, 420, 422
- prostatic, 508
- skin, 301–314
- stomach, 117–126
- thyroid gland, 90–91
- uterine, 406
- vaginal, 389
- vulvar, 380
- Cardia, 103
- Cardia, esophagogastric junction, 103
- Cauda equine, 593
- Cause-adjusted survival rate, 17–18
- Caval lymph nodes, 192
- Celiac lymph nodes, 107, 121
- Censored cases, 15
- Central nervous system, 593–597
- Central neurocytoma, 595
- C-erbB-2, 283
- Cerebellum, 593
- Cerebral meninges, 593
- Cerebrum, 593
- Cervical esophagus, 103–105
- Cervical lymph nodes, 458, 531, 539, 548, 569, 577
- Cervix, 395–402
- Cheek, mucosa, 29
- Chest wall anatomy, 352
- Child-Pugh classes, 193
- Chondrosarcoma, 282
- Chordoma, 285
- Choriocarcinoma, 437
- Chorionic gonadotropin, human (hCG), 420, 438, 470
- Choroid, 547
- Ciliary body, 547
- Ciliary body and iris, 547
- Clavicle, 281
- Clinical classification, 4–5
- Clinical staging, 4, 9, 10
- Clitoris, 326, 379
- Cloacogenic zone, 165
- Coccyx, 281
- College of American Pathologists, 6
Colon, 143–164, 175, 176, 181–184
Commissure of lip, 29
Common bile duct, 235
Conjunctiva, 531–537, 539–546, 583
Connective tissues, 292
Corpus uteri, 403–418
Cortex of adrenal gland, 515
Cox proportional hazards regression model, 18
Cranial nerve, 593
Craniopharyngeal duct, 593
C-reactive protein (CRP), 609
Cricoid cartilage, 42
Cryptorchidism, 470
Cystic duct, 202, 211–214, 227

Data forms, 14
Definitions, TNM system, 3–4
Descended testis, 469
Descending colon, 144–146, 152, 155
Descriptors, TNM system, 12–14
Diaphragm, 264
Diaphragmatic lymph nodes, 106
Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, 602
Dome of bladder, 29
Dorsal surface of tongue, 29
Duodenal lymph nodes, 128
Duodenum, 118, 120, 127–129

Ear, external, 302, 326
Editions, 3, 4, 6, 13
Edmondson and Steiner grading system, 194
E lesions, 608
Endocervix, 395
Endocrine pancreas, 241–249
Endometrium, 403, 406, 407
Endophytic tumors, 30
Ependymoma, 595
Epiglottis, anterior surface, 57
Esophagus, 103–115, 173–177
Ethmoid sinuses, 69–72
Ewing’s sarcoma, 283, 291
Exocervix, 395, 396
Exocrine pancreas, 241–249
Exophytic tumors, 30
External ear, 302, 326
External lip, 29
External lower lip, 29
External upper lip, 29
Extrahepatic bile ducts, 202, 219–221, 227–229
Extremities, 292. See also limbs
Eye, 577
Eyelid, 326, 523–530, 583

Face
   carcinoma of the skin, 302
   melanoma of the skin, 326
   sagittal view, 42
   soft-tissue sarcomas, 291
Factor VIII-related antigen, 550
Fallopian tube, 429–436
Fédération Internationale de Gynécologie et d’Obstétrique (FIGO), 380, 388, 397, 405, 421
Femoral lymph nodes, 379, 387, 448
Fibrosarcoma, 285
Fine-needle aspiration biopsy (FNAB), 21
Floor of mouth, 29
Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH), 617
Follicular adenocarcinoma of the thyroid gland, 90
Follicular lymphoma, 611
Frontal lobe, 593
Fundus of stomach (other than proximal 5 cm), 117, 118
Fundus of stomach, proximal 5 cm only, 103
Fundus of the stomach, 117
Fundus uteri, 403

Gallbladder, 211–217
Ganglioglioma, 595
Gastroenterectomy, survival rates and, 118
Gastric antrum, 117
Gastric Cancer. See carcinoma, stomach
Gastric lymph nodes, 106
Gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GIST), 130, 291
Gastrointestinal tract, 292
General rules, 7–12
Genitourinary tract, 292
Germ cell tumors, 470
Gerota’s lymph nodes, 458, 498
Gestational trophoblastic tumors, 437–444
Gingiva, retromolar, 30
Glans penis, 326, 447, 448
Glioblastoma, 595
Glottis, 59, 61
Grade, 3, 13
Greater curvature of stomach, 117–119
Growth, tumor, 202–204, 221
Gums, 29

Hard palate, 29–31
Head and neck sites, 21–28, 291
Head of pancreas, 241
Heart, 291
Hemangiopericytoma, 285
Hemorrhoidal lymph nodes, 146
Hepatic flexure of colon, 144–146
Hepatic lymph nodes, 106, 128
Hepatocellular carcinoma, 193
Hepatoduodenal ligament lymph nodes, 192
Hilar lymph nodes, 192, 211, 255
Hip
   carcinoma of the skin, 302
   melanoma of the skin, 326
   soft-tissue sarcomas, 291
Histologic grade (G) definitions, 13
Histopathologic types, 11–13
Hodgkin lymphoma, 607–611
Hypodermoid moles, 437
Hypogastric lymph nodes
   anal canal and, 166
   cervix uteri and, 396
   corpus uteri and, 404
   fallopian tubes and, 429
   ovaries and, 419
   penis and, 447
   prostate and, 458
   urethra and, 508
   urinary bladder and, 498
   vagina and, 387
Hypopharyngeal aspect of aryepiglottic fold, 42
Hypopharyngeal carcinoma, 43
Hypopharynx, 41–56
Ileocecal lymph nodes, 128, 146
Ileum, 127
Iliac lymph nodes
   anal canal and, 166
   cervix uteri and, 396
   colon and, 146
   corpus uteri and, 404
   fallopian tubes and, 429
   ovaries and, 419
   penis and, 447
   prostate and, 458
   renal pelvis, 492
   ureter, 492
   urethra and, 508
   urinary bladder and, 498
   vagina, 387
Imaging studies, 21
Inferior mesenteric lymph nodes, 146
Inferior pulmonary ligament, 256
Inferior pulmonary ligament lymph nodes, 256
Infrahypophyseal epiglottis, 58
Infrapyloric lymph nodes, 128
Inguinal lymph nodes
   anal canal and, 166
   fallopian tubes and, 429
   ovaries and, 419
   penis and, 447
   prostate and, 458

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
urethra and, 508
vagina and, 387
vulva and, 379
Interaortocaval lymph nodes, 470
Internal mammary lymph nodes, 272
International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O), 6, 26
International Histological Classification of Tumours, 6
International Lymphoma Study Group (ILSG), 601
International Mesothelioma Interest Group (IMIG), 271
International Prognostic Index (IPI), 610, 611
International Union Against Cancer (UICC), 3
Intrahepatic bile ducts, 201–209
Intrapulmonary lymph nodes, 263
Intrathoracic lymph nodes, 272
Iris, 547
Ishak’s fibrosis scores, 194
Islets of Langerhans, 241
Ishak, 617
Isthmus uteri, 403
Isolated tumor cells (ITCs), 355–356
Islets of Langerhans, 241
Ishak’s fibrosis scores, 194
J
Jejunum, 127
Joints, 281
K
Kaplan–Meier method, 15, 16
Karnofsky scale performance status (PS), 32
Kidney, 479–489
K-ras gene, 153, 156
Labium majus, 326, 379
Labium minus, 326, 379
Lacrimal gland, 569–575
Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), 333, 472, 619
Lamina propria, 213
Large intestine, 145
Laryngeal cartilage, 57, 58
Larynx, 57–67
Lateral floor of mouth, 29
Lateral sacral lymph nodes, 166
Lateral wall of bladder, 497
Lateral wall of nasopharynx, 42
Lateral wall of oropharynx, 41
Left colic lymph nodes, 146
Left hepatic duct, 202, 220, 227
Leiomyosarcoma, 285
Lesser curvature of stomach, 117, 119
Life table method, 15–17
Limbs. See also bone; extremities
carcinoma of the skin, 302
melanoma of the skin, 326
soft-tissue sarcomas, 291
Lingual tonsil, 41
Lip
cancers of, 29–40
carcinoma of the skin, 302
lesion of pharynx and, 41
melanoma of the skin, 326
Liposarcomas, 285
Liver, 191–199
Log rank tests, 19
Lost to follow-up, 15
Lower gum, 29
Lower jugular lymph nodes, 24
Lower lobe lung, 253
Lower third of esophagus, 103
Lower thoracic esophagus, 105
Lumbar lymph nodes, 458
Lung, 16, 253–270
Lymph nodes, 4, 22–25.
Lung, 16, 253–270
Lymph nodes, 4, 22–25. See also specific
nodes
Lymphocytes. See T-cells
Lymphoid cells, 600
Lymphocytes.
Lymphomas. See also
lymphomas
Lymph-vascular invasion, 14
M
Main bronchus, 253, 263, 267
Major salivary gland, 79–86
Malignant melanoma, 325–344
Mammary gland, 351
Mammary lymph nodes, 352, 355
Mandible, 281
Mantle cell lymphoma, 602
Manual for Staging of Cancer (AJCC), 26
Maxillary sinuses, 69–72
M classification rules, 11
Mediastinal lymph nodes, 106
Mediastinum, 291
Medullary carcinoma of the thyroid
gland, 91
Medulloblastoma, 595
Melanomas
conjunctival, 539–546
Cox regression and prognosis, 330, 331
skin, 325–344
staging system comparisons, 327
survival rates, 326–333
uveal, 547–559
Meninges, 593
Meningioma, 595
Merkel cell, 315–319
Mesenchymoma, 285
Mesenteric lymph nodes, 128
Mesentery, 175
Mesotheliomas, pleural, 271–277
Metastasis, 3. See also specific sites
Middle colic lymph nodes, 146
Middle lobe lung, 253
Middle third of esophagus, 103
Mid-jugular lymph nodes, 24
Monoclonal gamopathy of undetermined
significance (MGUS), 617
Morphology, nomenclature of, 6
Mouth, 29. See also specific sites
Mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue
(MALT), 608, 615
Mucosal melanoma of head and neck,
97–100
Mucosa of lip, 29
Mucosa of lower lip, 29
Mucosa of upper lip, 29
Multidrug resistance gene 1 (MDR1), 283
Multiple myeloma, 617–618
Multiple regression analysis, 18
Multiple tumors, 12
MX, 8, 10
Mycosis fungoides, 613–615
Myometrium, 403
N
Nasal cavity, 69–78
Nasopharyngeal carcinoma, 45, 47, 48
Nasopharynx, 41–56
National Cancer Data Base (NCDB), 26
National Cancer Institute Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results
(SEER), 15
N classification rules, 10
Neck
carcinoma of the skin, 302
lymph nodes levels, 24
melanoma of the skin, 326
sagittal view, 42
soft-tissue sarcomas, 291
Nerve sheath tumor, peripheral, 285
Nervous system, 593
Nipple, 349
NK-cell neoplasms, 602
Nomenclature, cancer morphology, 6
Non-Hodgkin lymphoma, 607–611
Non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC),
255, 261, 262
Nottingham combined histologic grade,
362–367
O
Obturator lymph nodes
cervix uteri and, 396
corpus uteri and, 404
cervix uteri and, 396
corpus uteri and, 404
fallopian tubes and, 429
ovaries and, 419
prostate and, 458
urethra and, 508
urinary bladder and, 498
vagina and, 387
Job Name:

Occipital lobe, 593
Olfactory nerve, 593
Oligodendroglioma, 595
Omentum, 175–177
Optic nerve, 593
Oral cavity, 29–40
Orbit, 577–581, 583
Orbit, sarcoma of, 577–581
Oropharynx, 41–56
Osteosarcoma, 283, 284
Ovary, 419–428
Overlapping lesion of palate, 29
Overlapping lesion of tongue, 29

P
P53, 460
Palate, 29
Pancoast tumors, 264
Pancreas, 241–246
Pancreas, exocrine, 241–249
Pancreatic bile ducts, 235
Pancreatic ducts, 241
Pancreatoduodenal lymph nodes, 128
Papillary adenocarcinoma
of the thyroid gland, 90
Para-aortic lymph nodes
corpus uteri and, 404
fallopian tubes and, 429
kidneys and, 480
ovaries and, 419
prostate and, 458
Paracardial lymph nodes, 106
Paracaval lymph nodes, 470, 480, 492
Paraesophageal lymph nodes, 106
Parametrial lymph nodes, 396, 404
Paranasal sinuses, 69–78
Parapharyngeal anatomy, 42
Parapharyngeal lymph nodes, 22
Paratracheal lymph nodes, 24, 106, 254
Parietal lobe, 593
Parotid gland, 79–86
Parotid lymph nodes, 531, 578
Pathologic classification, 10–12
Pathologic M0, 11
Pathologic staging, 4, 5, 9, 11
Pediatric lymphoid malignancy, 605
Pelvic bones, 281
Pelvic lymph nodes
corpus uteri and, 406
fallopian tubes and, 429
ovaries and, 420
penis and, 447
prostate and, 458
ureter and, 492
urethra and, 508
urinary bladder and, 498
vagina and, 387
Pelvis, 291
Penis, 326, 447–455
Periaortic lymph nodes, 470
Peribronchial lymph nodes, 263

646

--

Pericardial effusion, 263
Pericholedochal lymph nodes, 128
Pericolic lymph nodes, 145
Periduodenal lymph nodes, 202, 212
Periesophageal lymph nodes, 106
Peripancreatic lymph nodes, 202,
212, 235
Periparotid lymph nodes, 22
Peripheral nerves, 291
Peripheral T-cell lymphoma, 602
Perirectal lymph nodes, 166
Peritoneum, 291, 419, 420, 422
Peritoneum, NOS, 291
Periureteral lymph nodes, 492
Perivesical lymph nodes, 498
PET scan, 151
Peyer’s patches, 600
P-glycoprotein, 283
Pharynx, 41–56
Phrenic nerve, 263
Pilocytic astrocytoma, 595
Pineal gland, 593
Pituitary gland, 593
Placenta, 437
Plasmablasts, 617
Plasma cell disorders, 617–618
Plasma cell labeling index (PCLI), 613
Pleural effusion, 255
Pleural mesothelioma, 271–273
Pleura, 271–277, 291
pM0, 10, 11
PNET, 595
Postcricoid region, 42
Posterior cecal lymph nodes, 128, 146
Posterior mediastinum, 291
Posterior pharyngeal wall, 41, 43
Posterior triangle lymph nodes, 24
Posterior wall of bladder, 497
Posterior wall of hypopharynx, 42
Posterior wall of nasopharynx, 42
Preaortic lymph nodes, 470
Preauricular lymph nodes, 22, 531, 539,
548, 569
Precaval lymph nodes, 470
Prefixes, 13
Prelaryngeal lymph nodes, 24
Prepuce, 326, 446, 447
Presacral lymph nodes, 396, 404,
498, 508
Pretracheal lymph nodes, 24, 255
Primary cutaneous lymphoma,
613–615
Primary tumors (T). See also
specific sites
definition of, 7
T classification and survival, 193
Prostate gland, 457–468, 507
Prostate-specific antigen (PSA), 457
Pulmonary ligament lymph nodes, 106
Pyloric lymph nodes, 128
Pylorus, 117
Pyriform sinus, 43

/381449t

R
Radiation Therapy Oncology Group
(RTOG), 460
Rb, 500
Rectosigmoid junction, 144, 175, 181
Rectum, 143–164, 166, 175, 176, 181, 182, 184
Regional lymph nodes (N), 14. See also
specific sites
Regression methods, 18
Relative survival rates, 18
Renal hilar lymph nodes, 480, 492
Renal pelvis, 491–496
Residual tumor (R), 13–14
Restaging, 135, 282–283, 294
Retina, 561
Retinoblastoma, 561–564
Retreatment classification, 5
Retroaortic lymph nodes, 470
Retrocaval lymph nodes, 470
Retromolar area, 29
Retroperitoneal lymph nodes, 420,
453, 492
Retroperitoneum, 291
Retropharyngeal lymph nodes, 22
Revised European-American Classification
of Lymphoid Neoplasms (REAL),
601
Rhabdomyosarcoma, 13, 285, 295
Right colic lymph nodes, 145
Right hepatic duct, 220
Rosenmuller’s node, 42
Rounding tumor size, 10

S
Sacral lymph nodes, 396, 458, 508
Sacral promontory lymph nodes, 146
Sacrum, 281
Salivary glands, major, 79–86
Sarcomas
bone, 283
orbit, 577–580
soft tissue, 291–296
Satellite nodules, 264
Scalene lymph nodes, 272, 458
Scalp, 302, 326
Scapula, 281
Schwannoma, 595
Scrotum, 302, 326
Sentinel lymph nodes
breast, 348, 353, 355, 358–360,
364, 365
breast melanoma, 327, 328, 331
Sézary syndrome, 613–615
Shoulders
carcinoma of the skin, 302
melanoma of the skin, 325
soft-tissue sarcomas, 291
Sigmoid colon, 144–146, 152, 155
Sigmoid mesenteric lymph nodes, 146
Skeleton. See bone

American Joint Committee on Cancer • 2010

In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be
set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your
Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.


Skin
carcinoma of, 301–309
melanoma of, 325–344
Skin of lip, 302
Small cell lung cancer (SCLC), 255
Small intestine, 127–132, 176, 181, 182
Smoldering multiple myeloma (SMM), 617
Soft palate, 41
Soft tissues, 292
Soft tissue sarcomas, 291–296
Special classification rules, 13
Splenic flexure of colon, 144–146
Spleen, 600
Splenic lymph nodes, 107
Sputum, 263
Squamous cell carcinomas
glottis, 46
head and neck (SCCHN), 22
hypopharyngeal, 47
laryngeal, 60
lip, 32
nasopharyngeal, 46
opharyngeal, 47
skin, 302
subglottis, 61
supraglottis, 62
Stage groupings, 4–6, 12, 14, 193
Staging
general rules of, 7–12
philosophy of, 3
principles of, 3–14
Staging classifications, 9
Staging forms, 14
ampulla of Vater, 239–240
anal canal, 171–173
bile ducts, extrahepatic, 197–199
bone, 289–290
breast, 371–376
cervix uteri, 399–402
colon and rectum, 161–164
dconjunctiva, carcinoma of, 535–537
corpus uteri, 411–418
esophagus, 113–115
extrahepatic bile ducts, 207–209
eyelid, carcinoma of, 527–530
fallopian tube, 434–436
gallbladder, 215–217
kidney, 487–489
lacrimal gland carcinoma, 573–575
larynx, 63–67
lip cancers, 37–40
liver, 197–199
lung, 267–270
malignant melanoma of the
dconjunctiva, 543–546
melanoma of the skin, 341–344
oral cavity, cancers of, 37–40
orbit, sarcoma of, 579–581
ovary, 425–428
pancreas, exocrine, 247–249
paranasal sinuses, 75–78
penis, 453–455
pharynx, 51–56
pleural mesothelioma, 275–277
prostate cancer, 465–468
renal pelvis, 495–496
retinoblastoma, 565–568
salivary glands, major, 83–86
skin, carcinoma of, 311–312
small intestine, 131–132
soft tissue sarcomas, 297–298
stomach, 123–126
tes, 473–478
thyroid gland, 93–96
throphoblastic tumors, gestational, 441–444
uter, 495–496
urethra, 511–513
urinary bladder, 503–505
uveal melanoma, 555–559
vagina, 391–393
vulva, 383–386
Standard error, 18–19
Starting points, survival studies, 19
Sternum, 281
St. Jude staging system, 619
Stomach, 117–126, 175–177, 181–183
Subcarinal lymph nodes, 107, 254
Subcutaneous tissues, 293
Subglottis, 57, 58, 60
Sublingual glands, 79–86
Submandibular gland, 79
Submandibular lymph nodes, 31, 79–86,
531, 539, 548, 569, 577
Submental lymph nodes, 31
Sub-occipital lymph nodes, 22
Superficial inguinal lymph nodes, 248
Superior mesenteric lymph nodes, 242
Superior wall of nasopharynx, 41
Supraclavicular fossa, 45
Supraclavicular lymph nodes, 106, 272,
352, 355, 458
Supraglottis, 57, 58, 62
Supraglottis (laryngeal surface), 57
Suprahyoid epiglottis, 57
Surgical margins, 13–14
Surgical margins, pancreatic, 243
Survival analysis, 15–19
Survival curve, definition, 15
Survival rate analyses
adjusted, 17–18
breast cancer, 17
calculation of, 17
definition of, 15
regression method, 18
standard error of, 18–19
starting points, 19
statistical significance, 19
subclassification, 17
T classification and, 193
time intervals, 19
Survival, relative, 18
Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine
(SNOMED), 7
T
tail of pancreas, 241
T-cell lymphoma, peripheral, 602
T-cell neoplasms, 602
T classification rules, 10
T, definition of, 295
Technitium scintigraphy, 282
Temporal lobe, 593
Terminal events, 19
testis, 469–478
Thoracic esophagus, 103
Thorax, soft-tissue sarcomas, 291
Thyroid cartilage, 42
Thyroid gland, 87–96
Time period for staging, 9
TNM system, 7–8
general rule of, 7–8
philosophy of, 3
subdivisions of, 12
Tongue, 29
base of, 41
oral, 30
Tonsillar fossa, 41
tonsillar pillar, 41
tonsils, 41
Tracheobronchial lymph nodes, 107
Transverse colon, 144–146
Trigone of bladder, 497
Throphoblastic tumors, gestational, 437–444
Trunk
carcinoma of the skin, 302
melanoma of the skin, 326(Ch 31)
soft-tissue sarcomas, 291
T1 tumor survival rates, 194
Tumor growth, 202–204, 221
U
Ulcerated tumors, 30–31
Ulceration, melanoma, 328–330
Uncensored cases, 15
Undescended testis, 469
Upper gum, 29
Upper jugular lymph nodes, 24
Upper lobe lung, 253
Upper mediastinal lymph nodes, 24
Upper third of esophagus, 103
Urachus, 497
Ureter, 491–496
Ureteric orifice, 497
Urethra, 507–513
Urinary bladder, 497–505
Urothelial carcinoma, 491
Urinary bladder, 497–505
Urothelial carcinoma, 491
Uterus, 403–408, 410, 414
Uvea, 547–559
Uvula, 41
**V**

- Vagina, 387–393
- Vallecula, 41
- Venous invasion (V), 136, 151, 154, 155, 242
- Ventral surface of tongue, 29
- Ventricles, brain, 593

- Ventricular bands (false cords), 58
- Vertebral column, 281
- Vestibular schwannoma, 595
- Vestibule of mouth, 29
- Viscera, soft-tissue sarcomas, 292
- Vital status, evaluation of, 19
- Vocal cords, 58
- Vulva, 326, 379–386

**W**

- Waldeyer’s ring, 600, 610, 611
- World Health Organization (WHO), 6, 613

*World Health Organization International Histological Classification of Tumours*, 13
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.
In order to view this proof accurately, the Overprint Preview Option must be set to Always in Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader. Please contact your Customer Service Representative if you have questions about finding this option.